

# **FileCloud Online**

## **23.253**

# **FileCloud Site Setup**

17 December, 2025

# Table of Contents

Navigating and Searching for Settings.....	3
Going to the Settings landing page .....	3
Go to a settings page .....	3
Reset settings .....	7
Server Settings.....	9
Storage Settings .....	12
FileCloud Managed Storage.....	12
Administrator Settings .....	33
Logging In to the Admin Portal.....	33
Resetting Admin Password.....	41
Changing the Default Login Name.....	45
Account Locked Alerts .....	46
Folder-Level Permissions.....	48
Setting Folder-Level Permissions from the Admin Portal.....	48
Enabling Users to Set Folder-Level Permissions .....	55
Setting Folder-Level Permissions on Team Folders.....	57
How Folder-Level Permissions and Share Permissions Work Together .....	68
More Examples .....	75
Team Folders .....	81
Configure the Team Folders Account .....	82
Seed and Organize Team Folder Data.....	91
Share the Team Folder and Set Permissions .....	96
User Settings.....	102
Create FileCloud Users.....	102
New Account Creation .....	115
Password Settings.....	154
Restrict Commonly Used Passwords.....	159
User Session Expiration .....	161
Changing the Storage Quota for Users .....	162

Enable WebDAV .....	169
Customize the User Login Screen .....	169
Limiting File Upload Size for Users.....	174
Disabling Send for Approval .....	176
Group Settings .....	178
What do you want to do?.....	179
Giving Users Group Management Permissions.....	190
Admin User and Role Settings .....	193
User Authentication Settings .....	199
Enabling Default Authentication .....	199
Active Directory Authentication .....	200
LDAP Based Authentication.....	224
Two-Factor Authentication .....	229
Single sign-on (SSO) .....	247
Oracle Identity Manager LDAP integration with FileCloud.....	365
Desktop Apps Code-Based Authentication.....	369
Enabling Basic Authentication .....	375
Share Settings.....	377
Configure Sharing Defaults .....	377
Set the Share Mode .....	391
Specify Sharing Expiration .....	393
Secure Shares .....	399
Document Settings .....	411
Setting Up Document Preview .....	411
Enabling Watermarks On Previews .....	412
Import Files : Pre-seeding .....	418
Optimize PDF Preview .....	420
Managing File Extensions .....	423
Restricting File Names .....	427
Manage File Versioning.....	428
Configuring Zip Files and Zero Trust File Sharing .....	431
Email Settings .....	434

SMTP Configuration .....	437
Do Not Email Settings .....	443
To limit the number of emails sent to a user .....	444
Configuring System Generated Emails .....	444
Endpoint Backup Settings .....	446
What Do You Want To Do? .....	446
Automatic Database Backup .....	452
Setting Up Persona Backup Using Sync.....	454
Client Security Settings .....	458
Setting Client Application Policies.....	458
Using a Proxy Server.....	462
Configuring OAuth for SCIM Integration .....	463
Online Web Editing.....	468
Web Editing with Google Apps.....	468
New Document Creation via Web Browser .....	478
Web Editing Text Files .....	480
Web Editing Markdown and Readme Files .....	481
Coauthoring Office Documents Using Web Edit.....	481
Disable Online Web Editing .....	482
Policies .....	484
Working with Policy Records .....	488
Creating a New Policy Video.....	497
Managing Policy Users and Groups Video.....	497
Notifications for File Changes .....	498
FAQ's .....	498
Why is the user not getting a notification?.....	498
How to access notification settings in the admin portal .....	499
Changing notification settings.....	500
Example Setup: Fixed Notifications for Uploads and Deletions .....	508
Example Setup: User-enabled Notifications on Folders.....	513
Anonymizing User Data.....	521
Misc Settings .....	525

General settings .....	525
User settings .....	528
Notifications settings .....	528
Other Misc. tab settings .....	528
Terms of Service .....	530
Enabling privacy settings and the Terms of Use checkbox .....	531
Showing TOS when users access public and password-protected shares .....	533
Terms of service settings .....	534
See if a user has accepted terms of service .....	536
Change the content of the Terms of Service .....	537
Set Search Location .....	539
Migrating Content with the Seeding Tool .....	540
How To Seed Data .....	540
Seeding Scenarios .....	542
Related help: .....	545

You must perform certain administrative tasks before FileCloud users can log in and use FileCloud efficiently. Some of the system settings and custom settings that you can configure are listed in the table below by priority and function.

Level of Priority	Administrator Settings	Server Settings	Storage Settings	User Access Settings
Required	<a href="#">Access the Admin Portal</a> (see page 33) Admin Portal Dashboard <a href="#">Change the Admin Password</a> (see page 40) Manage Account Approvals (see page 114)	<a href="#">Admin Settings</a> (see page 33) <a href="#">Server Settings</a> (see page 9) Manage Client Security Settings (see page 457) Configure Share Settings (see page 376)	<a href="#">Configure Team Folders</a> (see page 80)	<a href="#">Create FileCloud Users</a> (see page 101) <a href="#">Check User Access Level</a> (see page 102) Create User Policies Create Groups (see page 177) Manage User Storage Quotas
Recommended	<a href="#">Configure Email Settings</a> (see page 433)	<a href="#">Set Client Application Policies</a> (see page 457)		<a href="#">Manage User Authentication</a> (see page 198) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Configure Single Sign-On</li> <li>• Use LDAP Based Authentication</li> <li>• Active Directory Authentication</li> </ul> <a href="#">Set Up 2FA</a> (see page 228) Configure Microsoft Office Integration Options
Provides a Better Experience	Add Customization and Branding		(see page 80)	Enable MS Teams Integration Set Up Notifications for File Changes (see page 497) Automate Business Workflows Enable Users to Set Folder-Level Permissions (see page 54) Enable reCaptcha

Level of Priority	Administrator Settings	Server Settings	Storage Settings	User Access Settings
Advanced features	Set Up Compliance Checking <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• HIPAA</li><li>• ITAR</li><li>• GDPR</li><li>• PDPL</li><li>• NIST</li></ul>	Set Up Data Governance		

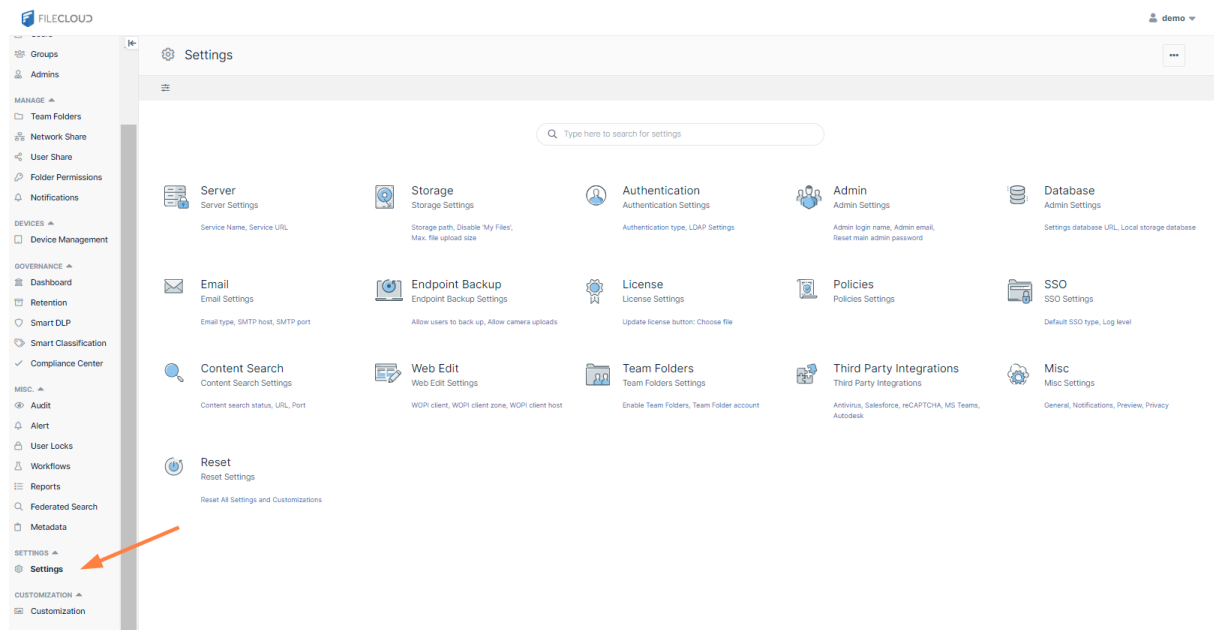
# Navigating and Searching for Settings



The Settings landing page, which includes a setting search, is available in FileCloud 23.242 and later.

## Going to the Settings landing page

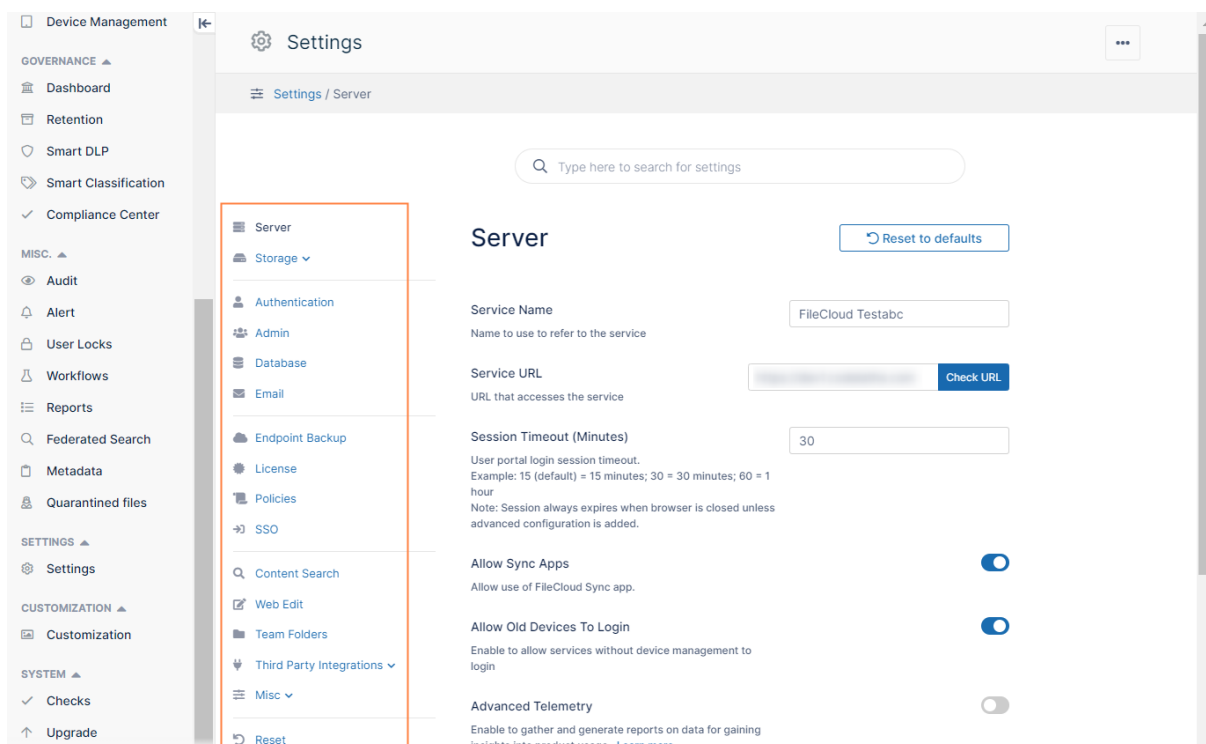
To go to the **Settings** landing page in the admin portal, in the navigation panel, click **Settings**. The **Settings** page opens as a grid of clickable icons that link to their respective settings screens.



## Go to a settings page

When you click a setting icon, it takes you to its settings page, and shows a navigation panel for going to other settings pages to its left.

In the following image, the Server icon has been clicked and the Server settings appear. The navigation panel to the left appears on every settings page and lets you to navigate to the other settings pages.



If a setting has multiple pages, they appear in the navigation panel under the main setting name. When you click on the setting icon, the first setting page opens, but you can click the other sub-links to go to the setting's other pages.

For example, in the following image, the admin clicked the Storage setting icon and the first storage setting page, Managed Storage, opened. To go to the Network Folders page, the admin would click it in the left panel.

The screenshot shows the FileCloud Settings interface. At the top, there's a 'Settings' header with a gear icon. Below it, a breadcrumb trail reads 'Settings / Storage / Managed Storage'. A search bar is located below the breadcrumb, with the placeholder text 'Type here to search for settings'. On the left sidebar, the 'Storage' menu is expanded, showing 'Managed Storage' and 'Network Folders'. The main content area is titled 'Managed Storage' and includes a 'Reset to defaults' button. The settings are organized into sections: 'Storage path' (with a text input and 'Check Path' button), 'Number of old versions to keep for each file' (with a numeric input set to 10), 'Disable 'My Files'' (with a toggle switch), 'User storage usage calculation' (with a dropdown set to 'Exclude Shares'), 'Max files uploaded in parallel' (with a dropdown set to 3), and 'Chunk upload size' (with a unit dropdown set to 'MB' and a numeric input set to 4.88). A 'Reset' button is at the bottom left of the settings area.

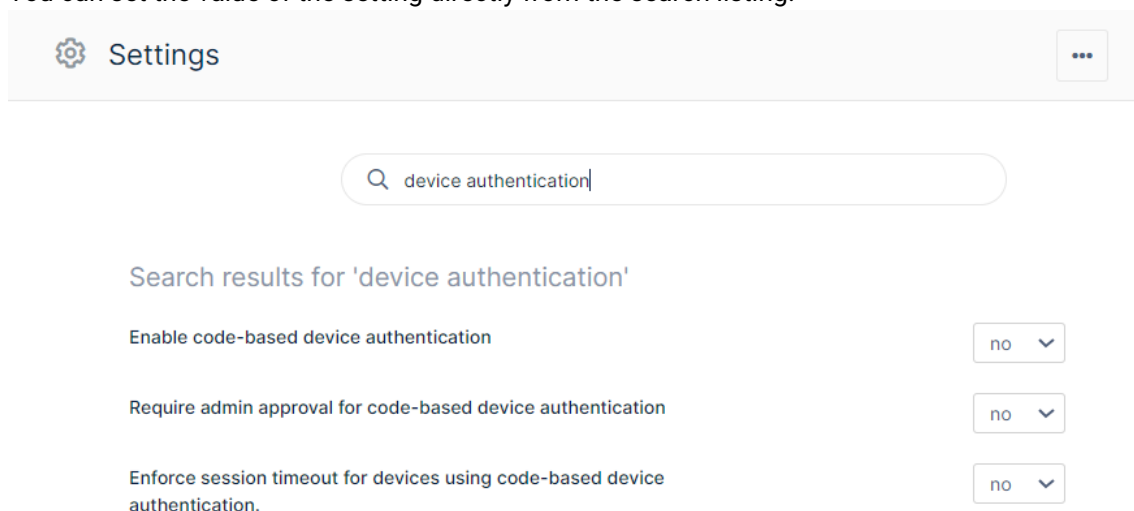
Above the settings icons, a search bar where you can search for settings and a link to the classic settings user interface appear.

This diagram highlights the top section of the settings page. It shows the 'Settings' header with a gear icon. To the right of the header, there is a search bar with the placeholder 'Type here to search for settings' and a 'Go to classic settings' link with a three-dot menu icon. An orange arrow points from the text 'Search for a setting' to the search bar, and another orange arrow points from the text 'Go to classic settings' to the three-dot menu icon.

## Searching for settings

To search for a setting:

1. Enter the search string into the search bar.
2. Settings with a matching name or description are returned.
3. You can set the value of the setting directly from the search listing.



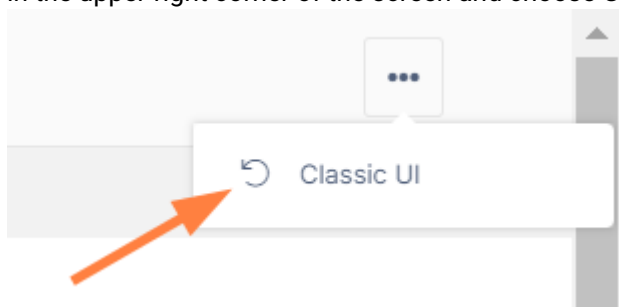
The screenshot shows the 'Settings' page with a search bar containing 'device authentication'. Below the search bar, the results are titled 'Search results for 'device authentication''. There are three settings listed, each with a dropdown menu set to 'no':

Setting Name	Value
Enable code-based device authentication	no
Require admin approval for code-based device authentication	no
Enforce session timeout for devices using code-based device authentication.	no

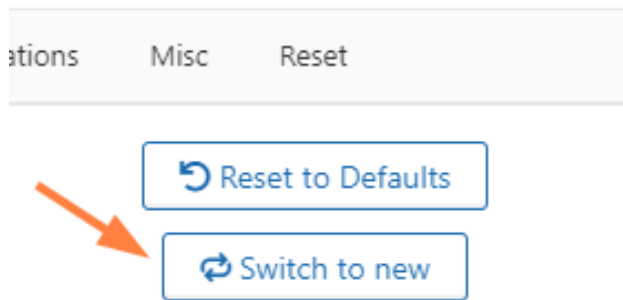
4. To return to the Settings landing page, clear the search box.

## Going to classic settings

To return to the settings user interface used in versions prior to FileCloud 23.242, click the more icon in the upper-right corner of the screen and choose **Classic UI**.

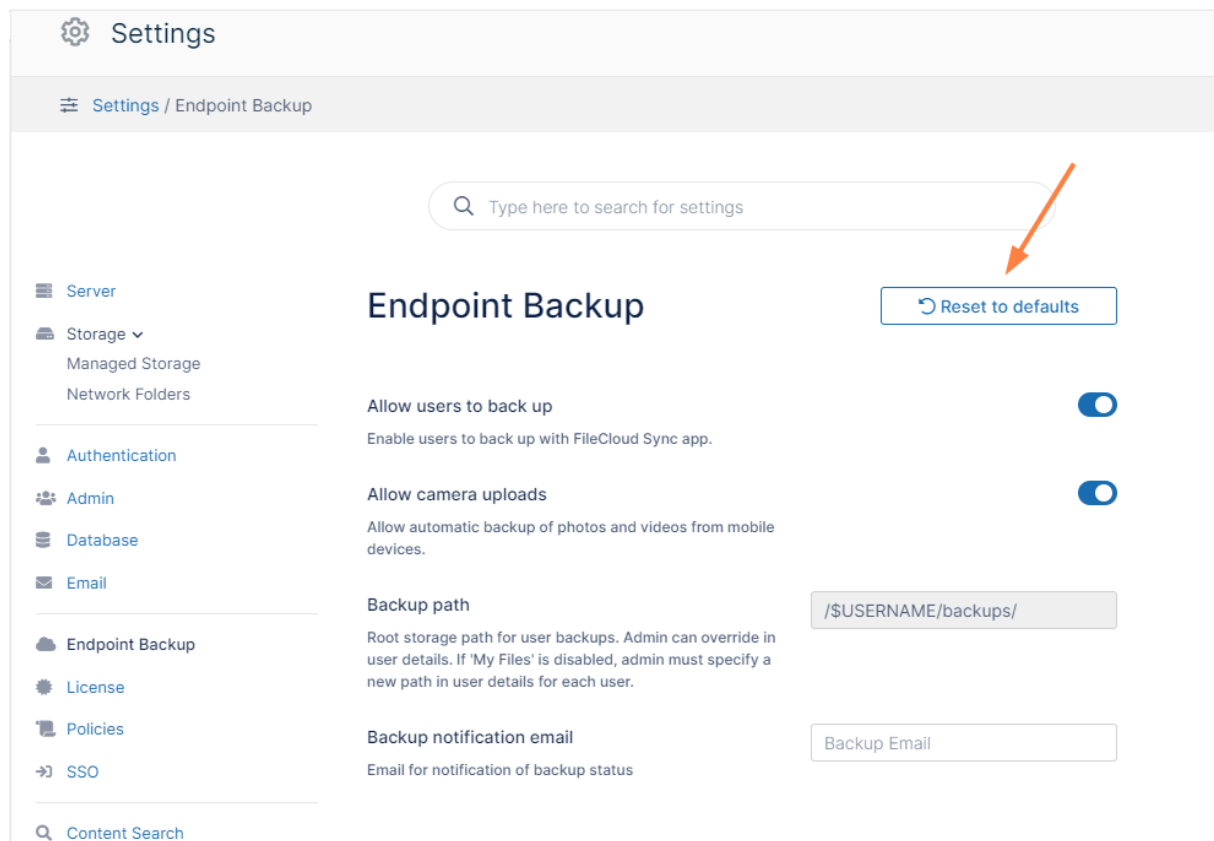


Once you are in the classic UI for settings, return to the current UI by clicking **Switch to new**.



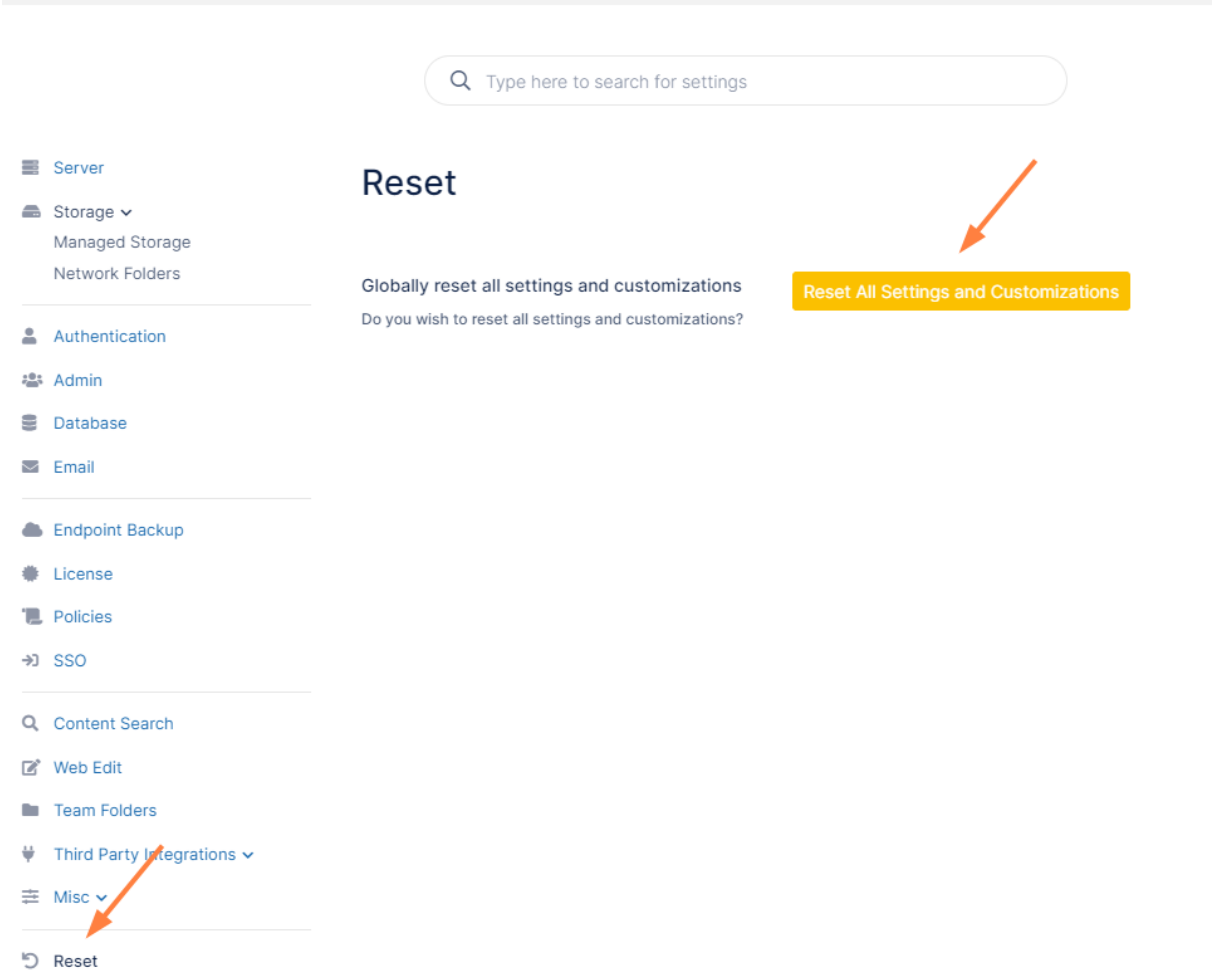
## Reset settings

Some settings pages have a **Reset to defaults** button. Click **Reset to defaults** to reset the settings on that page only.



To reset all settings and customizations, click **Reset** at the bottom of the navigation panel. Then, in the


Reset page, click **Reset All Settings and Customizations**.



## Server Settings

Server settings include the **Server Name** and **Server URL**, which you must set before using FileCloud, as well as other server-related settings such as the session timeout period and the languages of the user portal and admin portal

### To set the Server settings:

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Server** . The **Server** settings page opens.
2. Fill in the settings as shown in the following screenshot, using the table below as a guide.

## Server

↻ Reset to defaults

Service Name
Name to use to refer to the service

FileCloud

Service URL
URL that accesses the service

http://127.0.0.1
Check URL

Session Timeout (Minutes)
User portal login session timeout.  
Example: 15 (default) = 15 minutes; 30 = 30 minutes; 60 = 1 hour  
Note: Session always expires when browser is closed unless advanced configuration is added.

15

Allow Sync Apps
Allow use of FileCloud Sync app.

☒

Advanced Telemetry
Enable to gather and generate reports on data for gaining insights into product usage. [Learn more](#)

☒

Default Country Phone Code
Default country phone code for user registration

+1 United States ▼

Default User Portal Language
User portal language

English ▼

Default Admin Portal Language
Admin portal language

English ▼

Settings Name	Description								
<b>Service Name</b>	The name to be used when referring to your FileCloud service. This is used in email messages, in the zip filename for multiple downloads, and anywhere else your service is referred to by its name.								
<b>Server URL</b>	The URL by which users access your FileCloud site, for example, <a href="https://xyz.company.com">https://xyz.company.com</a> .								
<b>Session Timeout</b>	<p>The number of minutes the browser session is valid. If the browser is closed, the session is logged out.</p> <p>By default <b>Session Timeout</b> value is only applicable for the user portal and not for other FileCloud clients such as Sync, Drive, and FileCloud Desktop. To apply Session Timeout to other clients, see <a href="#">User Session Expiration</a> (see page 160)</p> <table> <tr> <th>Value</th><th>Meaning</th></tr> <tr> <td>15 (default value)</td><td>Session expires in 15 minutes (minimum session timeout)</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Session Expires in 1 minute</td></tr> <tr> <td>60</td><td>Session Expires in 1 hour</td></tr> </table>	Value	Meaning	15 (default value)	Session expires in 15 minutes (minimum session timeout)	1	Session Expires in 1 minute	60	Session Expires in 1 hour
Value	Meaning								
15 (default value)	Session expires in 15 minutes (minimum session timeout)								
1	Session Expires in 1 minute								
60	Session Expires in 1 hour								
<b>Allow Sync Apps</b>	<b>Enabled</b> by default. Disable to block all Sync apps from connecting to this server and performing sync operations.								
<b>Allow Advanced Telemetry</b>	Allow FileCloud to gather diagnostic and usage data.								
<b>Default Country Phone Code</b>	The default country code that appears in the user portal when share creators invite users to a share and when users add/modify their phone numbers in settings.								
<b>Default User Portal Language</b>	The language that is used when a user logs in to the user portal.								

Settings Name	Description
Default Admin Portal Language	The language that is used when an administrator logs in to the admin portal.

## Storage Settings

FileCloud uses Managed Storage, which is local storage that can be directly accessed and managed by FileCloud.

<b>Managed Storage</b>	<a href="#">Set Up Managed Storage (see page 12)</a>
<b>Protecting Your Storage</b>	<a href="#">Set up Managed S3 Storage Encryption (see page 15)</a>

## FileCloud Managed Storage


Data that is stored locally in FileCloud is called **Managed Storage**.

### Setting up Managed Storage

Administrators can configure how users store data in Managed Storage settings.

You can configure general storage settings in **Settings > Storage > Managed Storage** and more specific storage settings in **Settings > Policies**. **Policies** settings include user storage quota and rules for deleted files. You can assign different storage values in multiple policies and assign them to different users.

#### To set up Managed Storage:

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Storage**  . The **Managed Storage settings** page opens by default.
2. Type the information into the fields as described below.

## Managed Storage

[Reset to defaults](#)

### S3 Compatible Storage Settings

Number of old versions to keep for each file

Set to -1 to turn off versioning. Attempts to upload versions of files will fail.

S3 Encryption

Manage encryption of data stored in S3 storage

[Manage](#)

Disable 'My Files'



User storage usage calculation

Exclude or include files shared with users when calculating storage used.

Exclude Shares 

Max files uploaded in parallel

Minimum value is 1. Recommended value is 3 to 5

3 

Chunk upload size

Minimum is 5. Higher values may lead to slower uploads and block other activities.

20

MB

Skip versioning for files greater than

To avoid excessive use of space, do not version files over this size.

9.54

MB 

Email users nearing storage limit

Send notification emails to users reaching their storage limit.



Percentage Threshold

Email users when their available storage falls below the set percentage. Example: (For 10% enter 10).

10

Setting	Description
<b>Number of old versions to keep for each file</b>	If a file with the same path and name is uploaded, FileCloud versions the file. This setting determines the number of recent versions that FileCloud should retain. To disable versioning completely, set the number of versions to -1. <b>NOTE:</b> Versioned files count towards the user's storage quota.
<b>S3 Encryption</b>	Appears when encryption is enabled in your system, and allows you to manage encryption. See <a href="#">Enabling S3 Storage Encryption (see page 16)</a> .
<b>Disable 'My Files'</b>	If you are only using the "Network Folders" features of FileCloud and don't want to show "My Files", you can enable this checkbox. If there are existing data in the "My Files" section, the data will no longer be accessible. Certain functions that depend on My Files will no longer be available.
<b>User storage usage calculation</b>	When the user storage usage is reported, the shares used by the user can also be counted towards the quota. This can be changed by selecting the appropriate drop-down option.
<b>Max files uploaded in parallel</b>	Number of files that can be uploaded at the same time when multiple files are uploaded. Default is 3. The recommended number is 3 to 5. Higher values may slow down the upload process and lower system efficiency.
<b>Chunk upload size</b>	The maximum size in MB for chunks uploaded. Default is 20. If size is set too high, the upload process may slow down and other operations may be blocked.
<b>Skip versioning for files greater than</b>	Any file larger than the specified value will not be versioned.
<b>Email users nearing storage limit</b>	If this option is enabled then automatic emails with notifications are sent to users reaching their storage limit.
<b>Percentage Threshold</b>	Defines at what point the percentage of unused managed storage space is considered low. For example, if the value is set to 20, then storage is considered low if more than 80% of managed storage space is used.  When unused storage is less than this value, an automatic email notification is sent to the admin. If the above option, <b>Email users nearing storage limit</b> is enabled, an automatic email notification is also sent to the user if their available storage falls below the set percentage.

3. Click **Save**.
4. Click the **Policies** tab.
5. For each policy that you want to change the default storage settings in:
  - a. Click the edit button.

- b. Remain on the **General** tab.
- c. Type the information into the fields as described below:
- d. Click **Save**.
- e. Assign the policy with relevant storage settings to each user.

Setting	Description
<b>User storage quota</b>	This is the storage quota that is provided for every user of FileCloud. Note that, this is only a quota and does not require physical storage until the user actually consumes the space. Setting this to 0 means each user has no storage quota limit. Changing this setting does not affect the existing user quota. <i>For example, if a user has 2 GB quota and if this setting is changed to 10 GB, it only affects newly created users after this point. To update the quota for an existing user, use the user details panel in Users section.</i>
<b>Store deleted files in the recycle bin</b>	Enable this setting if you wish to provide a way to keep deleted files in a Recycle Bin. When this option is enabled and a user deletes a file/folder, the deleted item gets moved into their personal deleted files area. Then the user can restore files from their recycle bin or empty the recycle bin completely. <b>Note: Files in the recycle bin count towards a user's storage quota.</b>
<b>Automatically delete files from recycle bin after set number days</b>	Number of days after which Deleted Files is emptied automatically. Note that this recycle bin clearing happens at periodic intervals specified here and any files in any recycle bin are cleared. The default is 0 which means that the deleted files are not cleared automatically. Requires a Cron Job to be set up.
<b>Do not store deleted files greater than</b>	Any file larger than this setting is permanently deleted instead of getting moved into Deleted Files area.

## Setting up Managed S3 Storage Encryption

Administrators can enable S3 storage-level encryption supported by FileCloud.



FileCloud Server now supports FIPS licenses.

Enterprises who are subject to the FIPS regulations must install and run a FIPS-enabled operating system. For example, Windows in FIPS mode.

When using a FIPS-enabled license, the Admin Portal shows:

- Running in FIPS mode prominently displayed
- SSO features hidden
- Storage encryption option

## What do you want to do?

[Enabling S3 Storage Encryption](#) (see page 16)

[Disabling S3 Storage Encryption](#) (see page 19)

Read more about [Choosing S3 Encryption Type](#) (see page 21)

## Enabling S3 Storage Encryption



In FileCloud, if a FIPS-enabled FileCloud license is installed, there is an option in the Admin Portal to enable FileCloud to run in FIPS mode.

As an administrator, you can encrypt Managed S3 Storage for compliance and security reasons

Before you can set your S3 encryption options, S3 encryption must be configured in your system. If is not yet configured, contact your FileCloud representative for help.

After S3 encryption is enabled, the Admin Portal will display new options for managing it.




### Warning On Master Password

If an optional master password was specified, then you need to retain the password for future use. Without this password the encryption module cannot encrypt or decrypt files in the FileCloud storage.

### To manage S3 encryption:

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on

the **Settings** navigation page, click **Storage** .

The Managed Storage settings page opens. An **S3 Encryption** field with a **Manage** button

appears.

## Managed Storage

[Reset to defaults](#)

### S3 Compatible Storage Settings

Number of old versions to keep for each file

Set to -1 to turn off versioning and instead create a new copy on each upload.

#### S3 Encryption

Manage encryption of data stored in S3 storage

[Manage](#)

Disable 'My Files'



User storage usage calculation

Exclude or include files shared with users when calculating storage used.

Exclude Shares 

Max files uploaded in parallel

Minimum value is 1. Recommended value is 3 to 5

3 

Chunk upload size

Minimum is 5. Higher values may lead to slower uploads and block other activities.

Units  20 MB

Skip versioning for files greater than

To avoid excessive use of space, do not version files over this size.

Units  0 Bytes

Email users nearing storage limit

Send notification emails to users reaching their storage limit.



Percentage Threshold

Email users when their available storage falls below the set percentage.  
Example: (For 10% enter 10).

2. Click **Manage**.

The **Manage S3 Encryption** dialog box opens

3. To perform the necessary initialization of the encryption module, click **Enable Encryption**.


Manage S3 Encryption ×

Encryption Status: Encryption is disabled

Encryption Type: Amazon S3-Managed Key Encryption ▼

**Note**

1. Files are currently not encrypted

 **Enable encryption** Close

You are prompted to confirm encryption.

4. Click **OK**.

The dialog box displays the encryption progress.

Manage S3 Encryption ×

Encryption Status: Encryption is enabled (Existing file encryption in progress...)

Encryption Type: Amazon S3-Managed Key Encryption ▼

Progress: 8/27 encrypted

**Note**

1. Encryption task is in progress.  
2. This can take some time depending on the total amount of data stored in the bucket

**Abort** Close

When it is complete, it displays **Encryption is enabled**.

Manage S3 Encryption
×

Encryption Status

Encryption is enabled

Encryption Type

Amazon S3-Managed Key Encryption

Note

1. All existing files and newly added files will be encrypted using AES256 encryption


🔒 Disable encryption

Close

## Disabling S3 Storage Encryption

Administrators can disable S3 storage encryption following the steps here.

### To disable S3 encryption:

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Storage**  .  
The Managed Storage settings page opens. An **S3 Encryption** field with a **Manage** button

appears.

## Managed Storage

[Reset to defaults](#)

### S3 Compatible Storage Settings

Number of old versions to keep for each file

Set to -1 to turn off versioning and instead create a new copy on each upload.

#### S3 Encryption

Manage encryption of data stored in S3 storage

[Manage](#)

Disable 'My Files'



User storage usage calculation

Exclude or include files shared with users when calculating storage used.

Exclude Shares 

Max files uploaded in parallel

Minimum value is 1. Recommended value is 3 to 5

3 

Chunk upload size

Minimum is 5. Higher values may lead to slower uploads and block other activities.

Units  20 MB

Skip versioning for files greater than

To avoid excessive use of space, do not version files over this size.

Units  0 Bytes

Email users nearing storage limit

Send notification emails to users reaching their storage limit.



Percentage Threshold

Email users when their available storage falls below the set percentage.  
Example: (For 10% enter 10).

2. Click **Manage**.

The **Manage S3 Encryption** dialog box opens

### 3. Click **Decrypt All**.


Manage S3 Encryption ×

Encryption Status: Encryption is enabled

Encryption Type: Amazon S3-Managed Key Encryption

**Note**

1. All existing files and newly added files will be encrypted using AES256 encryption

 **Disable encryption** Close

You are prompted to confirm disabling encryption.

### 4. Click **OK**.


Once the decryption is complete, the dialog box confirms that files are not encrypted.

Manage S3 Encryption ×

Encryption Status: Encryption is disabled

Encryption Type: Amazon S3-Managed Key Encryption

**Note**

1. Files are currently not encrypted 

**Enable encryption** Close

## Choosing S3 Encryption Type

When you use S3 Storage Encryption:

- The communication from FileCloud to AWS will use SSL encryption resulting in complete protection for data in transit.
- Once the S3 is setup correctly, a new field called **S3 Encryption** will be available under **Amazon S3 Storage Settings**.

FileCloud supports the following Server Side Encryption types:

- **Server-Side Encryption with Amazon S3-Managed Keys (SSE-S3)**

All data is encrypted at rest using AES256 bit encryption. The data can only be accessed using the supplied key/secret credentials. The data will be accessible via S3 Console

**Note:** Even though the encrypted data is accessible directly from the S3 console, do not access

the data if it was created by FileCloud Managed storage, as doing so will cause data corruption to occur. In this case, the data should only be modified by FileCloud.

- **Server-Side Encryption with Customer-Provided Keys (SSE-C)**

The data is encrypted using the customer supplied 32 bit encryption key. **This option has SLOWER performance due to restrictions on how this data can be decrypted** (Amazon server is NOT be able to decrypt the data; the data has be first downloaded to FileCloud server and then decrypted). The data is NOT accessible via S3 console as well.

Notes:

- When you choose **SSE-C**, any backups created before it was chosen will become invalid, and therefore that data will not be recoverable.
- When SSE-C encryption is enabled, optimized upload is not available for S3 storage and S3 networks.

#### WARNINGS:

- Enabling encryption will start a process that attempts to encrypt all available data in the bucket as well as all new data.
- This process can take some time depending on the amount of existing data in the bucket.
- It is recommended that you modify the encryption setting when there is minimal activity on the FileCloud Server.

Although changing the Encryption setting can be done at any time, we recommend using off-peak hours to avoid any unexpected access issues.

## Setting Up MongoDB Enterprise Advanced Server



Full support for MongoDB Enterprise Advanced Server has been added in FileCloud 23.241.

By default, FileCloud includes MongoDB Community Edition, a versatile, efficient database that meets most customers needs. However, if your system requires database encryption or compliance with the [MongoDB STIG<sup>1</sup>](#), you may choose to deploy MongoDB Enterprise Advanced, which meets those requirements. For more information about MongoDB Enterprise Advanced, see <https://www.mongodb.com/products/self-managed/enterprise-advanced>.

## Install MongoDB Enterprise Advanced

### Installing on Ubuntu

1. If **gnupg** and **curl** are not already installed, install them.  
In a command line enter:

---

1. [https://www.stigviewer.com/stig/mongodb\\_enterprise\\_advanced\\_4.x/](https://www.stigviewer.com/stig/mongodb_enterprise_advanced_4.x/)

```
sudo apt-get install gnupg curl

curl -fsSL https://pgp.mongodb.com/server-6.0.asc | \
    sudo gpg -o /usr/share/keyrings/mongodb-server-6.0.gpg \
    --dearmor
```

2. Go to **/etc/apt/sources.list.d/**
3. Create the list file **mongodb-enterprise-6.0.list**:

```
echo "deb [ arch=amd64,arm64 signed-by=/usr/share/keyrings/mongodb-
server-6.0.gpg ] https://repo.mongodb.com/apt/ubuntu jammy/mongodb-enterprise/6.0
multiverse" | sudo tee /etc/apt/sources.list.d/mongodb-enterprise-6.0.list
```

4. Reload the local package database:

```
sudo apt-get update
```

5. Install MongoDB Enterprise Advanced:

```
sudo apt-get install -y mongodb-enterprise
```

## Installing on RHEL

1. Go to **/etc/yum.repos.d/** and create the file **mongodb-enterprise-6.0.repo** file with the following contents.

```
[mongodb-enterprise-6.0]

name=MongoDB Enterprise Repository

baseurl=https://repo.mongodb.com/yum/redhat/9/mongodb-enterprise/6.0/$basearch/

gpgcheck=1

enabled=1

gpgkey=https://pgp.mongodb.com/server-6.0.asc
```

2. The **mongodb-enterprise-6.0.repo** enables you to install MongoDB Enterprise Advanced directly using yum.

Enter the following to perform the installation.

```
sudo yum install -y mongodb-enterprise
```

## Configure the connection to FileCloud for Ubuntu or RHEL

1. Make the bind IP of MongoDB in the Enterprise Advanced server private:

```
vi /etc/mongod.conf
change bindip: 127.0.0.1 to bindip: [private ip of Enterprise Advanced server]
```

2. Create a new db user in the Enterprise Advanced server.  
First, connect to the mongo shell:

```
mongosh private_ip
```

Then create the user:

```
db.createUser({user: 'fcduser', pwd: 'passw0rd1', roles:['root']})
```

Finally, verify the connection from the FileCloud server:

```
mongosh private_ip -u fcduser --authenticationDatabase "admin"
```

3. Open **/var/www/html/config/cloudconfig.php** and update the IP address of the db server to point to the MongoDB Enterprise Advanced server:

```
// ... Cloud Database

define("TONIDOCLOUD_DBSERVER", "mongodb://[private ip of Enterprise Advanced
server]");

// ... Audit Database
```

```
define("TONIDOCLOUD_AUDIT_DBSERVER", "mongodb://[private ip of Enterprise Advanced
server]");

// ... Settings Database

define("TONIDOCLOUD_SETTINGS_DBSERVER", "mongodb://[private ip of Enterprise
Advanced server]");
```

4. Open **/var/www/html/config/localstorageconfig.php**, and update the IP address of the db server to point to the MongoDB Enterprise Advanced server:

```
define("TONIDO_LOCALSTORAGE_DBSERVER", "mongodb://[private ip of Enterprise
Advanced server]");
```

## Installing on Windows

1. Download MongoDB Enterprise 6.0 Windows msi from <https://www.mongodb.com/try/download/enterprise>.
2. Launch the msi file, and install MongoDB Enterprise 6.0.  
When the installer prompts you to specify where you want to install the file, enter:  
**C:\Program Files\MongoDB\Server\6.0\bin\**

## Configure the connection to FileCloud for Windows

1. In the server containing the MongoDB Enterprise installation, set the bind IP of **C:\Program Files\MongoDB\Server\6.0\bin\mongodb.cfg** to the server's private IP.  
Open **mongodb.cfg** and change the setting:

```
bindip: 127.0.0.1
```

to

```
bindip: [private_ip of Enterprise Advanced server]
```

2. Restart the **mongodb** service.
3. In the server containing the MongoDB Enterprise installation, open a command prompt and switch to the **/bin** directory:

```
cd C:\Program Files\MongoDB\Server\6.0\bin\
```

Connect to the mongo shell.

```
mongosh private_ip
```

4. Switch to the admin user:

```
use admin
```

5. Create a new db user:

```
db.createUser({user: 'fcduser', pwd: 'passw0rd1', roles:['root']})
```

6. If necessary, open port 27017 to the IP of the other machine on both servers to allow connection between the servers.

Run the following command in both servers and set the value of the remote ip to the private ip address of the other server.

```
netsh advfirewall firewall add rule name="Opening port to allow MongoDB" dir=in  
action=allow protocol=TCP localport=27017 remoteip=[remote ip of other server]
```

7. From the FileCloud server, verify the connection:

```
mongosh [private ip of Enterprise Advanced server] -u fcduser --  
authenticationDatabase "admin"
```

8. Open **C:/xampp/htdocs/config/cloudconfig.php** and update the IP address of the db server to point to the MongoDB Enterprise Advanced server:

```
// ... Cloud Database
```

```
define("TONIDOCLOUD_DBSERVER", "mongodb://[private ip of Enterprise Advanced
server]");

// ... Audit Database

define("TONIDOCLOUD_AUDIT_DBSERVER", "mongodb://[private ip of Enterprise Advanced
server]");

// ... Settings Database

define("TONIDOCLOUD_SETTINGS_DBSERVER", "mongodb://[private ip of Enterprise
Advanced server]");
```

9. Open **C:/xampp/htdocs/config/localstorageconfig.php** and replace the DB server IP with the private IP of the Enterprise Advanced server:

```
define("TONIDO_LOCALSTORAGE_DBSERVER", "mongodb://[private ip of Enterprise
Advanced server]");
```

## Manage the Recycle Bin Using Policies

Administrators can configure FileCloud to deal with specific users' and groups' recycle bins through policies.

### Why?

- Files deleted by users are moved to recycle bin (if enabled).
- The files in recycle bin will take up space over time.

To manage the recycle bin, you can decide what to do with files in the following cases:

### Do you want to store deleted files for recovery purposes?

If you enable this setting, whenever a user deletes a file, it will automatically be placed in the Recycle Bin.

This allows the user to recover an old file if it is deleted by accident.

💡 If this option is not enabled, then when a user deletes a file it is removed from FileCloud permanently.

### Do you want to empty the recycle bin after a specific number of days?

You can automatically clear the files deleted by users and partial uploads.

This is configured by the setting called:

- **Automatically delete File from the recycle bin After Set Number of Days**

You set this to the number of days you want a deleted file to be kept before being permanently removed.

- For example, if the value is set to 7, then files older than 7 days will be deleted automatically.

💡 If you do not want FileCloud to automatically empty the recycle bin at any time, use a value of 0.

**Do you want to set a size limit for the deleted files that are stored?**

If you do not want deleted files to take up too much space, you can decide to only store deleted files of a certain size.

This is configured in the following setting:

- **Do Not Store Deleted Files Greater Than**

✔ Files less than this size are stored

✖ Files greater than this size are permanently deleted

You can specify the file size in the following ways:

- GB
- MB
- KB
- B



You can also restrict users' ability to empty their own recycle bins.

[Restrict User's Recycle Bin Options](#) (see page 32)



Administrators configure options related to Recycle Bin behavior for a user or group in policies.

- This allows administrators to use different settings for different users and groups.
- The recycle bin configuration settings for Network folders are global and managed in the Admin Portal under the MANAGE section by selecting Network Folders.

For example: In the Cherry Road Real Estate company, every user working in the Accounting office must retain their recycled items for 60 days, but everyone else can have their bins cleared in 30 days.

The following three Recycle Bin settings exist in Policies:

Setting	Option	Description
Store deleted files in the recycle bin	yes or no	Move the file from it's location in My Files to the recycle bin when the user deletes it
Automatically delete files from recycle bin after set number of days	Whole number	<p>Number of days after a file was deleted that it will be automatically cleared from the recycle bin (and therefore, no longer be present in FileCloud).</p> <p>A value of 0 indicates that deleted files will not be cleared automatically. If they are not manually cleared from the recycle bin, they will remain available to be restored in FileCloud but will also use up available storage.</p>
Do not store deleted files greater than	Any positive number of Units: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• GB</li> <li>• MB</li> <li>• KB</li> <li>• B</li> </ul>	<p>Files greater than the specified size are permanently deleted.</p> <p>The number can contain decimals. For example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0.09765625 GB</li> </ul>



You must ensure that the Cron service is running. This is a prerequisite for any automatic functionality in FileCloud Server.

#### To configure a recycle bin policy for users or groups:

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Policies** .

The **Policies** page opens.

## Policies

New Policy

Create a new policy

New Policy

Policy Name	User Count	Group Count	Default	Actions
Global Default Policy	1	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Copy</a> <a href="#">User</a> <a href="#">Group</a> <a href="#">Share</a> <a href="#">X</a>
TEAM FOLDER POLICY	1	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Copy</a> <a href="#">User</a> <a href="#">Group</a> <a href="#">Share</a> <a href="#">X</a>

<< < Page 1 of 1 > >>

2 rows

2. Edit the policy of the users or groups.
3. In the **General** tab, scroll down and set **Store deleted files in the recycle bin** to **yes** or **no**.
4. If you selected **no**, to save your changes, click **Save**.
5. If you selected **yes**:
  - a. In **Automatically delete File from the recycle bin after set number of days**, enter a number, or set to **0** to disable automatic deletion by number of days.

- b. In **Do not store deleted files greater than**, select the type of unit in **Units**, and then type in a number, or set to **0** to disable automatic deletion by file size.

Effective Policy: "Global Default Policy" ✕

General 2FA User Policy Client Application Policy Device Configuration Notifications

Some policy settings will not be applicable for Guest and External users.

General

Share Mode Allow All Shares ▾

Default share expiry in days 0  
Number of days shares remain active. 0 = shares do not expire

Default max number of downloads allowed 0  
Number of downloads allowed. 0 = maximum number of downloads is unlimited

User storage quota Units ▾ 2 GB  
0 = unlimited storage

Enable Privacy Settings no ▾

Store deleted files in the recycle bin yes ▾

Automatically delete files from recycle bin after set number days 0  
0 = do not delete files automatically

Do not store deleted files greater than Units ▾ 100 MB  
0 = do not delete files automatically

Enable Basic Authentication enabled ▾  
Enable Basic Authentication

6. To save your changes, click **Save**.


## Disable My Files

My Files can be disabled completely if users need to access only Network Folders, [Team Folders](#) (see [page 81](#)) or shared data.



This should be done during initial server setup. If My Files is disabled after users are created, data previously stored in My Files will no longer be accessible, and if users have camera backup set up, their photos and videos will no longer be backed up.

**To disable My Files:**

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Storage**  . The **Managed Storage settings** page opens by default.
2. Scroll down to the setting **Disable 'My Files'**, and enable it.

## Managed Storage

[Reset to defaults](#)

**Storage path**

Location for storing cloud files (location must be writable by web server)

Example location on Windows: c:\clouddata

Example location on Linux: /opt/cloud/data

**Note :** To change the storage location after it has been configured, move the contents from the old storage location to the new.

**Number of old versions to keep for each file**

Set to -1 to turn off versioning and instead create a new copy on each upload.

10

**Disable 'My Files'**

☒

**User storage usage calculation**

Exclude or include files shared with users when calculating storage used.

Exclude Shares ▼


3. Click **Save**.

## Restrict a User's Recycle Bin Options


Administrators can allow users to clear all files at once from their recycle bins by enabling **Enable recycle bin clearing** in the users' policy.

By default, **Enable recycle bin clearing** is enabled, allowing users to click **Clear Deleted Files** in the recycle bin.

If **Enable recycle bin clearing** is disabled in a policy, users belonging to the policy do not see a **Clear Deleted Files** button in the recycle bin.

 Disabling **Enable recycle bin clearing** doesn't block the delete operation. Users can still remove files from the recycle bin on a file-by-file basis.

### To enable or disable recycle bin clearing:













1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Policies**  . The **Policies** page opens.
2. Click the Edit icon in the row for the users' policy.

## Policies

### New Policy

Create a new policy


New Policy

Policy Name	User Count	Group Count	Default	Actions
Global Default Policy	1	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	     
TEAM FOLDER POLICY	1	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	     

<< < Page 1 of 1 > >>

2 rows

3. The **Policy Settings** dialog box opens.
4. Click the **User Policy** tab.
5. Locate **Enable recycle bin clearing**, and enable or disable it.

Effective Policy: "Global Default Policy" 

General   2FA   **User Policy**   Client Application Policy   Device Configuration   Notifications

Some policy settings will not be applicable for Guest and External users.

User Policy

**Disable invitations to new users** no ▾  
 Do not allow user to send invitations to new users when shares are created.

**Create account on new user share** no ▾  
 Create accounts automatically when share invitations are sent to new users.

**Enable code-based device authentication** no ▾

**Require admin approval for code-based device authentication** no ▾

**Enforce session timeout for devices using code-based device authentication.** no ▾

**Allow folder level security** no ▾  
 Allow users to set folder level security for granular permissions.

**Enable web edit** ☐  
 Allow users to edit documents from within FileCloud.

**Enable recycle bin clearing** ☐  
 Allow users to clear recycle bins.

**Disallow default share settings change** ☐  
 Do not allow users to change settings of existing shares and default settings of new shares.

6. Click **Save**.

# Administrator Settings

This section describes how an administrator can access FileCloud management user interface.

- [Logging In to the Admin Portal](#) (see page 33)
- [Resetting Admin Password](#) (see page 41)
- [Changing the Default Login Name](#) (see page 45)
- [Account Locked Alerts](#) (see page 46)

## Logging In to the Admin Portal

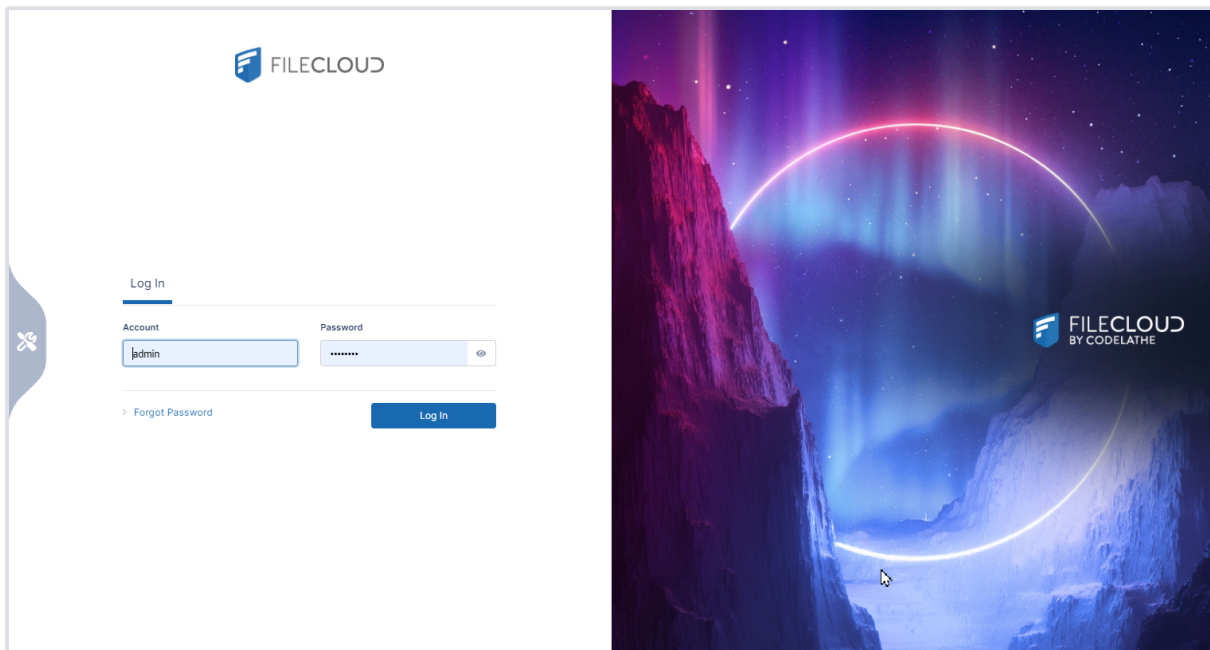
Log in using your admin account to perform administrative tasks.

### Accessing the Admin Portal

In a supported web browser, type in the URL to your Administrator dashboard. For example, **<https://<yourteamname>.filecloudonline.com/admin>**<sup>2</sup>

If you are an admin user (an end user with admin privileges), you may be required to accept [terms of service](#) (see page 530) the first time you log in to the admin portal. Once you accept the terms of service, the login screen opens.

If you are the main admin of the system (your username is Admin) you can log in directly the first time.



2. <http://filecloudonline.com/admin>

## Logging in using 2FA



- 2FA validation codes remain valid for 5 minutes by default. After 5 minutes, you must click **Resend** to get a new code.
- If you are a promoted admin the login method set up for your user portal login is used for your admin portal login. However, if 2FA is set up for your admin portal login, your admin may require you to use that method for logging in to the admin portal.

## Two-factor authentication via email code delivery

If two-factor authentication is set up to use your email id, then the 2FA security code is sent to the email address associated with your FileCloud account.

1. Log in to FileCloud using your username and password.

The following screen appears:

2FA Authentication

Please check your email for the security code.

2FA Security Code

Resend

Login

2. Check your email for the message with the code, and enter it into **2FA Security Code**.
3. Click **Login**.  
You are logged in to FileCloud.

## Two-factor authentication via SMS code delivery


If two-factor authentication is set up to use SMS, then you will receive a code via the phone number associated with the account.

## The initial time you log in using SMS


1. Log in to FileCloud using your username and password.  
The following screen appears:

Two-Factor Authentication Setup

---

 Choose your country code before entering your phone number. For US numbers use +1.

**Enter your phone number**  
Enter your phone number to receive a verification code.


 +1 ▼

[Send code](#)

2. Enter your phone number and click **Send code**.  
The following screen appears:

Two-Factor Authentication Setup

---

**Verification code**  
Enter the code we sent to  to finish setting up two-factor authentication.

[Resend](#)

[Back](#) [Login](#)

3. Check your phone for the code, and enter it into **Verification code**.
4. Click **Login**.  
You are logged in to FileCloud.

## After the initial time you log in using SMS

FileCloud has saved your phone number the first time you logged in using SMS, so you do not have to enter it again.

1. Log in to FileCloud using your username and password.  
The following screen appears:

## 2FA Authentication



Please check your mobile phone for the security code.

### 2FA Security Code

[Resend](#)[Login](#)

2. Check your phone for the code, and enter it into **2FA Security Code**.
3. Click **Login**.  
You are logged in to FileCloud.

## Two Factor Authentication with TOTP

If your admin sets up 2FA with TOTP, the dialog box prompting you for your security code will direct you to check your authenticator app for the code.

### The initial time you log in using TOTP

1. Log in to FileCloud using your FileCloud username and password.  
The following screen appears:

## Two-Factor Authentication Setup

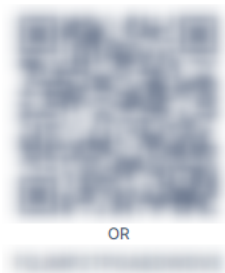
### 1. Download an Authenticator App

Search for "authenticator" in your application store, or choose one of the supported apps:



### 2. Scan the QR Code

Using an authenticator app, scan the QR code or manually enter the secret key



### 3. Verification code

Enter the 6-digit code from your authenticator app

Login

2. If an authenticator app is not yet set up, install it in your smart device; you may click one of the download icons to install it.
3. Either scan the QR code or type the text code into the authenticator app.  
The authenticator app creates the account and lists it with a code.
4. Enter the code listed on the authenticator app for your account into **Verification code**, and click **Login**.  
You are logged in to FileCloud.

## After your initial login with TOTP

The authenticator app has saved your account the first time you logged in using TOTP, so you do not have to enter it again.

1. Log in to FileCloud using your FileCloud username and password.  
The following screen appears:

## 2FA Authentication

---



Please check your authenticator app for the security code.

### 2FA Security Code

---

Login

2. Enter the code listed on the authenticator app for your account into **2FA Security Code**, and click **Login**.

You are logged in to FileCloud.

## Collection of usage data

If you are logging in to a trial version of FileCloud Online for the first time, after you log in, the following screen appears to inform you that diagnostic and usage data is being collected from your online trial:

### FileCloud Respects Your Privacy

When you entrust your data to FileCloud, you remain the owner of the data.



We gather diagnostic and usage data from online, FileCloud-hosted trial deployments, to ensure your trial is secure, up-to-date, and operating as designed as well as to help us improve the product. **This data does not include your name, file contents or info about unrelated apps and services.**

When FileCloud is used in conjunction with other third-party online services (e.g. Microsoft 365) to enable your product experience, we gather and transmit required service data.



[Learn More](#)

Once you convert from from an online trial license to an online product license, the first time you log in to the the admin portal a wizard opens with the following two screens:

<div>FileCloud Respects Your Privacy</div> <p>When you entrust your data to FileCloud, you remain the owner of the data.</p> <p>We gather diagnostic and usage data from online, FileCloud-hosted trial deployments, to ensure your trial is secure, up-to-date, and operating as designed as well as to help us improve the product. <b>This data does not include your name, file contents or info about unrelated apps and services.</b></p> <p>When FileCloud is used in conjunction with other third-party online services (e.g. Microsoft 365) to enable your product experience, we gather and transmit required service data.</p>  <div> <a href="#">Learn More</a> <a href="#">Next</a> </div>	<div>Improving Together</div> <p>We would like you to share optional product usage data that helps us to improve the product and prioritize feature development. <b>None of this information includes your name or file contents.</b></p> <p>Do you want to send optional product usage data to FileCloud?</p> <p> <input checked="" type="radio"/> Send optional product usage data to improve FileCloud       <input type="radio"/> Don't send optional data     </p>  <div> <a href="#">Learn More</a> <a href="#">OK</a> </div>
--	--

To allow sending of optional product usage data to FileCloud, leave **Send optional product usage data to improve FileCloud** selected, and click **OK**.

To prevent sending of optional product usage data to FileCloud, select **Don't send optional data**, and click **OK**.

You can change the option at any time by going to **Settings > Server** and checking or unchecking **Allow Advanced Telemetry**.

#### Allow Advanced Telemetry

☒ Enable to gather and generate reports on data for gaining insights into product usage [Learn more](#)

## Customizing the Login Page

To customize the image on the admin login screen, see Themes, Labels, and Logos.

## Resetting Admin Password




When Auth Type is set to AD or LDAP, the admin password cannot be changed using the procedure on this page, but must be changed in the AD or LDAP server by the AD or LDAP admin. See [User Authentication Settings](#) (see page 199).

## Reset the main admin's password in the Admin settings screen

### Reset in admin settings...

This setting can only be used to reset the main admin password. It cannot be used to change user admin (promoted admin) passwords.

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Admin**  . The **Admin** settings page opens.
2. Click **Reset Admin Password**.

## Admin

[Reset to defaults](#)

Admin login name

Change the default admin user name.

Admin email

Email id for admin account

Enable two-factor authentication for admin logins

Requires valid admin or admin user email id.



Reset main admin password

[Reset Admin Password](#)

Stats API key

API Key for getting stats

A **Reset Admin Password** dialog box opens.

### Reset Admin Password



Old Admin Password

New Admin Password

Confirm New Admin Password

[Reset Admin Password](#)[Close](#)

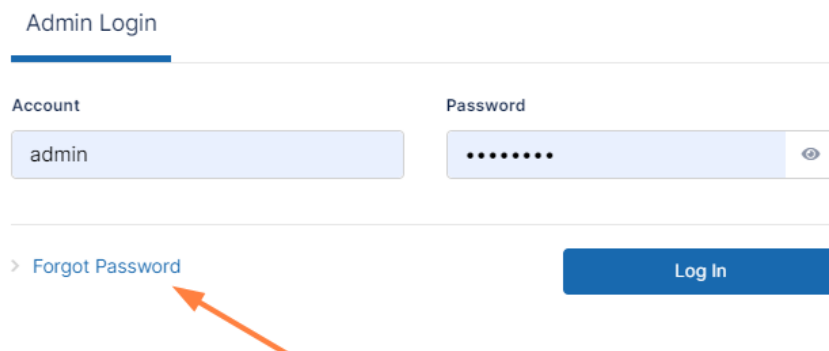
3. Enter the old and new password values, and click **Reset Admin Password**.

## Reset a forgotten admin password from the login screen

### Reset from login screen...

This method can be used to reset the main admin password as well as user admin passwords.

1. On the admin portal login screen click **Forgot Password**.

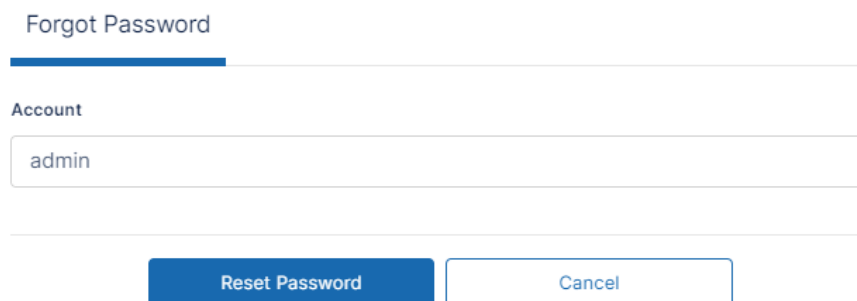


The image shows the 'Admin Login' screen. At the top, the title 'Admin Login' is underlined. Below it are two input fields: 'Account' containing the text 'admin' and 'Password' containing a masked password (dots). To the right of the password field is an eye icon. Below the input fields, there is a link '> Forgot Password' and a blue 'Log In' button. An orange arrow points to the 'Forgot Password' link.

A dialog box prompts you to enter your user account.

2. Enter your admin account name, and click **Reset Password**.

**Note:** To reset their passwords, promoted admin users must use the user portal.




The image shows the 'Forgot Password' dialog box. At the top, the title 'Forgot Password' is underlined. Below it is an 'Account' input field containing the text 'admin'. At the bottom, there are two buttons: a blue 'Reset Password' button and a white 'Cancel' button with a blue border.

A message appears, telling you to check your email for a message.

Forgot Password

---

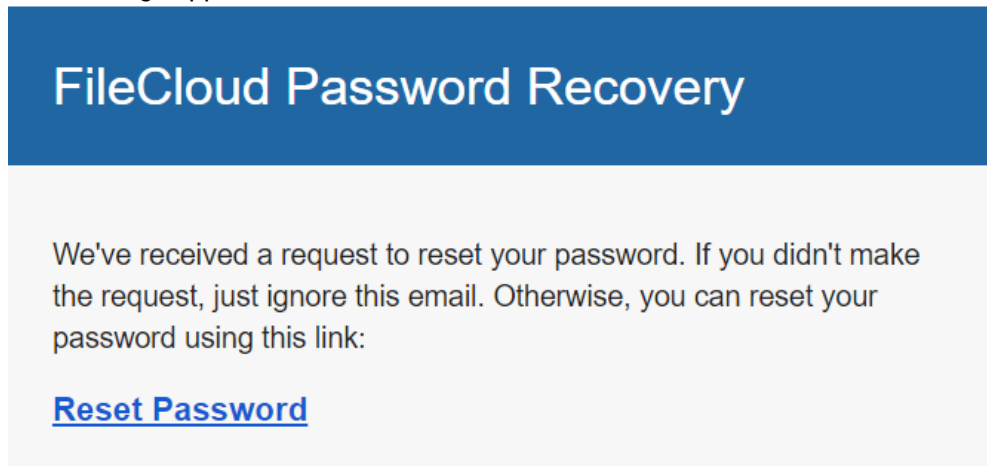
 Check your email account for instructions to reset your password.

Account

---

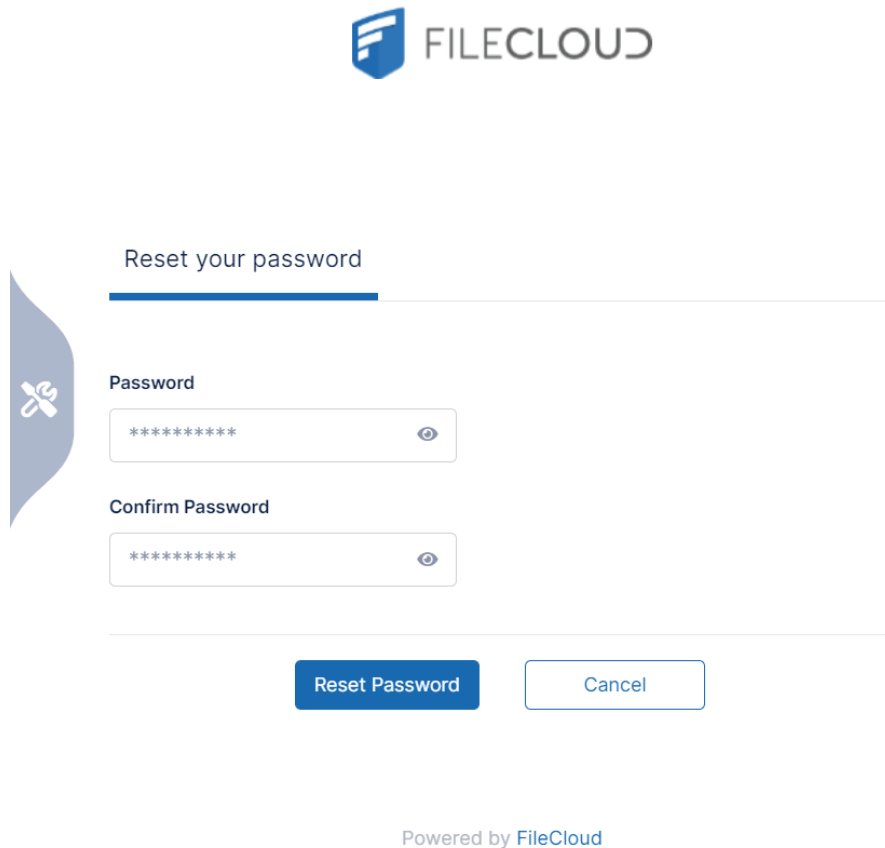
3. Find and open the message in your email.

The message appears as:



4. Click **Reset Password**.

The following dialog box opens:



Reset your password

Password

\*\*\*\*\*

Confirm Password

\*\*\*\*\*

Reset Password Cancel


Powered by FileCloud

5. In **Password**, enter your new password. In **Confirm Password** enter it again.
6. Click **Reset Password**.  
Your password is reset.

## Changing the Default Login Name

FileCloud has a built-in admin account to log in to the admin portal and manage the site.

The name of the account is **admin**. This name can be changed in the **Admin login name** setting.

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Admin** . The **Admin** settings page opens.
2. Enter the new name in **Admin login name**.  
The name can only contain letters, numbers, spaces, hyphens, underscores and periods. It cannot be the same as the superadmin name.

## Admin

[Reset to defaults](#)

Admin login name

Change the default admin user name.

Admin email

Email id for admin account

Enable two-factor authentication for admin logins

Requires valid admin or admin user email id.



3. Click **Save**.

## Account Locked Alerts

By default, FileCloud locks a FileCloud user's account for 5 minutes after 5 incorrect log in attempts. (You may change the default values in [Password settings](#) (see page 154).)

Each time the user makes a failed login attempt, a warning notification appears on the login screen telling the user how many attempts are remaining.

If the user's account is locked due to too many failed login attempts, the following notification appears:

Login

+ New Account

Invalid Username or Password. Password is Case Sensitive.  
Your account has been locked due to 5 failed attempts. It will be unlocked after 5 minutes

Account

Password

jennifer


.....

Login

By default, FileCloud is set to not send an email message to the user or admin to notify them that the account has been locked due to incorrect login attempts. However, you may change this setting.

To change the **Account Locked Alert** setting:

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on

the **Settings** navigation page, click **Admin**  .  
The **Admin** settings page opens.

2. Scroll down to the **Send account locked email** setting.

Admin session timeout in minutes

Admin portal login session timeout

Example: 15 (default) = 15 minutes; 30 = 30 minutes; 60 = 1 hour

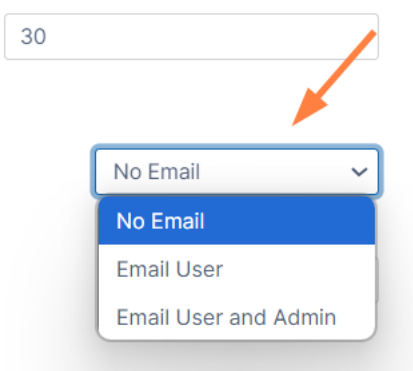
Note: Session always expires when browser is closed unless advanced configuration is added.

30

Send account locked email

Show recent access locations in dashboard

Display the recent access locations chart in the admin dashboard. Default equals false.



No Email

No Email

Email User

Email User and Admin

3. In the drop-down list, choose one of the following settings:
  - No Email** - Neither the user nor the admin receives an email notification about the user account logout.
  - Email User** - The user receives an email notification about their account lockout but the admin does not.
  - Email User and Admin** - Both the user and the admin receive an email about the user account lockout.

## Folder-Level Permissions

Folder-level permissions are permissions that are applied directly to a folder. They add additional restrictions to the share permissions when the folder is shared. Note that whichever is more restrictive, folder-level or share permissions, apply.

Folder-Level Permissions Support	Folder-Level Permissions Do Not Support
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✔ Interaction with share permissions.</li> <li>✔ Allowing or restricting access by specifying a user's email account</li> <li>✔ Folders in Managed Storage</li> <li>✔ Configuration by admins, and configuration by the owner of the folder, if permitted.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✘ Folders in Network Storage</li> <li>✘ Permissions set by a user other than the owner</li> </ul>

You can apply folder-level permissions to:

- a user's folders
- Team folders

You can also enable users to apply folder-level permissions to their folders.

It's important to understand what takes precedence when there are folder-level and share permissions on the same folder, and when sub-folders inherit the permissions of their parent folders. It's also necessary to know which permissions apply when a user and the user's group(s) have different permissions for the same folder.

It would be very difficult to work out how the different permissions interact each time there is an overlap, so FileCloud provides effective permissions calculators that show you which permissions apply in these situations. The different effective permissions calculators are explained in the topics in this section.

The topics in this section show you how to enable and apply folder-level permissions and explain which permissions take precedence when multiple permissions are applied.

- [Setting Folder-Level Permissions from the Admin Portal \(see page 48\)](#)
- [Enabling Users to Set Folder-Level Permissions \(see page 55\)](#)
- [Setting Folder-Level Permissions on Team Folders \(see page 57\)](#)
- [How Folder-Level Permissions and Share Permissions Work Together \(see page 68\)](#)
- [More Examples \(see page 75\)](#)

## Setting Folder-Level Permissions from the Admin Portal

Apply folder-level permissions for users or groups to certain folders if you want to limit their access to the folders when they are shared.

- You can apply folder-level permissions directly to user folders from the **Manage Users** page.
- You can apply folder-level permissions to Team Folders from the Manage Team Folders page. See instructions at [Setting Folder-Level Permissions on Team Folders \(see page 57\)](#).
- You can edit folder-level permissions set by users and folder-permissions set on Team Folders from the **Folder Permissions** link in the navigation panel.



#### Permission rules: How permissions interact

- Whichever is more restrictive, share permissions or folder-level permissions, apply.
- Inheritance of folder-level permissions is turned on by default for all folders and sub-folders.
  - Subfolders inherit the folder-level permissions of their immediate parent folders.
  - If you manually turn off inheritance for a folder, its subfolders still have inheritance turned on.
- In a share, greatest share permissions given to a user or the user's group apply.
- In folder-level permissions, user permissions override permissions of a group the user is in.
- When a user belongs to multiple groups with conflicting permissions, the effective permissions are the enabled permissions from all their groups combined.

## To configure FileCloud to allow setting folder-level permissions

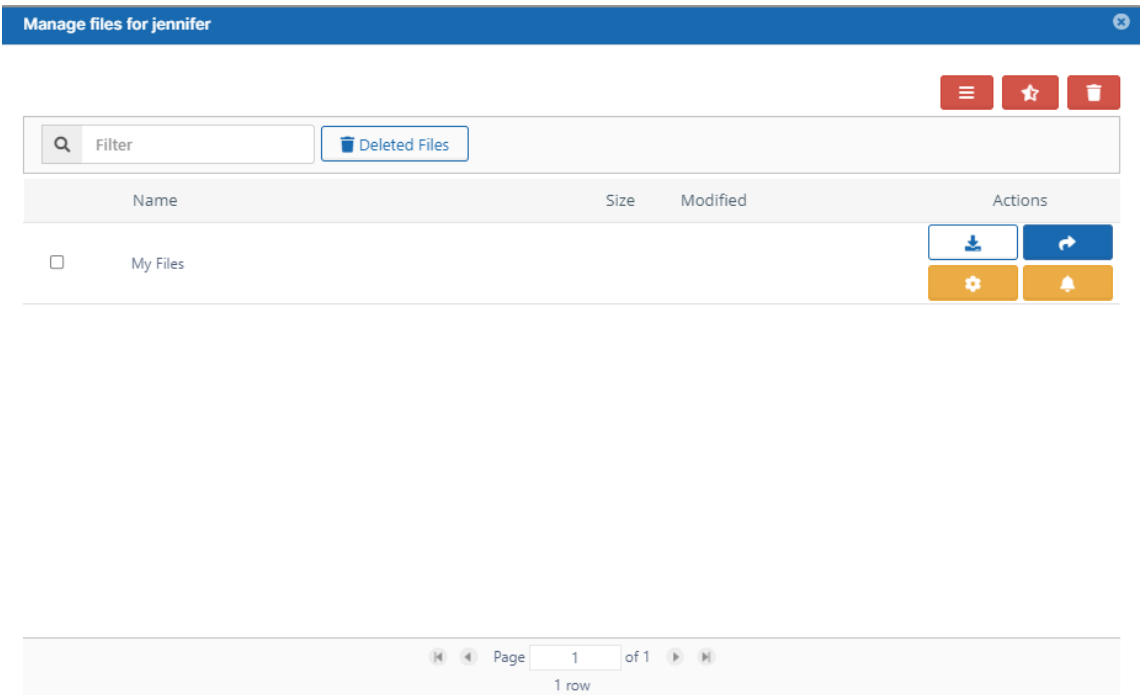
1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Misc** UNKNOWN ATTACHMENT. By default, **General** settings are opened.
2. Enable **Apply folder-level security**.

UNKNOWN ATTACHMENT

Now, folder-level permissions can be set.

## To apply folder-level permissions to user folders:

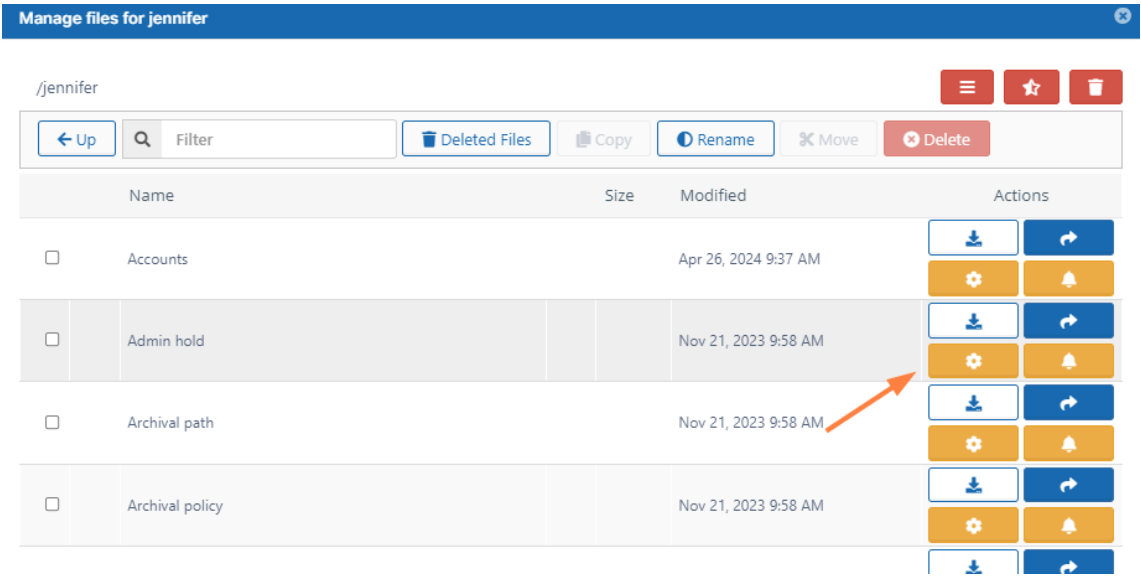
1. In the admin portal's left navigation panel, click **Users**.
2. On the **Manage Users** page, select a user, and then click the Edit icon.
3. On the **User Details** dialog box, click **Manage Files**.  
The **Manage Files for <User>** window opens.



- 4. Expand **My Files** and locate the folder that you want to set folder-level permissions for.
- 5. Click the **Manage Access**



button in the folder's row.



The **Manage Folder Level Security** dialog box opens. Any folder-level permissions that are already effective appear.

- 6. Follow the steps below to assign and change user and group folder-level permissions. Users who do not appear

on the list have all folder-level permissions to the folder (unless their group permissions are limited)

**Manage Folder Level Security**

Folder: /jennifer/Admin hold

**Security** Check Access

**Permissions**

**Inherit Parent Folder Security:** ☒ Inherit ☐ Don't Inherit

**B** **User** Group

**Add User**

User	Read	Write	Delete	Share	Manage
dm898002@gmail.com	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Page 1 of 1

**Inherited Permissions**

User	Read	Write	Delete	Share	Manage
jm2344311@gmail.com	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Page 1 of 1

**Close**

**A** By default, **Inherit** is selected. If you select **Don't Inherit**, users do not inherit permissions from this folder's parent folder, and the lower **Inherited Permissions** section no longer appears.

**B** Click **Add User** to add a user and limit their access to the folder, or click the Group tab and add a group.

**C** In the top list of users, check or uncheck levels of permissions.

To edit folder-level permissions set by admins on Team Folders and set by users on user folders:

- 1. To open the **Manage Folder Permissions** screen, In the navigation panel, click **Folder Permissions**.

Manage Folder Permissions

Filter

Path	Created Date	Inherit	Details	Actions
/team folders user/TeamFolder_01/TESTFILES/Projects/Project_0001/finance	May 17, 2023 7:46 PM	YES	1 Users 1 Groups	
/team folders user/Example Folder	Jun 13, 2023 7:57 PM	NO	1 Users 0 Groups	
/team folders user/DualEnroll	Jun 20, 2023 4:47 PM	YES	1 Users 0 Groups	
/team folders user/PermissionsTest	Jul 3, 2023 6:36 PM	YES	1 Users 0 Groups	
/jeniferp/tools	Jul 3, 2023 6:39 PM	YES	1 Users 0 Groups	

- 2. To open the **Manage Folder Level Security** dialog box, click the edit button.
- 3. Follow the steps below to assign and change user and group folder-level permissions. Users who do not appear on the list have all folder-level permissions to the folder (unless their group permissions are limited)

Manage Folder Level Security

Folder: /jennifer/Admin hold

Security Check Access

Permissions

Inherit Parent Folder Security: ☒ Inherit ☐ Don't Inherit

User Group

Add User

User	Read	Write	Delete	Share	Manage
dm898002@gmail.com	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Page 1 of 1

Inherited Permissions

User	Read	Write	Delete	Share	Manage
jm2344311@gmail.com	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Page 1 of 1

Close

**A** By default, **Inherit** is selected. If you select **Don't Inherit**, users do not inherit permissions from this folder's parent folder, and the lower **Inherited Permissions** section no longer appears.

**B** Click **Add User** to add a user and limit their access to the folder, or click the **Group** tab and add a group.

**C** In the top list of users, check or uncheck levels of permissions.

## Checking Effective Permissions

### Check Effective Permissions

Administrators can check to see which effective folder permissions a user has to a folder. Effective permissions are the actual permissions when various permissions assigned to a user for the same folder are combined (for example, effective permissions show which permissions apply when a user has both individual and group permissions).

However, when you are using the methods shown on this page, this does not take into account which share permissions may have been given to the user for the folder. So, when the folder is shared, the share permissions may change the actual access the user has to the folder.



When a user checks effective permissions for [Team Folders](#) (see page 57) in the user portal, share permissions and folder-level permissions are taken into account.

The possible folder-level permissions are:

Permission	Description
Read	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Allows Downloading Files</li> <li>Allows Previewing Files</li> </ul>
Write	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Allows uploading and modifying existing files</li> <li>Allows creating files and folders</li> <li>Allows renaming files and folders</li> </ul>
Delete	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Allows deleting files and folders</li> </ul>
Share	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Allows sharing files and folders</li> </ul>
Manage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Allow managing folder-level permissions for this folder</li> </ul>

**To check a user's effective permissions on a folder from the Manage Folder Permissions or Manage Users screen:**

1. Access the **Manage Folder Level Security** dialog box in one of the ways shown on this page.
2. Select the **Check Access** tab.
3. In the box next to the user icon, enter the user's email id for their FileCloud account.
4. Click **Check**.

UNKNOWN ATTACHMENT

The user's permissions to the folder are listed:

UNKNOWN ATTACHMENT



## Permission inheritance

### How Do Inherited Permissions Work?

In general, a **folder** can be in one of the following states:

- The sub-folder has all of the same permissions as its parent folder
- The sub-folder has all of the same permissions as its parent folder, plus additional permissions
- The sub-folder has all of the same permissions as its parent, minus additional permissions
- The sub-folder's permissions are not connected in any way to the parent folder and the sub-folder retains a separate set of permissions

**When setting folder-level permissions in FileCloud, you have the following options:**

Option	Description
 Inherit Permissions	Permissions set by default in this folder are exactly the same as its parent folder's permissions.
 Don't Inherit Permissions	Permissions set in this folder don't inherit from its parent folder's permissions and are specific to only this folder.

## Enabling Users to Set Folder-Level Permissions



### Permission rules: How permissions interact


- Whichever is more restrictive, share permissions or folder-level permissions, apply.
- Inheritance of folder-level permissions is turned on by default for all folders and sub-folders.
  - Subfolders inherit the folder-level permissions of their immediate parent folders.
  - If you manually turn off inheritance for a folder, its subfolders still have inheritance turned on.
- In a share, greatest share permissions given to a user or the user's group apply.
- In folder-level permissions, user permissions override permissions of a group the user is in.
- When a user belongs to multiple groups with conflicting permissions, the effective permissions are the enabled permissions from all their groups combined.

### To enable users to set folder-level permissions:

First enable folder-level security settings, then enable setting folder-level permissions in the user policy.

#### 1. Enable folder-level permissions in Misc > General settings


**To enable folder-level permissions in your system:**

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Misc**  .  
By default, **General** settings are opened.
2. Enable **Apply folder-level security**.



Now, folder-level permissions can be set.

**2. Enable users to set folder permissions in their user policies**

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Policies**  .  
The **Policies** settings page opens.
2. Click the Edit icon in the row for the users' policy.



The **Policy Settings** dialog box opens.

3. Click the **User Policy** tab.
4. Scroll down to the setting **Allow Folder Level Security** and set it to **yes**.



5. Click **Save**.

**How a user sets folder permissions****How a user sets folder permissions**

Once a user is permitted to set folder-level permissions, they can select a folder's checkbox and click the **Security** tab in the right panel. In the **Security** tab, the user clicks **Manage Security** to open the **Manage Folder Level Security** checkbox.



They can then add users and select one or more of the following folder-level permissions:



Permission	Description
Read	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Allows Downloading Files</li> <li>• Allows Previewing Files</li> </ul>
Write	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Allows uploading and modifying existing files</li> <li>• Allows creating files and folders</li> <li>• Allows renaming files and folders</li> </ul>

Permission	Description
Delete	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Allows deleting files and folders</li> </ul>
Share	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Allows sharing files and folders</li> </ul>
Manage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Allow managing folder-level permissions for this folder</li> </ul>

See Set Permissions on Folders in the User Dashboard for more information.

## Setting Folder-Level Permissions on Team Folders

Once a Team Folder is shared, all users with access to the share will see the folder in Team Folders in the navigation panel of the user portal and all FileCloud clients such as Sync, Drive, Outlook and the Office Add-In. A user's actions on a Team Folder are generally limited by the share permissions given to them on the Team Folder. However, additional limitations may be added to the share permissions for specific users and groups in the form of folder-level permissions.

For more information on folder **share** permissions, read about the Private Share Permissions for Folders.

### Enable folder-level permissions

In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Misc**



By default, **General** settings are opened.

1. Enable **Apply folder-level security**.

## General

[Reset to defaults](#)

### Server timezone

Specify a timezone from here - <http://www.php.net/manual/en/timezones.php>

Africa/Addis\_Ababa

### Calendar Type

Note: Gregorian (English) should be changed in the drop-down to Gregorian (common)

Gregorian (English)

### Date format

MMM dd, yyyy (Jan 15, 2019)

### Time format

h:mm A (2:20 PM)

### Apply folder-level security

Apply folder-level security settings to share permissions.



Enable interactive tour on first login



## Apply folder-level permissions to Team Folders:

You can apply folder-level permissions to the top-level Team Folder or to its subfolders.

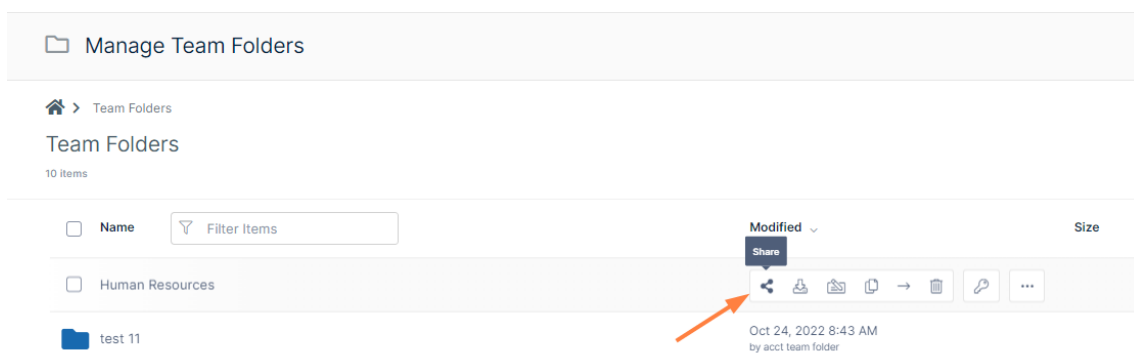
Here, we will demonstrate how folder-level permissions can be used to enhance share permissions on Team Folders through an example.

This example uses a common scenario, in which a top-level Team Folder stores various subfolders for the team. The entire team is given access to some of the subfolders, for example, those that contain general information. But only team members whose jobs require more secure information, such as employee ID numbers, are given access to the subfolders that contain that information.

In this example, we will give the entire **Human Resources** team access to the **HR Files** subfolder, but we will only give the users **HR Manager** and **Jessica** access to the **Employee Records** and **Forms** subfolders.

## Share the top-level Team Folder with the entire group with all permissions

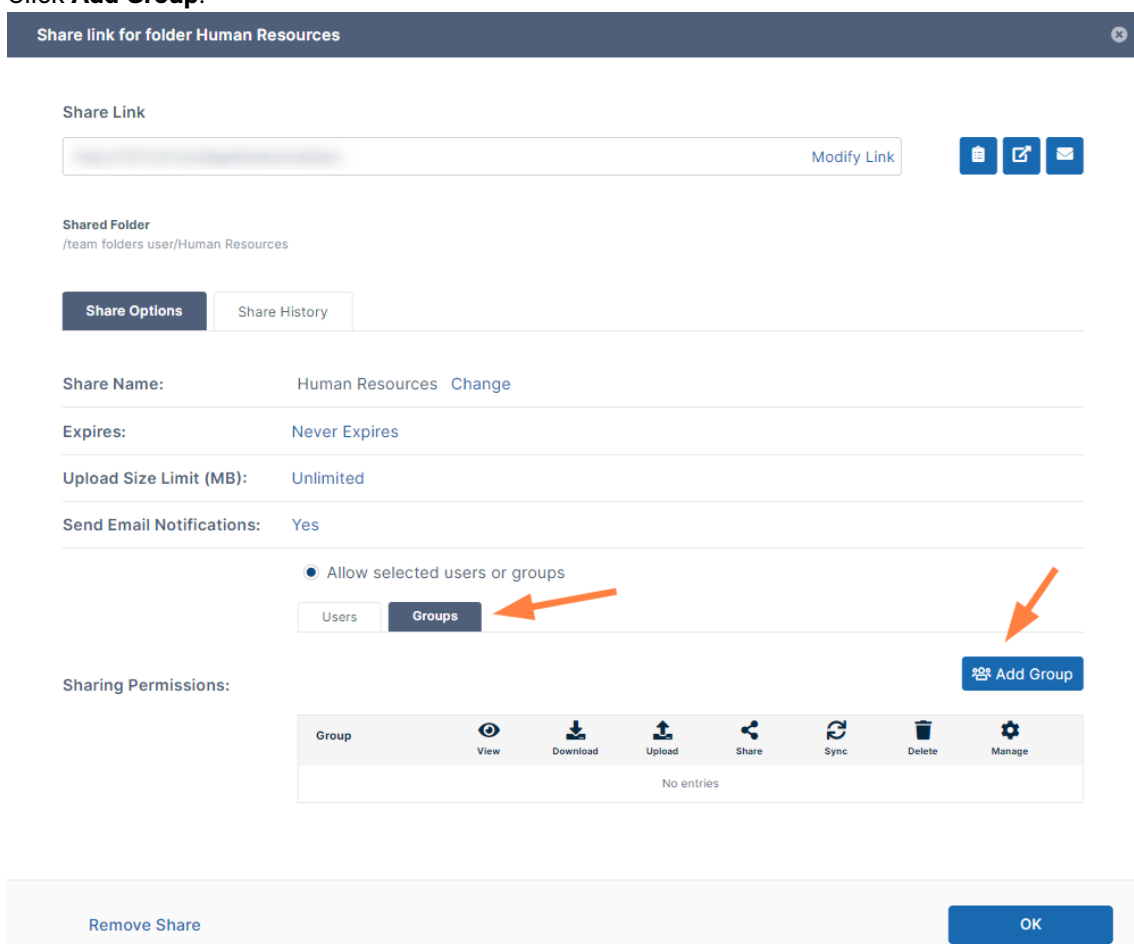
1. From the left navigation panel, click **Team Folders**.
2. Hover over the Team Folder (in this case **Human Resources**), and click the share icon.



A **Share link for folder** dialog box opens.

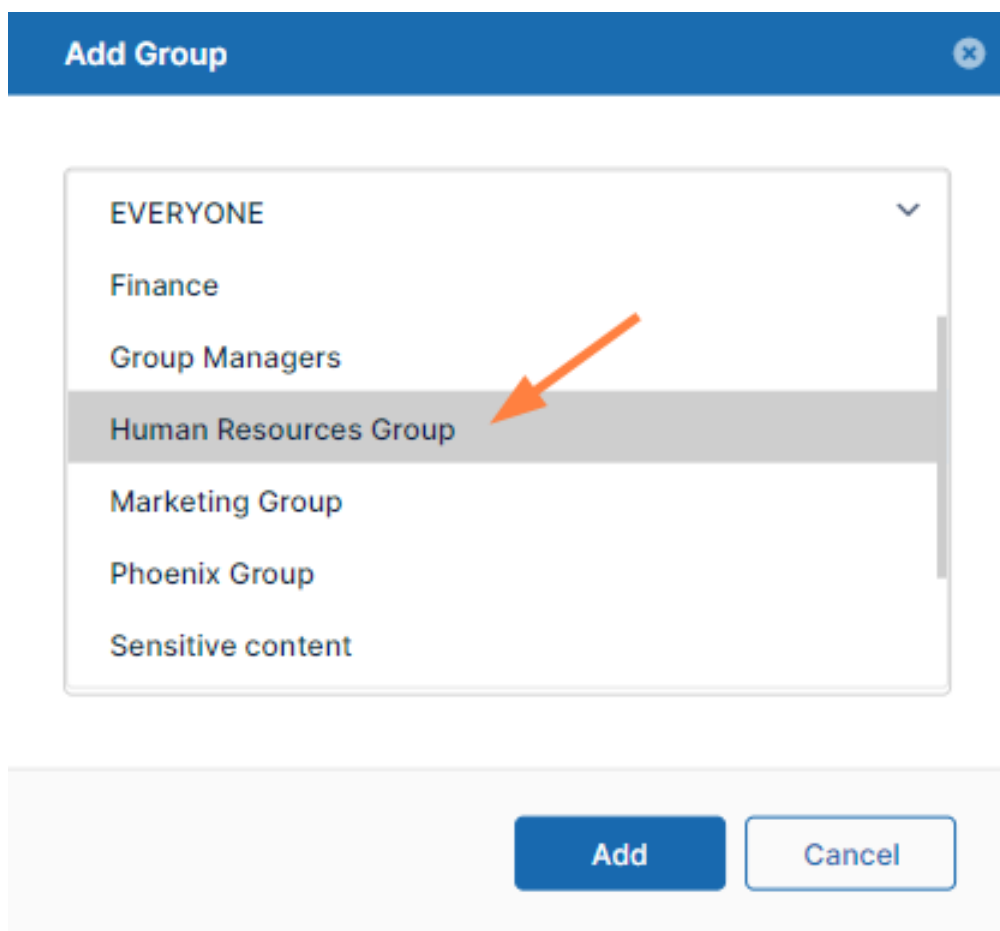
First give the entire **Human Resources Group** access to the **Human Resources** folder.

3. Click **Allow selected users or groups**, and then click the **Groups** tab.
4. Click **Add Group**.



An **Add Group** dialog box listing your FileCloud groups opens.

5. Select the group (**Human Resources Group**) that you want to give access to the Team Folder and click **Add**.



6. Enable all permissions to the folder for the group except **Manage** permission, which is not allowed for a group.

Share link for folder Human Resources

Share Link

http://127.0.0.1/url/kjpefwtkzmvki5wv
Modify Link

Shared Folder

/team folders user/Human Resources

Share Options

Share History

Share Name:

Human Resources [Change](#)

Expires:

Never Expires

Upload Size Limit (MB):

Unlimited

Send Email Notifications:

Yes

☒ Allow selected users or groups

Users

Groups (1)

Add Group

Sharing Permissions:

Group	View	Download	Upload	Share	Sync	Delete	Manage
Human Resources	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Remove Share

OK

- Click **OK** and close the dialog box.

## Restrict permissions to specific users within the group

- Open the Human Resources folder to view its subfolders.

Manage Team Folders

Team Folders > Human Resou...

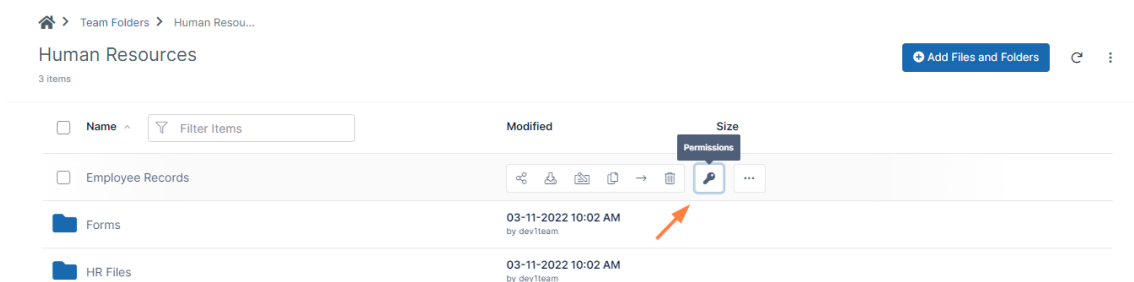
Human Resources

Add Files and Folders

3 items

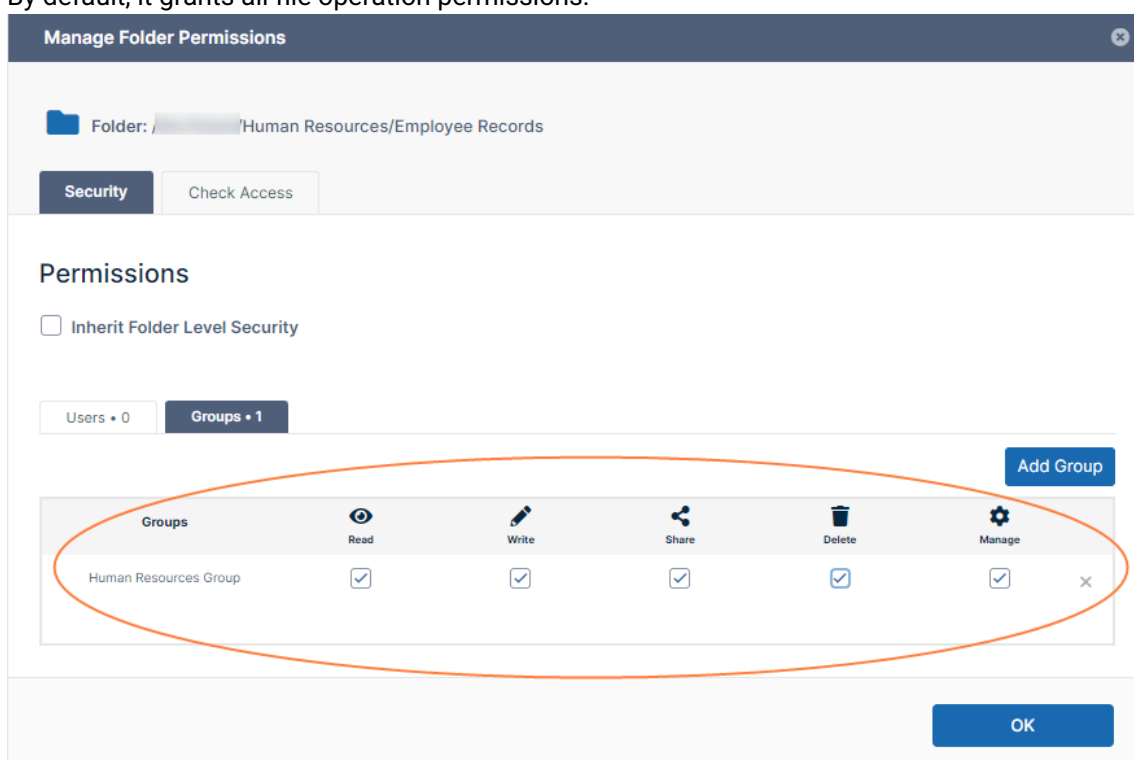
Name	Modified	Size
Employee Records	03-11-2022 10:02 AM by dev1team	
Forms	03-11-2022 10:02 AM by dev1team	
HR Files	03-11-2022 10:02 AM by dev1team	

- We want to give the users **HR Manager** and **Jessica** full access to the **Employee Records** and **Forms** subfolders. We don't want to give the other members of the team any access to these subfolders, but they will still have access to the **HR Files** folder.
- Hover over the **Employee Records** folder and click the **Permissions** icon.



The **Manage Folder Level Security** dialog box opens for the **Employee Records** subfolder.

- Uncheck **Inherit Folder Level Security**.
- Click the **Groups** tab, then click the **Add Group** button and add **Human Resources Group**. By default, it grants all file operation permissions.



- To disable the group's access to the **Employee Records** folder, uncheck the boxes under the operations.
- Then click the **Users** tab.

Manage Folder Permissions

Folder: / /Human Resources/Employee Records

SecurityCheck Access

Permissions

☐ Inherit Folder Level Security

Users • 0Groups • 1

Add Group

Groups	Read	Write	Share	Delete	Manage
Human Resources Group	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

OK

8. Click **Add Users** and add only the users who you want to give access to the **Employee Records** folder.

Manage Folder Permissions

Folder: / /Human Resources/Employee Records

SecurityCheck Access

Permissions

☐ Inherit Folder Level Security

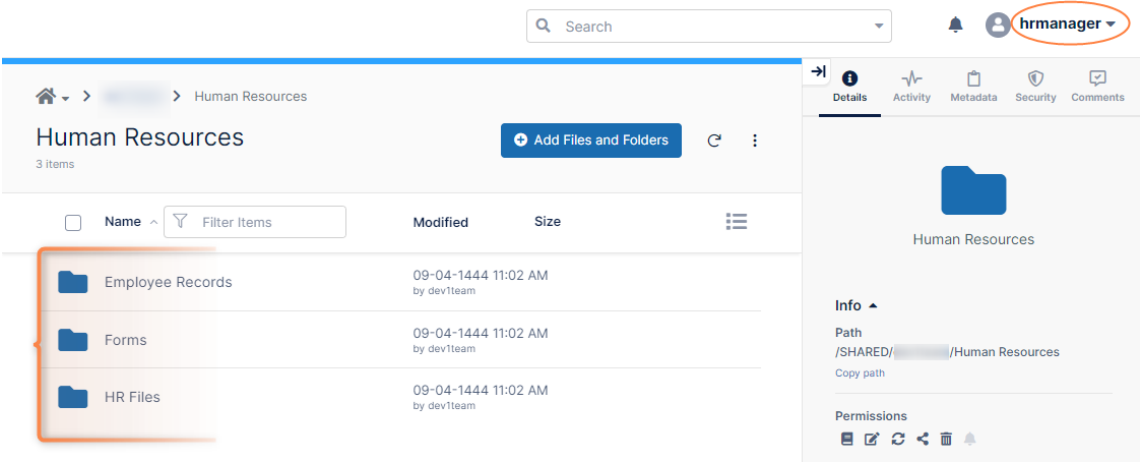
Users • 2Groups • 1

Add Users

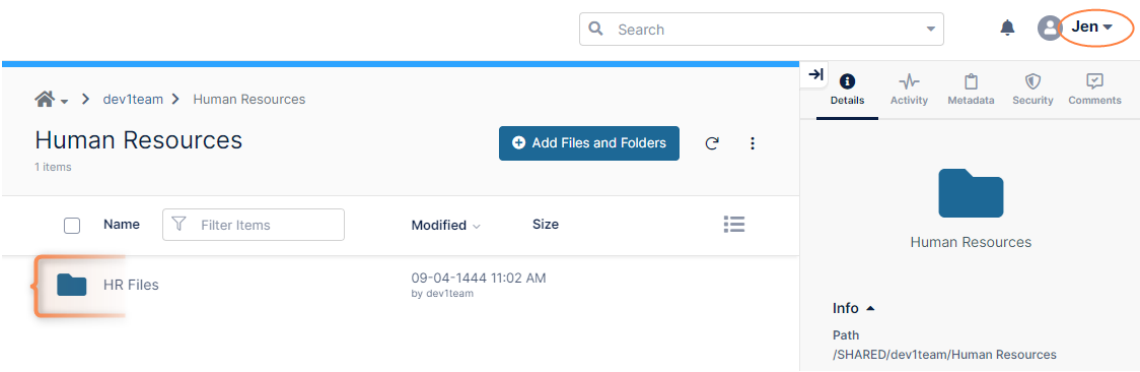
Users	Read	Write	Share	Delete	Manage
hrmanager@example.com	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
jessica@example.com	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

OK

9. Repeat steps 3 through 8 for the **Forms** folder.
- Now, when either **HR Manager** or **Jessica** logs in to the user portal, they see the **Human Resources** Team Folder and all of its subfolders: **Employee Records**, **HR Files**, and **Forms**.



When another member of the **Human Resources** group logs in, they see the **Human Resources** Team Folder, but only the **HR Files** subfolder:



**Note:** Top-level Team Folder permissions cannot be inherited, and the **Inherit Folder Level Security** checkbox does not appear for top-level Team Folders on the **Manage Folder Level Security** dialog box.

**Manage Folder Permissions**

Folder: / /Human Resources

**Security** Check Access

**Permissions**

Users • 1 Groups • 1

Add Users

Users	Read	Write	Share	Delete	Manage
jessica@example.com	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

OK

## Checking Effective Permissions

A user may have been assigned multiple types of permissions for a Team Folder. For example, the Team Folder shared with the user gave the user certain permissions but you may also have applied different folder-level permissions to the folder. In addition, the user may have permissions through a group it belongs to.

You can check the Team Folder's effective permissions to see the actual permissions the user has to the folder when all of these permissions are combined.

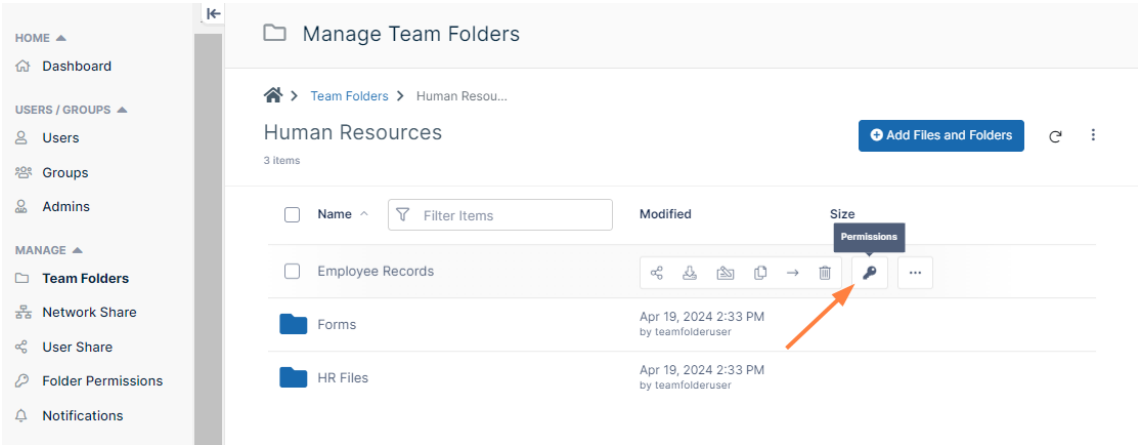
Effective permissions take into account that:

- If a user has both share and folder-level permissions to a folder, the more restrictive of the two apply.
- If a user has folder-level permissions assigned to them individually, and folder-level permissions assigned through a group they belong to, the user assigned permissions take precedence.

To check effective Team Folder permissions:

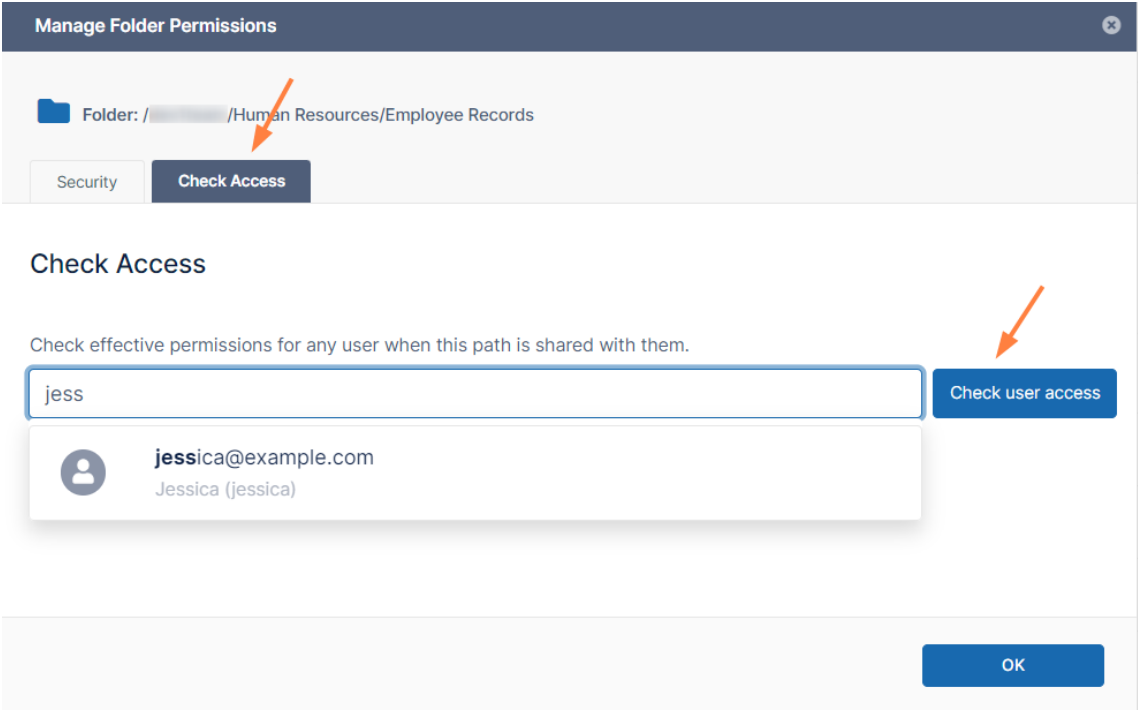
In this example, we'll check the effective permissions for the example above.

1. Navigate to the Human Resources/Employee Records Team Folder and click the permissions icon (the Key icon) in its row.



The **Manage Folder Level Security** dialog box opens with the **Security** tab selected.

2. Click the **Check Access** tab.
3. Enter the email or username for Jessica, one of the users we gave folder-level permissions to this folder.
4. Click **Check user access**.



The dialog box lists Jessica's permissions.

- The **Folder Permissions** row shows that she has all folder-level permissions to the Employee Records folder.
- In the share of the folder, Jessica's group, **Human Resources**, was given all but Manage permissions for the folder, which is shown in the **Share permissions** row.

- The more restrictive of folder-level or share permissions apply, so the **Effective permissions** row shows that ultimately, Jessica does not have Manage permission because she does not have it in the share.

Manage Folder Permissions

Folder: / /Human Resources/Employee Records

Security

Check Access

### Check Access

Check effective permissions for any user when this path is shared with them.

Check user access

Permissions type	Read	Write	Share	Delete	Manage
Folder permissions	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Share permissions	✓	✓	✓	✓	✗
Effective permissions	✓	✓	✓	✓	✗

OK

Now let's look at the effective permissions for Aliya, another user in the **Human Resources** group who has not been given any user folder-level permissions to the **Employee Records** folder. Her group has had all folder-level permissions for the Human Resources folder removed.

- The **Folder permissions** row shows that she has no folder-level permissions for accessing the folder.
- On the share of the folder, her group is given read, write, share, and delete permissions, so the **Share permissions** row shows those permissions.
- The combined permissions, which appear in the **Effective permissions** row, show that Aliya has no access to the folder, because her group has both folder-level and share permissions assigned, and in this case the most restrictive apply.

Manage Folder Level Security

Folder: /jennifer/Customers/Customer Accounts

SecurityCheck Access

Check Access

Check effective permissions for any user when this path is shared with them.

jaredtaylor978

Check user access

Permissions type	Read	Write	Share	Delete	Manage
Folder permissions	×	×	×	×	×
Share permissions	✓	✓	✓	✓	×
Effective permissions	×	×	×	×	×

OK

More Information:

FileCloud Blogs

- Using “Allow Manage” on FileCloud Team Folders<sup>3</sup>
- User-Based Management of Team Folder Permissions<sup>4</sup>

How Folder-Level Permissions and Share Permissions Work Together

Permission rules: How permissions interact

- Whichever is more restrictive, share permissions or folder-level permissions, apply.
- Inheritance of folder-level permissions is turned on by default for all folders and sub-folders.
  - Subfolders inherit the folder-level permissions of their immediate parent folders.

3. [https://www.filecloud.com/blog/2021/05/using-allow-manage-on-filecloud-team-folders/#.YMJoU\\_IKhIA](https://www.filecloud.com/blog/2021/05/using-allow-manage-on-filecloud-team-folders/#.YMJoU_IKhIA)

4. <https://www.filecloud.com/blog/2021/06/manage-permission-enables-users-to-adjust-folder-permissions-in-team-folders/#.YOyWuuhKhIA>

- If you manually turn off inheritance for a folder, its subfolders still have inheritance turned on.
- In a share, greatest share permissions given to a user or the user's group apply.
- In folder-level permissions, user permissions override permissions of a group the user is in.
- When a user belongs to multiple groups with conflicting permissions, the effective permissions are the enabled permissions from all their groups combined.

The following examples illustrate the above permission rules using these components:

<b>Group:</b> <b>Sales Group</b> <b>Members:</b> <b>SalesUser1</b> <b>SalesUser2</b>	<b>Folder:</b> <b>Accounts</b> <b>Subfolder:</b> <b>MillerAcct</b>
--	---

**Example 1:**

The more restrictive of folder-level and share permissions apply.

**View the example**

- The **Sales Group** is given the folder-level permissions **read, write, share, delete,** and **manage** to the Team Folder **Accounts**.
- The **Sales Group** has share permissions **read, write,** and **share** to the Team Folder **Accounts**.
- **SalesUser1**'s effective (actual) permissions to the Team Folder **Accounts** are **read, write,** and **share**.

PERMISSION		READ	WRITE	SHARE	DELETE	MANAGE
Accounts folder	ACL	Sales Group	Y	Y	Y	Y
		SalesUser1				
	SHARE	Sales Group	Y	Y		
		SalesUser1				
	EFFECTIVE	SalesUser1	Y	Y	Y	

Manage Folder Permissions

Folder: /teamfolderuser/Accounts

Security

Check Access

Check Access

Check effective permissions for any user when this path is shared with them.

Check user access

Permissions type	Read	Write	Share	Delete	Manage
Folder permissions	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Share permissions	✓	✓	✓	✗	✗
Effective permissions	✓	✓	✓	✗	✗

OK

### Example 2:

The more restrictive of folder-level and share permissions apply.  
User folder-level permissions supersede group folder-level permissions.

### View the example

- The **Sales Group** is given the folder-level permissions **read**, **write**, **share**, **delete**, and **manage** to the Team Folder **Accounts**.
- The **Sales Group** has share permissions **read**, **write**, and **share** to the Team Folder **Accounts**.
- SalesUser1** is given **read** folder-level permission to the Team Folder **Accounts**.
- SalesUser1**'s effective (actual) permission to the Team Folder **Accounts** is **read**.
- SalesUser2**'s effective (actual) permissions to the Team Folder **Accounts** are **read**, **write**, and **share**.

	PERMISSION		READ	WRITE	SHARE	DELETE	MANAGE
Accounts folder	ACL	Sales Group	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
		SalesUser1	Y				
		SalesUser2					
	SHARE	Sales Group	Y	Y	Y		
		SalesUser1					
		SalesUser2					
	EFFECTIVE	SalesUser1	Y				
		SalesUser2	Y	Y	Y		

Check effective permissions for any user when this path is shared with them.



Permissions type	Read	Write	Share	Delete	Manage
Folder permissions	✓	✗	✗	✗	✗
Share permissions	✓	✓	✓	✗	✗
Effective permissions	✓	✗	✗	✗	✗

Check effective permissions for any user when this path is shared with them.



Permissions type	Read	Write	Share	Delete	Manage
Folder permissions	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Share permissions	✓	✓	✓	✗	✗
Effective permissions	✓	✓	✓	✗	✗

### Example 3:

The more restrictive of folder-level and share permissions apply.

In a share, greatest share permissions given to a user or the user's group apply.






#### View the example

- The **Sales Group** is given the folder-level permissions **read**, **write**, **share**, **delete**, and **manage** to the Team Folder **Accounts**.
- The **Sales Group** has the share permissions **read**, **write**, and **share** to the Team Folder **Accounts**.
- **SalesUser1** has **all** share permissions to the Team Folder **Accounts**.
- **SalesUser1**'s effective (actual) permissions to the Team Folder **Accounts** are **all** permissions.
- **SalesUser2**'s effective (actual) permissions to the Team Folder **Accounts** are **read**, **write**, and **share**.

	PERMISSION		READ	WRITE	SHARE	DELETE	MANAGE
	ACL						
Accounts folder	ACL	Sales Group	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
		SalesUser1					
		SalesUser2					
	SHARE	Sales Group	Y	Y	Y		
		SalesUser1	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
		SalesUser2					
	EFFECTIVE	SalesUser1	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
		SalesUser2	Y	Y	Y		





Check effective permissions for any user when this path is shared with them.

[Check user access](#)

Permissions type	 Read	 Write	 Share	 Delete	 Manage
Folder permissions	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Share permissions	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Effective permissions	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

Check effective permissions for any user when this path is shared with them.

[Check user access](#)

Permissions type	 Read	 Write	 Share	 Delete	 Manage
Folder permissions	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Share permissions	✓	✓	✓	✗	✗
Effective permissions	✓	✓	✓	✗	✗

#### Example 4:

By default, subfolders inherit the permissions of their parent folders.  
User folder-level permissions supersede group folder-level permissions.

#### View the example

- The **Sales Group** is given the folder-level permissions **read**, **write**, and **share** to the Team Folder **Accounts**.
- The **Sales Group** has the share permissions **read**, **write**, and **share** to the Team Folder **Accounts**.
- The Team Folder **MillerAcct** inherits the permissions from the Team Folder **Accounts**.
- **SalesUser1** is given the folder-permission **read** to the Team Folder **MillerAcct**.
- **SalesUser1**'s effective (actual) permission to the Team Folder **MillerAcct** is **read** permission.
- **SalesUser2**'s effective (actual) permissions to the Team Folder **MillerAcct** are **read**, **write**, and **share**.

	PERMISSION	READ		WRITE		SHARE	DELETE	MANAGE
Accounts Folder	ACL	Sales Group	Y	Y	Y			
		SalesUser1						
		SalesUser2						
	SHARE	Sales Group	Y	Y	Y			
		SalesUser1						
		SalesUser2						
	EFFECTIVE	SalesUser1	Y	Y	Y			
		SalesUser2	Y	Y	Y			
Inherited by								
MillerAcct	PERMISSION	READ		WRITE		SHARE	DELETE	MANAGE
	ACL	Sales Group	Y	Y	Y			
		SalesUser1	Y					
		SalesUser2						
	SHARE	Sales Group	Y	Y	Y			
		SalesUser1						
		SalesUser2						
	EFFECTIVE	SalesUser1	Y					
		SalesUser2	Y	Y	Y			

Check effective permissions for any user when this path is shared with them.

[Check user access](#)

Permissions type	Read	Write	Share	Delete	Manage
Folder permissions	✓	✗	✗	✗	✗
Share permissions	✓	✓	✓	✗	✗
Effective permissions	✓	✗	✗	✗	✗

Check effective permissions for any user when this path is shared with them.

[Check user access](#)

Permissions type	Read	Write	Share	Delete	Manage
Folder permissions	✓	✓	✓	✗	✗
Share permissions	✓	✓	✓	✗	✗
Effective permissions	✓	✓	✓	✗	✗

### Example 5:

By default, subfolders inherit the permissions of their parent folders.

In a share, greatest share permissions given to a user or the user's group apply.

#### View the example

- The **Sales Group** is given the folder-level permissions **read**, **write**, and **share** to the Team Folder **Accounts**.
- The **Sales Group** has the share permissions **read**, **write**, and **share** to the Team Folder **Accounts**.
- The Team Folder **MillerAcct** inherits the permissions from the Team Folder **Accounts**.

- **SalesUser1** is given the share permission read to the Team Folder **MillerAcct**.
- **SalesUser1**'s effective (actual) permissions to the Team Folder **MillerAcct** are **read, write, and share** permission.
- **SalesUser2**'s effective (actual) permissions to the Team Folder **MillerAcct** are **read, write, and share** permission.

	PERMISSION	READ	WRITE	SHARE	DELETE	MANAGE
Accounts Folder	SALES GROUP	Y	Y	Y		
	ACL					
	SalesUser1					
	SalesUser2					
	SHARE	Y	Y	Y		
	SalesUser1					
EFFECTIVE	SalesUser1	Y	Y	Y		
	SalesUser2	Y	Y	Y		
Inherited by						
MillerAcct	PERMISSION	READ	WRITE	SHARE	DELETE	MANAGE
	SALES GROUP	Y	Y	Y		
	ACL					
	SalesUser1					
	SalesUser2					
	SHARE	Y	Y	Y		
EFFECTIVE	SalesUser1	Y	Y	Y		
	SalesUser2	Y	Y	Y		

Check effective permissions for any user when this path is shared with them.



Permissions type	Read	Write	Share	Delete	Manage
Folder permissions	✓	✓	✓	✗	✗
Share permissions	✓	✓	✓	✗	✗
Effective permissions	✓	✓	✓	✗	✗

Check effective permissions for any user when this path is shared with them.



Permissions type	Read	Write	Share	Delete	Manage
Folder permissions	✓	✓	✓	✗	✗
Share permissions	✓	✓	✓	✗	✗
Effective permissions	✓	✓	✓	✗	✗

## How folder permissions affect copy and move actions

In some cases, combined share and folder-level permissions on folders limit whether **copy** and **move** for files or folders and **copy file or folder** and **move file or folder** in automated (user) workflows are permitted. In the scenarios in the following table, copy and move or move only is not allowed, and if you attempt to perform the action an error message is returned.

1	View	-	NOT allowed	NOT allowed
2	View+Download	-	allowed	NOT allowed
3	View	Read	NOT allowed	NOT allowed
4	View+Download	Read	allowed	NOT allowed

## More Examples

### Scenario 1: Give folder permissions only to specific users or groups

In this scenario, an administrator gives two groups access to a folder, but only gives one group access to one of its subfolders.

#### Example of giving permissions to only specific users or groups

In this example, the folder **TeamFolder\_01** is only shared with the groups:

- **ProjectManagers**
- **ProjectTeam**

Only the group **ProjectManagers** is given access to the embedded subfolder **Project\_0001/finance**.

#### Manage Team Folders

 > [Team Folders](#) > [TeamFolder\\_01](#) > [TESTFILES](#) > [Projects](#) > [Project\\_0001](#)

### Project\_0001

1 items

☐ Name ^

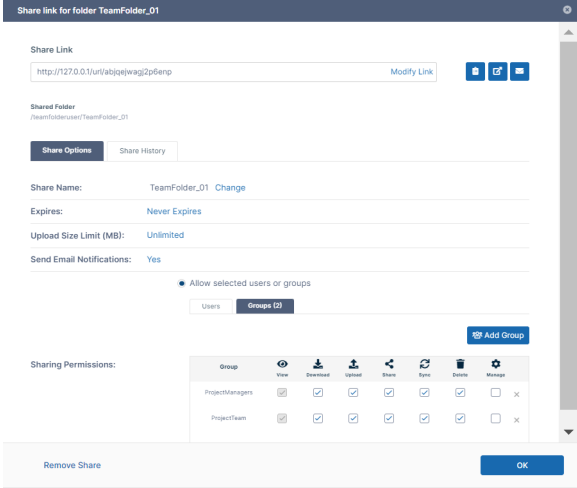
 Filter Items

 finance

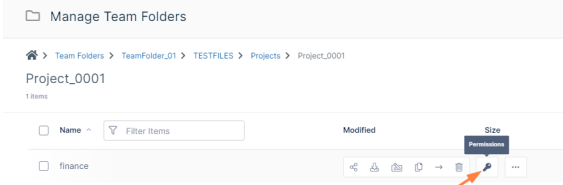
Example of giving permissions to only specific users or groups

To accomplish this, the administrator:

- 1. Shares the folder **TeamFolder\_01** with the **ProjectManagers** and **ProjectTeam** groups only.



- 2. Configures permissions on the **finance** subfolder:



Example of giving permissions to only specific users or groups

3. Adds **ProjectTeam** group to the **finance** folder in **Manage Folder Permissions**. Then removes all permissions for the **ProjectTeam** group.

Manage Folder Permissions

Folder: /teamfolderuser/TeamFolder\_01/TESTFILES/Projects/Project\_0001/finance

Security

Check Access

Permissions

☒ Inherit Folder Level Security

Users • 0

Groups • 1

Add Group

Groups	Read	Write	Share	Delete	Manage	
ProjectTeam	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	×

Inherited Permissions

Users • 0

Groups • 0

Users	Read	Write	Share	Delete	Manage
No entries					

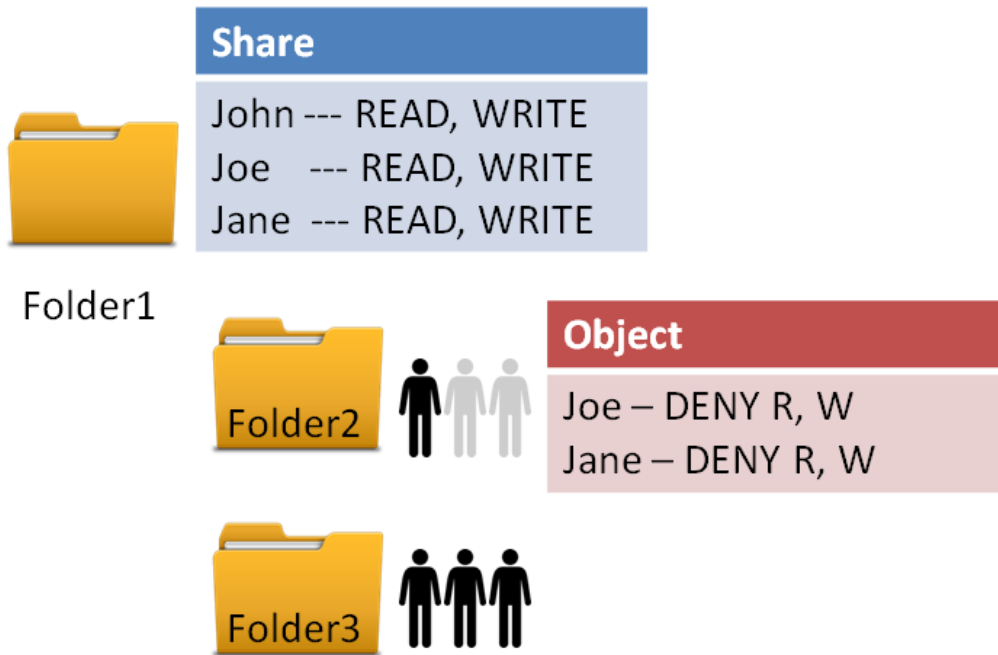
OK

Now, members of the **ProjectManagers** group are able to access the finance folder, but members of the **ProjectTeam** group are not.

Scenario 2: Remove access to specific folders for certain users

In this scenario, an administrator sets different permissions on parent and child folders.

**Example of a Sharing Scenario**



In this example, Folder1 is shared with Read and Write permissions to the following users:

- John
- Joe
- Jane

This means all three users can:

- Read files in Folder1
- Write files in Folder1

In this example, the administrator wants to allow only John access to the subfolder, Folder2.

The administrator therefore wants the folder access to be the following:

- Folder1 - accessible to John, Joe, and Jane
- Folder2 - accessible to John
- Folder3 - accessible to John

Example of a Sharing Scenario

To accomplish this, the administrator:

- 1. Shares Folder1 with all three users, and gives them read (view) and write (upload and delete) access.

Share link for folder Folder1

Shared Folder

/team folder account/Folder1

Share Options

Share History

Share Name:

Folder1

Change

Expires:

Never Expires

Upload Size Limit (MB):

Unlimited

Send Email Notifications:

Yes

☐ Allow anyone with link

☐ Allow anyone with link and a password

☒ Allow selected users or groups

Users (3)

Groups

Invite Users

Sharing Permissions:

User	View	Download	Upload	Share	Sync	Delete	Manage	
joe@example.com	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	×
jane@example.com	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	×
john@example.com	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	×

Remove Share

OK

- 2. Removes folder-level security permissions for the two users who will not have access to Folder2 removing all of their folder-level permissions.

Manage Folder Permissions

Folder: /teamfolderuser/Folder1/Folder2/Folder3

Security

Check Access

Permissions

☒ Inherit Folder Level Security

Users + 2

Groups + 0

Add Users

Users	Read	Write	Share	Delete	Manage	
joe@example.com	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	×
jane@example.com	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	×

Inherited Permissions

Users + 0



















Groups + 0

Users	Read	Write	Share	Delete	Manage
No entries					

OK

When John, Joe, and Jane access the folders:

**Example of a Sharing Scenario**

User	Folder1	Folder2	Folder3
John	 See it listed  Access its content	 See it listed  Access its content	 See it listed  Access its content
Joe	 See it listed  Access its content	 See it listed  Access its content	 See it listed  Access its content
Jane	 See it listed  Access its content	 See it listed  Access its content	 See it listed  Access its content

# Team Folders



The ability to upload files by dragging and dropping them from file explorer or another application onto a Team Folder is available in FileCloud version 22.1 and later.

As an administrator, you may be asked to manage folders that are shared to allow for collaboration among certain users or groups in your company.

- In FileCloud, these folders are called Team Folders.
- Team folders provide a single place where teams in a company can store and organize files and folders.
- Team folders are normally created by admins or authorized users and instantly made available to all members of a team.



Team Folders use managed storage and are not available for network storage. Therefore, Team Folders are created on managed storage where all files and folders under Team Folders are stored.

## How do Team Folders help administrators?

- **Centralized Content Management:** Team Folders facilitate organizing files and folders in a centralized place.
- **Easy Provisioning of Users, Files and Folders:** New users can be provisioned quickly with access to specific files and folders through Team Folders. Similarly, new files can be granted immediate access to all relevant users by uploading the file to the relevant Team Folder.
- **Granular Control of Folders:** Team Folders and their sub folders can give users granular permissions such as Read, Write, Share and Sync access.
- **Manage Selective Sync:** Admins can select specific Team Folders and enable or disable sync permissions on an easy to use user interface.

## How can a size limit be placed on a Team Folder?

You can place a size limit on a Team Folder when you share it. You must share a Team Folder to give users and groups access to it. As with any shared folder, when you share a Team Folder, you can set an upload limit that applies to the total amount that can be uploaded to the folder. See [Share the Team Folder and Set Permissions](#) (see page 96).

## To Manage Team Folders

Set Up Team Folders	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <a href="#">Configure the Team Folder Account.</a> (see page 82)</li> <li>2. <a href="#">Seed and Organize the Team Folder Data.</a> (see page 91)</li> <li>3. <a href="#">Share a Team Folder and Set Share Permissions for users and groups.</a> (see page 96)</li> <li>4. <a href="#">Set Granular Folder Permissions on Team Folders (Optional)</a> (see page 56)</li> </ol>
Manage Team Folders	<p>Search for a Team Folder</p> <p>Recover Deleted Files</p> <p>View and Restore Previous Versions</p>

## Configure the Team Folders Account

As an administrator, you must enable Team Folders and set up a Team Folder account.

The Team Folder account is a system-designated FULL USER account.

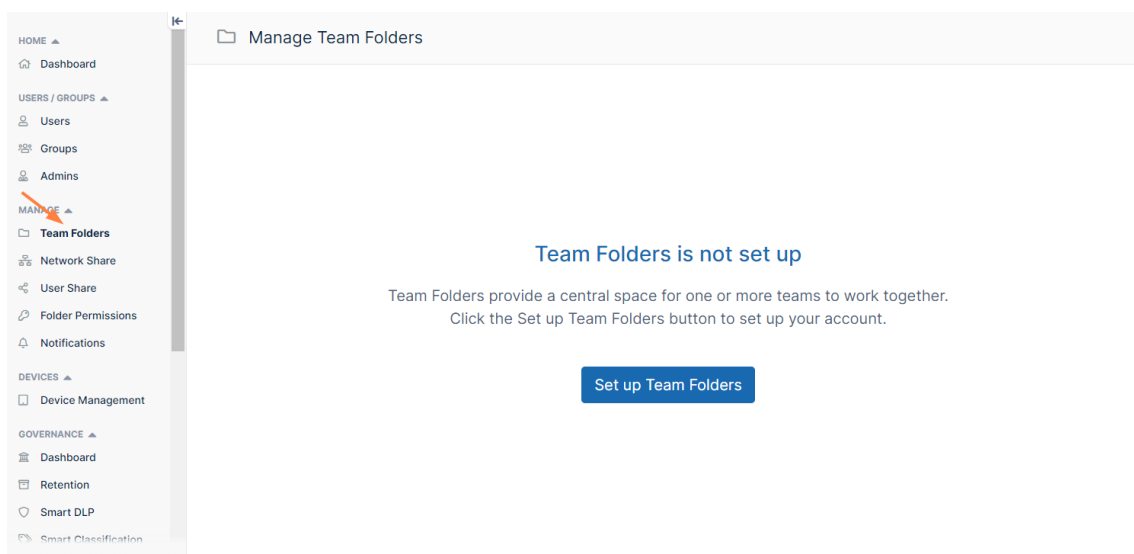
- FileCloud can create the account for you - you just need to choose the name you want to use.
- The Team Folder account is not counted towards your user license.
- FileCloud can also create an email account where it will send Team Folder notifications.
- The email address for Team Folder notifications should take the form of <newalias@mycompany.com>.
- Alternatively, you can promote a user account currently used for company-wide communication as the Team Folder account.

### To allow FileCloud to create the Team Folders account

Choose one of the following options:

#### Create a new account through the Team Folders screen

1. In the admin portal's navigation pane, click **Team Folders**.  
The screen tells you Team Folders is not set up, and it provides you with a **Set up Team Folders** button.



- Click the **Set up Team Folders** button.  
A wizard for setting up Team Folders opens.
- In the **Username** field, enter a name for your Team Folders account (in the example below, we've entered **Team Folder Account**).

Set up Team Folders

### Team Folders Account

A Team Folder account is a full user account but **is not counted towards your user license**

Enter a username for your Team Folders account.  
You can change it later in Team Folder settings.

Team Folder Account

Cancel
Next

- Click **Next**.  
The next window of the wizard displays additional fields.

5. Enter values for **Display Name**, **Email**, and **Password**, and click **Create**.

**Set up Team Folders**

**Set up Team Folders account**

Please enter details to set up the account

**Username**

Team Folders Account

**Display name**

Team Folders Account

**Email\***

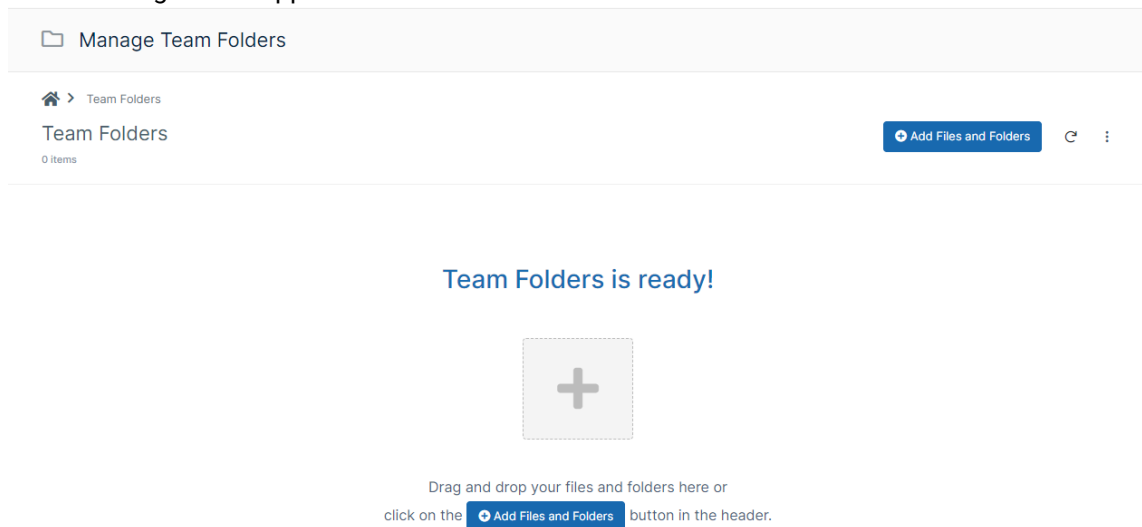
teamfolder@example.com

**Password\***

.....

Cancel Back Create

The following screen appears:



6. Now you are ready to create your Team Folders and fill them with contents. You can proceed from where you are by dragging and dropping folders onto the page or by clicking **Add Files and Folders**. This is a good option if you do not already have a folder structure set up that you want

to bring into FileCloud as your Team Folders.

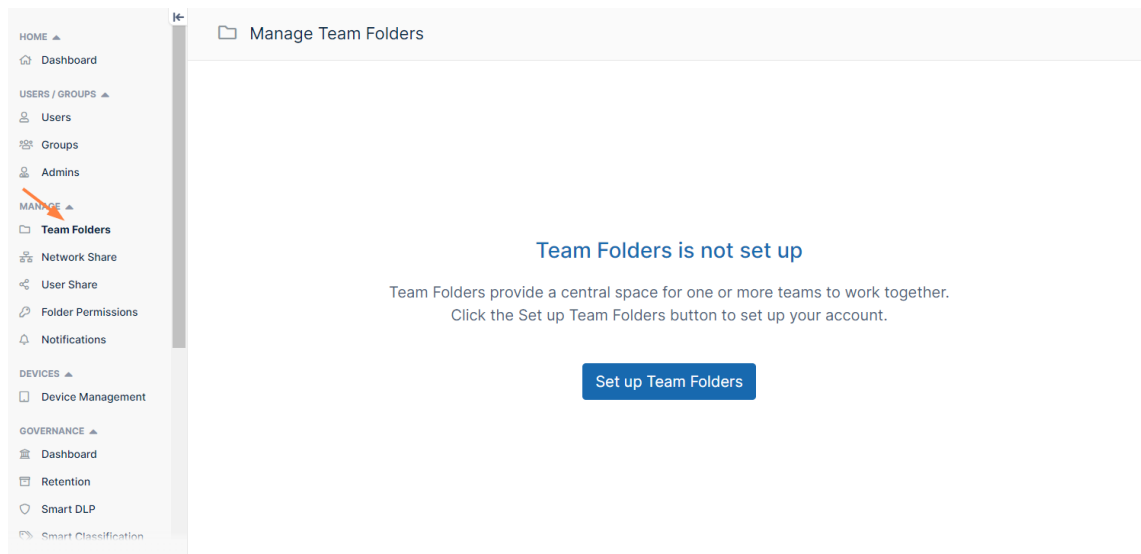
If you already have a folder structure that you want to use, FileCloud Sync is the preferred method.

For instructions on using these methods and others, see [Seed and Organize Team Folder Data](#) (see page 91).

### Convert an existing user account into the Team Folders account

1. In the admin portal's navigation pane, click **Team Folders**.

The screen tells you Team Folders is not set up, and it provides you with a **Set up Team Folders** button.



2. Click the **Set up Team Folders** button.  
A wizard for setting up Team Folders opens.
3. In the **Username** field, enter the username of the account that you want to convert into the Team Folder account.

Set up Team Folders

Team Folders Account

A Team Folder account is a full user account but **is not counted towards your user license**

Enter a username for your Team Folders account.  
You can change it later in Team Folder settings.

Natalie

Cancel

Next

4. Click **Next**.

The next window of the wizard indicates that the username already exists, and gives you the option of entering a different username or converting this user:

Set up Team Folders

Invalid User Account

The account Natalie already exists and is full user.  
Would you like to convert it into a Team Folders Account?

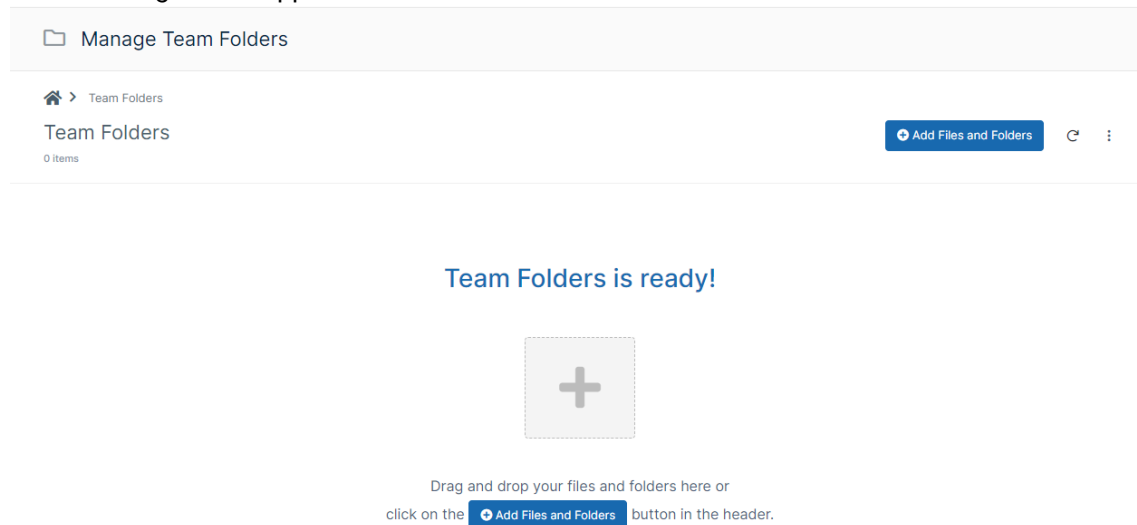
Cancel

Choose a different username

Convert

## 5. Click **Convert**.

The following screen appears:




Now you are ready to create your Team Folders and fill them with contents. You can begin by dragging and dropping folders onto the page or clicking **Add Files and Folders**. These are good options if you do not already have a folder structure set up that you want to bring into FileCloud as your Team Folders.

If you already have a folder structure that you want to use, FileCloud Sync is the preferred method. For instructions on using these methods and others, see [Seed and Organize Team Folder Data](#) (see page 91).

## Create a new account through the Team Folders settings page

To enable team folders and create an account through Team Folders settings:

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Team Folders** . The Team Folders settings page opens.
2. Click the **Enable Team Folders** toggle control.

## Team Folders

[Reset to defaults](#)

Enable Team Folders

Click to enable and manage team folders



3. Click **Save**.

The **Set up Team Folder Account** dialog box **opens**.

4. in **Enter Team Folder Account Name**, type in a unique name.

The **Team Folder Account Name** can contain alphanumeric characters and underscores, periods, dashes and spaces.

5. In the confirmation window, click **OK**.

The **Set Team Folder Account** dialog box opens.

6. Enter a **Display Name**, **Password**, and **Email**, and click **Create**.

The Team Folder account is created and team folders are enabled.

Optionally, click the **Manage** button to set additional properties for the Team Folder account.

Team Folder Account Details

Account Info

Name:

dev1team

Email:

Last Login:

27 Feb 2025 10:41

TOS Date:

Not Accepted

Data Storage

0 B

Unlimited

Quota Usage

899.3 MB Used

Unlimited Total

View Details

Manage Shares

Reset Password

Manage Notifications

Delete Account

Customization

Email

Secondary Email

Display Name

Team Folders

Lock Account

Creation Source

Default

Phone Number

+1

Save

Close

Action	Description
Manage Shares	View all the shares that are created under the Team Folder account.
Reset Password	Reset the password for the Team Folder account.
Manage Notifications	Edit notifications configured on the Team Folder account's file and folder paths.

Team Folders – 89

Action	Description
Delete Account	Delete the Team Folder account. This will delete all the files and folders under the Team Folders.

Property Name	Property Description
Profile image	Image for the Team Folder account.
Email	Email address for the Team Folder account.
Secondary Email	Alternate email address.
Display Name	Display Name for Team Folders that appears in the user interface.
Lock Account	Automatically checked when too many login errors occur. Click to remove check and unlock account.
Creation Source	Where the Team Folder account was created. Options are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Default (Admin user interface or import)</li> <li>• SSO (During SSO sign in)</li> </ul>
Phone Number (added in FileCloud 20.1)	Used when logging in with 2FA.

Now you are ready to create your Team Folders and fill them with contents. You can go to the Team Folders screen and add the folders there. This is a good option if you do not already have a folder structure set up that you want to bring into FileCloud as your Team Folders.

If you already have a folder structure that you want to use, FileCloud Sync is the preferred method.

For instructions on using these methods and others, see [Seed and Organize Team Folder Data \(see page 91\)](#).

### Convert an existing account through the Team Folder settings


You can also create the Team Folder account by promoting a user account that is already in use for company-wide communication.



Promoting existing user accounts to team folders should be done only after understanding all the consequences of such an action.

- This can cause company-wide changes to Sync app users
- Promoting an existing account can potentially cause re-downloading of existing content

To move an existing user account to a Team Folder account:

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Team Folders** . The Team Folders settings page opens.
2. Click the **Enable Team Folders** toggle control.

## Team Folders

 Reset to defaults

Enable Team Folders

Click to enable and manage team folders



3. Click **Save**.  
The **Set up Team Folder Account** dialog box opens.
4. Click the **Enable Team Folders** checkbox.
5. On the **Set up Team Folder Account** window, in **Enter Team Folder Account Name**, type in the existing full user account name you want to use.
6. On the **Set Team Folder Account** window, type in the existing **Password** and **Email** for the existing full user.
7. Click **Create**.
8. Have each user connecting with the Sync app, log out of Sync and restart it.  
If any files in the user account that was converted to the Team Folder account were originally shared with any Sync users, the shared data was synced previously to **Shared With Me**, but is now synced to **Team Folders** → **foldername**.  
After all the data has been downloaded, delete the old folders in **Shared with Me**.

## Seed and Organize Team Folder Data

When you log into the FileCloud user portal with the Team Folder account, the files that appear in the My Files folder are the Team Folders for your FileCloud system. You can create and seed Team Folders by logging into Sync, Drive, or the user portal as the Team Folder account and moving the folders that you want to become Team Folders into the Team Folder account's My Files folder. The recommended method is to log into the Sync client and sync the folders.

Alternately, as an admin, you can log into the admin portal, and manually create Team Folders.

### Sync Client (Recommended)

Seeding Team Folder data with FileCloud Sync Client is both simple and quick. Follow these steps:

1. First, create the Team Folders outside of FileCloud and copy the Team Folder data into them.
2. Download and install the FileCloud Sync Client.
3. Log in to the Sync Client using the Team Folder account credentials created during the [Team Folder Account Setup](#) (see page 81).
4. Open the My Files folder.
5. In file explorer, copy the folders created in Step 1 into My Files.
6. Wait for Sync to run automatically or click Sync Now.  
The folders are synced to My Files in your Team Folder Account. The folders become Team Folders for all other users.

Once the sync is complete, you can log in to the admin interface and go to Team Folders to share them with users and groups and set up permissions.

**Note:** Alternately, use the ServerSync Client instead of the Sync Client.

### Drive Client

Team Folder data can be seeded using the Drive Client. The following steps must be followed to seed data using Drive Client.

1. First, create the Team Folders outside of FileCloud and copy the Team Folder data into them.
2. Download and install the FileCloud Drive Client.
3. Log in to the Drive Client using the Team Folder account credentials created during the [Team Folder Account Setup](#) (see page 81).
4. Locate Drive in your file explorer, and copy the folders created in Step 1 into My Files.  
Drive will automatically detect the new folders and add them to My Files in your Team Folder Account. The folders become Team Folders for all other users.

Once the files and folders are copied, you can log in to the admin interface and go to Team Folders to share them with users and groups and set up permissions.

### Open a browser and log in to the User Portal

The FileCloud web user interface can be used to seed and organize Team Folder data. The following steps must be followed to set up Team Folder data using the user portal.

1. First, create the Team Folders outside of FileCloud and copy the Team Folder data into them.
2. Using a web browser, go to the FileCloud user portal.
3. Log in using the Team Folder account credentials created during the Team Folder account set up.
4. Browse to My Files
5. Copy the folders that you created in Step 1 into My Files.  
These folders become Team Folders for all other users.

Now, log in to the admin interface and go to Team Folders to share them with users and groups and set up permissions.

## Admin Portal

Go to the **Team Folders** page in the admin portal to create Team Folders and seed them with files.

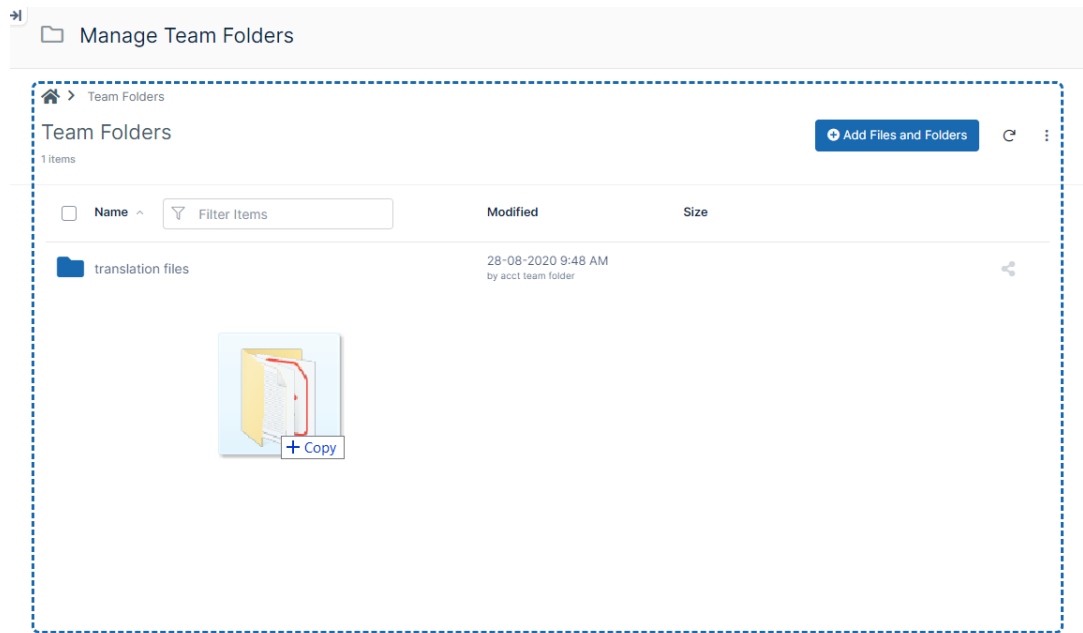
1. Open a browser and log in to the admin portal.
2. Ensure the account that is used to log in has permissions to access Team Folders.  
The main admin account has automatic access to Team Folders. To set Team Folder access to additional admin accounts, see Managing Admin Users.

3. From the left navigation panel, click **Team Folders**.

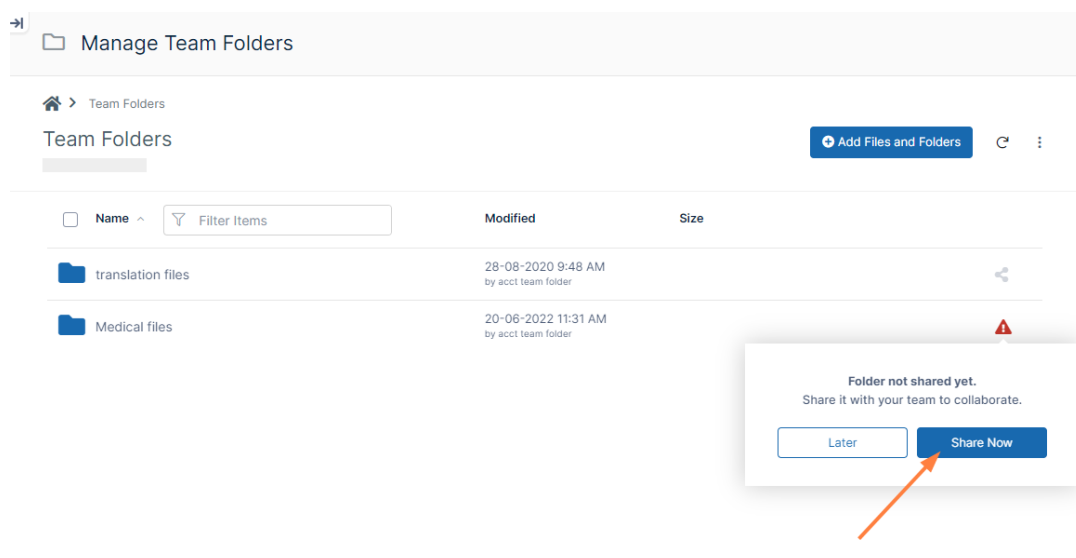
4. Add Team Folders.

### Add Team Folders by dragging and dropping

- a. Drag and drop an existing folder (with or without contents) from your file system onto the Team folders screen.



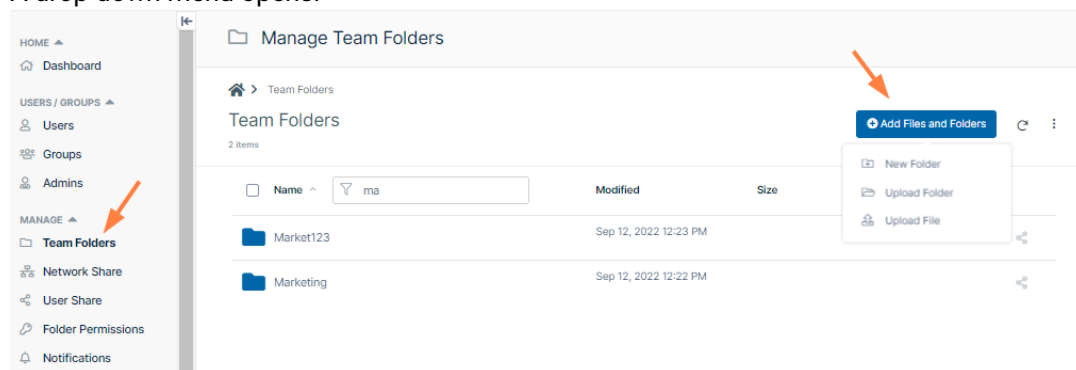
- b. The folder becomes a Team Folder, and you are prompted to share it with users or groups.



- c. Click **Share Now** to [share the Team Folder with users and/or groups](#) (see page 96).
- d. To add contents to the folder, drag and drop them into the folder or click the **Add Files and Folder** button and select them from your file system.

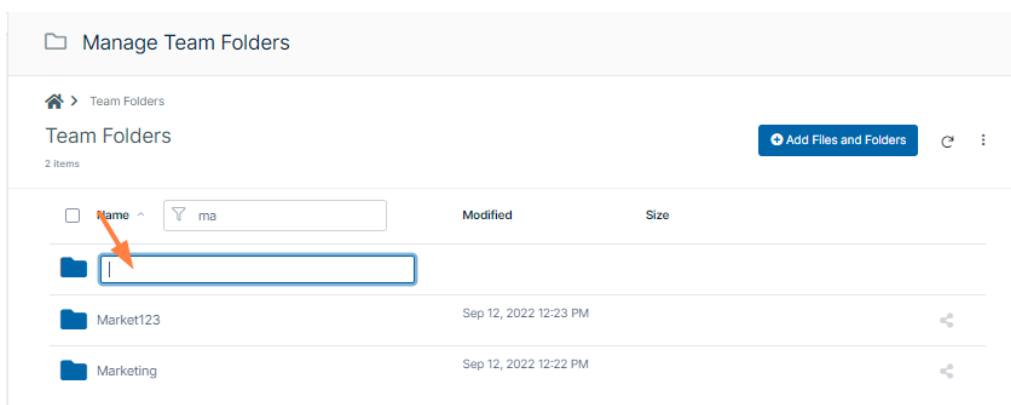
#### Add Team Folders by clicking the button

- a. Click the **Add Files and Folders** button.  
A drop-down menu opens.

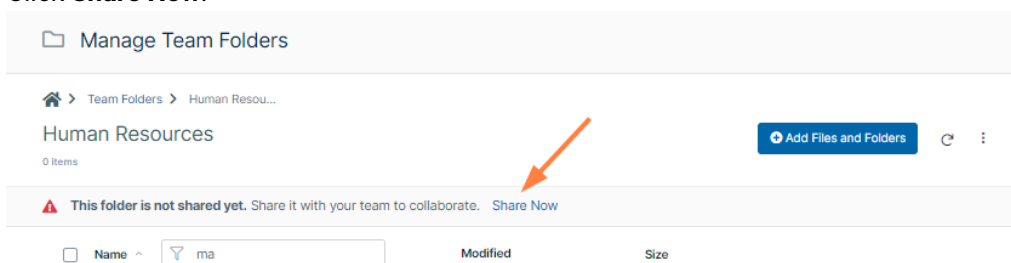


- b. Either choose **New Folder** to create a new Team Folder, or click **Upload Folder** to upload an existing folder (with or without contents) and make it a Team Folder.  
If you choose **New Folder**:

- - A new folder appears in the list. Your cursor is positioned so that you may give the folder a name.



- Add a name and click Enter.  
The folder opens and displays a reminder to share the file.
- Click **Share Now**.



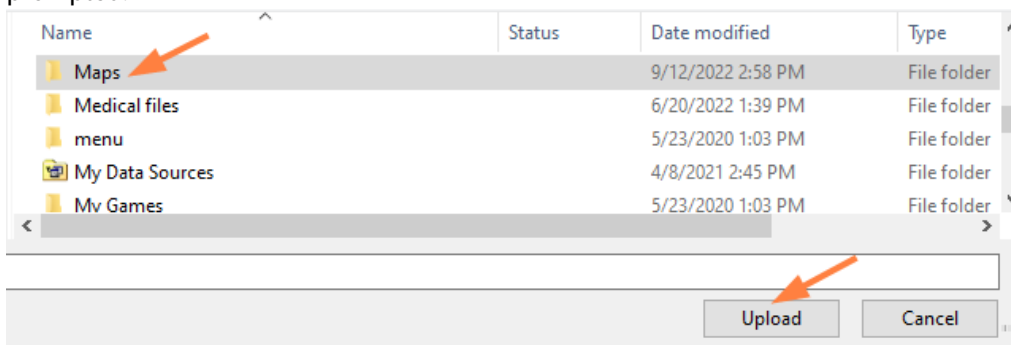
A share dialog box opens.

- To share the folder with users, see [Share the Team Folder and Set Permissions](#) (see page 96).
- To add contents to the folder, drag and drop them into the folder or click the **Add Files and Folder** button and select them from your file system.

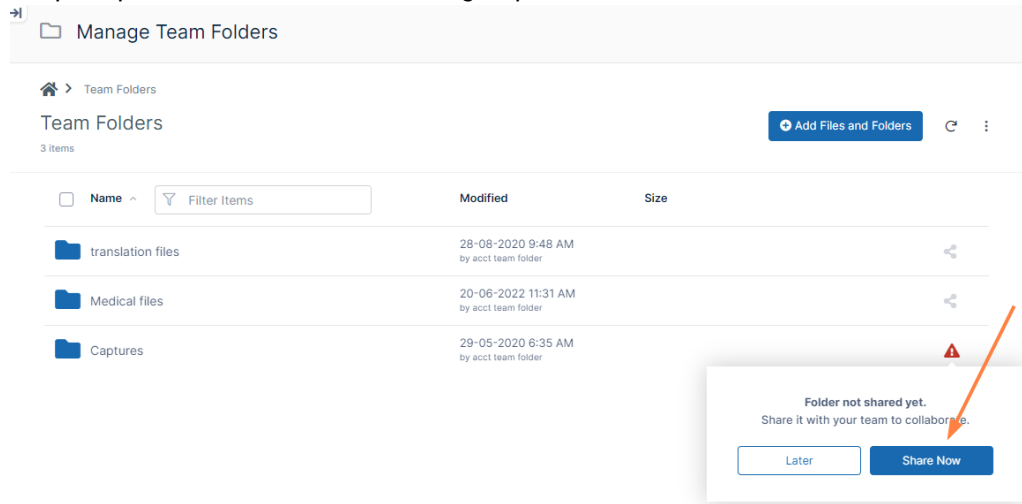
If you choose **Upload Folder**, your file explorer opens.

a.

- Select the folder to use as a Team Folder and upload it. Agree to upload the its files if prompted.



The folder and its contents are uploaded. The folder becomes a Team Folder, and you are prompted to share it with users or groups.



- Click **Share Now** to [share the Team Folder with users and/or groups](#) (see page 96).
- To add contents to the folder, drag and drop them into the folder or click the **Add Files and Folder** button and select them from your file system.

## Share the Team Folder and Set Permissions



Beginning with FileCloud 23.241, admins can share Team Folders with external users. Prior to FileCloud 23.232, they were unable to share Team Folders with external users.



Beginning with FileCloud 23.1, by default, you can no longer share a top-level Team Folder publicly. To enable public sharing, please Contact FileCloud Support.

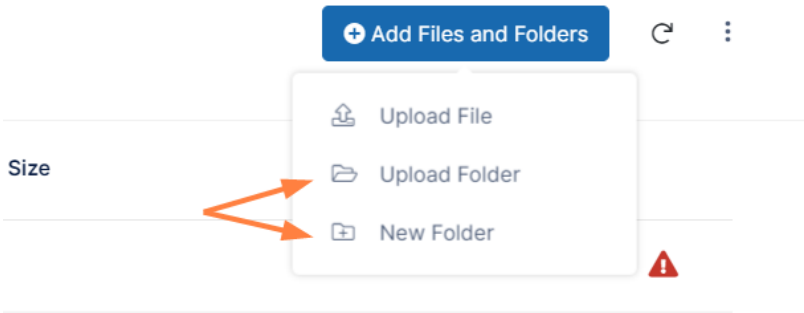
You must share Team Folders before users can access them.

- Team folders that are not shared do not appear under any user's account and are not accessible.
- Team Folders are shared from the admin portal, and may be shared privately with specific groups or users.

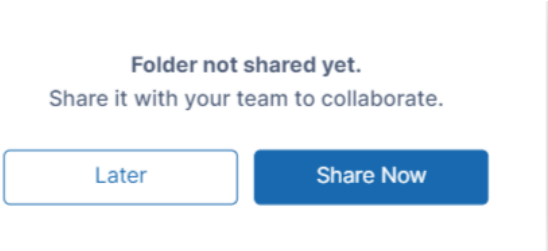
You can share a Team Folder when you add it or at a later time.

**To share a new Team Folder when adding it:**

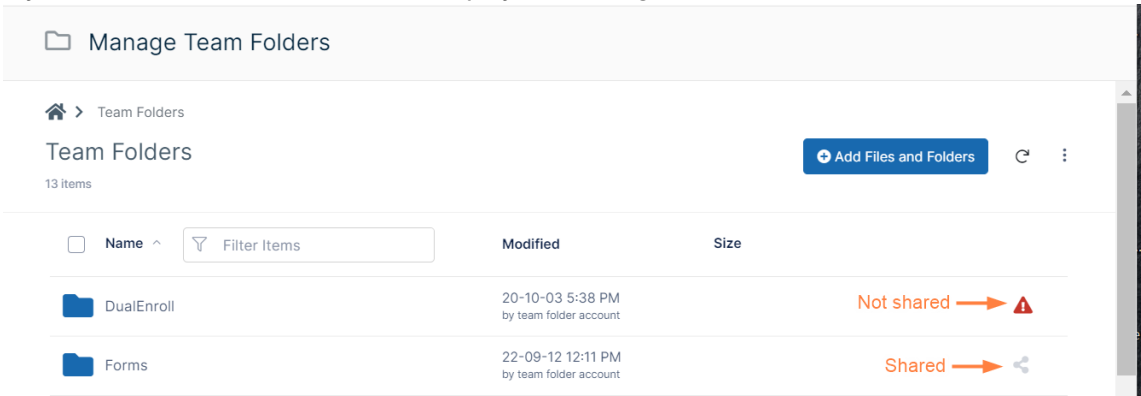
1. In the admin portal, click **Team Folders** in the navigation panel.
2. Drag and drop the folder onto the **Team Folders** screen or use the **Add Files and Folders** button and choose either **Upload Folder** or **New Folder**.



When the folder is added the following prompt appears:



3. Click **Share Now**, to configure the share and share it with users now, or click **Later** to configure and share it at a later time.  
If you choose **Later**, the folder's row displays a warning icon.



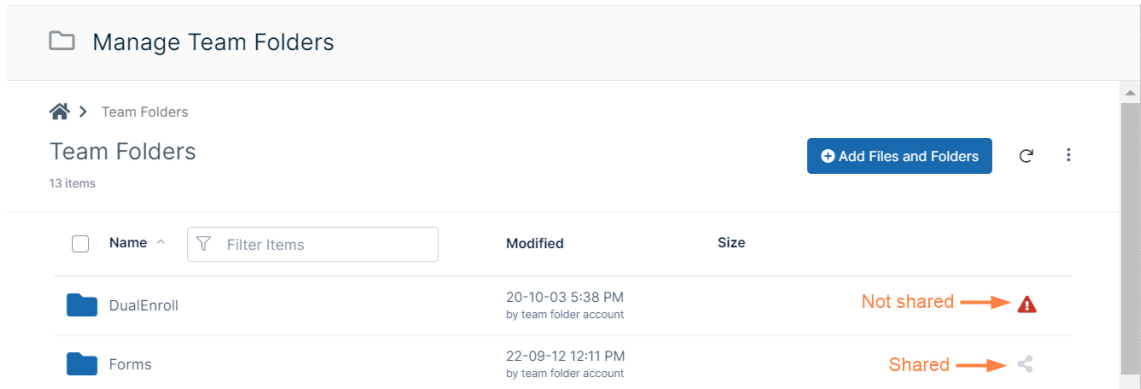
If you choose **Share Now** a **Share link for folder** dialog box opens.

4. To configure the share, see [To complete the Team Folder share \(see page 98\)](#), below.

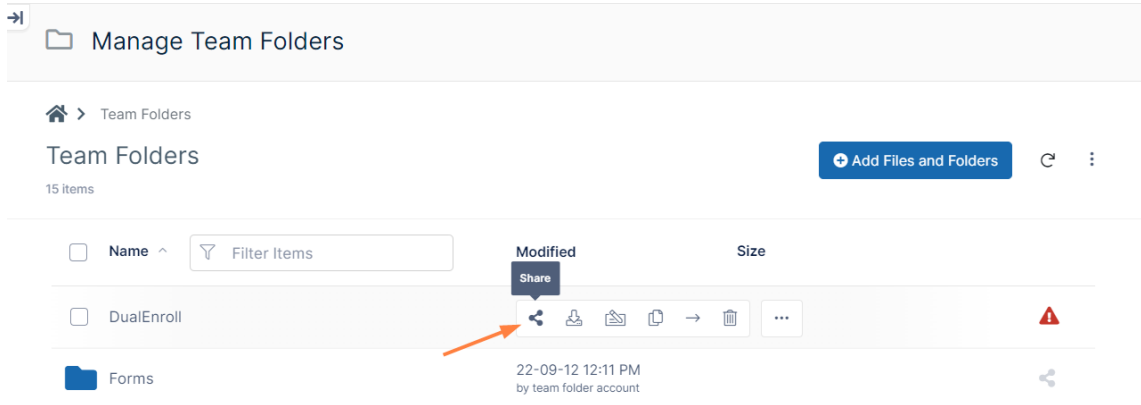
**To share an existing Team Folder:**

1. In the admin portal, click **Team Folders** in the navigation panel.

- The row for a Team Folder displays a share icon if it has already been shared or a warning icon if it has not been shared.



- Hover over a Team Folder with a warning icon, and click the share icon.



The **Share link for folder** dialog box opens.

- To configure the share, see [To complete the Team Folder share \(see page 98\)](#), below.

#### To complete the Team Folder share:

- In the **Share link for folder** dialog box, configure the settings for the share.  
For example, you may want to share the folder with a specific group only or limit the upload size.

Share link for folder DualEnroll

Share Link

http://127.0.0.1/url/wtasaff5bmqsjchr

Modify Link

Shared Folder

/team folders user/DualEnroll

Share Options

Share History

Share Name:

For Review

Change

Expires:

Never Expires

Upload Size Limit (MB):

Unlimited

Limited

1000

Save

Send Email Notifications:

Yes

Allow selected users or groups

Users

Groups (1)

Add Group

Sharing Permissions:

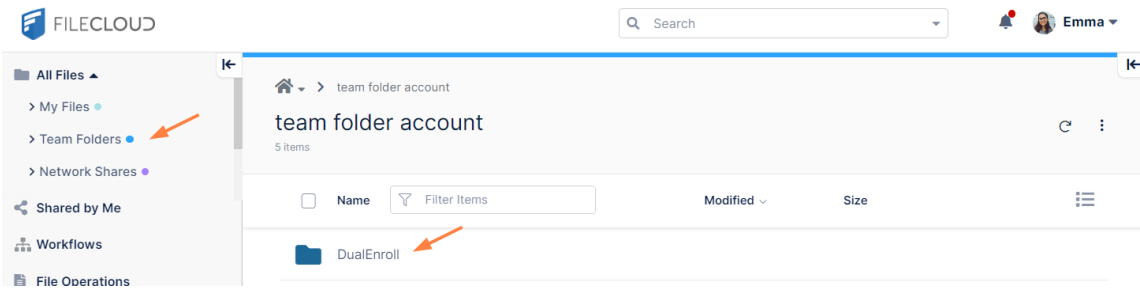
Group	View	Download	Upload	Share	Sync	Delete	Manage
ProjectTeam	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> X

Remove Share

OK

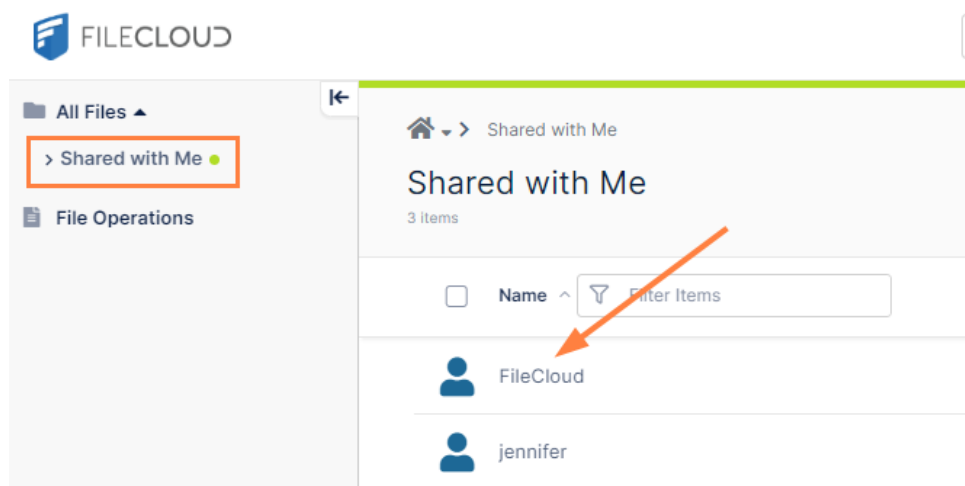
For information about share settings, see [Share Options for Public and Private Folders](#).  
For information about sharing permissions, see [Public Share Permissions for Folders](#) or [Private Share Permissions for Folders](#).  
**Note:** You cannot share a top-level Team Folder publicly,

Once the Team Folder is shared, it appears to all users that have access to it under Team Folders in their account in the FileCloud user portal and in FileCloud clients such as Sync, Drive, and Outlook Add-In.

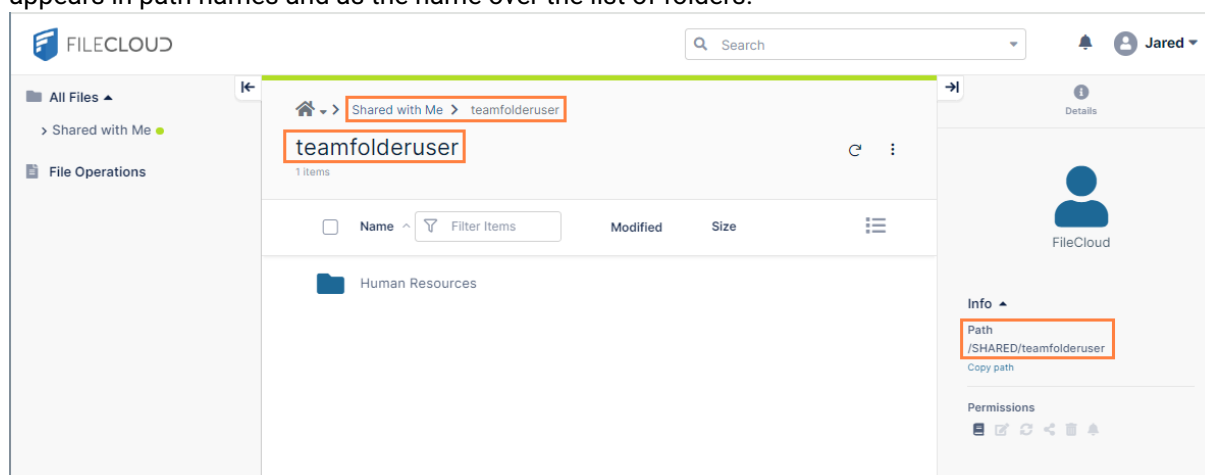


## When you share a Team Folder with an external user

When you share a Team Folder with an external user, the folder appears under **Shared with Me**, and the name of the user who created the share is the **Service Name** (the value in **Settings > Server > Service Name**).



When the external user clicks the **Service Name** to access the share, the Team Folder username appears in path names and as the name over the list of folders.



## If you rename a Team Folder

If you rename a folder, but do not change the name of the Team Folder share, users will continue to see the original Team Folder name. To help you remember to change the share name, FileCloud automatically asks you if you want to change the share name when you change a Team Folder name, as shown in the following video:



## User Settings

Your FileCloud site provides your users with a place to store and share files.

- Every user of FileCloud needs a user account before they can store and access files
- You can configure user accounts to authenticate with the system you already have in place



Administrators cannot create users with the account names **admin** or **superadmin**.

<b>Add User Accounts</b>	<a href="#">Create or Import New Accounts (see page 102)</a> <a href="#">Allow Users to Create Accounts (see page 115)</a>
<b>Configure User Authentication</b>	<a href="#">User Authentication Settings (see page 199)</a> <a href="#">Enabling Default Authentication (see page 199)</a> <a href="#">Active Directory Authentication (see page 200)</a> <a href="#">Connecting to AD via SSL (see page 211)</a> <a href="#">Using Single Sign-On (see page 247)</a>
<b>Manage User Accounts</b>	<a href="#">Migrate data after an account name change (see page 216)</a> <a href="#">Changing the Storage Quota for Users (see page 162)</a> <a href="#">User Session Expiration (see page 161)</a> <a href="#">Restrict Commonly Used Passwords (see page 159)</a> <a href="#">Customize the User Login Screen (see page 169)</a>

## Create FileCloud Users

You can control access to files stored in FileCloud by configuring permissions for user accounts.

- Every user who has access to FileCloud storage must have an account.
- Once a user account is created, it can be assigned different access levels.



In FileCloud version 20.1 and later, special characters from the extended UTF8 alphabet are supported in display names.  
Beginning in FileCloud version 23.251, you can also import users when you import their groups from certain SSO providers. For instructions, see [Group Settings \(see page 178\)](#).



Administrators cannot create users with the account names **admin** or **superadmin**.

### In this section

- [User Access Levels and User Types](#) (see page 103)
- [Manually Create a New User Account](#) (see page 106)
- [Video of Adding FileCloud Server User Account](#) (see page 108)
- [Bulk creation of User Accounts from a CSV File](#) (see page 108)
- [Import a user account from AD or LDAP Service](#) (see page 111)
- [Bulk Import User Accounts from AD Server](#) (see page 113)

## User Access Levels and User Types

When you create a user, you assign it an access level.

There are four different access levels for users.

Level	Access	Notes
<b>Admin Access</b>	The default Admin has complete control over the FileCloud system. Other admin users have those admin permissions given to them.	<p>The default Admin account is used to manage the FileCloud.</p> <p>The default admin user account is 'admin'.</p> <p>Other users can be marked as 'admins' and given limited set of permissions.</p> <p>Read more about <a href="#">Multiple Admins</a></p>
<b>Full Access</b>	Control over its own private cloud storage space in My Files.	<p>These user accounts can:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• store files in their own private cloud storage space</li> <li>• view and download files stored in their storage space</li> <li>• view and download files shared with them by other users</li> </ul>
<b>Guest Access</b>	Restricted access to the FileCloud system.	<p>These user accounts:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Do not have private cloud storage</li> <li>• Can only view/upload/download files shared to them by other user accounts</li> <li>• Can re-share content if they have permissions</li> </ul>

Level	Access	Notes
<b>External Access</b>	Access to FileCloud only through a Web browser.	<p>These user accounts:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Can only view/upload/download content shared with them</li> <li>• Do not count towards the user license limit</li> <li>• Cannot be authenticated via AD and can only be local user accounts</li> <li>• Have external linked email accounts and cannot use the same domain as the FileCloud URL</li> <li>• Can't be added directly to network shares via the admin portal</li> <li>• Can access content from network folders if they are shared</li> </ul>



- **Both Full and Guest users accounts are counted towards user accounts specified in the license.**
- **External Access accounts are NOT counted towards the license.**

## User Types Comparison

User Access Feature	Full Access	Guest Access	External Access
<b>User Portal (Web Browser) Access</b>	Permitted Fully functional	Permitted Not all functions available	Permitted Not all Functions Available
<b>View shared files</b>	Permitted	Permitted	Permitted
<b>Authentication</b>	Local / ActiveDirectory	Local / ActiveDirectory	Local Only
<b>Mobile App Access</b>	Permitted Fully functional	Permitted Not all functions available	<b>Not Available</b>
<b>Personal storage in FileCloud</b>	Available	<b>Not Available</b>	<b>Not Available</b>

<b>Share files with other users</b>	Permitted	Permitted	<b>Not Available</b>
<b>Access storage using Cloud Drive</b>	Permitted	Permitted	<b>Not Available</b>
<b>Sync storage using Cloud Sync</b>	Permitted	Permitted	<b>Not Available</b>
<b>SSO Login</b>	Permitted	Permitted	<b>Not Available</b>
<b>Group Membership</b>	Can be member of any group	Can be member of any group	Can be member of any group except Everyone.
<b>Admin Account</b>	Can be Admin Account	Can be Admin Account	Cannot be an Admin Account
<b>Team Folders</b>	Permitted	Permitted	Permitted
<b>Automation App</b>	Permitted	Permitted	<b>Not Available</b>
<b>File and Folder Comments</b>	Permitted	Permitted	<b>Not Available</b>
<b>2FA</b>	Permitted	Permitted	Available by license beginning in Version 20.2 for Enterprise Advanced customers.

## Checking User Access Level

The access level of any user account can be checked by the Administrator using the admin portal.

### To check a user's access level:

1. Log on to [Administration Portal](#) (see page 33).
2. Click **Manage Users** in the navigation panel.
3. In **Filter**, enter the name or the email of user
4. The **Access** for the user will be listed in the **Status** column.

**Manage Users**

Filter  Filter by name, email or notes Status Filter Source Filter Show 10 Items

	User name	Display Name	Email	Last Login	Status	Actions
	aliah	Aliah	aliahp@example.com	25 Jul 2022 13:46	Full Access	
	brianna	Brianna	brianna@example.com	16 Feb 2022 14:31	Guest Access	
	briano	Brianna	briano@example.com	--	Disabled Access	

## Manually Create a New User Account



The default user storage quota for every new user is set in Managed Storage. See [Setting up Managed Disk Storage \(see page 11\)](#)

**To create a FileCloud user with default authentication:**

1. Log on to Admin Portal.
2. In the left navigation panel, click **Users**.
3. In the top right corner, click the **Add User**.

**Manage Users**

Filter  Filter by name, email or notes Status Filter Source Filter Show 10 Items

	User name	Display Name	Email	Last Login	Status	Actions
	aliah	Aliah	aliahp@example.com	25 Jul 2022 13:46	Full Access	
	brianna	Brianna	brianna@example.com	16 Feb 2022 14:31	Guest Access	
	briano	Brianna	briano@example.com	--	Disabled Access	

## 4. Set the required account information.

Add User

Authentication
Default Authentication

Access Level
Full (Licensed Account with storage)

User name \*
jacobt

Display Name
Jacob

Password \*
.....

☐ Generate password automatically and email to user

Email \*
jacobt@example.com

Send Email Notification
☐

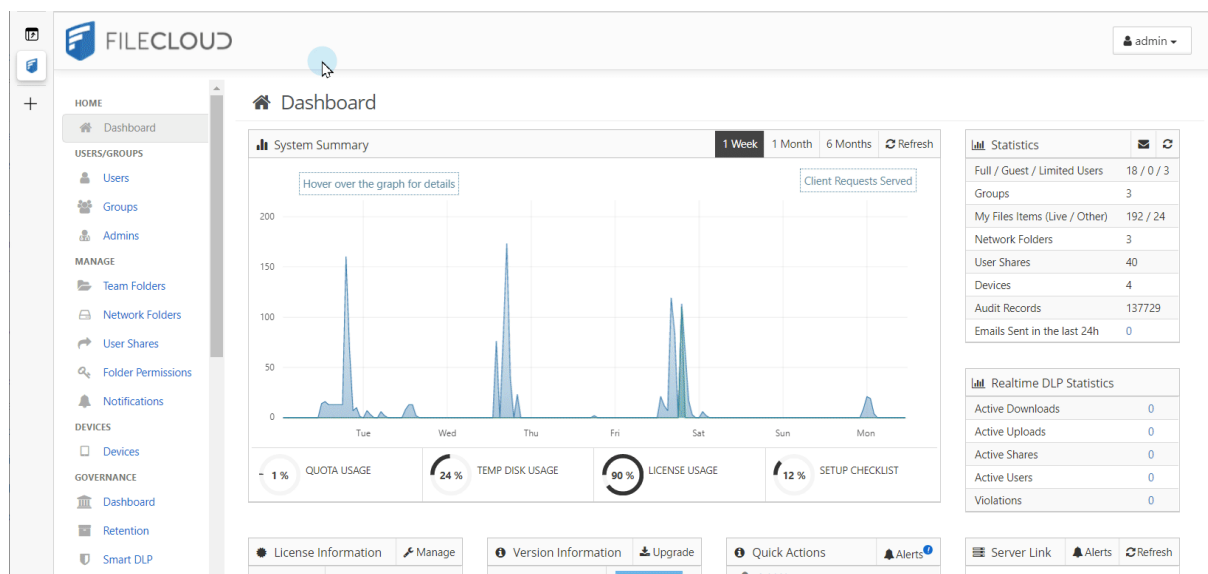
Create Close

Settings	Description
<b>Authentication</b>	<p>Allows you to select the <a href="#">authentication type</a> (see page 199) for granting access into the system.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Default Authentication</b> (see page 199) - creates a local user account. User credentials are stored and authenticated within FileCloud.</li> <li>• <b>LDAP or AD Authentication</b> (see page 224) - creates an external user account. User credentials are stored and authenticated from an external LDAP or AD server.</li> </ul>
<b>Access Level</b>	<p>Allows you to select the user tu[e. A user account with Full or Guest access counts as a license.</p>
<b>User name</b>	<p>Name to be used to log into the system.</p> <p>By default, <b>User name</b> can only contain numbers, spaces, hyphens, periods, underscores, and letters from the Latin alphabet (A-Z, uppercase and lowercase), and email addresses may not be used as usernames.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> To also enable use of apostrophes in the <b>User name</b>, go to <b>Settings &gt; Admin</b> and check <b>Allow Email as Username</b>.</p>

Settings	Description
<b>Display name</b>	Name that appears on user interface
<b>Password</b>	Password for the user (Should adhere to password length and strength requirements for your organization). Either enter a password here, or check the following box.
<b>Generate password automatically and email to user</b>	FileCloud generates a password according to your settings for password limitations and emails it to the user. Anything entered into the <b>Password</b> field is ignored.
<b>Email</b>	An email id that is unique in the FileCloud system
<b>Send Email Notification</b>	When checked, a welcome email is sent to the new user. Unchecked by default. Beginning with FileCloud 20.1, if you uncheck this, you can send a welcome email with a newly generated password later. See Send Email from User Details.
<b>Include Password in Email</b>	When checked, the new user's password is included in the welcome email. Checked by default. Beginning with FileCloud 20.1, if you uncheck this, you can send a welcome email with a newly generated password later. See Send Email from User Details.

5. Click **Create**.

## Video of Adding FileCloud Server User Account



## Bulk creation of User Accounts from a CSV File

You can create multiple accounts at one time using a CSV file.

### Format of CSV file for creating user

To import from a CSV, create a simple text file with the all the user account information. The format of the created file is explained below:

#### CSV import format

UserName, EmailID, Password, DisplayName, Status, ExpirationDate, Groups, EmailVerified

Field	Description
UserName	The user id.
EmailID	A unique email id to be associated with the user.
Password	Password for the user. Must follow password requirements (minimum length, etc.)
DisplayName (optional)	The name that appears in the user interface for the user. Default is same as UserName.
Status (optional)	The user's account type (access level). Options are <a href="#">Guest Full External</a> (see <a href="#">page 102</a> ). Default is Full.
ExpirationDate (optional)	The date the user account will expire. Default is none.
Groups (optional)	<p>The group or groups the user belongs to. If there are multiple groups, separate them with the   character. Default is none.</p> <p>All users other than External users are automatically placed into the <b>Everyone</b> group. External users are automatically placed into the <b>Externals</b> group.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> FileCloud can only recognize group names if you do not insert spaces between the group names and the   characters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Valid: <b>GROUP 1 GROUP 2</b></li> <li>Invalid: <b>GROUP 1   GROUP 2</b></li> </ul>

Field	Description
EmailVerified (optional)	<p>Whether or not the user can initially log in without administrator approval after the account is created.</p> <p>YES - Email is verified, so user can log in without account approval. Default.</p> <p>NO - Email is not verified, so administrator must approve account before user can log in. Administrator approval is only required for the initial login.</p>

Below is a sample csv file for import.

1	UserName	EmailID	Password	DisplayName	Status	Expiration	Groups	EmailVerified
2	nick	<a href="mailto:nick@mycompany.com">nick@mycompany.com</a>		Nick	FULL			NO
3	joe	<a href="mailto:joe@mycompany.com">joe@mycompany.com</a>		Joe	FULL		Accounting   Human Reso	YES
4	lisa	<a href="mailto:lisa@lisat.com">lisa@lisat.com</a>		Lisa	EXTERNAL			YES
5	demozzz	<a href="mailto:demozzz@mycompany.com">demozzz@mycompany.com</a>		demozzz	DISABLED		Accounting	YES
6								

## Importing a CSV File

### To import a CSV File:

1. Log on to the [Administration Portal](#) (see page 33)
2. Click **Users** in the left navigation panel.

The screenshot shows the 'Manage Users' section of the Administration Portal. At the top, there are buttons for 'Add User', 'Import', and 'Export'. Below these are filter options: a search bar with 'usr', 'Status Filter : All', 'Source Filter : All', and 'Show 10 Items'. The main table lists users with columns for User name, Display Name, Email, Last Login, Status, and Actions. An orange arrow points to the 'Import' button.

User name	Display Name	Email	Last Login	Status	Actions
usr	usr	usr.781724r78wfdisabled@a334sudf8s	14 Sep 2022 20:48	Full Access	[Edit] [Reset] [X]
usr2	usr2	9845t0jeglsfsfaafdu5i8gtggfr.com	14 Sep 2022 20:45	Guest Access	[Edit] [Reset] [X]
usritd	usritd	8743yr9yruoifjadsfy984fr@4984gigirkf	18 Feb 2022 08:02	External Access	[Edit] [Reset] [X]

3. Click the **Import** button in the upper-right corner to open the import dialog box.

Import Users

Import Users from CSV

CSV format example:

Note : UserName, EmailID and Password are mandatory and the rest are optional

UserName	EmailID	Password	DisplayName	Status	ExpirationDate	Groups	EmailVerified
jamesweber	jweber@gmail.com	Password1	Displayname1	FULL	02/26/2017	Group1	YES
katiejones	kjones@gmail.com	Password2	Displayname2	GUEST	05/28/2017	Group2	NO
russel	russel@gmail.com	Password3	Displayname3	DISABLED	12/22/2017	Group3	NO
john	john@gmail.com	Password4	Displayname4	EXTERNAL		Group4	YES

Choose File to Import

Choose File

No file chosen

Send Email Notification

☐

Include Password in Email

☐

Import

Import Users from Active Directory

If you are using Active Directory, you can also import users directly from a specific AD group

Import

Close

- Click **Choose File**, and select the CSV file containing the entries of users to be created.
- To send a notification to each user imported, check **Send Email Notification**. (*Added in FileCloud 20.1*)
  - To include each user's password in the email, check **Include Password in Email**.
- Click **Import**.  
When the process is complete, a report is generated indicating the status of each user account creation.



**Note:** To export a CSV file of the users in your system, click the **Export** button.

The fields exported are the same as the imported fields with the addition of the fields **DisableNotifications**, **LastLogin**, **Authentication Type**, **MobilePhone**, and **Effective Policy**. Notice that the **Password** value is not exported.

UserName	EmailID	Password	DisplayNai	Status	Expiration	Groups	EmailVerif	DisableNo	LastLogin	Authenticat	MobilePhc	Effective Policy
gaby	gabrielle_95@exampl		Gaby	FULL		EVERYONE	YES	NO	11/28/2022 14:28	Default		Global Default Policy
keira	keira@example.com		Keira	FULL		EVERYONE	YES	NO		Default		Global Default Policy
brianna	brianna@example.co		Brianna	GUEST		EVERYONE	YES	NO	9/16/2022 9:54	Default	1.44E+10	Global Default Policy
laurel	laurel@example.com		Laurel	FULL		EVERYONE	YES	NO		Default		Global Default Policy
marion	marion@example.coi		Marion	FULL		EVERYONE	YES	NO	3/11/2022 12:02	Default		Global Default Policy
briano	briano@example.con		Brianna	DISABLED		EVERYONE	YES	NO		Default		Global Default Policy

## Import a user account from AD or LDAP Service

- Log on to [Administration Portal](#) (see page 33).
- Set up [AD configuration](#) (see page 200) or [LDAP configuration](#) (see page 224) depending on your requirements.

3. Click **Users** on the left navigation panel.
4. Click **Add User** button.
5. Select **Active Directory or LDAP** as the authentication type.
6. Set the required account information as shown and click save.

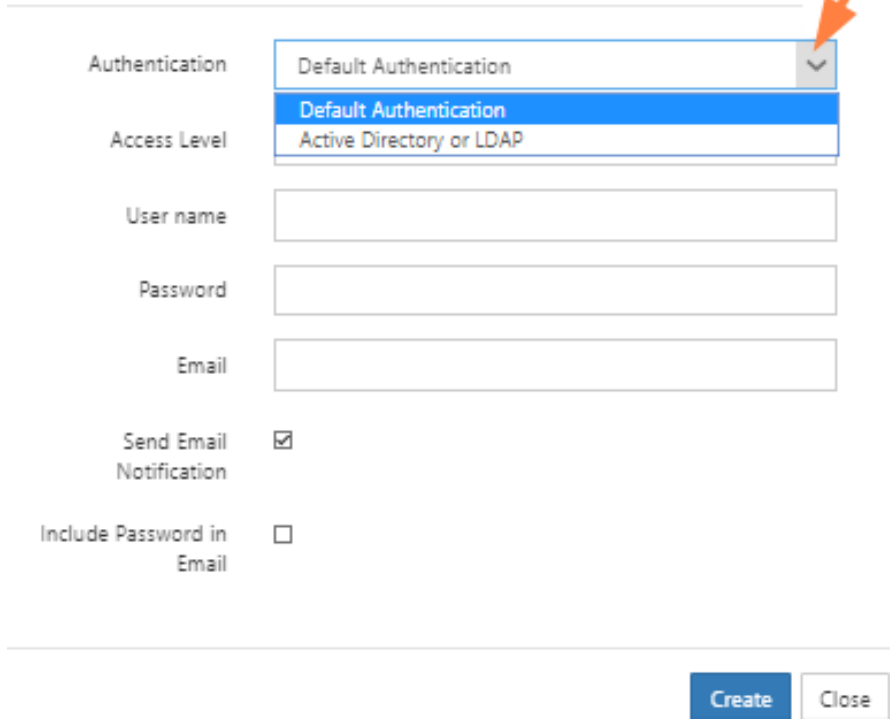
Settings	Description
<b>Authentication</b>	Set to <b>Active Directory or LDAP</b>
<b>AD/LDAP User name</b>	AD/LDAP User name to import
<b>AD/LDAP Password</b>	AD/LDAP User name's Password
<b>Email</b>	Disabled: This will be imported from AD/LDAP service

**Manage Users**

Filter  Status Filter  Source Filter  Show 10 Items

	User name	Display Name	Email	Last Login	Status	Actions
	aliah	Aliah	aliahp@example.com	25 Jul 2022 13:46	Full Access	
	brianna	Brianna	brianna@example.com	16 Feb 2022 14:31	Guest Access	
	briano	Brianna	briano@example.com	--	Disabled Access	

## Add User



Authentication: Default Authentication

Access Level: Active Directory or LDAP

User name:

Password:

Email:

Send Email Notification: ☒

Include Password in Email: ☐

Create Close

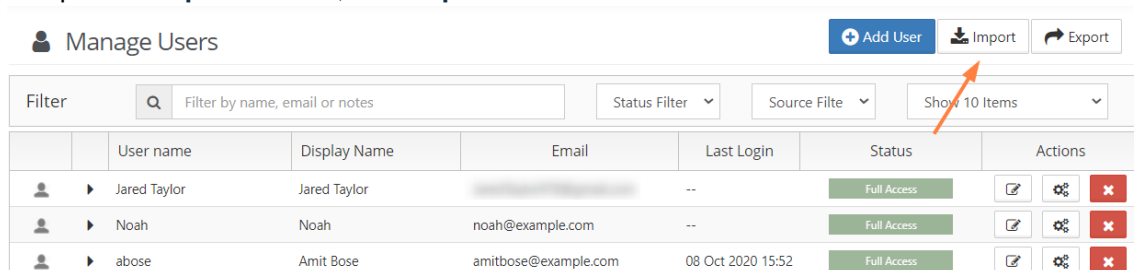
## Bulk Import User Accounts from AD Server

As an administrator, you can create FileCloud user accounts by importing existing accounts from an AD group in your existing AD server.

### Import users from an AD Server

#### To import users from an AD server:

1. Open a browser and log on to Admin Portal.
2. Setup [AD configuration \(see page 200\)](#) or [LDAP configuration \(see page 224\)](#) depending on your requirements.
3. From the left navigation panel, under USERS/GROUPS, click **Users**.
4. To open the **Import** window, click **Import**.



Manage Users

+ Add User Import Export

Filter  Filter by name, email or notes Status Filter Source Filter Show 10 Items

	User name	Display Name	Email	Last Login	Status	Actions
	Jared Taylor	Jared Taylor		--	Full Access	
	Noah	Noah	noah@example.com	--	Full Access	
	abose	Amit Bose	amitbose@example.com	08 Oct 2020 15:52	Full Access	

5. Under **Import Users from Active Directory**, click **Import**.

Import Users

Import Users from CSV

CSV format example:

Note : UserName, EmailID and Password are mandatory and the rest are optional

UserName	EmailID	Password	DisplayName	Status	ExpirationDate	Groups	EmailVerified
jamesweber	jweber@gmail.com	Password1	Displayname1	FULL	02/26/2017	Group1	YES
katiejones	kjones@gmail.com	Password2	Displayname2	GUEST	05/28/2017	Group2	NO
russel	russel@gmail.com	Password3	Displayname3	DISABLED	12/22/2017	Group3	NO
john	john@gmail.com	Password4	Displayname4	EXTERNAL		Group4	YES

Choose File to Import

Choose File No file chosen

Send Email Notification ☐

Include Password in Email ☐

Import

Import Users from Active Directory

If you are using Active Directory, you can also import users directly from a specific AD group

Import

Close

An **AD Group Members Import** dialog box opens.

AD Group Members Import

AD Group Name

Group name to import

Send Email ☐

Send email approval to members of this AD group

Group List

Import

Close

- Type in the **AD Group Name**. A list of existing groups can also be viewed by clicking the **Group List** button.
- To send an email to notify each user after their account is approve, check **Send Email**.
- Click the **Import** button.

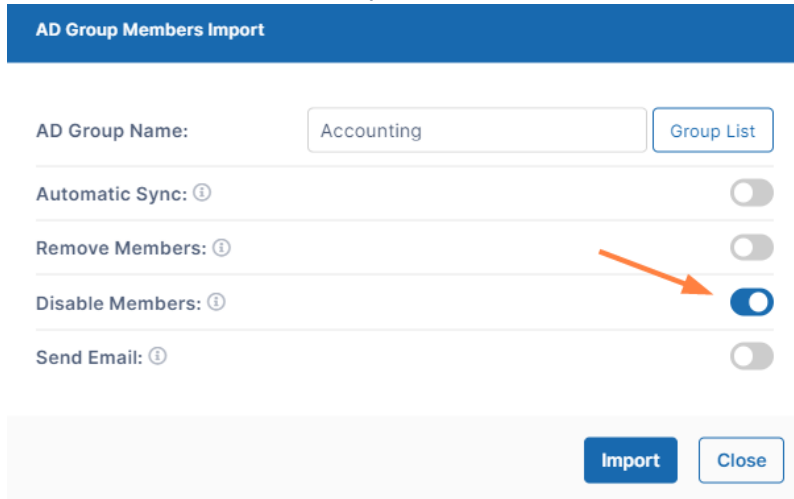
## Import Disabled Users from Active Directory as Disabled

When a user account is disabled in AD, it may be imported as a disabled account into FileCloud.

**To use this option:**

- Open a browser and log on to the admin portal.

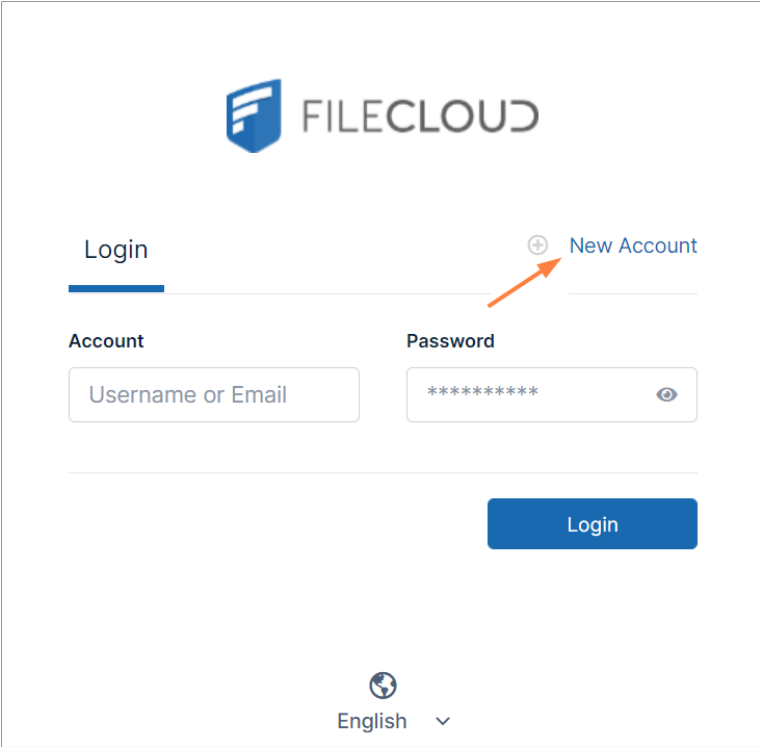
2. In the navigation panel, click **Groups**.
3. Select the **group** that you want to add users to, and then click the Edit icon.
4. On the **Members** tab, click **Import Users from AD Group**.
5. In **AD Group Name**, enter the AD group to import.
6. Enable the **Disable Members** option.




If there are users with disabled accounts in the AD group, they are listed in the admin portal's **Manage Users** screen with **Disabled Access**.

## New Account Creation

By default, a **New Account** button appears on the log-in page that users can click to create or sign up for a new account.



Administrators can customize how new user accounts are created.



If you are enabling FileCloud users to create new accounts when sharing with external individuals, and SMS 2FA is enabled, you must add a setting that allows the user to enter the individual's phone number with the share. To add the setting, see the section **Enable Two Factor Authentication for User Portal (Global setting)** in [Two-Factor Authentication](#) (see page 229).

Who can create and approve accounts

New account settings

Table 1. The Settings

Setting	Location	Options	Description
<b>Show New Account Button</b>	Customization > General > Login	<p><b>ENABLED</b> = Displays <b>New Account</b> button on user log-in page. opens a window for the user to type in new account information</p> <p><b>DISABLED</b> = Hides <b>New Account</b> button on user log-in page.</p>	<p>This setting determines whether the <b>New Account</b> button appears on the user portal log-in page.</p> <p>If enabled, this setting works with two other settings to determine authentication and approval permissions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Allow Account Signups</b></li> <li>• <b>Automatic Account Approval</b></li> </ul>

Setting	Location	Options	Description
<b>Allow account signups</b>	Admin settings page	<p>Specifies if a user can or cannot create a new FileCloud user account from the login page. by choosing:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Default</b></li> <li>• <b>True</b></li> <li>• <b>False</b></li> </ul> <p><b>Can Create an Account</b></p> <p>Prerequisite: <b>Show New Account Button</b> = Enabled</p> <p><b>Default</b> = AD and LDAP users can create their own accounts by logging in to the user portal (they do not have to click the <b>New Account</b> button).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active Directory authentication allowed</li> <li>• LDAP authentication allowed</li> </ul>	<p>This setting controls if the user can create a new account. By default, the account is disabled until an administrator approves it. If you want the account to be automatically approved, use the <b>Automatic Account Approval</b> setting.</p> <p>Do I choose Default or True?</p> <p><b>Default</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you are using AD or LDAP authentication.</li> <li>• You want to allow your AD users to create their own FileCloud user accounts. After you import AD or LDAP user accounts into FileCloud, instruct the users to log in using their AD or LDAP credentials and on first login FileCloud will automatically create their new FileCloud accounts.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> If you are not using AD or LDAP authentication, users cannot create their own accounts.</p> <p><b>True</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you are NOT using AD or LDAP authentication</li> <li>• You want to allow your users to create their own user accounts by clicking the <b>New Account</b> button. By default, the account is disabled until an Administrator approves it.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> If you are using AD or LDAP authentication, AD or LDAP users can create accounts which do not use their AD credentials by clicking the <b>New Account</b> button.</p>

Setting	Location	Options	Description
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Local users (who are not using AD or LDAP authentication) cannot create their own accounts.</li></ul> <p><b>True</b> = Local users can create their own accounts</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Local users (who are not using AD or LDAP authentication) can create their own accounts by clicking the <b>New Account</b> button when they initially log in.</li><li>Active Directory authentication not allowed</li></ul>	

Setting	Location	Options	Description
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>LDAP authentication not allowed</li> </ul> <p><b>Cannot Create an Account</b></p> <p><b>False</b> = No users can create their own accounts</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the <b>New Account</b> button is enabled, and the user clicks it, an error message indicates that new account creation is not allowed.</li> </ul>	
<b>Automatic Account Approval</b>	Admin settings page	<p><b>(Default) No automatic approval. Admin has to approve account.</b></p> <p><b>Automatically approve new accounts to Full User</b></p> <p><b>Automatically approve new accounts to Guest User</b></p> <p><b>Automatically approve new accounts to External User</b></p>	<p>💡 If the total number of licenses has been reached, share invitations to new users are blocked unless <b>Automatic Account Approval</b> is set to <b>Automatically approve new accounts to External User</b>.</p> <p>Prerequisites:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>New Account</b> = ENABLED</li> <li><b>Allow Account Signups</b> = Default or True</li> </ul> <p>This setting determines:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the account created by the user is disabled until the Administrator approves it</li> <li>If the account is approved with a specific level of access automatically without intervention from the Administrator.</li> </ul> <p>💡 For smaller organizations or high security sites, you can configure this option so that when a user creates a new account it is disabled until it is approved by the administrator.</p> <p>💡 For larger organizations, it might not be practical to have the administrator approve every account created and you can use the automatic account approval settings.</p>

## Scenarios

FileCloud supports the ability to customize the creation of user accounts in the following ways:

- Only an Administrator can create new user accounts.
- Users can create their own account but it is disabled. An administrator approves it or denies approval by deleting it.
- Users can create and approve their own accounts.
  - With a default level of access set by an administrator.
  - When Share invitations are sent to new users.
- AD or LDAP users can create a new FileCloud account different from their AD or LDAP credentials.

**Table 2. Only an Admin Creates New Accounts**

Only an Admin can create (or deny) User accounts
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The administrator enables the account in the Admin Portal on the Users page by changing the user's status from <b>Disabled Access</b> to one of the enabled access statuses.</li> <li>2. The user receives a Welcome email with the account credentials and user portal URL.</li> </ol> <p>Note: An administrator denies approval by deleting a user account. In this case the user receives an email to inform them that the account has not been approved.</p>
<p><b>Customization settings, Login tab</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✖ New Account button = DISABLED</li> </ul> <p><b>Admin settings</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✖ Allow Account Signups = False</li> <li>✖ Automatic Account Approval = No automatic approval. Admin has to approve account.</li> </ul>

The scenarios where a user can create a new FileCloud account are described in Table 3.

**Table 3. Users Can Create New Accounts**

Users can create their own accounts

<p>Users can create their own accounts</p> <p>The Admin must approve the accounts</p> <p>💡 This scenario can also be used to allow new users to create an account when a Share invitation is sent.</p>	<p>Users can create their own accounts</p> <p>Users can approve their own accounts</p> <p>💡 This scenario can also be used to allow new users to create an account when a Share invitation is sent.</p>	<p>Active Directory or LDAP</p> <p>Users create a new FileCloud account different from their AD or LDAP credentials</p> <p>The Admin can configure the approval process</p>
--	---	---

⚠ This scenario does not work for AD and LDAP users. Refer to the specific scenarios and settings for AD and LDAP users.

1. The Administrator configures the User Search Mode.
2. The Administrator configures New Account Creation settings.
3. The Administrator provides the user with the URL for the User Portal OR an invitation to create a new account is sent when a user shares a folder or file.
4. The User accesses the user portal from a Web browser, mobile device, or FileCloud client app.
5. On the user portal login window, the user clicks the New Account button.
6. The user enters details in the account creation fields.
7. The account is created but is disabled by default.
8. The Admin will be notified about the new account.
9. The Admin will approve the account.
10. The Admin will set the user account type to Full or Guest.
11. The user will receive an account creation email using the email address provided during account creation.
12. The user is required to verify the email account to complete the account creation process.

⚠ This scenario does not work for AD and LDAP users. Refer to the specific scenarios and settings for AD and LDAP users.

1. The Administrator configures the User Search Mode.
2. The Administrator configures New Account Creation settings.
3. The Administrator provides the user with the URL for the User Portal OR an invitation to create a new account is sent when a user shares a folder or file.
4. The User accesses the user portal from a Web browser, mobile device, or FileCloud client app.
5. On the User Portal Login window, the user clicks the New Account button.
6. The user enters details in the account creation fields.
7. The account is created and is granted access of a Full, Guest, or External User as set by the Administrator in Settings > Admin.
8. The Admin is notified about the new account.
9. The user will receive an account creation email using the email address provided during account creation.
10. The user is required to verify the email account to complete the account creation process.

1. The Administrator configures the Authentication Type as Active Directory or LDAP.
2. The Administrator imports AD or LDAP user accounts into FileCloud.
3. The Administrator provides the user with the URL for the User Portal.
4. The User accesses the user portal from a Web browser, mobile device, or FileCloud client app.
5. On the User Portal Login window, the user clicks the New Account button.
6. The user enters details in the account creation fields.
7. The account is created and is either disabled OR granted access of a Full, Guest, or External User as set by the Administrator in Admin settings.
8. The Admin is notified about the new account.
9. The user will receive an account creation email using the email address provided during account creation.
10. The user is required to verify the email account to complete the account creation process.

<p><b>Settings, Users settings</b></p> <p>✔ User Account Search Mode = Exact Email with Implicit Account Invite OR Exact Email with Explicit Account Invite</p> <p><b>Settings, Authentication settings</b></p> <p>✔ Authentication Type = DEFAULT</p> <p><b>Customization settings, Login tab</b></p> <p>✔ New Account button = ENABLED</p> <p><b>Settings, Admin settings</b></p> <p>✔ Allow Account Signups = True</p> <p>✖ Automatic Account Approval = No automatic approval. Admin has to approve account.</p>	<p><b>Settings, Users settings</b></p> <p>✔ User Account Search Mode = Exact Email with Implicit Account Invite OR Exact Email with Explicit Account Invite</p> <p><b>Settings, Authentication settings</b></p> <p>✔ Authentication Type = DEFAULT</p> <p><b>Customization settings, Login tab</b></p> <p>✔ New Account button = ENABLED</p> <p><b>Settings, Admin settings</b></p> <p>✔ Allow Account Signups = True</p> <p>✔ Automatic Account Approval = Automatically approve new accounts to Full, Guest, or External User</p> <p>Set <b>Create account on new user share</b> to <b>true</b> in the policy.</p>	<p><b>Settings, Authentication settings</b></p> <p>✔ Authentication Type = ACTIVE DIRECTORY or LDAP</p> <p><b>Customization settings, Login tab</b></p> <p>✔ New Account button = ENABLED</p> <p><b>Settings, Admin settings</b></p> <p>✔ Allow Account Signups = Default</p> <p>ℹ Automatic Account Approval = any value</p>
--	--	---

The scenarios where FileCloud automatically creates a new user account are described in Table 4.

**Table 4. Automatic Account Creation**

<p><b>FileCloud automatically creates a new FileCloud account for Active Directory or LDAP Users on First Login</b></p>
<p>1. The Administrator configures the Authentication Type as Active Directory or LDAP.</p> <p>2. (Optional) The Administrator imports AD or LDAP user accounts into FileCloud.</p> <p>3. The Administrator provides the user with the URL for the User Portal.</p> <p>4. The User accesses the user portal from a Web browser, mobile device, or FileCloud client app.</p> <p>5. On the User Portal Login window, the user enters their AD or LDAP username and password.</p> <p>6. FileCloud uses the AD or LDAP credentials to automatically create a FileCloud account for that user.</p>
<p><b>Settings, Authentication settings</b></p> <p>✔ Authentication Type = ACTIVE DIRECTORY or LDAP</p> <p><b>Customization settings, Login tab</b></p> <p>✔ New Account button = ENABLED</p> <p><b>Settings, Admin settings</b></p> <p>✔ Allow Account Signups = Default</p> <p>✔ Automatic Account Approval = Automatically approve new accounts to Full or Guest User.</p>

Also in this section:

- [Account Approval](#) (see page 125)
- [Allow AD or LDAP Users to Create a New Account](#) (see page 128)
- [Allow Only an Admin To Create New Accounts](#) (see page 136)
- [Allow Users to Create and Approve Accounts](#) (see page 141)
- [Allow Users to Create a New Disabled Account](#) (see page 147)
- [Prevent Email Addresses as Usernames](#) (see page 153)
- [Domain Limitations for External Users](#) (see page 154)


## Account Approval

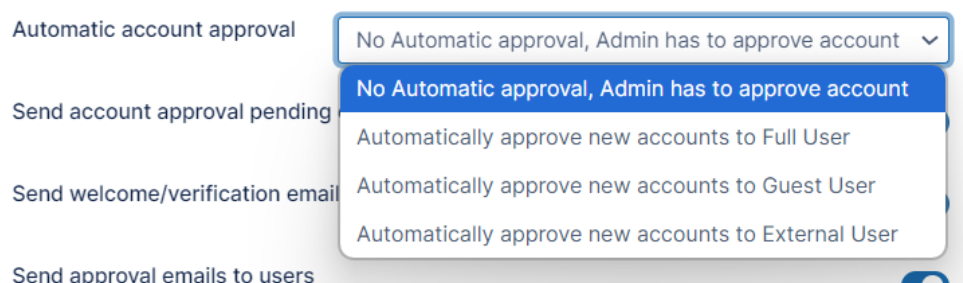
This feature is used to allow automatic account creation by a user who clicks the **New Account** button in user portal login page.

The admin can set account approval in the **Automatic account approval** field in the Admin settings page.

### Account approval settings

#### To set Automatic account approval:

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the Settings navigation page, click **Admin**  . The Admin settings page opens.
2. Scroll down to the **Automatic account approval** field.
3. Choose one of the values shown below:



Automatic account approval

Send account approval pending

Send welcome/verification email

Send approval emails to users

Value	Description
No Automatic approval, Admin has to approve account	Default. The account can be created by the user but the user cannot log in. The account requires admin approval for the user to access it.

Value	Description
Automatically approve new accounts to Full User	The user can create the account and immediately log in to FileCloud without waiting for admin approval. The account has Full User permission.
Automatically approve new accounts to Guest User	The user can create the account and immediately log in to FileCloud without waiting for admin approval. The account has Guest User permission. Later the admin can change the permission to Full User permission.
Automatically approve new accounts to External User	The user can create the account and immediately log in to FileCloud without waiting for admin approval. The account has External User permission.

To know more about the difference between Full, Guest and External users, see the [User Access \(see page 102\)](#) page.

### No Automatic approval, Admin has to approve account

In this mode the user can create an account to access FileCloud but cannot log in until the admin approves the account, so the system sends an Approval Pending email to the admin. Once the admin approves the user, the user receives an Approval email, and can log in and access FileCloud.

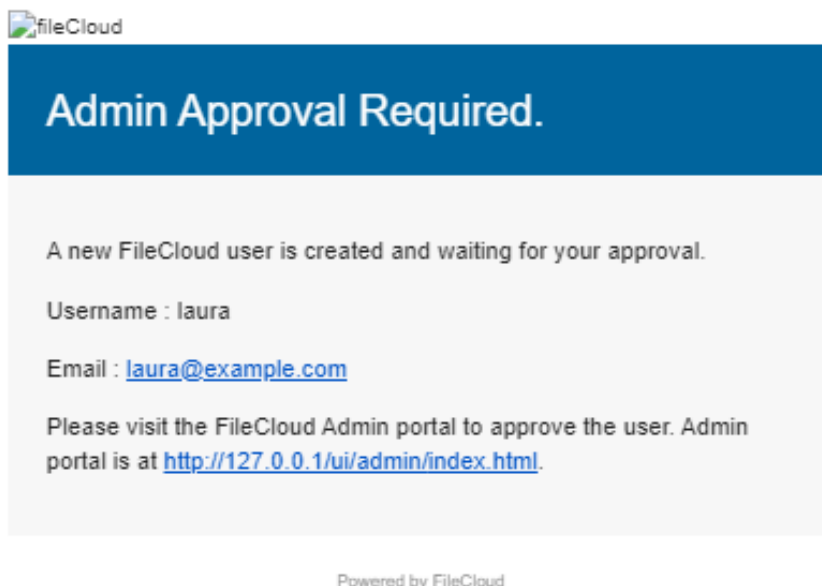


#### Note

- Approval emails are sent only if the option **Send account approval pending emails** is enabled in the admin portal in the Admin settings page. The setting is enabled by default.
- If **Send account approval pending emails** is disabled, the admin is not notified about account creation. In this case, new accounts are approved only when admin user logs in.
- If **Send account approval pending emails** is enabled, the emails are sent to the Admin email in the Admin settings page.

## Approving an account as an admin

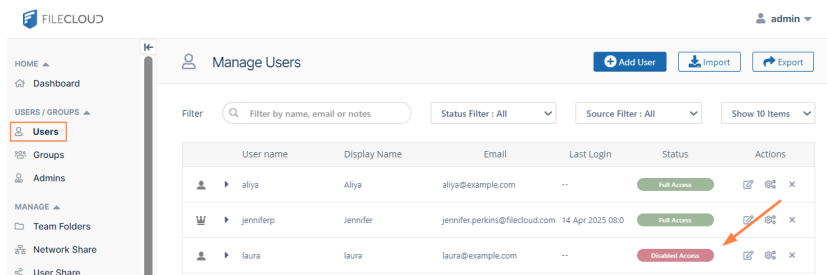
When users create their own accounts and the Admin setting field **Automatic account approval** is set to the default value of **No Automatic approval, Admin has to approve account**, by default you are sent an email to your admin account informing you that a new user has been created and your approval is required to enable it:



If you disable the **Send account approval pending emails** field in the Admin settings page, FileCloud does not notify you that a new account has been created, and you must be notified by a user or browse for new, disabled users in the Manage User page when you log in.

#### To approve a new, disabled user:

1. In the admin portal, in the navigation panel, click **Users**, and in the Manage Users page, locate the new user, who will have disabled access.



2. To open the **User Details**, click the edit icon for the user.
3. Change the **Access Level** from **Disabled** to one of the access levels with permissions.

User Details

Name

laura

Email

laura@example.com

Last Login

--

Total Quota

2 GB

Used Quota

0 B

Available Quota

2 GB

Used Storage

0 B

Refresh

TOS Date

Not Accepted

Group

Manage

More

Manage Files

Manage Policy

Manage Shares

Mobile Devices

Reset Password

Send Email

Manage Notifications

Manage Backups

Delete Account

Profile Image

Access Level

Disabled

Disabled

Guest

Full

External

Secondary Email

Save

Close

The user is now approved and can log in to and use FileCloud.

FILECLOUD

admin

HOME

Dashboard

USERS / GROUPS

Users

Groups

Admins

MANAGE

Team Folders

Network Share

User Share

Manage Users

Add User

Import

Export

Filter

Filter by name, email or notes

Status Filter : All

Source Filter : All

Show 10 Items

User name	Display Name	Email	Last Login	Status	Actions
aliya	Aliya	aliya@example.com	--	Full Access	<div><div></div><div></div><div></div></div>
jenniferp	Jennifer	jennifer.perkins@filecloud.com	14 Apr 2025 08:0	Full Access	<div><div></div><div></div><div></div></div>
laura	laura	laura@example.com	--	Full Access	<div><div></div><div></div><div></div></div>

## Allow AD or LDAP Users to Create a New Account



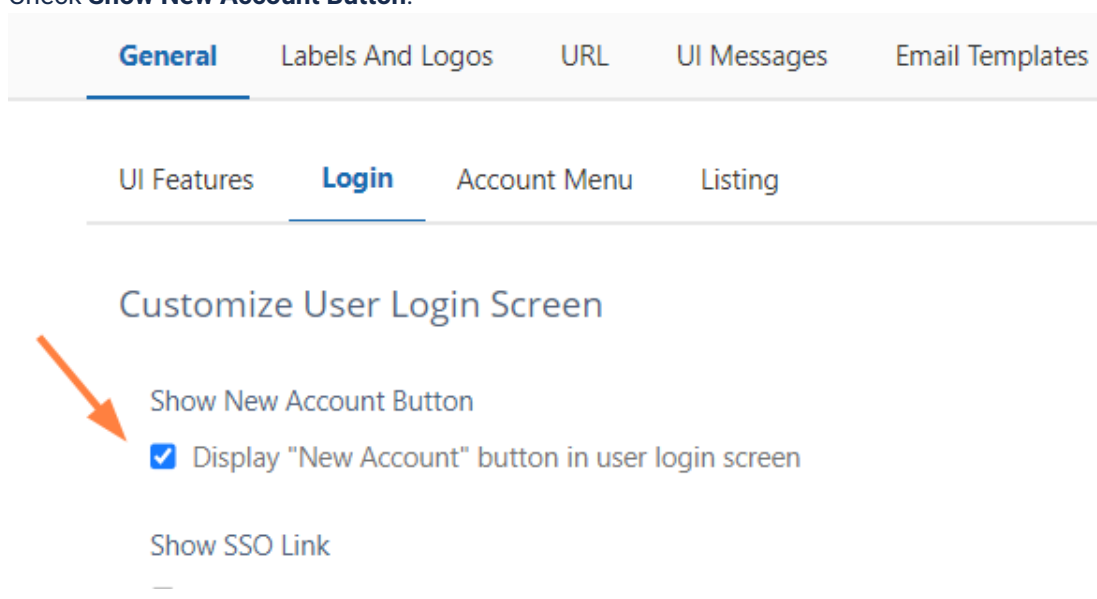
Active Directory (AD) accounts are only available in some versions of FileCloud Online.

Administrators can allow AD or LDAP users to create a new FileCloud user account in one of the following ways:

- Have FileCloud automatically create a new FileCloud account for AD or LDAP Users on first login (credentials are the same as their AD or LDAP credentials)
- Active Directory or LDAP users create a new FileCloud account different from their AD or LDAP credentials

To allow an AD or LDAP user to create a new FileCloud user account:

1. Set up AD or LDAP based authentication following the instructions in Active Directory Authentication ([see page 200](#)) or LDAP Based Authentication ([see page 224](#)).
2. In the FileCloud admin portal, go to **Customization > Login**.
3. Check **Show New Account Button**.



4. Now, in the FileCloud admin portal, go to **Settings > Admin**.
5. In **Allow account signups**, select **Default**.

# Admin

↻ Reset to defaults

Admin login name

Change the default admin user name.

admin

Admin email

Email id for admin account

Enable two-factor authentication for admin logins

Requires valid admin or admin user email id.

☐

Reset main admin password

Reset Admin Password

Stats API key

API Key for getting stats

.....

Allow account signups

Allow new account creation during login.

Default ▾

Allow email as username

☒

6. To set an approval method, in **Automatic account approval**, choose a value.

Automatic account approval

Send account approval pending

Send welcome/verification email

Send approval emails to users

No Automatic approval, Admin has to approve account ▾

No Automatic approval, Admin has to approve account

Automatically approve new accounts to Full User

Automatically approve new accounts to Guest User

Automatically approve new accounts to External User

The user is notified by email when:

- Trying to connect (when admin approval is pending)
- When the admin has approved the device trying to connect

Table 1. The Settings

Setting	Location	Options	Description
<b>Show New Account Button</b>	Customization > General > Login	<p><b>ENABLED</b> = Displays <b>New Account</b> button on user log-in page. opens a window for the user to type in new account information</p> <p><b>DISABLED</b> = Hides <b>New Account</b> button on user log-in page.</p>	<p>This setting determines whether the <b>New Account</b> button appears on the user portal log-in page.</p> <p>If enabled, this setting works with two other settings to determine authentication and approval permissions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Allow Account Signups</b></li> <li>• <b>Automatic Account Approval</b></li> </ul>

Setting	Location	Options	Description
<b>Allow account signups</b>	Admin settings page	<p>Specifies if a user can or cannot create a new FileCloud user account from the login page. by choosing:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Default</b></li> <li>• <b>True</b></li> <li>• <b>False</b></li> </ul> <p><b>Can Create an Account</b></p> <p>Prerequisite: <b>Show New Account Button</b> = Enabled</p> <p><b>Default</b> = AD and LDAP users can create their own accounts by logging in to the user portal (they do not have to click the <b>New Account</b> button).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active Directory authentication allowed</li> <li>• LDAP authentication allowed</li> </ul>	<p>This setting controls if the user can create a new account. By default, the account is disabled until an administrator approves it. If you want the account to be automatically approved, use the <b>Automatic Account Approval</b> setting.</p> <p>Do I choose Default or True?</p> <p><b>Default</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you are using AD or LDAP authentication.</li> <li>• You want to allow your AD users to create their own FileCloud user accounts. After you import AD or LDAP user accounts into FileCloud, instruct the users to log in using their AD or LDAP credentials and on first login FileCloud will automatically create their new FileCloud accounts.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> If you are not using AD or LDAP authentication, users cannot create their own accounts.</p> <p><b>True</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you are NOT using AD or LDAP authentication</li> <li>• You want to allow your users to create their own user accounts by clicking the <b>New Account</b> button. By default, the account is disabled until an Administrator approves it.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> If you are using AD or LDAP authentication, AD or LDAP users can create accounts which do not use their AD credentials by clicking the <b>New Account</b> button.</p>

Setting	Location	Options	Description
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Local users (who are not using AD or LDAP authentication) cannot create their own accounts.</li></ul> <p><b>True</b> = Local users can create their own accounts</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Local users (who are not using AD or LDAP authentication) can create their own accounts by clicking the <b>New Account</b> button when they initially log in.</li><li>Active Directory authentication not allowed</li></ul>	

Setting	Location	Options	Description
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>LDAP authentication not allowed</li> </ul> <p><b>Cannot Create an Account</b></p> <p><b>False</b> = No users can create their own accounts</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the <b>New Account</b> button is enabled, and the user clicks it, an error message indicates that new account creation is not allowed.</li> </ul>	
<b>Automatic Account Approval</b>	Admin settings page	<p><b>(Default) No automatic approval. Admin has to approve account.</b></p> <p><b>Automatically approve new accounts to Full User</b></p> <p><b>Automatically approve new accounts to Guest User</b></p> <p><b>Automatically approve new accounts to External User</b></p>	<p>💡 If the total number of licenses has been reached, share invitations to new users are blocked unless <b>Automatic Account Approval</b> is set to <b>Automatically approve new accounts to External User</b>.</p> <p>Prerequisites:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>New Account</b> = ENABLED</li> <li><b>Allow Account Signups</b> = Default or True</li> </ul> <p>This setting determines:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the account created by the user is disabled until the Administrator approves it</li> <li>If the account is approved with a specific level of access automatically without intervention from the Administrator.</li> </ul> <p>💡 For smaller organizations or high security sites, you can configure this option so that when a user creates a new account it is disabled until it is approved by the administrator.</p> <p>💡 For larger organizations, it might not be practical to have the administrator approve every account created and you can use the automatic account approval settings.</p>

You can allow AD and LDAP users to create accounts with their AD and LDAP credentials or with different credentials.

Admins want FileCloud to automatically create a new FileCloud account for their Active Directory or LDAP Users on first login	Active Directory or LDAP Users create a new FileCloud account different from their AD or LDAP credentials The Admin can configure the approval process
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The administrator configures the <b>Authentication type</b> as <b>Active Directory</b> or <b>LDAP</b>.</li> <li>2. (Optional) The administrator imports AD or LDAP user accounts into FileCloud.</li> <li>3. The administrator provides the user with the URL for the user portal.</li> <li>4. The user accesses the user portal from a Web browser, mobile device, or FileCloud client application.</li> <li>5. On the login window, the user enters their AD or LDAP username and password.</li> <li>6. FileCloud uses the AD or LDAP credentials to automatically create a FileCloud account for that user.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The administrator configures the <b>Authentication Type</b> as <b>Active Directory</b> or <b>LDAP</b>.</li> <li>2. (Optional) The administrator imports AD or LDAP user accounts into FileCloud.</li> <li>3. The administrator provides the user with the URL for the user portal.</li> <li>4. The user accesses the user portal from a Web browser, mobile device, or FileCloud client application.</li> <li>5. On the user portal login window, the user clicks the <b>New Account</b> button.</li> <li>6. The user enters details in the account creation fields.</li> <li>7. The account is created and is either disabled OR granted access of a Full User, Guest User, or External User as set by the administrator.</li> <li>8. The admin is notified about the new account.</li> <li>9. The user receives an account creation email using the email address provided during account creation.</li> <li>10. The user is required to verify the email account to complete the account creation process.</li> </ol>
<p><b>Settings, Authentication settings</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✔ Authentication type = Active Directory or LDAP</li> </ul> <p><b>Customization &gt; Login</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✔ New Account button = Enabled</li> </ul> <p><b>Settings, Admin settings</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✔ Allow account signups = Default</li> <li>✔ Automatic account approval = The new user account is automatically approved with <b>Full</b> or <b>Guest</b> access.</li> </ul>	<p><b>Settings, Authentication settings</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✔ Authentication Type = Active Directory or LDAP</li> </ul> <p><b>Customization &gt; Login</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✔ New Account button = Enabled</li> </ul> <p><b>Settings, Admin settings</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✔ Allow Account Signups = Default</li> <li>ℹ Automatic Account Approval = any choice</li> </ul>

For more information:

[Configure Active Directory \(see page 200\)](#)

[Configure LDAP \(see page 224\)](#)

## Configuring a Scenario

FileCloud supports the following authentication modes:

- Default authentication
- Active Directory based authentication
- LDAP based authentication

The following table describes how each authentication mode impacts the users' ability to create a new account.

	Default Authentication	AD	LDAP
<b>Authentication</b>	Performed by FileCloud Server	In AD Server	In LDAP Server
<b>Users can Create Accounts</b>	Permitted	Not Permitted	Not Permitted
<b>User Account Types</b>	Full, Guest, External	Full, Guest	Full, Guest

### Prerequisites

- Active Directory or LDAP service must be accessible from FileCloud (IP and Port must be accessible)
- Active Directory or LDAP must support Simple Authentication Method (Anonymous or Name/Password Authentication Mechanism of Simple Bind)
- Active Directory or LDAP users must have an email attribute

## Allow Only an Admin To Create New Accounts

Administrators can customize how new user accounts are created.

In this scenario, you will configure the FileCloud site so that only administrators can create new accounts.

The settings that you use to configure this scenario is described in Table 1.

**Table 1. The Settings**

Setting	Location	Options	Description
<b>Show New Account Button</b>	Customization > General > Login	<p><b>ENABLED</b> = Displays <b>New Account</b> button on user log-in page. opens a window for the user to type in new account information</p> <p><b>DISABLED</b> = Hides <b>New Account</b> button on user log-in page.</p>	<p>This setting determines whether the <b>New Account</b> button appears on the user portal log-in page.</p> <p>If enabled, this setting works with two other settings to determine authentication and approval permissions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Allow Account Signups</b></li> <li>• <b>Automatic Account Approval</b></li> </ul>

Setting	Location	Options	Description
<b>Allow account signups</b>	Admin settings page	<p>Specifies if a user can or cannot create a new FileCloud user account from the login page. by choosing:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Default</b></li> <li>• <b>True</b></li> <li>• <b>False</b></li> </ul> <p><b>Can Create an Account</b></p> <p>Prerequisite: <b>Show New Account Button</b> = Enabled</p> <p><b>Default</b> = AD and LDAP users can create their own accounts by logging in to the user portal (they do not have to click the <b>New Account</b> button).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active Directory authentication allowed</li> <li>• LDAP authentication allowed</li> </ul>	<p>This setting controls if the user can create a new account. By default, the account is disabled until an administrator approves it. If you want the account to be automatically approved, use the <b>Automatic Account Approval</b> setting.</p> <p>Do I choose Default or True?</p> <p><b>Default</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you are using AD or LDAP authentication.</li> <li>• You want to allow your AD users to create their own FileCloud user accounts. After you import AD or LDAP user accounts into FileCloud, instruct the users to log in using their AD or LDAP credentials and on first login FileCloud will automatically create their new FileCloud accounts.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> If you are not using AD or LDAP authentication, users cannot create their own accounts.</p> <p><b>True</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you are NOT using AD or LDAP authentication</li> <li>• You want to allow your users to create their own user accounts by clicking the <b>New Account</b> button. By default, the account is disabled until an Administrator approves it.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> If you are using AD or LDAP authentication, AD or LDAP users can create accounts which do not use their AD credentials by clicking the <b>New Account</b> button.</p>

Setting	Location	Options	Description
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Local users (who are not using AD or LDAP authentication) cannot create their own accounts.</li> </ul> <p><b>True</b> = Local users can create their own accounts</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Local users (who are not using AD or LDAP authentication) can create their own accounts by clicking the <b>New Account</b> button when they initially log in.</li> <li>Active Directory authentication not allowed</li> <li>LDAP authentication not allowed</li> </ul> <p><b>Cannot Create an Account</b></p> <p><b>False</b> = No users can create their own accounts</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the <b>New Account</b> button is enabled, and the user clicks it, an error message indicates that new account creation is not allowed.</li> </ul>	

Setting	Location	Options	Description
<b>Automatic Account Approval</b>	Admin settings page	<p><b>(Default) No automatic approval. Admin has to approve account.</b></p> <p><b>Automatically approve new accounts to Full User</b></p> <p><b>Automatically approve new accounts to Guest User</b></p> <p><b>Automatically approve new accounts to External User</b></p>	<p>💡 If the total number of licenses has been reached, share invitations to new users are blocked unless <b>Automatic Account Approval</b> is set to <b>Automatically approve new accounts to External User</b>.</p> <p>Prerequisites:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>New Account</b> = ENABLED</li> <li>• <b>Allow Account Signups</b> = Default or True</li> </ul> <p>This setting determines:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the account created by the user is disabled until the Administrator approves it</li> <li>• If the account is approved with a specific level of access automatically without intervention from the Administrator.</li> </ul> <p>💡 For smaller organizations or high security sites, you can configure this option so that when a user creates a new account it is disabled until it is approved by the administrator.</p> <p>💡 For larger organizations, it might not be practical to have the administrator approve every account created and you can use the automatic account approval settings.</p>

The scenario where only an administrator creates a new FileCloud account is described in the following table.

Only an Admin can create User accounts
<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. The administrator creates the account in the admin portal.</li><li>2. The user receives a Welcome email with the account credentials and user portal URL.</li></ol>
<p><b>Customization &gt; Login</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>✖ New Account button = Disabled</li></ul> <p><b>Settings, Admin settings</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>✖ Allow Account Signups = False</li><li>✖ Automatic Account Approval = No automatic approval, Admin has to approve account.</li></ul>

In this scenario, if you disable the **New Account** button, then the other settings can be left set to their defaults.

To configure these settings:

1. Log into the admin portal.
2. In the left menu panel, click **Customization**.
3. On the **General** tab, click the **Login** tab.
4. Make sure the **Show New Account Button** checkbox is not selected.  
FileCloud server will not display the **New Account** button in the user portal.

UNKNOWN ATTACHMENT

## Allow Users to Create and Approve Accounts

Administrators can customize how new user accounts are created.

This scenario:

- allows users to create and approve their own accounts.
- allows an administrator set a default level of access.
- may be useful in systems where share invitations are sent to new users.

This scenario does not work for AD and LDAP users. Refer to the specific scenarios and settings for AD and LDAP users ([see page 128](#)).

The settings that you use to configure these scenarios are described in Table 1.

**Table 1. The Settings**

Setting	Location	Options	Description
<b>Show New Account Button</b>	Customization > General > Login	<p><b>ENABLED</b> = Displays <b>New Account</b> button on user log-in page. opens a window for the user to type in new account information</p> <p><b>DISABLED</b> = Hides <b>New Account</b> button on user log-in page.</p>	<p>This setting determines whether the <b>New Account</b> button appears on the user portal log-in page.</p> <p>If enabled, this setting works with two other settings to determine authentication and approval permissions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Allow Account Signups</b></li> <li>• <b>Automatic Account Approval</b></li> </ul>

Setting	Location	Options	Description
<b>Allow account signups</b>	Admin settings page	<p>Specifies if a user can or cannot create a new FileCloud user account from the login page. by choosing:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Default</b></li> <li>• <b>True</b></li> <li>• <b>False</b></li> </ul> <p><b>Can Create an Account</b></p> <p>Prerequisite: <b>Show New Account Button</b> = Enabled</p> <p><b>Default</b> = AD and LDAP users can create their own accounts by logging in to the user portal (they do not have to click the <b>New Account</b> button).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active Directory authentication allowed</li> <li>• LDAP authentication allowed</li> </ul>	<p>This setting controls if the user can create a new account. By default, the account is disabled until an administrator approves it. If you want the account to be automatically approved, use the <b>Automatic Account Approval</b> setting.</p> <p>Do I choose Default or True?</p> <p><b>Default</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you are using AD or LDAP authentication.</li> <li>• You want to allow your AD users to create their own FileCloud user accounts. After you import AD or LDAP user accounts into FileCloud, instruct the users to log in using their AD or LDAP credentials and on first login FileCloud will automatically create their new FileCloud accounts.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> If you are not using AD or LDAP authentication, users cannot create their own accounts.</p> <p><b>True</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you are NOT using AD or LDAP authentication</li> <li>• You want to allow your users to create their own user accounts by clicking the <b>New Account</b> button. By default, the account is disabled until an Administrator approves it.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> If you are using AD or LDAP authentication, AD or LDAP users can create accounts which do not use their AD credentials by clicking the <b>New Account</b> button.</p>

Setting	Location	Options	Description
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Local users (who are not using AD or LDAP authentication) cannot create their own accounts.</li></ul> <p><b>True</b> = Local users can create their own accounts</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Local users (who are not using AD or LDAP authentication) can create their own accounts by clicking the <b>New Account</b> button when they initially log in.</li><li>Active Directory authentication not allowed</li></ul>	

Setting	Location	Options	Description
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>LDAP authentication not allowed</li> </ul> <p><b>Cannot Create an Account</b></p> <p><b>False</b> = No users can create their own accounts</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the <b>New Account</b> button is enabled, and the user clicks it, an error message indicates that new account creation is not allowed.</li> </ul>	
<b>Automatic Account Approval</b>	Admin settings page	<p><b>(Default) No automatic approval. Admin has to approve account.</b></p> <p><b>Automatically approve new accounts to Full User</b></p> <p><b>Automatically approve new accounts to Guest User</b></p> <p><b>Automatically approve new accounts to External User</b></p>	<p>💡 If the total number of licenses has been reached, share invitations to new users are blocked unless <b>Automatic Account Approval</b> is set to <b>Automatically approve new accounts to External User</b>.</p> <p>Prerequisites:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>New Account</b> = ENABLED</li> <li><b>Allow Account Signups</b> = Default or True</li> </ul> <p>This setting determines:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the account created by the user is disabled until the Administrator approves it</li> <li>If the account is approved with a specific level of access automatically without intervention from the Administrator.</li> </ul> <p>💡 For smaller organizations or high security sites, you can configure this option so that when a user creates a new account it is disabled until it is approved by the administrator.</p> <p>💡 For larger organizations, it might not be practical to have the administrator approve every account created and you can use the automatic account approval settings.</p>

The scenarios where a user can create a new FileCloud account are described in the following table.

**Users can create their own accounts****Users can approve their own accounts**

💡 This scenario can also be used to allow new users to create an account when a Share invitation is sent.

⚠️ This scenario does not work for AD and LDAP users. Refer to the specific scenarios and settings for AD and LDAP users.

1. The administrator configures the User Search Mode.
2. The administrator configures New Account Creation settings.
3. The administrator provides the user with the URL for the user portal OR an invitation to create a new account is sent when a user shares a folder or file.
4. The user accesses the user portal from a Web browser, mobile device, or FileCloud client app.
5. On the user portal login window, the user clicks the **New Account** button.
6. The user enters details in the account creation fields.
7. The account is created and is granted access of a Full User, Guest User, or External User as set by the Administrator.
8. The user receives an account creation email using the email address provided during account creation.
9. The user is required to verify the email account to complete the account creation process.

**Settings, Misc > User settings**

✔ User Account Search Mode = **Exact Email with Implicit Account Invite** or **Exact Email with Explicit Account Invite**

**Settings, Authentication settings**

✔ Authentication Type = DEFAULT

**Customization > Login**

✔ New Account button = ENABLED

**Settings, Admin settings**

✔ Allow Account Signups = TRUE

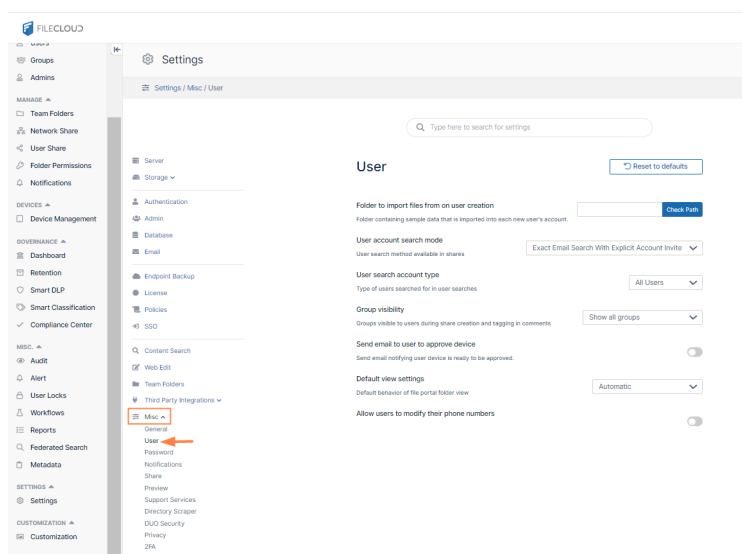
✔ Automatic Account Approval = Automatically approve new accounts to Full/Guest/External User.

**Settings, Policies**

✔ Set **Create account on new user shares** to **yes** in users' policies.

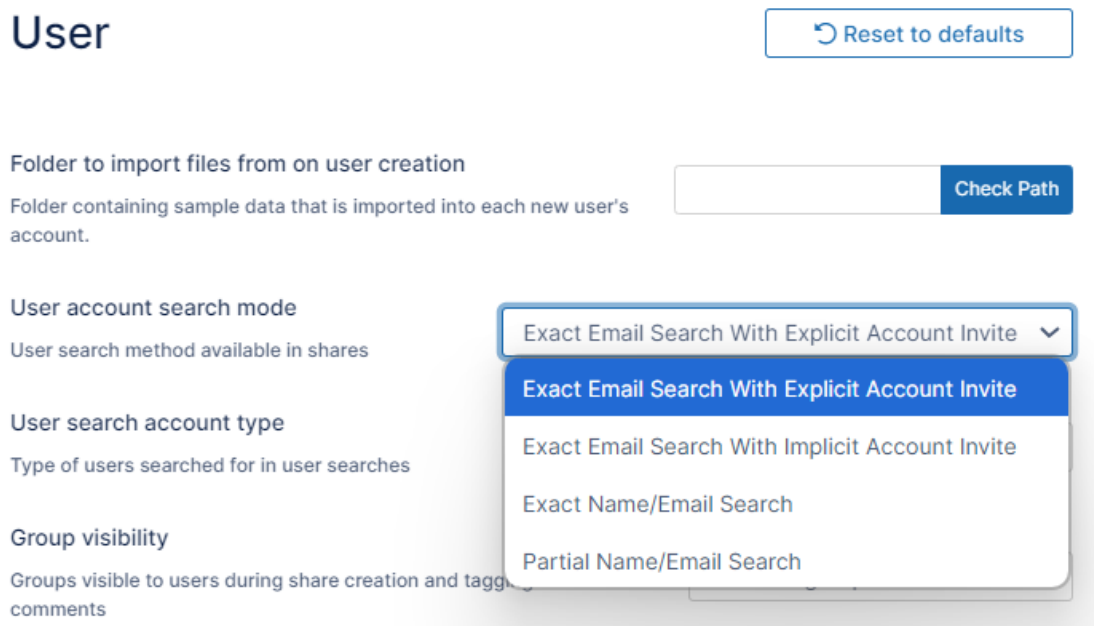
**To configure these settings:**

1. Open the [User settings](#) page.
  - a. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Misc**
  - b. In the inner navigation bar on the left of the **Settings** page, expand the **Misc** menu, and click **User**, as shown below.



The **User** settings page opens.

- In **User Account Search Mode**, select **Exact Email Search with Explicit Account Invite** or **Exact Email Search with Implicit Account Invite**.



Click **Save**.

- In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, go to **Customization > General > Login**.
- Check **Show New Account Button**.

General
Labels And Logos
URL
UI Messages
Email Templates

UI Features
Login
Account Menu
Listing

### Customize User Login Screen

Show New Account Button

☒ Display "New Account" button in user login screen

Show SSO Link

- Click **Save**.
- In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Admin** UNKNOWN ATTACHMENT. The **Admin** settings page opens.
- In the **Allow Account Signups** field, select **True**.

Allow account signups

Allow new account creation during login.

True ▼

- Click **Save**.

## Blocking the createprofile API endpoint

The setting **Allow account creation through login form** has been added to enable you to block the createprofile API endpoint from the admin portal. The endpoint is used for account signups in the New Account form.

### To disable the createprofile API endpoint:

- Go to Settings > Admin.
- Disable the **Allow account creation through login form** setting.

Allow account creation through login form

This setting does not affect account creation on new user shares.(When disabled, the operation is disabled at the API level.)

☐

## Allow Users to Create a New Disabled Account

Administrators can customize how new user accounts are created.

In this scenario you are allowing users to create their own accounts but they are disabled until an administrator approves them.

The settings that you use to configure this scenario are described in Table 1.

**Table 1. The Settings**

Setting	Location	Options	Description
<b>Show New Account Button</b>	Customization > General > Login	<p><b>ENABLED</b> = Displays <b>New Account</b> button on user log-in page. opens a window for the user to type in new account information</p> <p><b>DISABLED</b> = Hides <b>New Account</b> button on user log-in page.</p>	<p>This setting determines whether the <b>New Account</b> button appears on the user portal log-in page.</p> <p>If enabled, this setting works with two other settings to determine authentication and approval permissions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Allow Account Signups</b></li> <li>• <b>Automatic Account Approval</b></li> </ul>

Setting	Location	Options	Description
<b>Allow account signups</b>	Admin settings page	<p>Specifies if a user can or cannot create a new FileCloud user account from the login page. by choosing:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Default</b></li> <li>• <b>True</b></li> <li>• <b>False</b></li> </ul> <p><b>Can Create an Account</b></p> <p>Prerequisite: <b>Show New Account Button</b> = Enabled</p> <p><b>Default</b> = AD and LDAP users can create their own accounts by logging in to the user portal (they do not have to click the <b>New Account</b> button).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active Directory authentication allowed</li> <li>• LDAP authentication allowed</li> </ul>	<p>This setting controls if the user can create a new account. By default, the account is disabled until an administrator approves it. If you want the account to be automatically approved, use the <b>Automatic Account Approval</b> setting.</p> <p>Do I choose Default or True?</p> <p><b>Default</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you are using AD or LDAP authentication.</li> <li>• You want to allow your AD users to create their own FileCloud user accounts. After you import AD or LDAP user accounts into FileCloud, instruct the users to log in using their AD or LDAP credentials and on first login FileCloud will automatically create their new FileCloud accounts.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> If you are not using AD or LDAP authentication, users cannot create their own accounts.</p> <p><b>True</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you are NOT using AD or LDAP authentication</li> <li>• You want to allow your users to create their own user accounts by clicking the <b>New Account</b> button. By default, the account is disabled until an Administrator approves it.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> If you are using AD or LDAP authentication, AD or LDAP users can create accounts which do not use their AD credentials by clicking the <b>New Account</b> button.</p>

Setting	Location	Options	Description
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Local users (who are not using AD or LDAP authentication) cannot create their own accounts.</li></ul> <p><b>True</b> = Local users can create their own accounts</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Local users (who are not using AD or LDAP authentication) can create their own accounts by clicking the <b>New Account</b> button when they initially log in.</li><li>Active Directory authentication not allowed</li></ul>	

Setting	Location	Options	Description
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>LDAP authentication not allowed</li> </ul> <p><b>Cannot Create an Account</b></p> <p><b>False</b> = No users can create their own accounts</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the <b>New Account</b> button is enabled, and the user clicks it, an error message indicates that new account creation is not allowed.</li> </ul>	
<b>Automatic Account Approval</b>	Admin settings page	<p><b>(Default) No automatic approval. Admin has to approve account.</b></p> <p><b>Automatically approve new accounts to Full User</b></p> <p><b>Automatically approve new accounts to Guest User</b></p> <p><b>Automatically approve new accounts to External User</b></p>	<p>💡 If the total number of licenses has been reached, share invitations to new users are blocked unless <b>Automatic Account Approval</b> is set to <b>Automatically approve new accounts to External User</b>.</p> <p>Prerequisites:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>New Account</b> = ENABLED</li> <li><b>Allow Account Signups</b> = Default or True</li> </ul> <p>This setting determines:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the account created by the user is disabled until the Administrator approves it</li> <li>If the account is approved with a specific level of access automatically without intervention from the Administrator.</li> </ul> <p>💡 For smaller organizations or high security sites, you can configure this option so that when a user creates a new account it is disabled until it is approved by the administrator.</p> <p>💡 For larger organizations, it might not be practical to have the administrator approve every account created and you can use the automatic account approval settings.</p>

The scenarios that enable a user to create a new FileCloud account are described in the following table.

<p><b>Users can create their own accounts</b>  <b>The Admin must approve the accounts</b>  💡 <b>This scenario can also be used to allow new users to create an account when a Share invitation is sent.</b></p>
<p>⚠️ This scenario does not work for AD and LDAP users. Refer to the specific scenarios and settings for AD and LDAP users.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Administrator provides the user with the URL for the User Portal.</li> <li>2. The User accesses the user portal from a Web browser, mobile device, or FileCloud client app.</li> <li>3. On the User Portal Login window, the user clicks the New Account button.</li> <li>4. The user enters details in the account creation fields.</li> <li>5. The account is created but is disabled by default.</li> <li>6. The Admin is notified about the new account.</li> <li>7. The Admin approves the account.</li> <li>8. The Admin sets the user account type to Full User or Guest User.</li> <li>9. The user receives an account creation email using the email address provided during account creation.</li> <li>10. The user is required to verify the email account to complete the account creation process.</li> </ol>
<p><b>Settings, Authentication settings</b>  ✔️ Authentication Type = Default</p> <p><b>Customization settings, Login tab</b>  ✔️ New Account button = Enabled</p> <p><b>Settings, Admin settings</b>  ✔️ Allow Account Signups = True  ❌ Automatic Account Approval = No Automatic approval; Admin has to approve account</p>

To configure these settings:

1. Log into the [Administration Portal](#) (see page 33).
2. In the left menu panel, click **Customization**.
3. On the General tab, click the Login tab.
4. Make sure the **Show New Account Button** checkbox is selected.
5. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Admin** **UNKNOWN ATTACHMENT**.
6. Scroll down to the **Allow account signups** field, and select **True**.

Allow account signups

Allow new account creation during login.

True ▼

The user is notified by email when:

- Trying to connect (admin approval pending)

- When the administrator has approved the device trying to connect

## Blocking the createprofile API endpoint

The setting **Allow account creation through login form** has been added to enable you to block the createprofile API endpoint from the admin portal. The endpoint is used for account signups in the New Account form.

### To disable the createprofile API endpoint:

1. Go to Settings > Admin.
2. Disable the **Allow account creation through login form** setting.

Allow account creation through login form



This setting does not affect account creation on new user shares.(When disabled, the operation is disabled at the API level.)


## Prevent Email Addresses as Usernames



Beginning with FileCloud 23.241, **Allow Email as Username** is enabled by default. Prior to FileCloud 23.241, **Allow Email as Username** was disabled by default.

By default, FileCloud usernames can be the same as the user's email address. You can prevent use of user's email addresses as usernames by disabling an **Admin** setting.

To prevent use of email addresses as user names:

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Admin** . The **Admin** settings page opens.
2. Disable **Allow email as username**, and click **Save**.

## Admin

[Reset to defaults](#)

Admin login name

Change the default admin user name.

Admin email

Email id for admin account

Enable two-factor authentication for admin logins

Requires valid admin or admin user email id.

☐

Reset main admin password

[Reset Admin Password](#)

Stats API key

API Key for getting stats

Allow account signups

Allow new account creation during login.

Default ▾

Allow email as username

☐

Allow password change

Allow users to change their passwords.

Default ▾

Emails may no longer be used as usernames.

## Domain Limitations for External Users



Domain limitations for external users are effective for FileCloud beginning in version 22.1. If external users have the same domains that at least 10% of licensed users have before the rule was put into effect, the external users are allowed to remain with their current emails.

Your FileCloud license limits the number of licensed (full and guest users) you can create, but allows you to create an unlimited number of external users. To prevent users from using external accounts for internal users, the system assumes that your FileCloud site domain (and its sub-domains and sibling domains) and any domain used by at least 10% of your licensed (full and guest) users are internal domains, and therefore prevents you from creating external users with those domains.

An exception is made for popular email domains like gmail and yahoo. Unlimited numbers of external users can be created with those domains. Users with those domains are not counted when the system calculates percents of users with specific domains.

**Example:**

A company has a FileCloud license that permits 30 licensed (full and guest) users. The FileCloud site domain is **company456.com**.

The 30 licensed users have emails with the following domains:

**company456.com** - 10 users

**tech123.com** - 8 users

**gmail.com** - 8 users

**factory123.com** - 3 users

**sullivanlaw.com** - 1 user

**The 8 users with gmail.com as their domain are omitted when computing the percent of users with specific domains.**

The admin adds an external user with the email: [jcarr@company456.com](mailto:jcarr@company456.com).<sup>5</sup>This is not permitted because it has the same domain as the FileCloud site.

The admin adds an external user with the email: [mfields@tech123.com](mailto:mfields@tech123.com).<sup>6</sup> This is not permitted because 36% of the licensed users have the same domain.

The admin adds an external user with the email: [hbarrett@gmail.com](mailto:hbarrett@gmail.com).<sup>7</sup>This is permitted because gmail.com is a popular domain.

The admin adds an external user with the email: [bsullivan@sullivanlaw.com](mailto:bsullivan@sullivanlaw.com).<sup>8</sup>This is permitted because only 4.5% of the licensed users have the same domain.

## Password Settings



Beginning with FileCloud 23.241, the **New Accounts Must Change Password** setting is enabled by default.

Prior to FileCloud 23.241, the **New Accounts Must Change Password** setting was disabled by default.

Beginning with FileCloud 23.241, the **Skip password change on first login** setting is disabled by default.

Prior to FileCloud 23.241, the **Skip password change on first login** setting was enabled by default.



The following settings are applicable for the default FileCloud Admin, the Team Folder account and user accounts.

This section explains the password settings available in FileCloud installation.

5. <mailto:jcarr@company456.com>.

6. <mailto:mfields@techabc.com>

7. <mailto:hbarrett@gmail.com>.

8. <mailto:bsullivan@sullivanlaw.com>.

## To view or change the password settings:

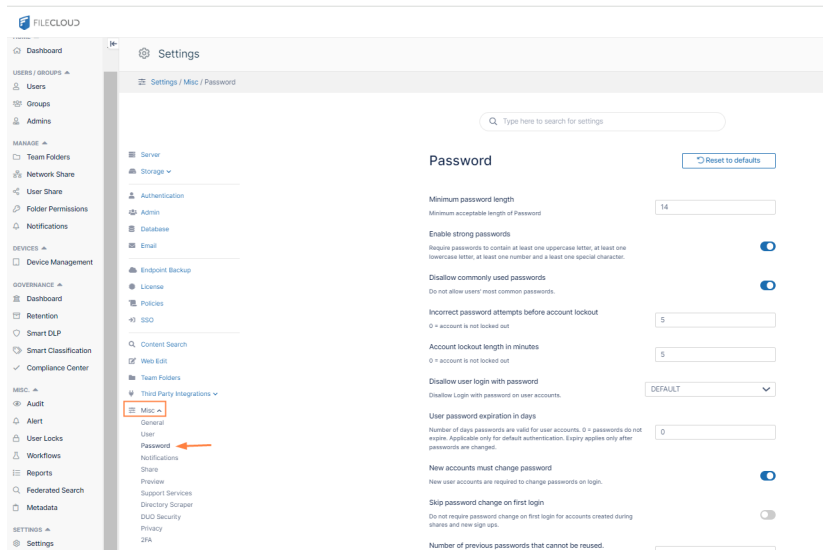
1. Open the **Password** settings page.

## To go to the Password settings page

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Misc**



2. In the inner navigation bar on the left of the **Settings** page, expand the **Misc** menu, and click **Password**, as shown below.



The **Password** settings page opens.

2. Change any of the settings according to your security requirements.

Type	Description
<b>Minimum Password Length</b>	Enforces minimum character length for password (Applies to local account and NOT to AD/LDAP accounts). Default value is 14.
<b>Enable Strong Passwords</b>	Enabling this will require the password to contain at least one uppercase, lowercase, number and a special character in the password. Checked by default. Applies only to local account and not to AD/LDAP account.
<b>Disallow Commonly Used Passwords</b>	Prevents users from using commonly used passwords for their user accounts. Enabled by default. For more information, see <a href="#">Restrict Commonly Used Passwords</a> (see page 159).

Type	Description
<b>Incorrect attempts before account lockout</b>	<p>For higher security, if users try logging in with the wrong password for more than the times specified here, their account will be locked out and they cannot login even if they type in their correct password. Default value is 5.</p> <p>A value of 0 means account lockout with wrong password is disabled.</p>
<b>Account Lockout length in Minutes</b>	<p>Specifies time the account is locked out if wrong password is entered multiple times as specified in the option for max incorrect attempts. Default value is 5.</p> <p>A value of 0 means lockout is disabled.</p>
<b>Disallow user login with password</b>	<p>This setting will disallow login for user accounts. DEFAULT allows login with password for all users.</p>
<b>User Password Expires In Days</b>	<p>If a value above 0 is entered, when a new user is created or when a password is changed, an expiration date for the password is added automatically.</p> <p>NOTE: Automatic email notifications are sent to the user 7 days and 1 day before the actual password expiry date.</p>
<b>New accounts must change password</b>	<p>When enabled, this setting forces new users to change their password on initial login, with the following exceptions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When the user creates the new account through a registration form (the user adds a password in the form).</li> <li>• When the user has an AD account (the user is automatically assigned an AD password).</li> <li>• When the user logs in using SSO.</li> </ul> <p>Default is enabled.</p>
<b>Skip password change on first login</b>	<p>Do not require password change on first login for accounts created during shared and new signups. Default is disabled.</p>
<b>Number of previous passwords that cannot be reused</b>	<p>Specifies the number of previous passwords that cannot be reused when password is changed. A value of 0 indicates that there are no restrictions.</p>
<b>Reset password attempt interval</b>	<p>Interval in minutes between consecutive reset password attempts. Default is 5.</p> <p>0 indicates that there is no restriction.</p>


Type	Description
<b>Send reset password email</b>	<p>Allows you to create an email that is automatically sent to a user when an admin resets the user's password. There is no default email; when this is enabled, email subject and email content fields appear.</p> <p>Send reset password email <input checked="" type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Email subject <input type="text" value="Password Changed!"/></p> <p>Enter email text <div></div></p> <p><b>Email subject</b> is set to <b>Password Changed!</b> but may be changed. The note in <b>Enter the text of the email below</b> must be entered.</p> <p>Disabled by default.</p>

3. Click **Save**.

## Setting Account Locked Alerts

By default, FileCloud is set to not send an email message to the user or admin to notify them that the account has been locked due to incorrect login attempts. However, you may change this setting.

To change the **Account Locked Alert** setting:

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Admin** . The **Admin** settings page opens.
2. Scroll down to the **Send account locked email** setting.

**Admin session timeout in minutes****Admin portal login session timeout**

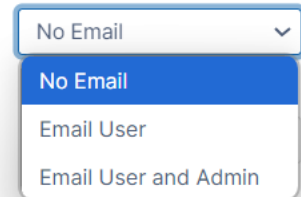
Example: 15 (default) = 15 minutes; 30 = 30 minutes; 60 = 1 hour

Note: Session always expires when browser is closed unless advanced configuration is added.

30

**Send account locked email****Show recent access locations in dashboard**

Display the recent access locations chart in the admin dashboard. Default equals false.



3. In the drop-down list, choose one of the following settings:

**No Email** - Neither the user nor the admin receives an email notification about the user account logout.

**Email User** - The user receives an email notification about their account logout but the admin does not.

**Email User and Admin** - Both the user and the admin receive an email about the user account logout.

## Restrict Commonly Used Passwords

Anytime a password is created or updated, before the password is accepted, FileCloud Server checks the suggested password against the US NIST Password Guidelines list<sup>9</sup>.

- This feature can be enabled or disabled by the administrator in the admin portal.
- The option is called **Disallow commonly used passwords** and if enabled it will prevent users from setting commonly used passwords for their user accounts.


The password entered is checked against the password guidelines list when:

- A new user is added.
- A user's password or the admin password is updated.
- The password is reset.
- User are imported using a CSV file.

**To set this option:**

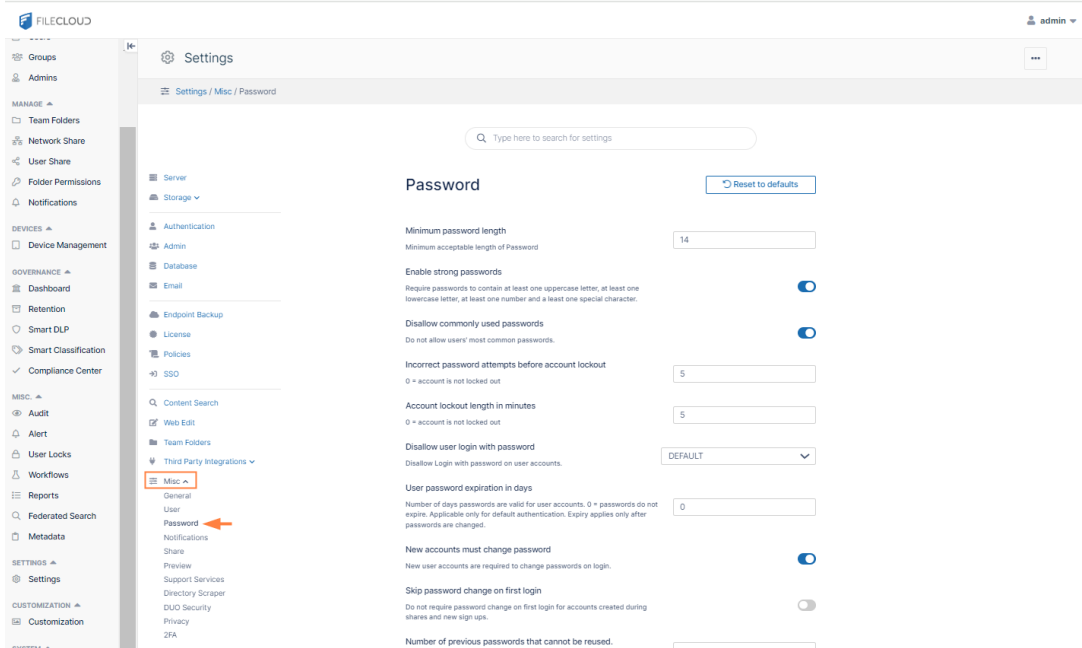
1. Go to the **Password** settings page.

**To go to the Password Settings page**

- a. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Misc** .

9. <https://www.drupal.org/docs/8/security/us-nist-password-guidelines-review>

- b. In the inner navigation bar on the left of the **Misc** page, expand the **Misc** menu, and click **Password**, as shown below.



The **Password** settings page opens.

2. Enable **Disallow Commonly Used Passwords**.

## Password

↻ Reset to defaults

Minimum password length

Minimum acceptable length of Password

14

Enable strong passwords

Require passwords to contain at least one uppercase letter, at least one lowercase letter, at least one number and a least one special character.

☒

Disallow commonly used passwords

Do not allow users' most common passwords.

☒

Incorrect password attempts before account logout

0 = account is not locked out

5

3. Click **Save**.

# User Session Expiration


## Default Behavior

By default, when a user logs into FileCloud, their session remains authenticated for a specified amount of time.

Device	Time Session is Valid
Web Browser	Specified by the value in <a href="#">Session Timeout in minutes (see page 9)</a> setting. If the browser is closed, the session expires.
All other apps and clients	Doesn't expire. Session lasts until user logs out from app.

## Enabling Session Expiration for all Devices

If you want all login sessions for all user devices (including web browsers) to expire and require re-login, set the policy to **Enforce Session Timeout for All Devices**.

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Policies**  . The **Policies** settings page opens.
2. Click the Edit icon in the row for the users' policy.

## Policies

New Policy  
Create a new policy

New Policy

Policy Name	User Count	Group Count	Default	Actions
Global Default Policy	1	0		
TEAM FOLDER POLICY	1	0		

<< < Page 1 of 1 > >>

2 rows

3. Click the **User Policy** tab.

- In order to enable the **Enforce session timeout for devices using code-based device authentication** setting, scroll down to the setting **Enable code-based device authentication** and set it to **yes**.

Now **Enforce session timeout for devices using code-based device authentication** is enabled.

- Set **Enforce session timeout for devices using code-based device authentication** to **yes**.

Effective Policy: "Global Default Policy" ✕

General   2FA   **User Policy**   Client Application Policy   Device Configuration   Notifications

Some policy settings will not be applicable for Guest and External users.

User Policy

Disable invitations to new users no ▾  
Do not allow user to send invitations to new users when shares are created.

Create account on new user share no ▾  
Create accounts automatically when share invitations are sent to new users.

**Enable code-based device authentication** yes ▾

Require admin approval for code-based device authentication no ▾

**Enforce session timeout for devices using code-based device authentication.** yes ▾

Allow folder level security yes ▾  
Allow users to set folder level security for granular permissions.

- Click **Save**.

**Note:** We don't recommend requiring session expiration for devices and other clients as it might impact functionality and reduce user friendliness.

Device	Time Session is Valid
Web Browser	Specified by the value in <a href="#">Session Timeout in minutes (see page 9)</a> setting. If the browser is closed, the session expires.
All other apps and clients	Specified by the value in <a href="#">Session Timeout in minutes (see page 9)</a> setting. Note: When log in used username and password, app will automatically re-login, so the session will not appear to expire. When log in used Device Authorization code, app will require user to re-login into FileCloud using the web browser.

## Changing the Storage Quota for Users

Administrators can manage the storage space allotted to a user account or a group of users through [Policies \(see page 484\)](#).


- Use the Global Default policy to set a quota for all user accounts

- Use a custom policy to set a quota for a specific user or for a select group of users

## Set a Quota for a Specific User

To set a storage quota for a specific user, create a custom policy and assign the user to that policy.

### Create a Custom Policy for one user













1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Policies** . The **Policies** page opens.

## Policies

New Policy

Create a new policy

New Policy

Policy Name	User Count	Group Count	Default	Actions
Global Default Policy	0	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	     
TEAM FOLDER POLICY	1	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	     

<< < Page 1 of 1 > >>

2 rows

2. Create the custom policy. See [Policies \(see page 484\)](#).
3. Click the edit icon for the new policy, and in the **General** tab, in the **User storage quota** field, enter the storage quota for the user.

Effective Policy: "HR Users" ✕

General2FAUser PolicyClient Application PolicyDevice ConfigurationNotifications

Some policy settings will not be applicable for Guest and External users.

General

Share Mode

Allow Private Shares Only ▾

Default share expiry in days

0

Number of days shares remain active. 0 = shares do not expire

Default max number of downloads allowed

0

Number of downloads allowed.  
0 = maximum number of downloads is unlimited

User storage quota

Units ▾3GB

0 = unlimited storage

Enable Privacy Settings

no ▾

- 4. Click **Save**.
- 5. Click the user icon for the policy.

Policies

New Policy

Create a new policy

New Policy

Policy Name	User Count	Group Count	Default	Actions
Global Default Policy	0	0		
HR Users	0	0		
TEAM FOLDER POLICY	1	0		

<<<

<

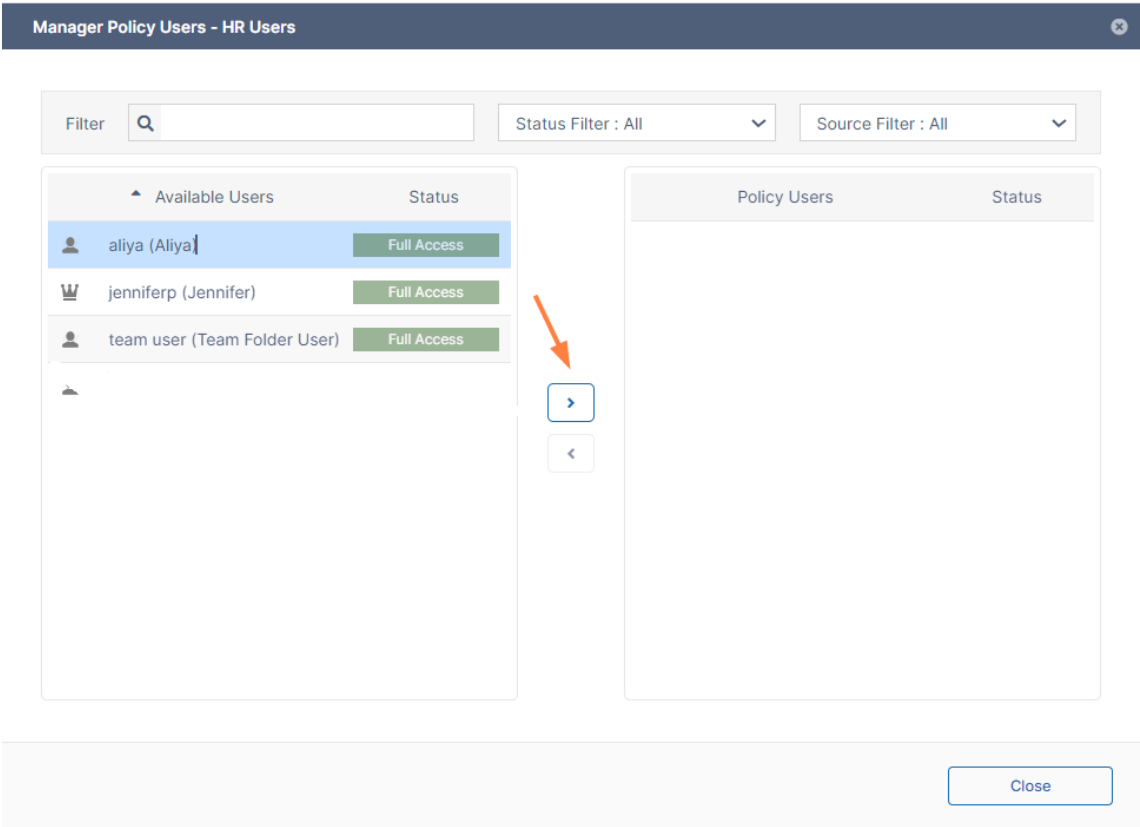
Page 1 of 1

>

>>>

3 rows

- The **Manage Policy Users** dialog box opens.
- 6. Select the user in the **Available Users** box, and click the arrow to move the user into the **Policy Users** box.



The new policy automatically becomes the user's effective policy.

- 7. Click **Close**.
- 8. Confirm that the user's storage quota has changed by clicking **Users** in the navigation pane, and clicking the edit button for the user.  
In the **User Details** box that opens, the total quota should reflect the new value:

User Details

Name	aliya	Total Quota	3 GB
Email	aliya@example.com	Used Quota	0 B
Last Login	--	Available Quota	3 GB
TOS Date	Not Accepted	Used Storage	0 B
Group	<a href="#">Manage</a>		<a href="#">More</a>

[Manage Files](#)
[Manage Policy](#)
[Manage Shares](#)
[Mobile Devices](#)
[Reset Password](#)
[Send Email](#)
[Manage Notifications](#)
[Manage Backups](#)
[Delete Account](#)

Profile Image

Update
 Remove

Access Level

Full

Authentication

Default

Save

Close

## Set a Custom Quota for a Group

To set a storage quota for a specific group, create a custom policy and assign the group to that policy.

### Create a Custom Policy to set the quota for a group of users

If you need to change the quota for a custom group of users, you can create a custom policy.

#### To create a group custom policy:













1. Follow steps 1 to 4 in [Set a Quota for a Specific User](#), above.
2. Click the group icon for the policy.

## Policies

New Policy

Create a new policy

New Policy

Policy Name	User Count	Group Count	Default	Actions
2FA	1	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	     
2FA DUO	0	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	     

The **Manage Policy Groups** dialog box opens.

3. Select the group in the **Available Groups** box, and click the arrow to move the group into the **Policy Groups** box.



Manage Policy Groups - HR Users

Available Groups

EVERYONE

Human Resources

Marketing

Page 1 of 1

1 rows

Policy Groups


The new policy automatically becomes the group's effective policy.

4. Click **Close**.

## Set a Default Quota for All Users

To change the default storage quota, change the **User Storage Quota** in the **Global Default Policy**.

### Edit the Global Policy

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Policies** . The **Policies** page opens.
2. Click the edit icon for the **Global Default Policy**.
3. On the **General** tab, enter the new value in **User Storage Quota**.

Effective Policy: "Global Default Policy" ✕

General	2FA	User Policy	Client Application Policy	Device Configuration	Notifications
<p>Some policy settings will not be applicable for Guest and External users.</p> <p><b>General</b></p> <p><b>Share Mode</b> <span style="float: right; border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 10px;">Allow All Shares ▼</span></p> <p><b>Default share expiry in days</b> <span style="float: right; border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 20px;">0</span>  <small>Number of days shares remain active. 0 = shares do not expire</small></p> <p><b>Default max number of downloads allowed</b> <span style="float: right; border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 20px;">2</span>  <small>Number of downloads allowed. 0 = maximum number of downloads is unlimited</small></p> <div style="border: 2px solid orange; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p><b>User storage quota</b> <span style="float: right; border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 20px;">Units ▼ 14 GB</span>  <small>0 = unlimited storage</small></p> </div> <p><b>Enable Privacy Settings</b> <span style="float: right; border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 10px;">yes ▼</span></p> <p><b>Store deleted files in the recycle bin</b> <span style="float: right; border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 10px;">yes ▼</span></p> <p><b>Automatically delete files from recycle bin after set number days</b> <span style="float: right; border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 20px;">0</span>  <small>0 = do not delete files automatically</small></p> <p><b>Do not store deleted files greater than</b> <span style="float: right; border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 20px;">Units ▼ 100 MB</span>  <small>0 = do not delete files automatically</small></p>					

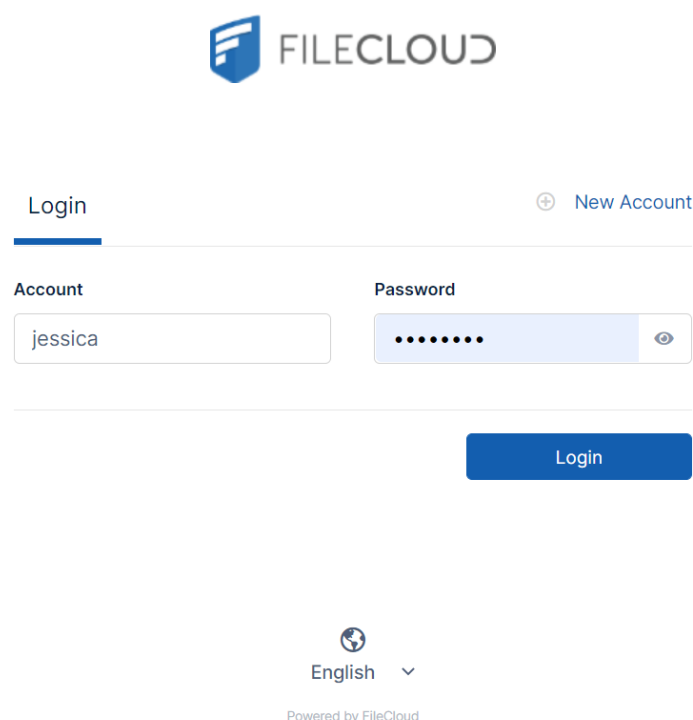
4. Click **Save**.

## Enable WebDAV

WebDAV is no longer available as of FileCloud version 23.241.

## Customize the User Login Screen

The following image displays the default FileCloud log-in screen, but you can customize the features that appear on it.



The screenshot shows the default FileCloud login interface. At the top center is the FileCloud logo, consisting of a blue shield icon with white horizontal lines and the word "FILECLOUD" in a sans-serif font. Below the logo, there are two tabs: "Login" (which is active and underlined) and "New Account" (with a plus icon). Under the "Login" tab, there are two input fields: "Account" and "Password". The "Account" field contains the text "jessica". The "Password" field contains a series of dots and has a toggle icon (an eye) to its right. Below these fields is a blue "Login" button. At the bottom of the form, there is a language selector showing a globe icon, the word "English", and a dropdown arrow. Below the language selector, it says "Powered by FileCloud".

### To customize the User Login screen



Admin users must have Customization permissions enabled to customize the user login screen. See [Managing Admin Users](#) for more information.

1. Open a browser and log in to the Admin Portal.
2. From the left navigation pane, click **Customization**.

3. Select the **General** tab, and then the **Login** sub-tab.

The screenshot displays the FileCloud Online 23.253 Admin Console. The left sidebar contains a navigation menu with categories: HOME, USERS/GROUPS, MANAGE, DEVICES, GOVERNANCE, MISC., SETTINGS, CUSTOMIZATION, and SYSTEM. The main content area is titled 'Customize User Login Screen' and features several settings:

- Show New Account Button:** A checkbox that is checked. Description: Display "New Account" button in user login screen.
- Show SSO Link:** A checkbox that is checked. Description: Show "Single Sign On" option in user login screen.
- Show Login Options:** A checkbox that is checked. Description: Uncheck to hide all login screen options such as "Forgot Password", "SSO Login".
- Login Panel Transparency:** Radio buttons for YES (selected) and NO. Description: Add transparency to login panel. Enable it if a custom login background image is set.
- Login UI Additional Links:** A text area containing:
 

```
[Privacy Policy](https://www.yoursite.com/privacy)
[Terms of use](https://www.yoursite.com/tos)
```

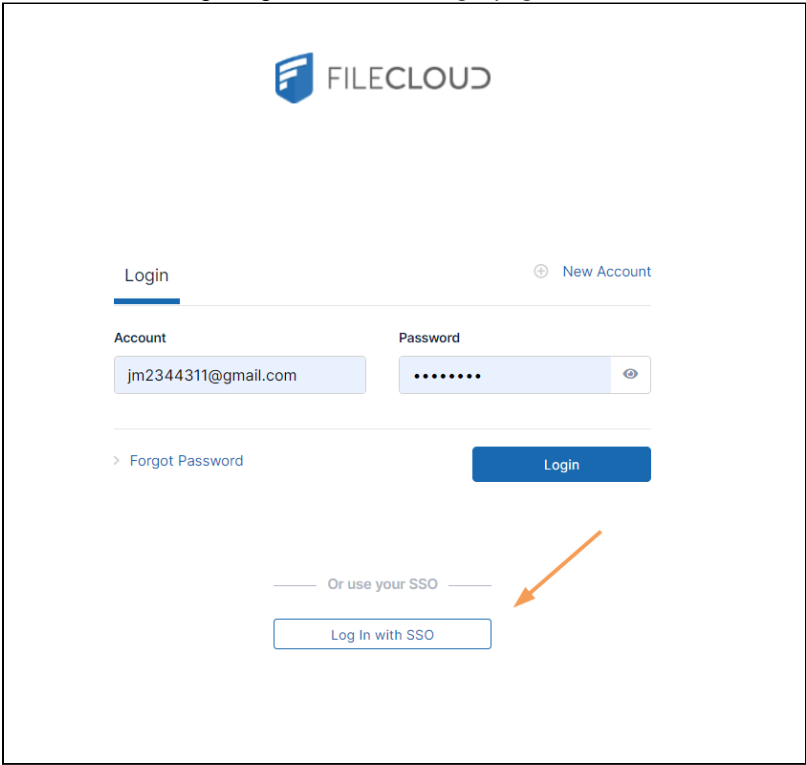
 Description: Enter upto two additional links to be displayed in user login screen. Use the following format:
 

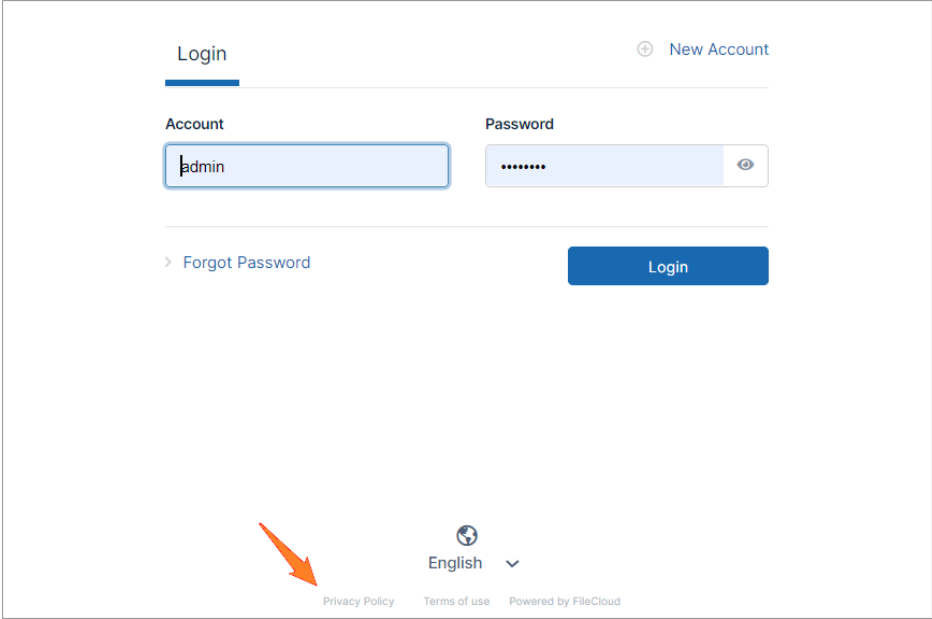
```
[Privacy Policy](https://www.yoursite.com/privacy)
[Terms of use](https://www.yoursite.com/tos)
```
- Phone Number Format Hint:** A text area containing:
 

```
Include + and country code with phone number.
```

 Description: Message shown with phone number inputs regarding formatting.

Option	Description
Show New Account Button	Displays <b>New Account</b> button in user log-in screen. Enabled by default. The <b>New Account</b> button allows a user to create a new account for themselves, and depending on the configuration of <a href="#">Automatic Account Approval</a> (see page 140), have it automatically approved.

Option	Description
Show SSO Link	<p>Check to show <b>Single Sign On</b> link in the login page:</p>  <p><b>Note:</b> If this is checked, but <b>Show Login Options</b> is unchecked, <b>Single Sign On</b> link is not shown.</p> <p>💡 The functionality of this button is determined by how you configure <a href="#">Single Sign-On Access</a> (see page 247)</p>
Show Login Options	<p>Uncheck to hide options in login screen such as <b>Forgot Password</b> and <b>Single Sign On</b> link even if <b>Show SSO Link</b> is checked.</p>
Login Panel Transparency	<p>Adds transparency to login panel.</p> <p>Set to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• YES (default)</li> <li>• NO</li> </ul> <p>💡 Enable this option if you are using a custom login background image.</p>

Option	Description
Login UI Additional Links	<p>Enter up to two additional links to be displayed in user login screen. Use the format:</p> <p>[Privacy Policy](https://www.yoursite.com/privacy)</p> <p>[Terms of use](https://www.yoursite.com/tos)</p> <p>The links appear at the bottom of the login screen:</p> 
Phone Number Format Hint	<p>Enter a hint to appear on screens where users can enter phone numbers. For example <b>Include + and country code when entering phone number</b>.</p>

4. Modify the settings for any of the options.
5. To save your changes, click **Save**.

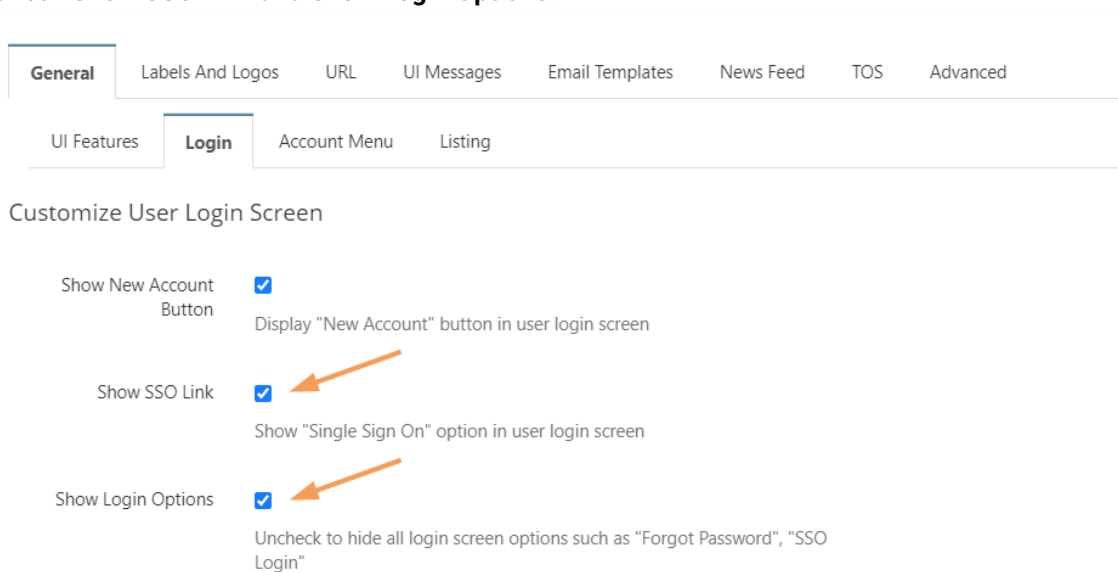
## To customize for SSO log in

You can customize the user log-in screen to display the SSO log-in option along with the direct log-in option or to only display the SSO login.

**To display the SSO log-in option along with the direct log-in option:**

1. From the left navigation pane, click **Customization**.
2. Select the **General** tab, and then the **Login** sub-tab.

### 3. Check **Show SSO Link** and **Show Login Options**.



The screenshot shows the 'Login' tab in the 'User Settings' section. The 'General' tab is selected, and the 'Login' sub-tab is active. The 'Customize User Login Screen' section contains three settings:

- Show New Account Button**: ☒ Display "New Account" button in user login screen
- Show SSO Link**: ☒ Show "Single Sign On" option in user login screen
- Show Login Options**: ☒ Uncheck to hide all login screen options such as "Forgot Password", "SSO Login"

Orange arrows point to the 'Show SSO Link' and 'Show Login Options' checkboxes, indicating they should be checked.

### 4. Save your changes.

Now, when users access the user portal log-in page, they will see:



[Login](#)
[+ New Account](#)

---


**Account**

**Password**

---

[> Forgot Password](#)

— Or use your SSO —




On clicking the Single Sign-On link on the login page, the user is redirected to the SAML SSO Service web page.

## Limiting File Upload Size for Users

You can set a limit on the size of files that some or all of your users can upload into FileCloud by entering a value for **Max File Size Limit** in the users' policy or policies.

To change the **Max File Size Limit** setting:













1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Policies** . The **Policies** page opens.
2. Click the Edit icon for the policy of the users who you want to prevent from sharing with the **Everyone** group.

## Policies

New Policy

Create a new policy

New Policy

Policy Name	User Count	Group Count	Default	Actions
Global Default Policy	1	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	     
TEAM FOLDER POLICY	1	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	     

<< < Page 1 of 1 > >>

2 rows

The **Policy Settings** dialog box opens.

- 3. Click the **User Policy** tab.
- 4. Scroll down to the **Max. file upload size** setting.
- 5. Enter the maximum file size that can be uploaded.

Require share approval workflow

Enables/disables mandatory workflow automation for shares

☐

Max. file upload size

Maximum storage for file upload. 0 = unlimited. Warning: Renaming and editing files may fail if the maximum is exceeded.

Units 3072 Bytes

Save zip file session password

Allow passwords to be saved inside encrypted zip files during the log-in session. Warning: Disabling the setting requires a user to enter the password every time they access a zip file.


☐

Cancel

Reset

Save

- 6. Click **Save**.

 **Max. file upload size** does not apply to Sync and Drive and other non-Web FileCloud clients.

For help applying **Max. file upload size** to non-web FileCloud clients, please Contact FileCloud Support.

## Disabling Send for Approval




The ability to request file approval is available beginning in FileCloud 21.2. Beginning with FileCloud 23.241.6:

- The **Disable Send for Approval** option is available.
- The file approval option is not available for External users and users who do not have access to share a file.

You can remove the ability for a group of users to send files for approval by through their policy.

### To disable Send for Approval:

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Policies** . The **Policies** settings page opens.
2. Click the Edit icon in the row for the users' policy.













## Policies

[← Reset to Defaults](#)

New Policy

Create a new policy

New Policy

Policy Name	User Count	Group Count	Default	Actions
Global Default Policy	1	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	     
TEAM FOLDER POLICY	1	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	     

« < Page 1 of 1 > »

2 rows

3. Click the **User Policy** tab.

Effective Policy: "Global Default Policy"

General 2FA **User Policy** Client Application Policy Device Configuration Notifications

Some policy settings will not be applicable for Guest and External users.

User Policy

**Disable invitations to new users**  
Do not allow user to send invitations to new users when shares are created. no ▾

**Create account on new user share**  
Create accounts automatically when share invitations are sent to new users. no ▾

**Enable code-based device authentication** no ▾

**Require admin approval for code-based device authentication** no ▾

**Enforce session timeout for devices using code-based device authentication.** no ▾

Cancel Reset Save

4. Scroll down to **Disable Send File For Approval**, and enable it.

Effective Policy: "Global Default Policy"

Enable web edit  
Allow users to edit documents from within FileCloud. ☐

Enable recycle bin clearing  
Allow users to clear recycle bins. ☐

Disallow default share settings change  
Do not allow users to change settings of existing shares and default settings of new shares. ☐

**Disable Send File For Approval**  
Enables/disables send file for approval ☒

Disable Everyone group sharing ☐

Allow group creation  
Allows users to create groups from user portal ☐

Allow group management  
Allows adding or removing users from groups in user portal ☐

Cancel Reset Save

5. Click **Save**.

## Group Settings



The addition of the Externals group and the removal of External users from the Everyone group is effective beginning in FileCloud 23.252.

The feature for importing groups from an SSO provider is available in FileCloud 23.251 and later.

Administrators can create groups of users in FileCloud Server. Creating groups allows sharing of files and folders for multiple users.



The automatic groups **Everyone** and **Externals** are created by default for every FileCloud installation. The **Everyone** group contains all Full and Guest users. External users are not included in the **Everyone** group.

The **Externals** group contains all External users.

Groups may contain the following attributes

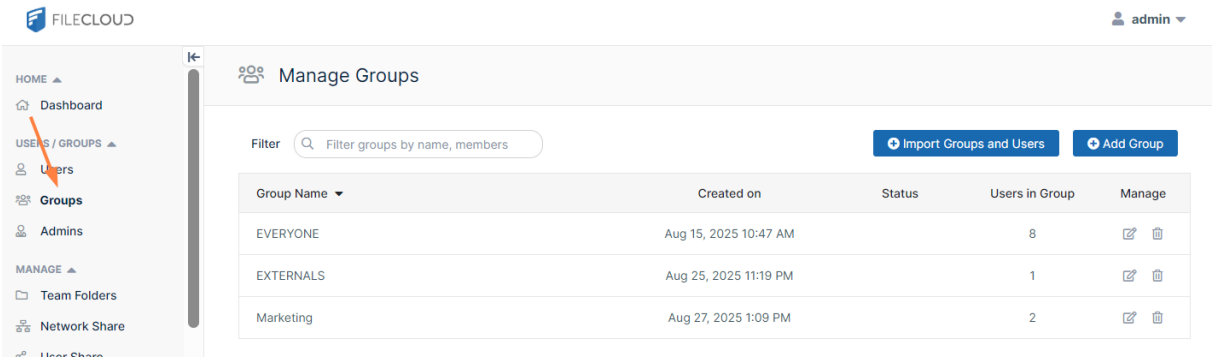
- **Group Name** - Name assigned by the administrator
- **Group Members** - List of users that are part of the group
- **Group Admins** - (optional) Users with the ability to view users, add users, and/or remove users from the group.
- **Group Policy** - The policy that applies to all members of the group. By default, the **Global Default Policy** is assigned.

Once a group is created, it can be populated with users using one of the following methods:

- Manually adding users that are already in the FileCloud system.
- Importing members of a group from an external AD server.
- Importing members of a group from an external SSO provider.

### Show me where to manage groups in the Admin Portal

To manage groups, in the navigation panel, click **Groups**.



# What do you want to do?

## Manually create a FileCloud Group

### To create a group:

- 1. Open a browser and log on the admin portal.
- 2. On the left control panel, click **Groups**.
- 3. Click the **Add Group** button.

The Add Group dialog box opens.

The 'Add Group' dialog box is shown. It has a blue title bar with the text 'Add Group' and a close button. Below the title bar is a warning icon and the text 'Name your group'. There is a label 'Group Name' above a text input field that contains the word 'Approvers'. At the bottom of the dialog are two buttons: 'Add Group' and 'Cancel'.

- 4. Click **Add Group**.
- 5. The group is added, and the **Manage Group** dialog box opens.

## Add FileCloud Users to a Group

This method requires the user accounts to already exist in your local FileCloud Server.

### To add FileCloud users to a group:

- 1. In the navigation panel, click **Groups**.
- 2. Click the Edit icon next to the group that you want to add members to..
- 3. If it is not already selected, click the **Members** tab.
- 4. In **Add Users to Group**, enter the username or email of an existing FileCloud user, and click **Add**.

**Manage Group**


Group Name:  [Save](#)

[Members](#) [Admins](#) [Policies](#)

**Members Management**

Add Users to Group [Import Users from AD Group](#)

[Search](#)

 **jessicam**  
jm2344311@gmail.com [Add](#) [Export](#)

Filter users

**Users**

No Records Found

[Close](#)

The user is listed under **Users in Group**.

5. Add any number of users.

**Manage Group**

Group Name:  [Save](#)

[Members](#) [Admins](#) [Policies](#)




**Members Management**

Add Users to Group [Import Users from AD Group](#)

[Search](#)

**Users in Group** (3 members in this group) [Export](#)

Filter users

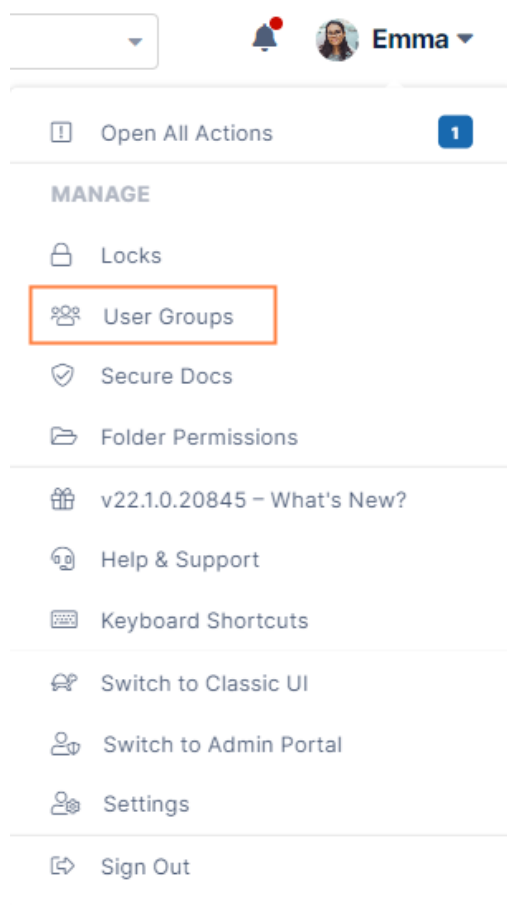
Users	
 david dm898002@gmail.com	<a href="#">Remove</a>
 Jared jaredtaylor978@gmail.com	<a href="#">Remove</a>
 Jessica jm2344311@gmail.com	<a href="#">Remove</a>

6. Either click **Save** to save the new members in the group, or click the **Admins** or **Policies** tab to further configure the group.

## Add Group Admins

You can assign users to be admins of a group and give each group admin access to view, add, and/or remove users from the group.

A user's policy also may enable them to add and/or remove users from groups. See [Giving Users Group Management Permissions](#) (see page 190) for more information. If either a user's group admin access or policy settings gives the user the permission to add or remove users from a group, the user has that ability, and can manage user groups in the user portal by expanding the user drop-down list and clicking **User Groups**:



### To Add Group Admins:

1. If you are not already inside the **Manage Group** dialog box, open it by clicking the Edit icon next to the group.
2. Click the **Admins** tab.
3. In the search box, enter a user that you want to add as an admin, and click **Add**.  
The user does not have to be a group member, but must be a current FileCloud user with Full or Guest status.


**Manage Group**

Group Name:  Save

Members Admins Policies

Group Admin Management

Search

 **jessicam**  
jm2344311@gmail.com Add

No Records Found

Close

The user is listed under Group Admins with **Can view users**, **Can add users**, and **Can remove users** checked by default.

- Uncheck any of the privileges that you do not want the user to have.


**Manage Group**

Group Name:  Save

Members Admins Policies

Group Admin Management

Search

Group Admins	Can view users	Can add users	Can remove users
 jessicam	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <span>Remove</span>

< Page 1 of 1 >

Close

- Add any number of admins and set their privileges.
- Either click **Save** to save the admins, or click one of the other tabs to further configure the group.

## Change a Group's Policy

Members of a group have both their user policy and the group's policy. For each setting the user has the greatest access given in either policy.

By default, your groups are assigned the **Global Default Policy**. You can change that default when you initially create the group or later by editing it.

#### To change a group's policy:

1. If you are not already inside the **Manage Group** dialog box, open it by clicking the Edit icon next to the group.
2. Click the **Policies** tab.
3. To change the group's policy, click **Select**.

The screenshot shows the 'Manage Group' dialog box with the 'Policies' tab selected. The 'Group Name' field is 'Approvers'. The 'Effective Policy' dropdown is set to 'Global Default Policy', and a 'Select' button is visible next to it. A 'Save' button is at the top right, and a 'Close' button is at the bottom right. Orange arrows point to the 'Policies' tab and the 'Select' button.

A list of policies opens.

4. Click a policy, and then click **Select**.
5. Click **Save**, and click **Close**.

#### Import Active Directory Users to a FileCloud Group

You can also import an existing AD group from an [Active Directory Server connected to FileCloud](#) (see [page 200](#)).



During AD import, if a user is not in the AD group, the account is not removed automatically from the FileCloud group. This logic is based on the scenario where an administrator manually adds other FileCloud users to the FileCloud group who are not in the AD group, and those users should not be removed.

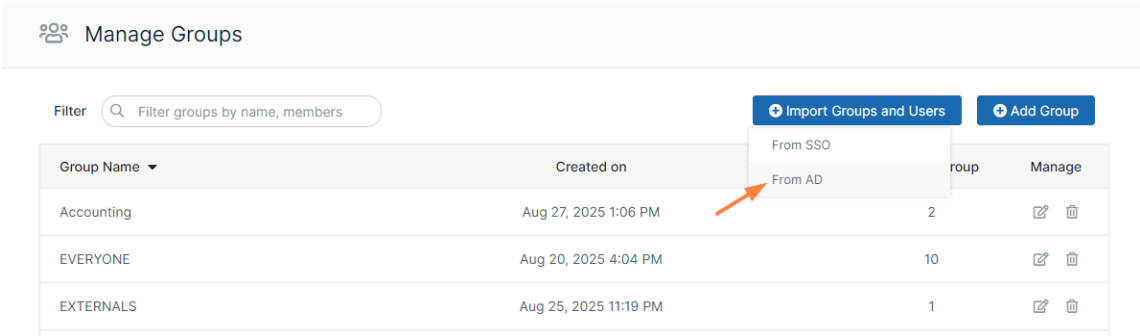
However, there is now an option for an enterprise that uses a large number of temporary workers, such as a construction company that uses a large number of contractors. If they import a large number of users based on groups, when a contractor is no longer employed, and therefore not a member of the AD group any more, the admin can now select a checkbox on the **AD Group Members**

**Import** dialog box called **Remove Members**. This allows admins who need to remove accounts on import to do so automatically. If you have manually created users that you don't want deleted but aren't a member of a group any longer, then you would not select this option.

⚠ You must set up and verify **Active Directory Settings** (see page 200) before completing the following steps.

**To add AD users to a FileCloud group:**

- 1. Open a browser and log in to the admin portal.
- 2. On the left control panel, click **Groups**.
- 3. Click the **Import AD Groups and Users** button, and choose **From AD**.



An **AD Groups** dialog box opens:

AD Groups

Filter AD Groups by Name

	Group	Host
<input type="checkbox"/>	test(group)	
<input type="checkbox"/>	test6789	
<input type="checkbox"/>	test123456	
<input type="checkbox"/>	testdevops	
<input type="checkbox"/>	TestUseCaseGroupA	
<input type="checkbox"/>	TestUseCaseGroupB	
<input type="checkbox"/>	TestUserCustomer	
<input type="checkbox"/>	TestUsers	
<input type="checkbox"/>	userswithoutemail	

<<

<

Page

3

of 3

>

>>

Next

4. Check the groups you want to import, and click **Next**.  
An **AD Group Members Import** dialog box opens.

**AD Group Members Import**


Automatic Sync:
☒


Remove Members: ⓘ
☐

Disable Members: ⓘ
☐

Send Email: ⓘ
☐











5. **Automatic Sync** is selected by default. Leave it selected to enable FileCloud to automatically add users to the FileCloud group that are added to the AD group. This sync is done every 24 hours.
  - The first time members from the AD group are imported as members of the FileCloud Group.
  - In the future, new members added to the AD group are synced automatically to the FileCloud group.
6. Select any of the other options:
  - **Remove Members** - Enable FileCloud to remove members from the group if they are no longer in the AD group.
  - **Disable Members** - Enable FileCloud to disable members in FileCloud as users if they are disabled in the AD group.
  - **Send Email** - Enable FileCloud to send email to members of the AD group telling them they have been added to the FileCloud group.
7. To import the users from the AD group, click **Import**.  
 If you do not have **Automatic Sync** enabled, rerun this operation at any time to add new members from the AD group into the FileCloud group.

 If the [Enable multiple AD domains](#) (see page 212) setting is enabled, the imported group's name in FileCloud is: **[AD group name] FROM [full domain name including any sub-domains]**:

 Manage Groups

Filter

[+ Import Groups and Users](#) [+ Add Group](#)

Group Name ▼	Created on	Status	Users in Group	Manage
EVERYONE	Aug 15, 2025 10:47 AM		20	 
EXTERNALS	Aug 25, 2025 11:19 PM		1	 
group1 FROM child1.mainad.filecloud	Sep 11, 2025 10:36 AM	<span>Synced</span>	2	 
group1 FROM child2.mainad.filecloud	Sep 11, 2025 10:45 AM	<span>Synced</span>	2	 
group1 FROM mainad.filecloud	Sep 11, 2025 10:45 AM	<span>Synced</span>	1	 

## Import SSO Users to a FileCloud Group

You may configure FileCloud to import groups and users from the OKTA, Google, and Azure SSO providers. See [Import Groups and Users from an SSO Provider](#) for configuration instructions.

By default, the users are not placed into their groups when they are imported into FileCloud, but you may enable a setting to enable this function. Note that you cannot import SSO users into FileCloud separately from their groups.

### To import an SSO group into FileCloud:

1. In the admin portal, in the navigation **panel**, click **Groups**.
2. Click the **Import Groups and Users** button, and choose **From SSO**.

Manage Groups

Filter

[Import Groups and Users](#) [Add Group](#)

Group Name ▼	Created on	Members	In Group	Manage
Accounting	Aug 27, 2025 1:06 PM	2		
EVERYONE	Aug 20, 2025 4:04 PM	10		
EXTERNALS	Aug 25, 2025 11:19 PM	1		

An **Import SSO Groups** dialog box opens.

3. Select the SSO configuration that you want to import a group from, and click **Next**.

**Import SSO Groups** ✕

	Name	Provider
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	FileCloudOktaIntegration	okta
<input type="radio"/>	FileCloudAzure	azure

Next Close

4. Select a group, and click **Next**.

**Import SSO Groups** ✕

Name

☐ Human Resources

☒ Marketing

Next Close

5. Enable or disable the options for the import.

**Automatic Import** is enabled by default. In this example, the option **Dynamic Members Import** is also enabled so you can see how it automatically places users into the correct group.

**SSO Group Members Import**

Automatic Import: ⓘ

Remove Members: ⓘ

Dynamic Members Import: ⓘ

Disable Members: ⓘ

☒

☐

☒

☐

Import Close

The options function as follows:

<b>Automatic Import</b>	Enabled by default. FileCloud periodically imports new users from the group in the SSO provider to the group in FileCloud.
<b>Remove Members</b>	Disabled by default. The group and its permissions are imported without its users. When a member of the group logs into FileCloud for the first time, the member is automatically placed into the group.
<b>Dynamic Members Import</b>	Disabled by default. Users are automatically placed into the correct groups when they are imported.
<b>Disable Members</b>	Disabled by default. FileCloud users that are disabled in the SSO group are also disabled in the FileCloud group.

6. Click **Import**.

Although **Dynamic Members Import** is selected, the group initially shows 0 users (members) and shows the **Status** as **Syncing in progress**. The user count will appear when the syncing is complete.

Manage Groups				
Filter <input type="text" value="Filter groups by name, members"/>		<a href="#">Import Groups and Users</a> <a href="#">Add Group</a>		
Group Name ▼	Created on	Status	Users in Group	Manage
Accounting	Aug 27, 2025 1:06 PM		2	<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>
EVERYONE	Aug 20, 2025 4:04 PM		10	<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>
EXTERNALS	Aug 25, 2025 11:19 PM		1	<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>
Marketing	Aug 27, 2025 1:41 PM	Syncing in progress	0	<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>

The user count appears when the the status appears as **Synced**.

Manage Groups				
Filter <input type="text" value="Filter groups by name, members"/>		<a href="#">Import Groups and Users</a> <a href="#">Add Group</a>		
Group Name ▼	Created on	Status	Users in Group	Manage
Accounting	Aug 27, 2025 1:06 PM		2	<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>
EVERYONE	Aug 20, 2025 4:04 PM		11	<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>
EXTERNALS	Aug 25, 2025 11:19 PM		1	<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>
Marketing	Aug 27, 2025 1:41 PM	Synced	2	<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>

Click the edit icon for the group to see which users were imported and placed into the group (because **Dynamic Members Import** was selected):

Manage Group

Group Name:

Save

Members

Admins

Policies

Members Management

Add Users to Group

[Import Users from AD Group](#)

Q

Users in Group (3 members in this group)

Export

Filter users

Users

	David Martinez	Remove
	Jared Taylor	Remove

The users should also appear in the Manage Users screen:

Manage Users

Filter

Status Filter : All

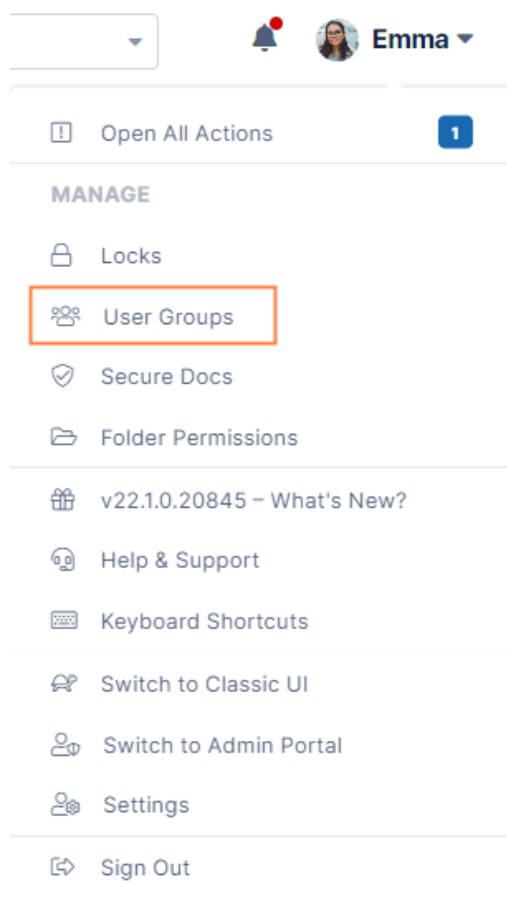
	User name	Display Name	Email
	jenniferp	Jennifer	
	jaredtaylor978	Jared Taylor	
	dm898002	David Martinez	

## Giving Users Group Management Permissions

You can give users permission to add, edit, and delete groups by assigning them a policy that enables group permissions.


You can also give them permission to view, add members, or delete members for a specific group in the settings for the group. See [Group Settings \(see page 177\)](#) for more information about these types of settings.

When users have either group permissions through their policies or through settings for a group, they have access to the **User Groups** option in the user portal:



For more information on user management of groups, see [User Groups](#).

## To add group permissions to a policy:

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Policies** . The **Policies** page opens.
2. Click the Edit icon for the policy of the users who you want to give group permissions.

# Policies

New Policy

Create a new policy

New Policy

Policy Name	User Count	Group Count	Default	Actions
Global Default Policy	1	0		
TEAM FOLDER POLICY	1	0		

<<

<

Page 1 of 1

>

>>

2 rows

The **Policy Settings** dialog box opens.

3. Click the **User Policy** tab.
4. Scroll down to see the Group policy settings.  
By default, each is disabled.

Allow group creation

Allows users to create groups from user portal

Allow group management

Allows adding or removing users from groups in user portal

Allow group deletion

Allows users to delete groups from user portal

5. Change the group settings that you want to enable for users with this policy.
- **Allow group creation** - Allows the user to add new groups and manage members in the groups from the user portal.
  - **Allows group management** - Allows the user to add and remove members from any group, including groups they have not created, from the user portal. This gives the user the ability to add and remove group members to groups created in the admin portal as well as groups created in the user portal.
  - **Allow group deletion** - Allows the user to delete any groups, including groups they have not created, from the user portal. This gives the user the ability to delete groups created in the admin portal as well as groups created in the user portal.

If none of these settings is enabled, users with the policy do not see the **Manage User Groups** option in the user portal unless group access is enabled for individual groups. See [Group Settings \(see page 177\)](#).

## Admin User and Role Settings

FileCloud enables you to create admin roles with a set of administrator permissions. Users assigned to any of the admin roles that you have created become admin users and have the permissions assigned to the role.

**Main Admin.** The admin account that is created when FileCloud is installed. There is only one Main Admin account in FileCloud.

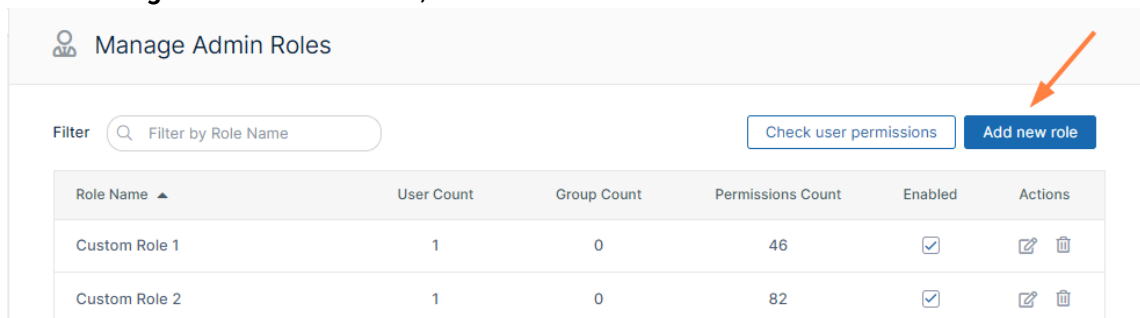
**Admin User.** User accounts that can access the FileCloud admin interface.

**Admin Role.** Role that defines the set of admin permissions for an admin user. If admin users have multiple admin roles, they have the combined admin permissions of all of the roles. For instructions on checking an admin user's permissions, see Managing Admin Users.

### Creating admin roles and adding admin users

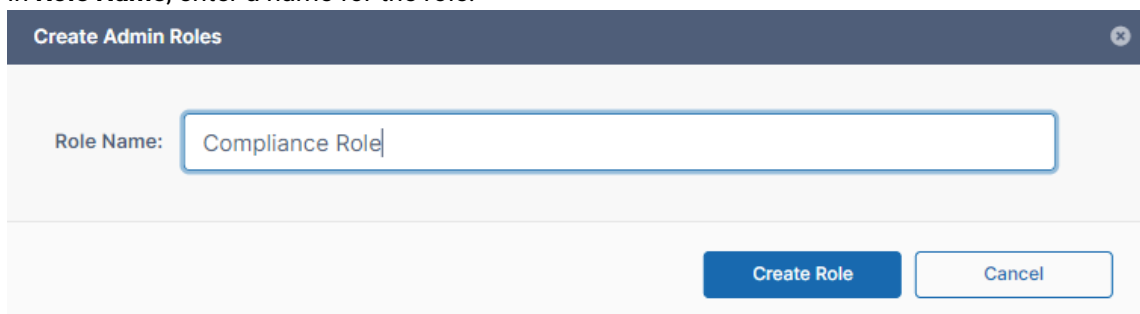
To create admin roles and add users to them:

1. Click **Admins** in the navigation panel.
2. In the **Manage Admin Roles** screen, click **Add new role**.



The **Create Admin Roles** dialog box opens.

3. In **Role Name**, enter a name for the role.



4. Click **Create Role**.

The **Manage Admin Roles** dialog box opens to the first page of permissions. The new role is listed at the top of the dialog box.

Manage Admin Roles

Role Name:

Enable ☒

Permissions

Users

Groups

Permissions

Operation	Read	Create	Update	Delete
Alert	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Audit	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Customization	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Compliance	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Device Management	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Encryption	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Federated Search	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

<<

<

Page

1

of 4

>

>>

Remove Role

Close

- Go through each page of permissions, and check the permissions that you want to make available to the role.
- When you have finished assigning permissions to the role, click the **Users** tab if you are ready to assign users to the role.
- In **Add Users to Role**, enter each user that you want to add to the role. When the name appears, click **Add**.  
You can add **Full** and **Guest** users to roles, but not **External** users.  
If you add a user who is not an admin user to a role, the user automatically becomes an admin user.

Manage Admin Roles

Role Name: Compliance Role

Enable ☒

Permissions

**Users**

Groups

Users

Add Users to Role

jm

jessicam  
jm2344311@gmail.com

Add

Filter users...

Gaby

Remove

Remove Role

Close

8. To add groups to the role, click the **Groups** tab.
9. In **Add Groups to Role**, enter each group that you want to add to the role. When the name appears, click **Add**.  
Any users in a group who were not admin users automatically become admin users after the group is added to the role.

Manage Admin Roles

Role Name: Compliance Role

Enable ☒

Permissions

Users

Groups

Groups

Add Groups to Role

hum

Human Resources Group

Filter groups

No Records Found

Add

Remove Role

Close

10. Click **Close**.

The new role is listed on the page with its user, group, and permissions counts. It is enabled by default.

Manage Admin Roles

Filter

Check user permissions

Add new role

Role Name ▲	User Count	Group Count	Permissions Count	Enabled	Actions
Compliance Role	2	1	29	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Custom Role 1	2	0	46	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Custom Role 2	1	0	82	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Login Screen Edits	1	0	4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Security	0	0	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	

For instructions on removing an admin role, see [Managing Admin Users](#).

### Definitions of Permissions

The following permissions represent functions that admin users may be permitted to perform.

Operation	Description
Alert	Alert item on the admin interface is visible. Authorization to view and clear alerts in admin interface.
Audit	Audit item on the admin interface is visible. Authorization to view, delete and export Audit Records.
Compliance	Compliance Dashboard on the admin interface is visible. Authorization to view and update compliance settings.
Customization	Customization item on the admin interface is visible. Authorization to customize the FileCloud interface. <b>Note:</b> Admin users must have <b>Customization &gt; Update</b> enabled to be able to change the user login background.
Device Management	Devices item on the admin interface is visible. Authorization to view, create, delete and update Devices.
Encryption	Authorization to manage all Encryption at Rest settings.
Federated Search	Support to perform federated search through the admin interface.
Files	Manage Files. Authorization to view, create, modify, download, and delete user files.
Folder Permissions	Manage Folder Level Permissions. Authorization to view and manage Folder Permissions.
Groups	Groups menu item on the admin interface is visible. Authorization to view, create, modify and delete Groups. Manage group members. Import group members from Active Directory.
Locks	View , create, and delete Locks on Files and Folders in FileCloud.
Manage Administrators	Allows promoted admin users to manage the permissions of other promoted admin users.
Metadata	View, create, update and delete metadata set definitions, attributes and permissions.
Network Share	Network Folders item on the admin interface is visible. Authorization to view, create, modify and delete Network Folders. Manage User and Group Access to Network Folders.

Operation	Description
Notifications	Notifications menu item on the admin interface is available. Add, edit, update, and delete notification rules.
Reports	Reports menu item on the admin interface is available. Add, execute, edit and delete reports.
Retention	Retention menu item on the admin interface is available. Add, edit, and delete retention policies.
Rich Dashboard	View rich dashboard view including tables and graphs on the admin UI dashboard.
Settings	Settings item on the admin interface is visible. Authorization to view and modify FileCloud Settings.
Smart Classification	Smart Classification menu item on the admin interface is available. Add, update, run, and delete content classification rules.
Smart DLP	Smart DLP menu item on the admin interface is available. Add, edit, and delete DLP rules.
System	System item on the admin interface is visible. Authorization to run system checks, install check, generate logs and UPGRADE FileCloud to new version.
Team Folders	Set up Team Folders, add, edit, delete and manage team folder and corresponding permissions. <i>Note: The corresponding Folder Permission must be enabled to be able to perform a Team Folder operation.</i>
User Share	User Shares item on the admin interface is visible. Authorization to view, create, modify and delete User Shares.
Users	Users menu item on the admin interface is visible. Authorization to view, create, modify and delete Users. Import New Users. Reset Password for Users.
Workflow	Workflow menu item on the admin interface is visible. Add, edit and delete workflows on FileCloud.

Admin users can log in to the admin portal using either their username or email id.

## User Authentication Settings

FileCloud provides multiple ways of authenticating a user account. This is applicable for both FULL and GUEST user accounts.

FileCloud supports the following Authentication modes

- Default Authentication
- Active Directory based Authentication
- LDAP based Authentication

Passwords for LDAP user can only be changed in the LDAP server

	Default Authentication	AD	LDAP
<b>Authentication</b>	Performed by FileCloud	In AD Server	In LDAP Server
<b>Allowing Users to Create Accounts</b> (see page 114)	Permitted	Not Permitted	Not Permitted
<b>Bulk User creation</b>	<a href="#">using CSV files (see page 108)</a>	<a href="#">Import from AD group (see page 112)</a>	Not Available
<b>Can Admin Change Password</b>	Password change for all users allowed	Passwords for AD user can only changed in the active directory.	Passwords for LDAP user can only be changed in LDAP server.
<b>Can user change/reset password</b>	Yes	Passwords for AD user can only changed in the active directory	Passwords for LDAP user can only be changed in LDAP server
<b>User Account Types</b>	Full, Guest, External	Full, Guest	Full, Guest




### Note

- A user account can only have a single type of authentication mechanism.

## Enabling Default Authentication

Initially, FileCloud is set to default authentication mode. User accounts created when this authentication type is configured have credentials stored and managed within FileCloud.

**To enable Default Authentication:**

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Authentication**  . The **Authentication** settings page opens.
2. If **Authentication type** is not already set to **Default**, change it to **Default** and click **Save**.

## Authentication

[Reset to defaults](#)

Authentication type

Default

### Default

Default authentication stores the user account credentials in the FileCloud internal database. No additional configuration is required.

## Active Directory Authentication



For admins upgrading to FileCloud 23.251:

- Prior to version 23.251, FileCloud always used the AD attribute **mail** to authenticate AD users, even if the **AD mail attribute** field in FileCloud specified a different attribute.

This has been fixed. However, if you used an AD attribute other than the **mail** prior to version 23.251, AD users imported into FileCloud prior to 23.251 will now receive an error when they try to log in to FileCloud (unless the non-**mail** attribute always has the same value as the **mail** attribute). If you have users who may have trouble logging in for this reason, prior to updating to 23.251, change the **AD mail attribute** field back to **mail**.

**Note**

AD users count towards the FileCloud license only after:

- The user account logs in to FileCloud
- A user from AD is explicitly imported

In this type of authentication mechanism, a user account is authenticated against an external Active Directory server.


## Prerequisites

Required	Configuration Requirement	Notes
Active Directory service	Must be accessible from FileCloud	IP and Port must be accessible.
Active Directory	Must support Simple Authentication Method	Must use simple bind authentication, either anonymously or with a username and password.
Active Directory users	Must have an email attribute FileCloud username must match AD user login name <b>Important:</b> The FileCloud username cannot be changed.	Beginning in FileCloud 21.2, the AD Account name used in Active Directory settings must have an email ID in Active Directory. The email address is saved in the user's FileCloud profile. During login, validation requires the FileCloud email address and the AD email address to match; later modification of email address in AD or FileCloud will cause login to fail.
FileCloud Server		

## How To Enable AD Authentication

### Enabling AD Authentication

To enable AD authentication in FileCloud:

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Authentication**  . The **Authentication** settings page opens.
2. Under **Authentication**, change **Authentication type** to **Active Directory**, and click **Save**.

### Authentication

 Reset to defaults

Authentication type

Active Directory ▼

Additional settings appear.

3. Enter the required information in the settings under **Active Directory Settings** (See **AD configuration parameters**, below) and then click **Save**.

**Note:** The changed parameters must be saved before performing an AD test.

#### **AD configuration parameters**

To connect FileCloud with your AD environment, fill in the settings as shown in the following screenshot.

<div> <div>Authentication</div> <div> <div>Reset to defaults</div> </div> <div> <div>Authentication type</div> <div>Active Directory</div> </div> <div> <div>Active Directory settings</div> </div> <div> <div>Check AD connectivity and settings.</div> <div>AD Test</div> </div> <div> <div>AD host*</div> <div>AD host name</div> <div>adexample.company.com</div> </div> <div> <div>AD port*</div> <div>AD port number, usually 389</div> <div>389</div> </div> <div> <div>Use TLS for the connection.</div> <div></div> </div> <div> <div>Use SSL for the connection.</div> <div></div> </div> <div> <div>Enable multiple AD domains.</div> <div>Use the Global Catalog (GC) to set up authentication across AD domains.</div> <div>Note: Enabling this setting automatically enables "Allow email as username."</div> <div></div> </div> <div> <div>Users have same UPN account suffixes</div> <div>To save your change, fill in the following AD account suffix or AD logon name prefix field and save.</div> <div></div> </div> <div> <div>AD account suffix</div> <div>UPN suffix, for example, @filecloud.local</div> <div>@filecloud.local</div> </div> <div> <div>AD Base DN</div> <div>User search DN, for example 'DC=filecloud,DC=local'</div> <div>cn=readonly-admin,dc=example,dc=local</div> </div> <div> <div>AD mail attribute</div> <div>AD mail attribute, usually 'mail'</div> <div>mail</div> </div> <div> <div>Limit login to AD group</div> <div>An AD group users must belong to in order to log in (optional)</div> <div></div> </div> <div> <div>AD account name*</div> <div>The AD account to use for admin operations</div> <div>support-test</div> </div> <div> <div>AD account password*</div> <div>The AD account password</div> <div> <div> <div> <div> <div></div> </div> </div> </div> </div> <div> <div>Disable anonymous binding</div> <div>Use a service account to bind with the AD server instead of anonymous binding</div> <div></div> </div> <div> <div>AD service account name</div> <div>The service account to use for binding to the AD server</div> <div></div> </div> <div> <div>AD service account password</div> <div>The service account password</div> <div> <div> <div> <div> <div></div> </div> </div> </div> </div> </div> </div></div>	<p><b>AD host</b> - Required. Either the IP address or host name of the AD server.</p> <p><b>AD port</b> - Required. Enter <b>389</b> for non-SSL, or enter <b>636</b> for SSL.</p> <p><b>Use TLS for the connection</b> - Optional. Enable this setting if your AD server requires clients to use TLS to connect.</p> <p><b>Use SSL for the connection</b> - Optional. Enable this setting if your AD server requires clients to use SSL to connect.  <b>NOTE:</b> Additional change required (see page 211).</p> <p><b>Enable multiple AD domains</b> - Enable this setting to authenticate and sync users and groups across multiple trusted AD domains. For more information about this feature, see Authenticate Users Across Trusted AD Domains (see page 212).</p> <p><b>Users have same UPN account suffixes</b>  Enabled by default. All of your AD users should have the same suffix.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If your users have the same UPN suffixes:  Leave this setting enabled, and enter the suffix in the next field, <b>AD account suffix</b>.</li> </ul>

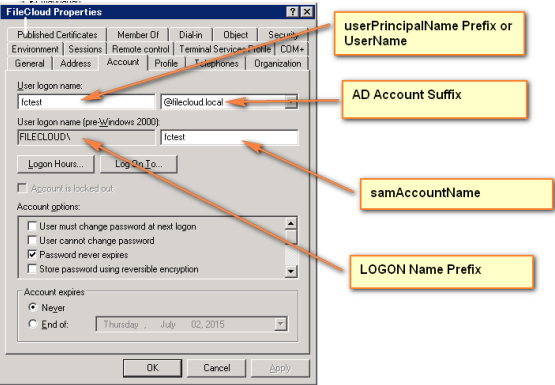
- Otherwise:  
Disable this setting. The next field changes to **AD logon name prefix** as in the following screenshot. Set **AD logon name prefix** (a trailing **\** is not required). See [Mixed AD Authentication support](#) (see page 215).

Users have same UPN account suffixes ☐

AD logon name prefix

AD logon name prefix, for example 'FILECLOUD'

To find the **AD logon name prefix** and the **AD account suffix**, refer to:



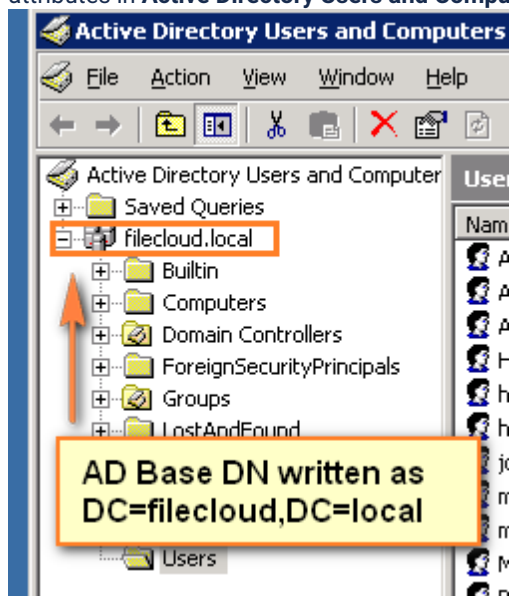
**AD account suffix** - The UPN suffix for your domain, the part after **User logon name** in the dropdown next to it in the above screenshot.

Instead of viewing the properties as shown above, you can get the account suffix by running the following query in the command line in the AD server:

```
dsquery * <FULLY QUALIFIED NAME> -scope base -attr sAMAccountName userPrincipalName
```

```
C:\Documents and Settings\Administrator>dsquery * cn=testadl,cn=users,dc=filecloud,dc=local -scope base -attr sAMAccountName userPrincipalName
sAMAccountName      userPrincipalName
testadl             testadl@filecloud.local
```

**AD Base DN** - Required. Do not enter value with quotes. The Base DN for your domain. Located in the extended attributes in **Active Directory Users and Computers MMC**:



You can also get the Base DN by running the following query in the command line in the AD server.

```
dsquery user -name <LOGON NAME>
```

	<pre>C:\Documents and Settings\Administrator&gt;dsquery user -name testadl "CN=testadl,CN=Users,DC=filecloud,DC=local"</pre> <p><b>AD mail attribute</b> - Required. FileCloud requires each user account to have an associated email id. Typically the name of this attribute in AD is <b>mail</b>. If a user account has no mail attribute, then login to FileCloud will fail. If a mail attribute is present, and login fails, then check the base DN to ensure it is accurate and is without quotes.</p> <p><b>Limit login to AD group</b> - Optional. To limit login to specific users, add them to a group and specify the group name here. (Typically this is left blank.) If you set this field, ensure that the account name specified in <b>AD account name</b> is part of the AD group.</p> <p><b>AD account name</b> - Required. A valid account name is required here in order for FileCloud to query the AD server. This can be any account that can access the AD server, and is located in <b>User logon name</b> in the <b>FileCloud Properties</b> screenshot, above.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b> Enter username, not email id in this field. This account must have an email address set in AD.</p> <p><b>AD account password</b> - A password for the AD account name.</p> <p><b>Disable anonymous binding</b> - Optional. Enable this checkbox if your AD does not allow anonymous binding. Enabling this checkbox enables the <b>AD service account name</b> and <b>AD service account password</b> text boxes.</p> <p><b>AD service account name</b> - Optional. The service account name to use to bind with the AD server.</p> <p><b>AD service account password</b> - Optional. The service account password to use to bind with the AD server.</p>



To connect to Active Directory over SSL, please [follow the steps mentioned here](#). (see page 211)



**Make sure the settings are SAVED before trying the AD Tests to verify connectivity**

### Testing AD Connectivity

Once all data is entered and saved, test the AD settings by clicking the **AD Test** button.

## Authentication

[Reset to defaults](#)

Authentication type

Active Directory 


### Active Directory settings

Check AD connectivity and settings.



AD Test

A **Test AD Configuration** dialog box opens:

Test AD Configuration 

Basic Verification

Validate AD Settings

Group Members

List Groups

AD Group Name

Get Group Members

Verify User Access

User Name

Password

Test Login


Get Email ID

Close

The following tests can be done.

1. Validate AD settings.
  - a. Click the **Validate AD Settings** button to perform basic connectivity tests with the AD server.

You should receive the response:

SUCCESS 

AD Access Verified Successfully

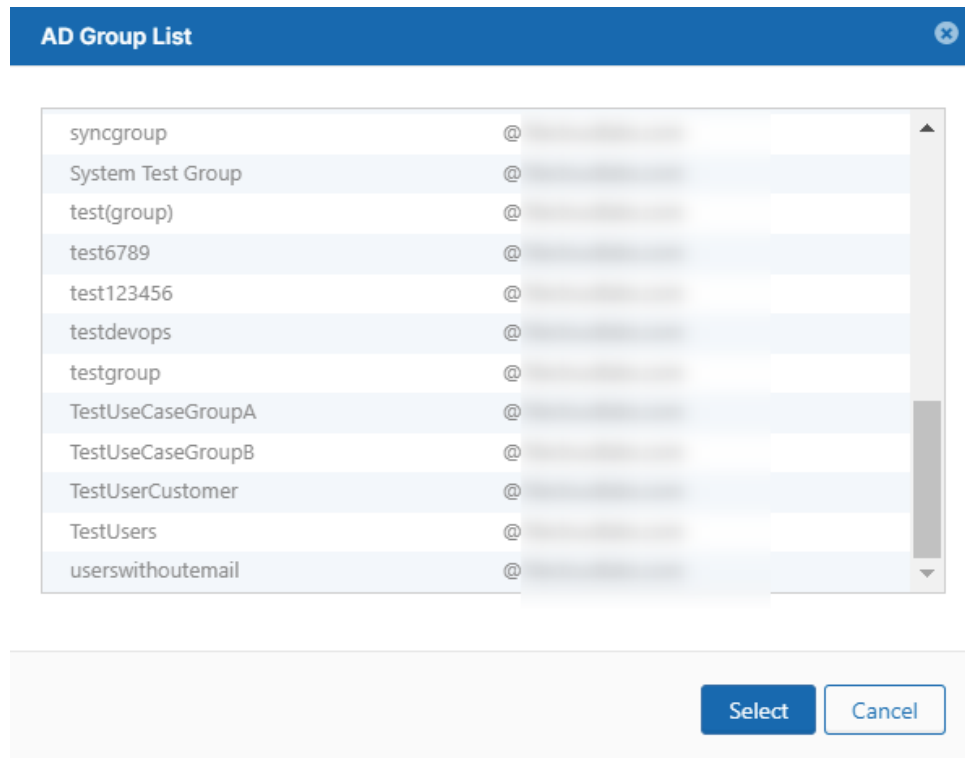
Close

If the tests fail, then check your AD settings to ensure all the data is present and is accurate.

## 2. List Groups

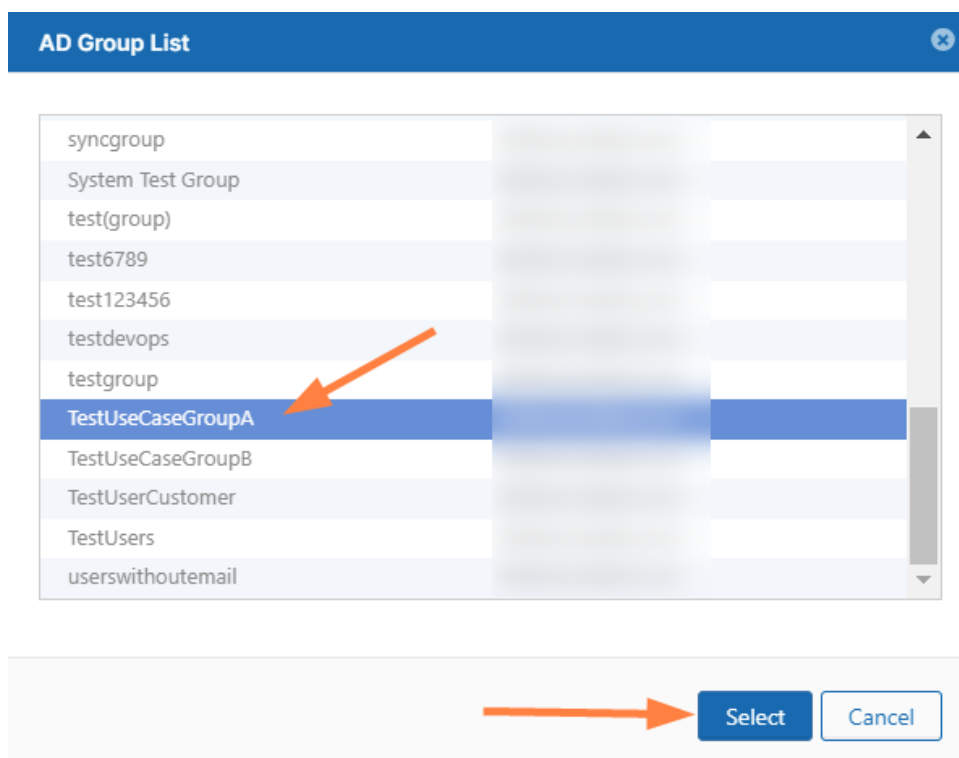
- a. Once AD settings are validated, click **List Groups** to view the list of groups read from the server.

You should see a list similar to:



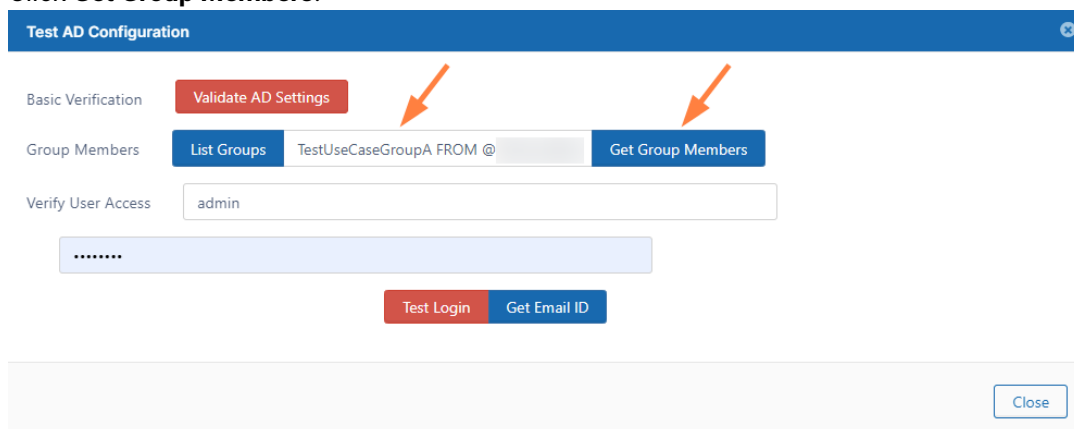
## 3. Get Group Member

- a. Click **List Groups**, then select a group and click **Select**.

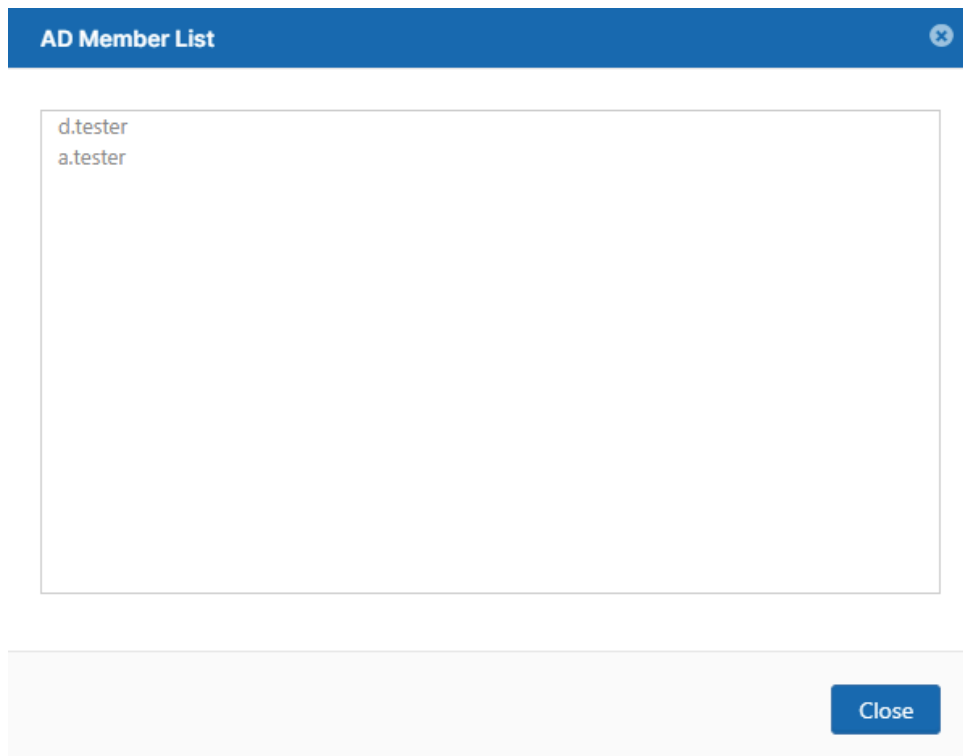


The Group name appears in the **Test AD Configuration** dialog box.  
(You can also enter the group name directly into the text box without selecting from the **AD Group List** popup.)

- b. Click **Get Group Members**.



The **AD Members List** should list the correct members of the group:



**Note:** The group members are NOT automatically added to FileCloud.

#### 4. Verify User Access

- a. Enter a specific user name and password and click **Test Login** to make sure the user can log in to AD.  
If not, check if the AD suffix or AD prefix matches the one entered in the **AD account suffix** or **AD logon name prefix** in the FileCloud admin portal or the AD server.
- b. Enter a specific user name and password and click **Get Email ID**.  
This should return the correct email address for a user account from AD. If a valid email address is not returned, then FileCloud cannot import the user account. Check if the email address is included for the user on the AD Server.

### In this section:

- [Connecting to AD via SSL \(see page 211\)](#)
- (23.253) Authenticating to Multiple AD servers
- [Authenticate Users Across Trusted AD Domains \(see page 212\)](#)
- [Mixed AD Domain Environments \(see page 215\)](#)
- [How to migrate the data from a user that changes account name \(see page 216\)](#)
- [Troubleshooting Active Directory \(see page 218\)](#)

## More Information:

### FileCloud Blogs

Import Users to AD via PowerShell<sup>10</sup>

## Connecting to AD via SSL

If you want to securely add users, change passwords, or connect to the Active Directory server being used with your FileCloud site, then you will need to use an SSL certificate.

The Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) is used to read from and write to Active Directory. By default, LDAP traffic is transmitted unsecured. You can make LDAP traffic confidential and secure by using Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) / Transport Layer Security (TLS) technology.




Before you can enable the use of SSL certificates in FileCloud Server, you must have completed the following steps:

1. Install and configure your Active Directory server
2. Install an SSL certificate on your Active Directory server

### How do I enable the use of SSL in FileCloud Server?

#### To enable the use of SSL Certificates in FileCloud Server:

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Authentication** . The **Authentication** settings page opens.
2. Under **Authentication**, change **Authentication type** to **Active Directory**, and click **Save**.

### Authentication

 Reset to defaults

Authentication type

Active Directory ▼

Additional settings appear.

3. In **AD port**, change the number to **636**.

10. <https://www.filecloud.com/blog/2022/04/import-users-to-ad-via-powershell/#.YwOIqXbMK3A>

4. Enable **Use SSL** for the connection.

### Active Directory settings

Check AD connectivity and settings.

AD Test

AD host\*

AD host name

adexample.mycompany.com

AD port\*

AD port number, usually 389

636

Use TLS for the connection.



Use SSL for the connection.



5. Click **Save**.

### How do I connect to AD using TLS?

Connecting to Active Directory over TLS



#### TLS

To use TLS, use port **389** instead of port **636**, and enable **Use TLS for the connection** instead of **Use SSL for the connection**.

## Authenticate Users Across Trusted AD Domains



The ability for admins to configure FileCloud to sync users and groups across multiple trusted AD domains through the FileCloud admin portal is available in FileCloud 23.252.


Organizations may maintain multiple AD domains (and sub-domains) in a structure referred to as an **AD forest**, which authenticates user access to all of the included domains, enabling actions such as searching to be performed across all of the domains. A **Global Catalog (GC)** helps manage an AD forest by indexing all of its domains so they can be cross referenced easily.

The instructions on this page show you how to configure authentication of all of the AD servers in your domain forest using the Global Catalog (GC). To authenticate to multiple AD servers by separately configuring each of the AD servers in your adconfig file, see [Authenticating to Multiple AD servers](#).

You can sync FileCloud users and groups with all domains in an AD forest by enabling **Enable multiple AD domains** in the Authentication settings for Active Directory. When this setting is enabled, the users in that AD forest are required to log in with their full email addresses to enable cross-domain resolution.

For more information on using a multidomain AD infrastructure, see [AD Directory Services Getting Started](#)<sup>11</sup>.

## To enable multiple AD server authentication:

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Authentication**  . The **Authentication** settings page opens.
2. Under **Authentication**, change **Authentication type** to **Active Directory**, and click **Save**.



Additional fields appear.

---

11. <https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/windows-server/identity/ad-ds/ad-ds-getting-started>

3. Toggle on **Enable multiple AD domains**.

## Authentication

Authentication type

Active Directory

### Active Directory settings

Check AD connectivity and settings.

AD Test

AD host\*

AD host name

adexample.company.com

AD port\*

AD port number, usually 389

389

Use TLS for the connection.

Use SSL for the connection.

Enable multiple AD domains.

Use the Global Catalog (GC) to set up authentication across AD domains.

**Note: Enabling this setting automatically enables "Allow email as username."**

When **Enable multiple AD domains** is toggled on:


- the following account suffix and prefix fields are hidden, since multiple domains are defined by different account suffixes:
  - Users have same UPN account suffixes**
  - AD account suffix**
  - AD logon name prefix**
- The **Allow email as username** setting available in Admin settings is automatically enabled because users stored in this AD domain forest are required to log in to FileCloud with their full email addresses, which are taken from the User Principal Name (UPN) in Active Directory. You are not permitted to disable **Allow email as username** as long as **Enable multiple AD domains** is enabled.

4. Fill in the other fields as instructed on the page Active Directory Authentication ([see page 199](#)).

## Handling of groups and users with the same names in different domains

In AD forests, it is not uncommon for different AD domains or sub-domains to have users or groups with the same names. For example, two divisions of a company may each have their own domain, but both divisions may have a Marketing group or a user named Michael in their domain. For this reason, when **Enable multiple AD domain** is enabled:


- When a group is imported from an AD domain, its name in FileCloud includes both the group name and the domain/subdomain name:

 Manage Groups

Filter  Import Groups and Users Add Group

Group Name ▼	Created on	Status	Users in Group	Manage
EVERYONE	Aug 15, 2025 10:47 AM		20	
EXTERNALS	Aug 25, 2025 11:19 PM		1	
group1 FROM child1.mainad.filecloud	Sep 11, 2025 10:36 AM	Synced	2	
group1 FROM child2.mainad.filecloud	Sep 11, 2025 10:45 AM	Synced	2	
group1 FROM mainad.filecloud	Sep 11, 2025 10:45 AM	Synced	1	

- When a user is imported through an AD group, its user name in FileCloud is its email address, including the full domain and sub-domains:

 Manage Users Add User Import Export

Filter  Status Filter : All Source Filter : All Show 10 Items

User name	Display Name	Email	Last Login	Status	Actions
user1@child1.mainad.filecloud	user 1	user1@child1.mainad.filecloud	--	<span>Full Access</span>	
user1@child2.mainad.filecloud	user 1	user1@child2.mainad.filecloud	--	<span>Full Access</span>	

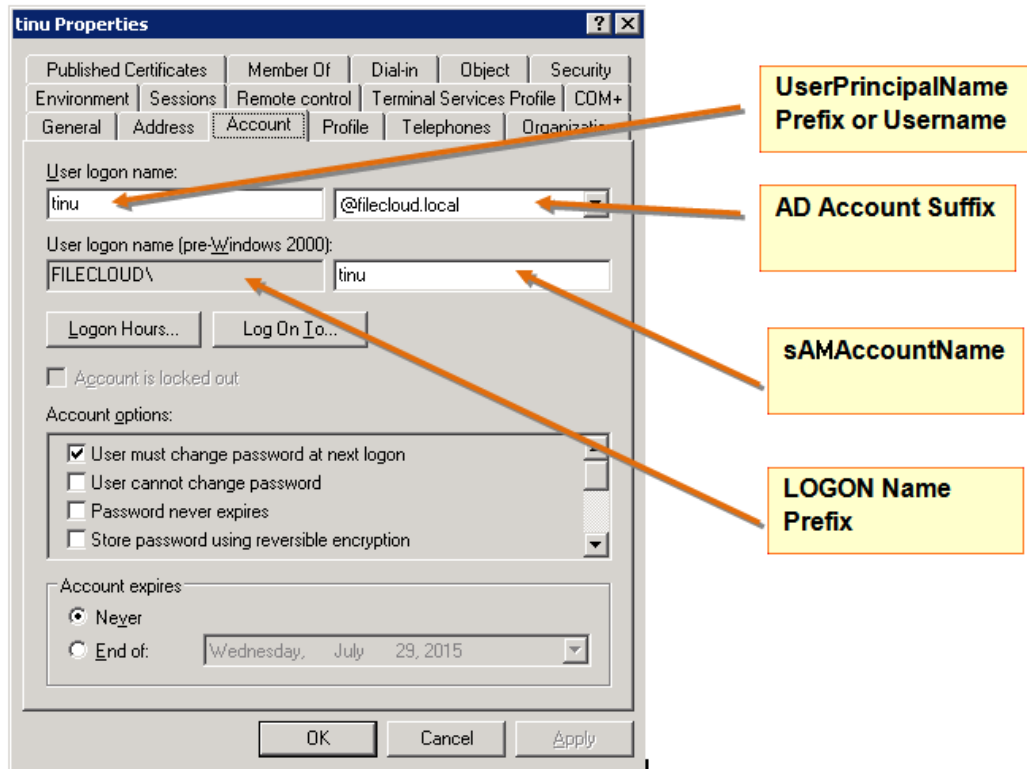
## Mixed AD Domain Environments

In some AD environments, there may be multiple UPN domain suffixes set up in a mixed AD hosting setup and the UPN prefix names might not be unique in those cases.

Normally FileCloud uses the UPN prefix names as the usernames, and if they are not unique, FileCloud may not be able to identify the user account correctly.

Therefore, for FileCloud to authenticate in an environment where this occurs, you need to set up the AD connection information slightly differently. In these cases, the account sAMAccountName will be used as the user id.

1. Disable the checkbox "Users have the same UPN Account Suffixes"
2. Set the **AD Logon Name Prefix** parameter, which is the prefix used in the non-editable part of the **User logon name** (pre-Windows 2000).



Users can log in using either their email or sAMAccountName.

## How to migrate the data from a user that changes account name

When the account name for a user changes in Active Directory, FileCloud won't recognize this change. All the files the user owns still belong to the old account.

### To migrate the account data to the new AD account:

1. Log in to the admin portal.
2. Go to the Users section and change the user authentication method from **External** to **Default** and assign a password:

**User Details**

Name	john	Total Quota	2 GB
Email	john@xyz.com	Used Quota	0 B
Last Login	--	Available Quota	2 GB
Group	<a href="#">Manage</a>	Used Storage	0 B <a href="#">More&gt;</a>

[Mobile Devices](#)
[Manage Files](#)
[Manage Shares](#)
[Reset Password](#)
[Email Password](#)
[Delete Account](#)
[Manage Policy](#)
[Manage Backups](#)

Access Level:

Authentication: ☒ Default ☐ External (AD/LDAP)

Email:

Display Name:

Account Expires On:

Password Expires On:

Email Verified: ☒

[Save](#) [Close](#)

The user can login using Sync App or from Web UI and download all their files.

3. Ask the user to login via Web User Portal using the new account/password (AD).
4. Reset the Sync App settings and enter the user's new domain credentials without removing the data. See Sync Settings.
5. Log in to the Sync App with the new account credentials; don't remove the data from the computer.  
All the user's files will sync to the server.

In addition to this, all the user shares need to be created and, if the user belongs to any Team Folders, the account has to be added again and permissions created. If the user belongs to any Network Shares, please remember to add the account to them as well.

Once all the user's data is uploaded to the new account and verified; you can delete the old account.

## Troubleshooting Active Directory

### Common FileCloud Active Directory problems and solutions

#### Trouble establishing a connection with Active Directory:

1. Make sure you have followed the instructions for entering the settings shown in [Active Directory Authentication](#) (see page 199) under **AD configuration parameters**.
2. Check that the port you have specified (either 389 or 636) is open in the AD server for the FileCloud server.

You can use the telnet command to confirm that it is open.

**telnet [ip address] [port]**

For example, if your IP address were 192.168.1.191 and your port were 389, you would enter:

```
telnet 192.168.1.191 389
```

3. Confirm that you have entered an account in **AD account name**. This account is used to query the AD server and must be present.  
If you have entered a value in **Limit login to AD group** (see below) the account you enter into **AD account name** must be a member of the AD group.
4. Confirm that you have entered an **AD account password** and that it is correct.

Verify your AD settings using the following steps:

#### Testing AD Connectivity

Once all data is entered and saved, test the AD settings by clicking the **AD Test** button.

### Authentication

[Reset to defaults](#)

Authentication type

Active Directory ▼

#### Active Directory settings

Check AD connectivity and settings.



**AD Test**

A **Test AD Configuration** dialog box opens:

Test AD Configuration

Basic Verification

Validate AD Settings

Group Members

List Groups

AD Group Name

Get Group Members

Verify User Access

User Name

Password

Test Login

Get Email ID

Close

The following tests can be done.

1. Validate AD settings.
  - a. Click the **Validate AD Settings** button to perform basic connectivity tests with the AD server.

You should receive the response:

SUCCESS

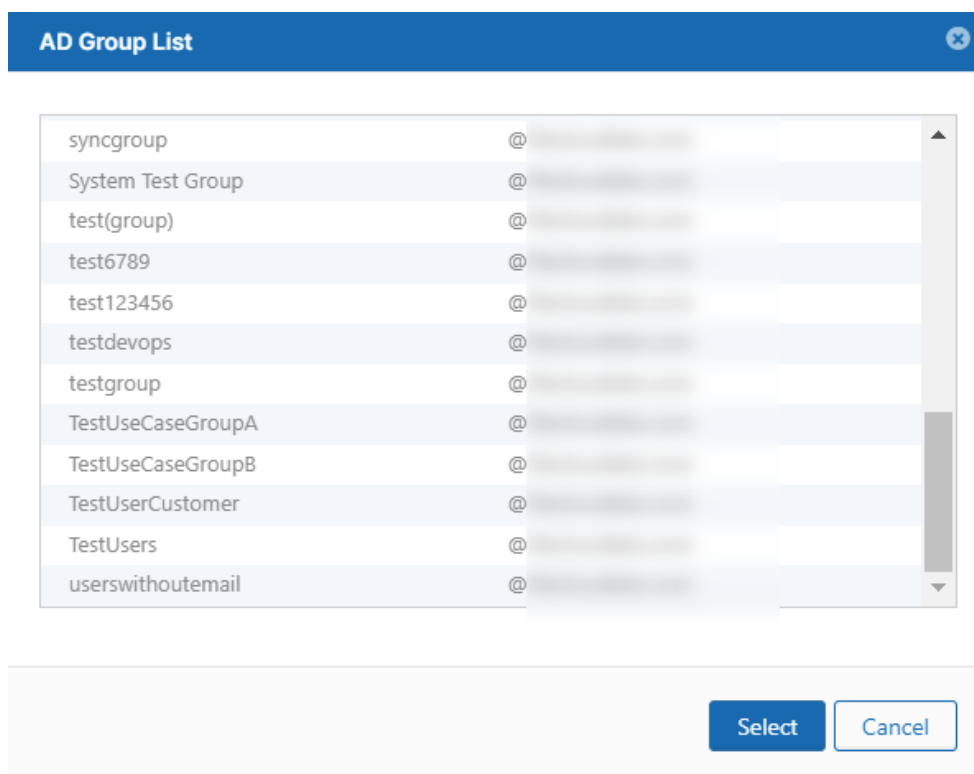
AD Access Verified Successfully

Close

If the tests fail, then check your AD settings to ensure all the data is present and is accurate.

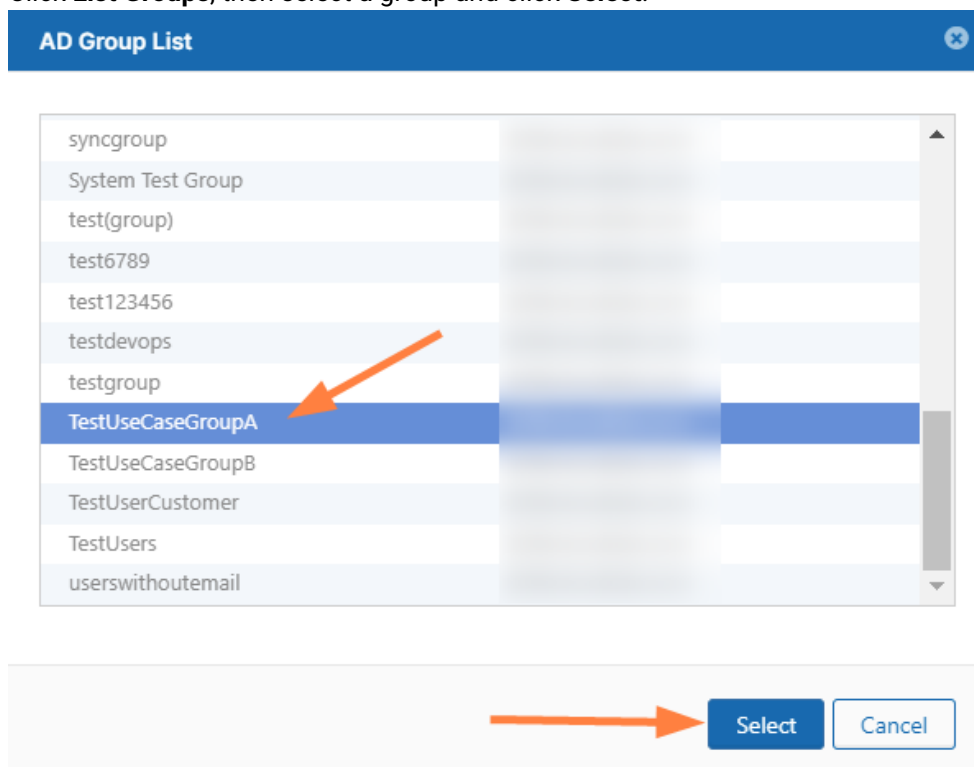
2. List Groups
  - a. Once AD settings are validated, click **List Groups** to view the list of groups read from the server.

You should see a list similar to:



### 3. Get Group Member

- Click **List Groups**, then select a group and click **Select**.



The Group name appears in the **Test AD Configuration** dialog box.

(You can also enter the group name directly into the text box without selecting from the **AD Group List** popup.)

- b. Click **Get Group Members**.

The **AD Members List** should list the correct members of the group:

**Note:** The group members are NOT automatically added to FileCloud.

#### 4. Verify User Access

- a. Enter a specific user name and password and click **Test Login** to make sure the user can log in to AD.

If not, check if the AD suffix or AD prefix matches the one entered in the **AD account suffix** or **AD logon name prefix** in the FileCloud admin portal or the AD server.

- b. Enter a specific user name and password and click **Get Email ID**.

This should return the correct email address for a user account from AD. If a valid email address is not returned, then FileCloud cannot import the user account. Check if the email address is included for the user on the AD Server.

Here are some common AD connectivity error messages and their meanings:

#### Error messages

##### AD Access failed. Can't contact LDAP server

Either the Hostname or IP address is wrong or the FileCloud server is not able to contact the AD server on the port specified.

##### AD Access failed. Invalid credentials

Either the AD account name or password is incorrect or the Logon prefix or suffix is incorrect.

##### AD Access failed. Check if provided AD account name is part of Limit Login into AD group

Either the value in AD BASE DN is wrong or the limit group is set and the AD account name is not part of that group.

#### Some users have trouble logging in

If you check **Users have the same UPN account suffixes**, you are prompted to enter the **AD account suffix**. If you uncheck it, you are prompted to enter **AD logon name prefix**. Make sure that whichever you use applies to all of your AD users who access FileCloud. If it doesn't, users it does not apply to cannot log in to FileCloud.

#### All users cannot log in or you cannot import them into FileCloud:

Check if **AD mail attribute** is filled in. If it is not, users cannot log in or be imported. This is normally set to **mail**.

#### Using the logs to find errors

FileCloud stores all errors associated with AD in the logs.  
By default, the log level in FileCloud is set to **PROD**.

1. Change the log level to DEV to create more detailed entries:
  - a. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Server** **UNKNOWN ATTACHMENT**. The **Server** settings page opens.
  - b. Set **Log Level** to **DEV**.

2. Repeat the steps that caused the error.
3. Open the log file:  
 In Windows: C:\xampp\htdocs\scratch\logs  
 In Linux: /var/www/html/scratch/logs

**If you see error messages similar to:**

```
2022-05-18 23:03:12.265388 ERROR: [16529329921474] Unable to find provider by name:
0bf0d8c9a7544ce179a7fb1f802dde5f
2022-05-18 23:03:12.265559 ERROR: [16529329921474] Unable to connect to AD server with
david username:
2022-05-18 23:03:12.265608 DEBUG: [16529329921474] User `david` has not been
authenticated with provider
CodeLathe\Core\Subsystem\Security\Auth\AD\Provider\ADProvider class
2022-05-18 23:03:12.357099 DEBUG: [16529329921474] FAILED LOGIN: Invalid Username or
Password
```

**Do the following:**

- - Check if the AD login and password are correct.
  - Check if the user has an email address in the AD server.
  - If the user is already imported into the FileCloud server, check if the user's email in FileCloud and email in the AD server match.

**If you were authenticating a user (for this example, authenticating user david on host 192.168.1.14), and see error messages similar to**

```
2022-05-18 23:11:27.296483 NOTICE: [16529334871841] Phone number is invalid for
imported user - david
2022-05-18 23:11:27.297668 DEBUG: [16529334871841] User email `david@test.com` does not
match AD user email `david@gmd.com`.
2022-05-18 23:11:27.297760 DEBUG: [16529334871841] User `david` has NOT been
authenticated.
```

These messages indicate that the user's email address in the AD server doesn't match the user's email address in FileCloud.

## To restrict login to FileCloud to specific AD users only

1. Create a group in AD and add only those users who should be able to log in to FileCloud.
2. In **Limit login to AD group**, enter the name of the AD group.

## LDAP Based Authentication

In this mechanism, a user account is authenticated against an external LDAP server.

Accounts with this type of authentication are also known as external accounts.



By default, LDAP communications between client and server applications are not encrypted.

- This means that it could be possible to use a network monitoring device or software to view the communications traveling between LDAP client and server computers.
- This is especially problematic when an LDAP simple bind is used because credentials (username and password) are passed over the network unencrypted. This could quickly lead to the compromise of credentials.

Therefore, it is recommended that you enable Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) over Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) or Transport Layer Security (TLS).

- SSL and TLS are also known as LDAPS
- Some applications authenticate with Active Directory Domain Services (AD DS) through simple BIND. If simple BIND is necessary, using SSL/TLS to encrypt the authentication session is strongly recommended.
- Use of proxy binding or password change over LDAP requires LDAPS. (e.g. Bind to an AD LDS Instance Through a Proxy Object )
- Some applications that integrate with LDAP servers (such as Active Directory or Active Directory Domain Controllers) require encrypted communications.

## Prerequisites


1. The LDAP service must be accessible from FileCloud (IP and Port must be accessible).
2. LDAP must support Simple Authentication Method (Anonymous or Name/Password Authentication Mechanism of Simple Bind).
3. LDAP users must have an email attribute.



- If LDAP Authentication is enabled, then Automatic User creation cannot be enabled (i.e. All user creation should be done in LDAP server)
- The LDAP user will count towards FileCloud License only after the user account logs into FileCloud

## Enable LDAP Authentication

To enable LDAP Authentication in FileCloud:

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Authentication** . The **Authentication** page opens.
2. Under **Authentication Settings**, in **Authentication Type** select **LDAP**.

## Authentication

[Reset to defaults](#)

Authentication type

LDAP

3. In **LDAP Settings**, enter the required information, and then click **Save**.

### LDAP Settings

Check LDAP connectivity and settings.

[LDAP Test](#)

LDAP host*	LDAP host name	ldap://abc.company.com
LDAP port*	LDAP port number	389
LDAP account name*	The LDAP account to use to query the LDAP server.	username
LDAP account password*	The LDAP account password	*****
LDAP user DN template		CN=^NAME^,OU=filecloud-users,D
LDAP search DN		OU=filecloud-users,DC=abc,DC=u
LDAP user filter template		(&(objectClass=user)(cn=^NAME^))
Mail attribute		mail

## Read a description of the LDAP Settings

### LDAP Settings

SETTING	REQUIRED ?	DESCRIPTION	Example
LDAP host	REQUIRED	The hostname or IP address where the LDAP server is running, including the protocol definition ldap://	ldap:// mycompany.com
LDAP port	REQUIRED	The port to be used to connect to LDAP server (typically 389)	389
LDAP account name	REQUIRED	A valid LDAP login account required to perform queries	<username>
LDAP account password	REQUIRED	Password for the LDAP Account Name	<password>
LDAP User DN template	REQUIRED	<p>The LDAP Distinguished Name(DN) template. Every entry in the directory has a DN that uniquely identifies an entry in the directory.</p> <p>This is usually a combination of CN, OU , DC. Refer to your specific LDAP settings to uniquely identify a user.</p> <p>To use multiple OUs, set this equal to ^USE_USER_FULL_DN^</p>	<p>Use the token ^NAME^ in place of user name:</p> <p>cn=^NAME^,ou=someorg,dc=company,dc=com</p> <p>Multiple OU mode: ^USE_USER_FULL_DN^</p>
LDAP search DN	REQUIRED	<p>The search DN (Specifies the set of resources to search for an user).</p> <p>If there is an <i>ou</i> encompassing all users, then the search DN would be pointing to that DN.</p>	<p>If all users are under the employees ou, then the search DN would be:</p> <p>ou=employees,dc=company,dc=com</p>
LDAP user filter template	REQUIRED	The filter to be used to identify a user entry record from results.	<p>If the object class is inetOrgPerson, then you would use:</p> <p>(&amp;(objectClass=inetOrgPerson)(cn=^NAME^))</p>

SETTING	REQUIRED ?	DESCRIPTION	Example
Mail attribute	REQUIRED	In the FileCloud environment, every user requires an email ID. Specify the attribute name used in the LDAP's user record to refer to the email ID.	username_email_ID

NOTE: For using with Zimbra, please use the following strings



**User DN Template:**

```
uid=^NAME^,ou=someou,dc=company,dc=com
```

**LDAP Search DN**

```
ou=someou,dc=company,dc=com
```

**LDAP User Filter Template:**

```
(&(objectClass=zimbraAccount)(uid=^NAME^))
```

NOTE: For using with JumpCloud, please use the following strings



**User DN Template:**

```
uid=^NAME^,ou=Users,o=xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxb42f7988db,dc=jumpcloud,dc=com
```

**LDAP Search DN**

```
ou=users,o=xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxb42f7988db,dc=jumpcloud,dc=com
```

**LDAP User Filter Template:**

```
(&(objectClass=inetOrgPerson)(uid=^NAME^))
```

## Use LDAP with TLS

If you are using an LDAP connection with TLS, then you must configure the LDAP fields using the following information:

SETTING	REQUIRED?	DESCRIPTION	TLS Example
LDAP host	REQUIRED	The hostname or IP address where the LDAP server is running	ldaps:// <your_server_hostname>
LDAP port	REQUIRED	The port to be used to connect to LDAP server (typically 389)	389
LDAP account name	REQUIRED	A valid LDAP login account required to perform queries	<username>
LDAP account password	REQUIRED	Password for the LDAP Account Name	<password>
LDAP user DN template	REQUIRED	<p>The LDAP Distinguished Name(DN) template. Every entry in the directory has a DN that uniquely identifies an entry in the directory.</p> <p>This is usually a combination of CN, OU , DC. Refer to your specific LDAP settings to uniquely identify a user.</p> <p>Use the token ^NAME^ in place of user name</p> <p>Example : cn=^NAME^,ou=someorg,dc=company,dc=com</p> <p>To use multiple OUs, set this equal to ^USE_USER_FULL_DN^</p>	<p>cn=&lt;username&gt;,ou=&lt;abc&gt;,dc=&lt;company&gt;,dc=com</p> <p>Multiple OU mode: ^USE_USER_FULL_DN^</p>
LDAP search DN	REQUIRED	<p>The search DN (Specifies the set of resources to search for an user).</p> <p>If there is an <i>ou</i> encompassing all users, then the search DN would be pointing to that DN.</p> <p>For example, if all users are under the <i>employees</i> ou, then the search DN would be <i>ou=employees,dc=company,dc=com</i></p>	<i>ou=company-users,dc=company,dc=com</i>
LDAP user filter template	REQUIRED	<p>The filter to be used to identify a user entry record from results.</p> <p>For example, if the object class is inetOrgPerson, then you would use:</p> <p>(&amp;(objectClass=inetOrgPerson)(cn=^NAME^))</p>	(&(objectClass=inetOrgPerson)(cn=^NAME^))

SETTING	REQUIRED?	DESCRIPTION	TLS Example
Mail attribute	REQUIRED	In the FileCloud environment, every user requires an email ID.  Specify the attribute name used in the LDAP's user record to refer to the email ID.	<i>username_email_ID</i>

## LDAP Settings

Check LDAP connectivity and settings.

LDAP Test

LDAP host\*

LDAP host name

ldap://abc.company.com

LDAP port\*

LDAP port number

389

LDAP account name\*

The LDAP account to use to query the LDAP server.

username

LDAP account password\*

The LDAP account password

\*\*\*\*\*

LDAP user DN template

CN=^NAME^,OU=filecloud-users,D

LDAP search DN

OU=filecloud-users,DC=abc,DC=u

LDAP user filter template

(&(objectClass=user)(cn=^NAME^)

Mail attribute

mail

## Two-Factor Authentication

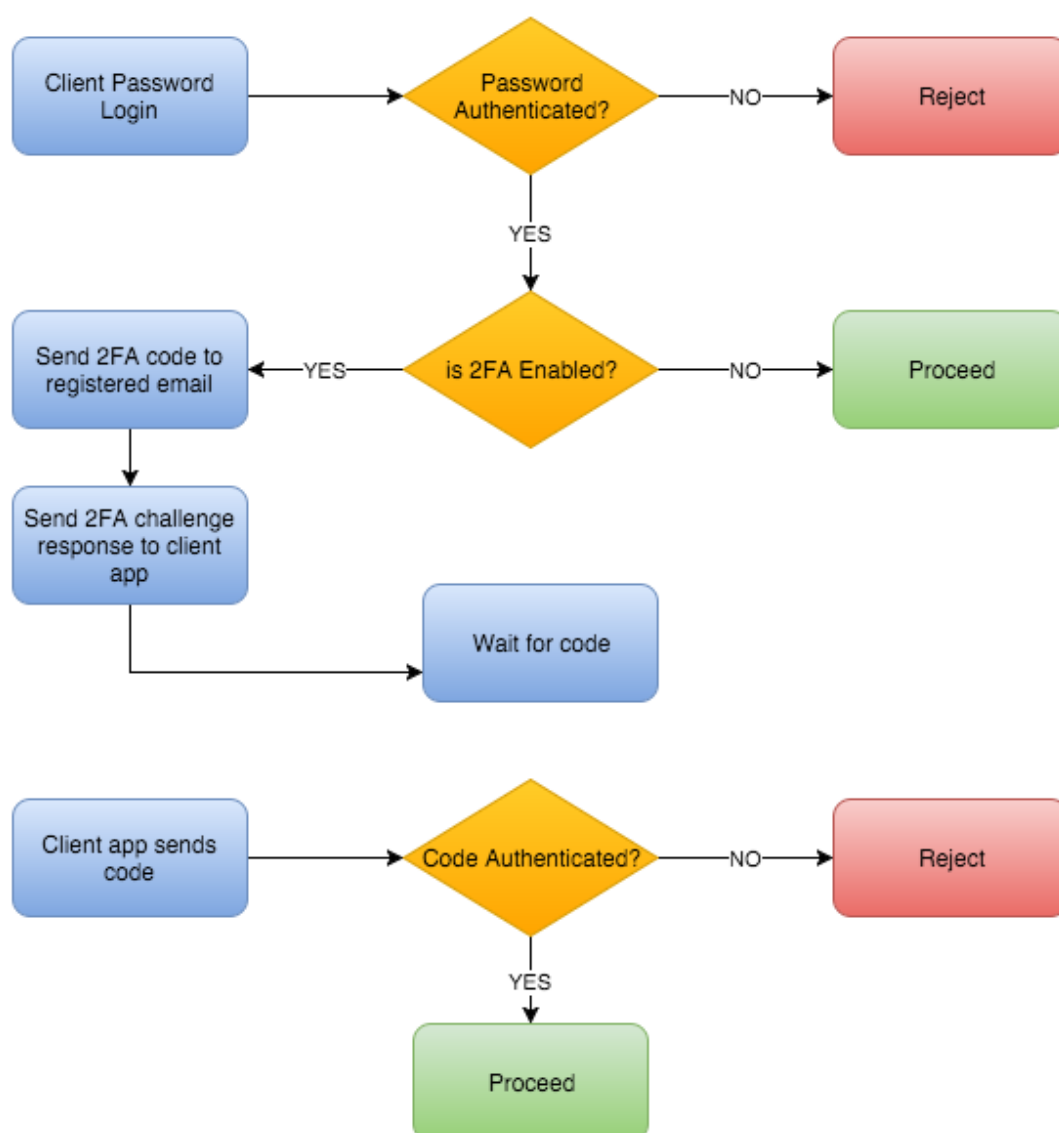
Two-factor authentication (2FA) refers to the two-step verification process that is available in FileCloud and designed to provide an extra layer of security. With this function, in order to access FileCloud, the user is required to know not only the password and username but also an extra security code that is made available to them. The FileCloud administrator can enable two-factor authentication for the user portal, and also, separately, for the admin portal. This can be done regardless of the authentication type (default, AD, or LDAP).

FileCloud supports the following modes to deliver 2FA codes:

- Email
- Google Authenticator TOTP Code
- DUO Security (user portal only)
- SMS OTP Security Code

## Two-factor authentication using user's email address

The general flow is shown below



## Two-factor authentication using TOTP (Google Authenticator or similar TOTP code generators)



These instructions are written using Google Authenticator as an example TOTP code generator, however, any TOTP apps such as Microsoft Authenticator or DUO mobile app, etc. can be used.



To set up 2FA with Google Authenticator:

- In the FileCloud user portal, choose **TOTP (Authenticator App)** when configuring 2FA for the user portal. See [Two-Factor Authentication for User Portal](#) (see page 236) for help.
- In the FileCloud admin portal, choose **TOTP Authentication** when configuring 2FA for the admin portal. See [Two-Factor Authentication for Admin Portal](#) (see page 244) for help

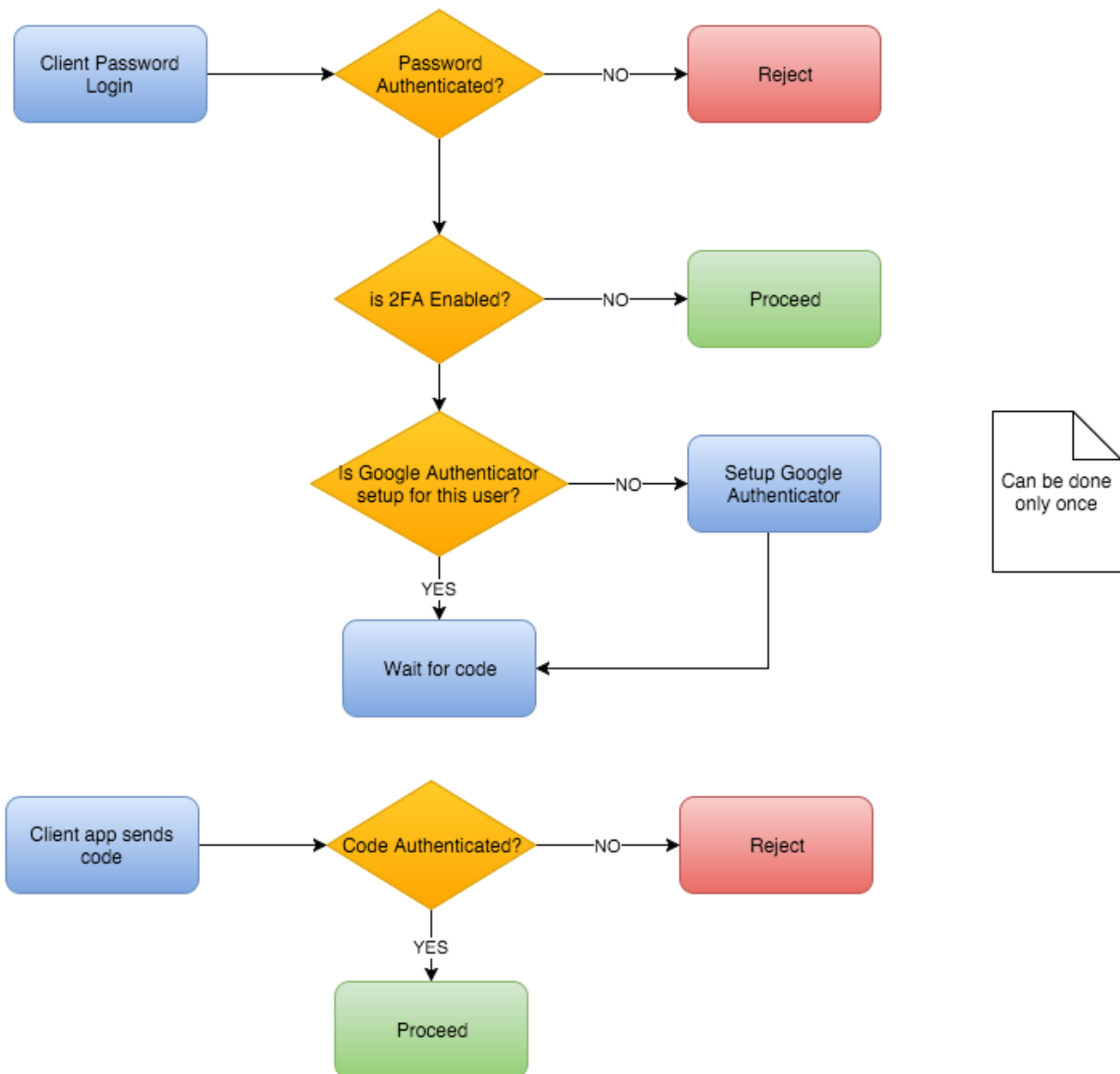
When a user logs in for the first time, they are provided with an option to set up Google Authenticator. This involves entering a code or scanning a QR Code into the the Google Authenticator client. See Log in Using Two-Factor Authentication for more information.

Note that once Google Authenticator is set up using the user portal, other client devices can be used to connect to the FileCloud account.



Once 2FA with Google Authenticator is set up for the first time, the user is no longer able to set it up again. Only the Administrator can clear the Google Authenticator setup.

The general flow is shown below



## Two-factor authentication using SMS OTP (one-time password) Security Codes

FileCloud can be set up to use SMS security codes to perform 2FA. Currently, we have implemented Twilio as the default SMS Gateway Provider, although enterprise customers may add custom SMS providers and handlers to the system. In order to successfully use SMS security, admins must set up a Twilio account to receive the required security ID, authentication token and the phone number from which the codes will be sent.

1. Create a Twilio account.

Follow instructions at <https://www.twilio.com/docs/sms> to obtain the required SID, Auth Token and create a phone number.

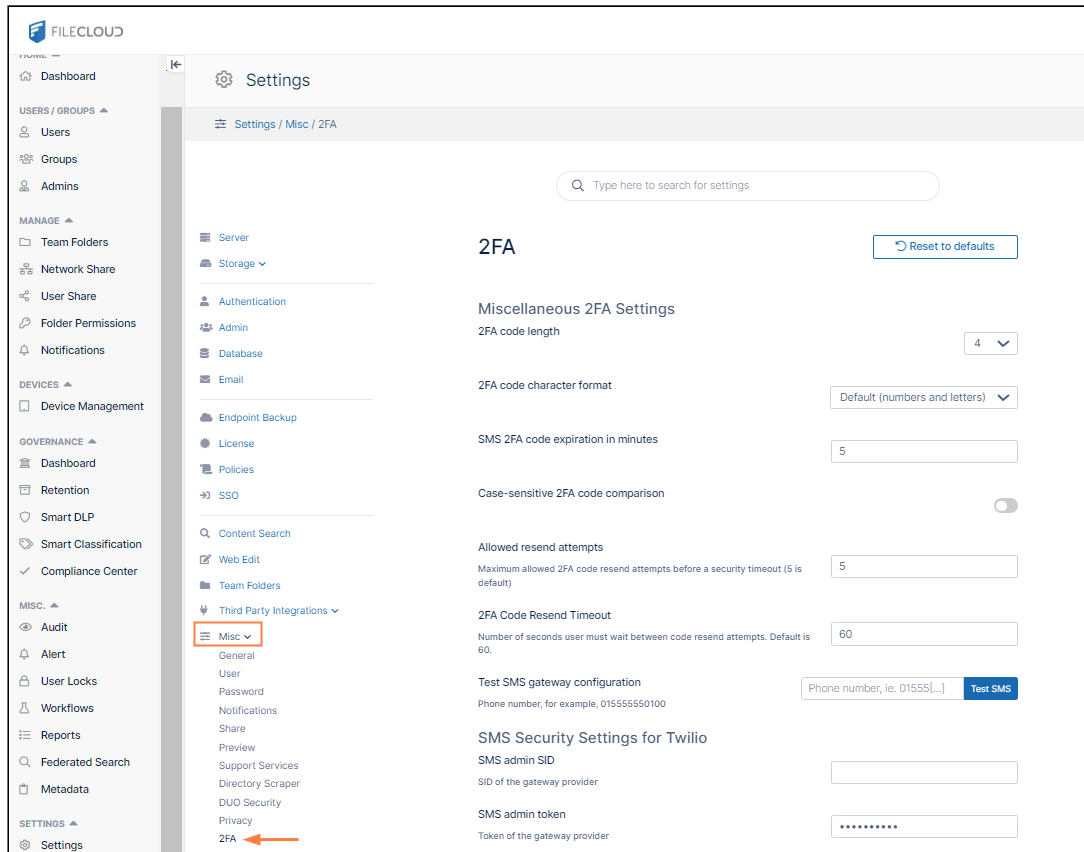
2. In the FileCloud admin portal, open the **2FA** settings page.

**To open the 2FA settings page**

- a. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on

the **Settings** navigation page, click **Misc** .

- b. In the inner navigation bar on the left of the **Settings** page, expand the **Misc** menu, and click **2FA**, as shown below.



The **2FA** settings page opens.

3. Fill in the 2FA settings.

# 2FA

 Reset to defaults

## Miscellaneous 2FA Settings

2FA code length

4

2FA code character format

Default (numbers and letters)

SMS 2FA code expiration in minutes

5

Case-sensitive 2FA code comparison

☐

Allowed resend attempts

Maximum allowed 2FA code resend attempts before a security timeout (5 is default)

5

2FA Code Resend Timeout

Number of seconds user must wait between code resend attempts. Default is 60.

60

Test SMS gateway configuration

Phone number, for example, 015555550100

15555550100

Test SMS

SMS Security Settings for Twilio

SMS admin SID

SID of the gateway provider

SMS admin token

Token of the gateway provider

.....

SMS admin sending phone number

Phone number from which SMS code is sent to user

1555555555



The settings **2FA code length** and **2FA code character format (2FA Code Dictionary)** are available beginning in FileCloud version 20.2.

**2FA code length** - The number of letters and digits in the 2FA code. Default is 4.

**2FA code character format**- Type of characters permitted in 2FA code. Options are:

- Numbers and letters (default)
- Numbers
- Letters
- Uppercase letters

**SMS 2FA code expiration in minutes** - How long, in minutes, the security code remains valid. Default is 10.

**Case-sensitive 2FA code comparison** - When checked, the code entered is case-sensitive.

**Allowed resend attempts** - Number of times the user may resend the code before logging in is timed out for the time set in **2FA Code Resend Timeout**.. Default is 5.

**2FA Code Resend Timeout** - Number of seconds between **Allowed resend attempts** that the user must wait before attempting to resend again. Default is 30.

For example, if **Allowed resend attempts** is 5, and **2FA Code Resend Timeout** is 30, a user can attempt to resend a code 5 times and then is forced to wait 30 seconds before being able to attempt to resend the code another 5 times. If those attempts fail, the user is forced to wait another 30 seconds, and so on.

**Test SMS gateway configuration** - Enter a secure known phone number, and save the settings. Click **Test SMS** to check if your SMS configuration is valid.

**SMS admin SID** - SID of gateway provider.

**SMS admin token** - Token of gateway provider.

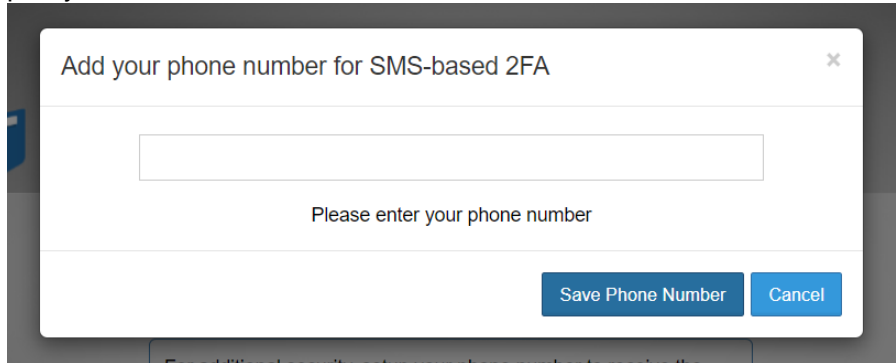
**SMS admin sending phone number** - Phone number from which SMS code is sent to user.

Once the setup is complete, set up the policy for users and choose the appropriate SMS gateway provider, similarly to other 2FA methods.



**Users are required to set up a phone number once the SMS 2FA Policy is enabled.** Once the phone number is set up, client devices can be used to connect to the FileCloud account. Set up the phone number via the web UI or through your admin.

If users are required to use SMS with 2FA, they will see the following dialog box during login after the policy is enabled:



Add your phone number for SMS-based 2FA

Please enter your phone number

Save Phone Number Cancel

## Two factor authentication validity for Email based 2FA

**2FA Code validity:** 10 minutes.

For Web Apps, The 2FA validity period is tied to the [Session Timeout](#) (see page 9)

For Client apps (iOS , Android App, Drive and Sync) the 2FA code will be required only on very first access and subsequent access will not require the code. If the record of that device is removed using "Remove Client Device Record" action, then subsequent access for that mobile device will require the 2FA code.

For instructions specific to the admin portal or the user portal, see:

- [Two-Factor Authentication for User Portal](#) (see page 236)
- [Two-Factor Authentication for Admin Portal](#) (see page 244)


## Two-Factor Authentication for User Portal

### Enable two-factor authentication for user portal

**To enable two-factor authentication for logging into the user portal:**



If you are planning to enable DUO Security as the two-factor authentication mechanism, first [set up FileCloud to use DUO Security Service](#) (instructions below).













1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Policies**  . The **Policies** page opens.

## Policies

### New Policy

Create a new policy

New Policy

Policy Name	User Count	Group Count	Default	Actions
Global Default Policy	0	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	     
TEAM FOLDER POLICY	1	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	     

<< < Page 1 of 1 > >>

2 rows

2. Edit the policy assigned to the users who you want to use 2FA.
3. Click the **2FA** tab.
4. Under **2FA** heading, Change the **Enable Two Factor Authentication** drop down box to **Enabled**
5. In **Two Factor Authentication Mechanism** choose **Email**, **TOTP (Authenticator App)**, **DUO Security** or **SMS Security**.

Effective Policy: "Global Default Policy" ✕

General **2FA** User Policy Client Application Policy Device Configuration Notifications

Some policy settings will not be applicable for Guest and External users.

2FA

**Require two factor authentication** ☒

Require a one-time code to be entered as well as the account password.

**Two Factor Authentication Mechanism**

Select two factor authentication mechanism to use

Email
 

Email
 TOTP (Authenticator App)
 DUO Security
 SMS Security

Cancel
 Reset
 Save

## Two-factor authentication using DUO security

FileCloud can be set up to use DUO security service to perform 2FA. Note that DUO PUSH is not supported and requires code generated by DUO Mobile app to be entered to perform 2FA.

The following steps are required to set up 2FA using DUO.

### 1. ADD DUO Auth API

- Follow instructions at <https://duo.com/docs/authapi> to get **integration key**, **secret key**, and **API hostname**.

Duo's Auth API is included in the [Duo Beyond](#), [Duo Access](#), and [Duo MFA plans](#).


### First Steps

Before starting:

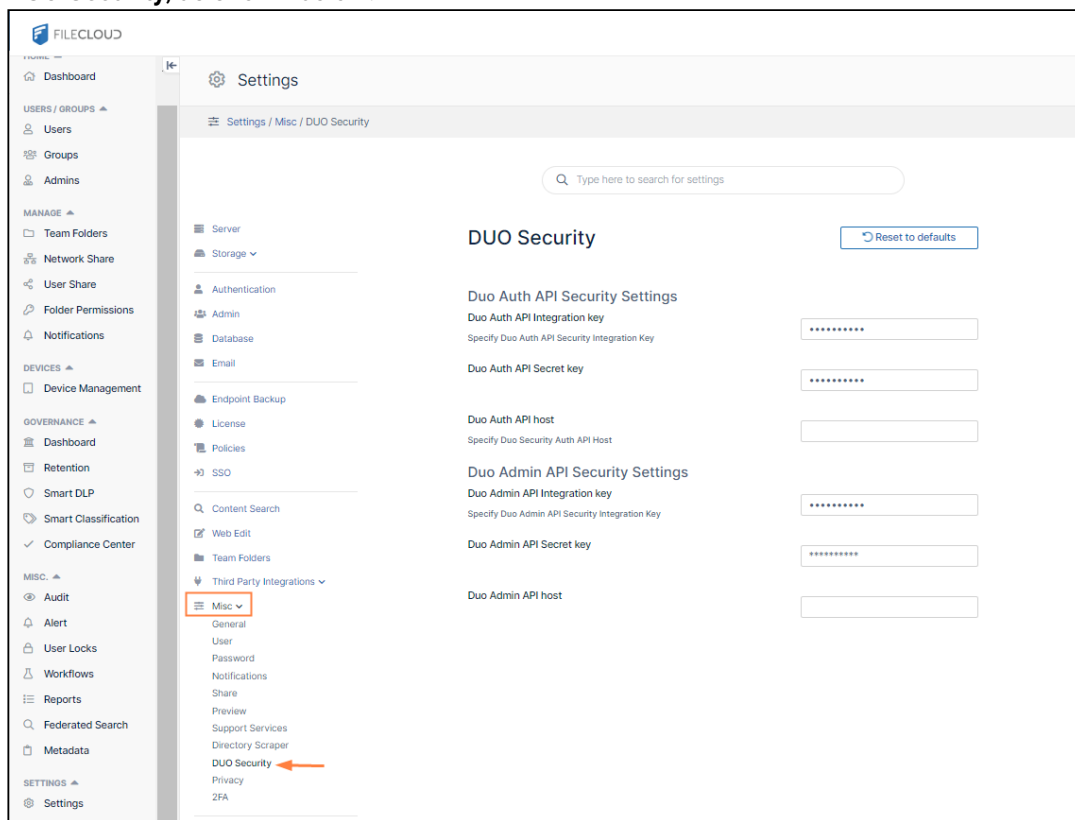
- 1 [Sign up for a Duo account](#).
- 2 Log in to the [Duo Admin Panel](#) and navigate to **Applications**.
- 3 Click **Protect an Application** and locate **Auth API** in the applications list. Click **Protect this Application** to get your **integration key**, **secret key**, and **API hostname**. (See [Getting Started](#) for help.)

Review the [API Details](#) to see how to construct your first API request. Duo Security also provides demonstration clients available on Github to call the Duo API methods. Examples are available in: [Python](#), [Java](#), [C#](#), [Ruby](#), [Perl](#), and [PHP](#). Adding Duo requires some understanding of your application's language and authentication process.

Documented properties will not be removed within a stable version of the API. Once a given API endpoint is documented to return a given property, a property with that name will always appear (although certain properties may only appear under certain conditions, like if the customer is using a specific [edition](#)).

- In the FileCloud admin portal, open the **DUO Security** settings page.  
**To go to the Duo Security settings page**
  - In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Misc** .

- b. In the inner navigation bar on the left of the **Settings** page, expand the **Misc** menu, and click **DUO Security**, as shown below.



The **DUO Security** settings page opens.

1. Fill in the **Duo Auth API Security Settings** fields on the page.

## DUO Security

[Reset to defaults](#)

### Duo Auth API Security Settings

Duo Auth API Integration key

Specify Duo Auth API Security Integration Key

.....

Duo Auth API Secret key

.....

Duo Auth API host

Specify Duo Security Auth API Host

.....

### Duo Admin API Security Settings

Duo Admin API Integration key

Specify Duo Admin API Security Integration Key

.....

Duo Admin API Secret key

\*\*\*\*\*

Duo Admin API host

.....

#### 2. Add DUO Admin API

- Follow instructions at <https://duo.com/docs/adminapi> to get values for **integration key**, **secret key**, and **API hostname**
- Ensure it has **Grant read resource** permission.

[Dashboard](#) > [Applications](#) > Admin API

## Admin API

**Setup instructions** are in the [Admin API documentation](#).

The Admin API allows you to programmatically create, retrieve, update, and delete users, phones, hardware tokens, admins, applications, and policies.

## Details

Integration key

Secret key

Click to view.

Don't write down your secret key or share it with anyone.

API hostname

api-4785a311.amazonaws.com

## Settings

Type	Admin API
------	-----------

---

Name	<input type="text" value="Admin API"/>
------	--

Duo Push users will see this when approving transactions.

---

**Permissions**

☐ Grant administrators

Permit this Admin API application to add, modify, and delete administrators.

☐ Grant read information

Permit this Admin API application to read information and statistics generally used for reporting purposes.

☐ Grant applications

Permit this Admin API application to add, modify, and delete applications.

☐ Grant settings

Permit this Admin API application to read and update global account settings.

☐ Grant read log

Permit this Admin API application to read logs.

☒ Grant read resource

Permit this Admin API application to read resources such as users, phones, and hardware tokens.

☐ Grant write resource

Permit this Admin API application to add, modify, and delete resources such as users, phones, and hardware tokens.

---

**Notes**

For internal use.

---

[Save Changes](#)

- In the FileCloud admin portal, go to the **DUO Security** settings page as shown in Step
- Fill in the **Duo Admin API Security Settings** fields on the page.

## DUO Security

[Reset to defaults](#)

### Duo Auth API Security Settings

Duo Auth API Integration key

Specify Duo Auth API Security Integration Key

.....

Duo Auth API Secret key

.....

Duo Auth API host

Specify Duo Security Auth API Host

.....

### Duo Admin API Security Settings

Duo Admin API Integration key

Specify Duo Admin API Security Integration Key

.....

Duo Admin API Secret key

.....

Duo Admin API host

.....

- Now follow the instructions above to [enable 2FA and specify the 2FA mechanism as Duo Security](#).

**Note:** When users who are enrolled in the Duo Admin Panel log in, they must use the text code from the default entry in their Duo App. When users who are not enrolled in the Duo Admin Panel attempt to log in, they are prompted to use a QR code scanner to enroll themselves, and then must use the text code from the entry they added in their Duo App. See Log in Using Two-Factor Authentication for more information.

### Reset TOTP or DUO settings for a user

When a user loses a TOTP (Google Auth) app enabled device or if they need to reset the code for any reason, you can reset the Google Authenticator setup for that user using the following steps.

- In the FileCloud admin portal, go to **Users** and click the **Manage Policy** icon in the row for the user.

Manage Users

Filter:  Status Filter : All Source Filter : All Show 10 Items

User name	Display Name	Email	Last Login	Status	Actions
jennifer	Jennifer	jennifer.perkins@filecloud.co	28 Apr 2023 01:	Full Access	

2. Click the **2FA** tab.
3. Click the **Reset 2FA Setting** to enable the user to reset their authenticator code.

Policy Settings - Global Default Policy - jennifer

**Note:** Custom Policy assigned to this User

General **2FA** User Policy Client Application Policy Device Configuration Notifications

### 2 Factor Authentication

Enable Two Factor Authentication

YES

Enable to require a one time passcode to be entered along with the account password

Reset 2FA

**Reset 2FA Setting**

Allow user to reinitialize 2FA authenticator

Two Factor Authentication Mechanism

Save Reset All Close

After the secret is reset, the user is not required to redo the DUO 2FA setup on initial login as FileCloud will import access tokens from DUO automatically.

New devices can be registered from the DUO Admin Panel using the DUO Enrollment Email feature.

## Two-Factor Authentication for Admin Portal



TOTP authentication for the admin portal is available beginning in FileCloud 23.242. TOTP authentication should work correctly with any authenticator app; however, the following apps have been tested and performed successfully: Google Authenticator, TOTP Authenticator, Duo Mobile, Microsoft Authenticator, Authy, Okta Verify, 2FA Authenticator (2FAS)

Support for two-factor authentication is available for admin portal login. Both the primary FileCloud admin and the superadmin (for multitenancy) can be set to require the additional code in order to access the admin portal.


Two-factor authentication for the admin portal supports authentication by email, SMS, and TOTP.

### Enable two-factor authentication for admins

To enable 2FA for the first time an admin logs into the admin portal:

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Admin** . The **Admin** settings page opens.
2. Enable **Enable two-factor authentication for admin logins**.

## Admin

 Reset to defaults

Admin login name
 Change the default admin user name.

Admin email
 Email id for admin account

**Enable two-factor authentication for admin logins**
Requires valid admin or admin user email id.

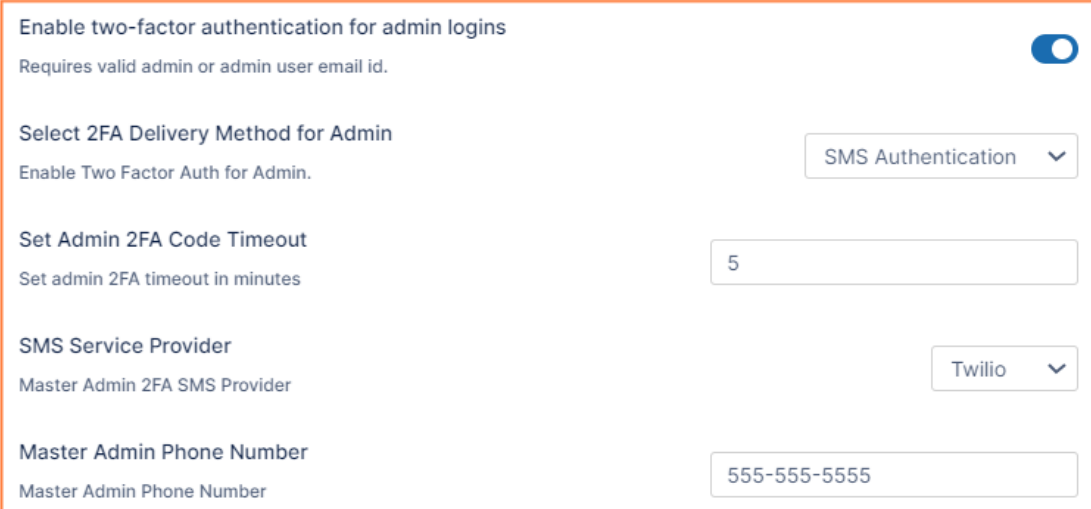
☒

2FA fields appear.

### Setting 2FA delivery method to SMS

**Note:** Currently SMS authentication is effective for the primary admin, but not for promoted admins.

1. To use SMS authentication, In **Select 2FA Delivery Method for Admin**, choose **SMS Authentication**. Additional fields appear.



**Enable two-factor authentication for admin logins**  
Requires valid admin or admin user email id. ☒

**Select 2FA Delivery Method for Admin**  
Enable Two Factor Auth for Admin. SMS Authentication ▼

**Set Admin 2FA Code Timeout**  
Set admin 2FA timeout in minutes

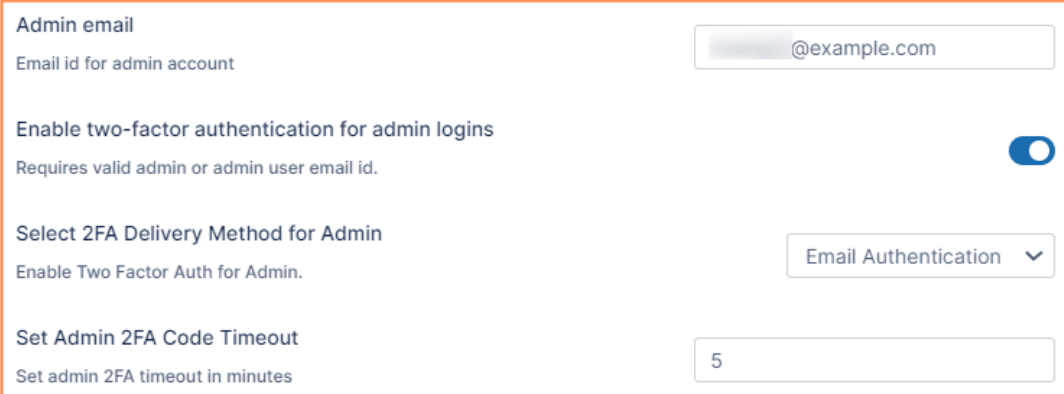
**SMS Service Provider**  
Master Admin 2FA SMS Provider Twilio ▼

**Master Admin Phone Number**  
Master Admin Phone Number

2. In **Set Admin 2FA Code Timeout**, set the time in minutes that you want the temporary log-in code to remain valid.
3. In **SMS Service Provider**, choose **Twilio** or **Custom**.
4. In **Master Admin Phone Number**, enter the admin's SMS phone number.  
An invalid master admin phone number will cause lockout - the portal will not be accessible when SMS Authentication is chosen.

### Setting 2FA delivery method to email:

1. To use email authentication, in **Select 2FA Delivery Method for Admin**, choose **Email Authentication**.



**Admin email**  
Email id for admin account

**Enable two-factor authentication for admin logins**  
Requires valid admin or admin user email id. ☒

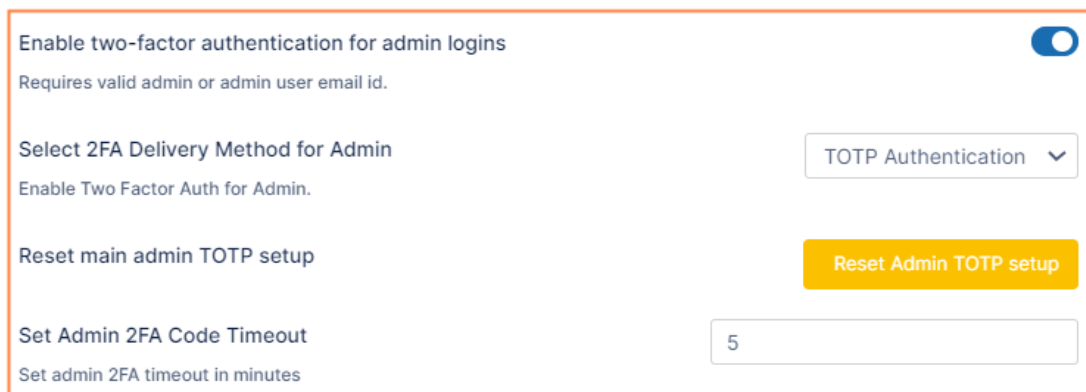
**Select 2FA Delivery Method for Admin**  
Enable Two Factor Auth for Admin. Email Authentication ▼

**Set Admin 2FA Code Timeout**  
Set admin 2FA timeout in minutes

2. Enter a valid email in the **Admin email** field above the **Enable Two Factor Authentication for Admin Logins** field.
3. In **Set Admin 2FA Code Timeout**, set the time in minutes that you want the temporary log-in code to remain valid.

## Setting 2FA delivery method to TOTP

1. To use TOTP authentication, in **Select 2FA Delivery Method for Admin**, choose **TOTP Authentication**.



Enable two-factor authentication for admin logins ☑  
Requires valid admin or admin user email id.

Select 2FA Delivery Method for Admin TOTP Authentication ▼  
Enable Two Factor Auth for Admin.

Reset main admin TOTP setup Reset Admin TOTP setup

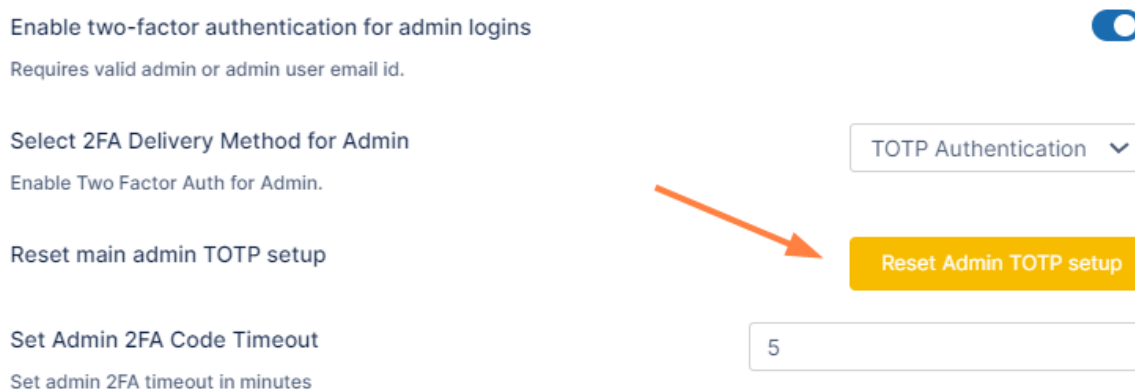
Set Admin 2FA Code Timeout 5  
Set admin 2FA timeout in minutes

2. In **Set Admin 2FA Code Timeout**, set the time in minutes that you want the temporary log-in code to remain valid.
3. See Log in Using Two-Factor Authentication to set up Google Authenticator (or a similar authenticator app) to use for TOTP Authentication.

Promoted admins use the method to log in to the admin portal that they use to log in to the user portal.

## Reset TOTP settings for the primary admin

When you select TOTP Authentication for the 2FA delivery method, the setting **Reset Admin TOTP setup** appears below it. If the primary admin loses their TOTP-enabled device or needs to reset the TOTP authenticator code for another reason, a promoted admin with **Settings** read and update role privileges can click **Reset Admin TOTP setup** to enable the admin to reset their authenticator code.



Enable two-factor authentication for admin logins ☑  
Requires valid admin or admin user email id.

Select 2FA Delivery Method for Admin TOTP Authentication ▼  
Enable Two Factor Auth for Admin.

Reset main admin TOTP setup Reset Admin TOTP setup

Set Admin 2FA Code Timeout 5  
Set admin 2FA timeout in minutes

## Reset TOTP settings for promoted admins

Since promoted admins use their user login method rather than their admin login method to log into the admin portal, a promoted admin will only log in to the admin portal with TOTP if that is the method set for their user account, and therefore, to reset a promoted admin's TOTP authorization, use the method explained in [Two-Factor Authentication for User Portal \(see page 235\)](#).

## Single sign-on (SSO)



Single sign-on (SSO) is only available in some versions of FileCloud Online.

Single sign-on (SSO) is a user authentication process that permits a user to enter one name and password in order to access multiple applications.

FileCloud supports the following types of Single sign-on model.

- [SAML Single Sign-On Support \(see page 247\)](#)
- [ADFS Single Sign-On Support \(see page 348\)](#)
- [NTLM Single Sign-On Support \(see page 363\)](#)

## SAML Single Sign-On Support

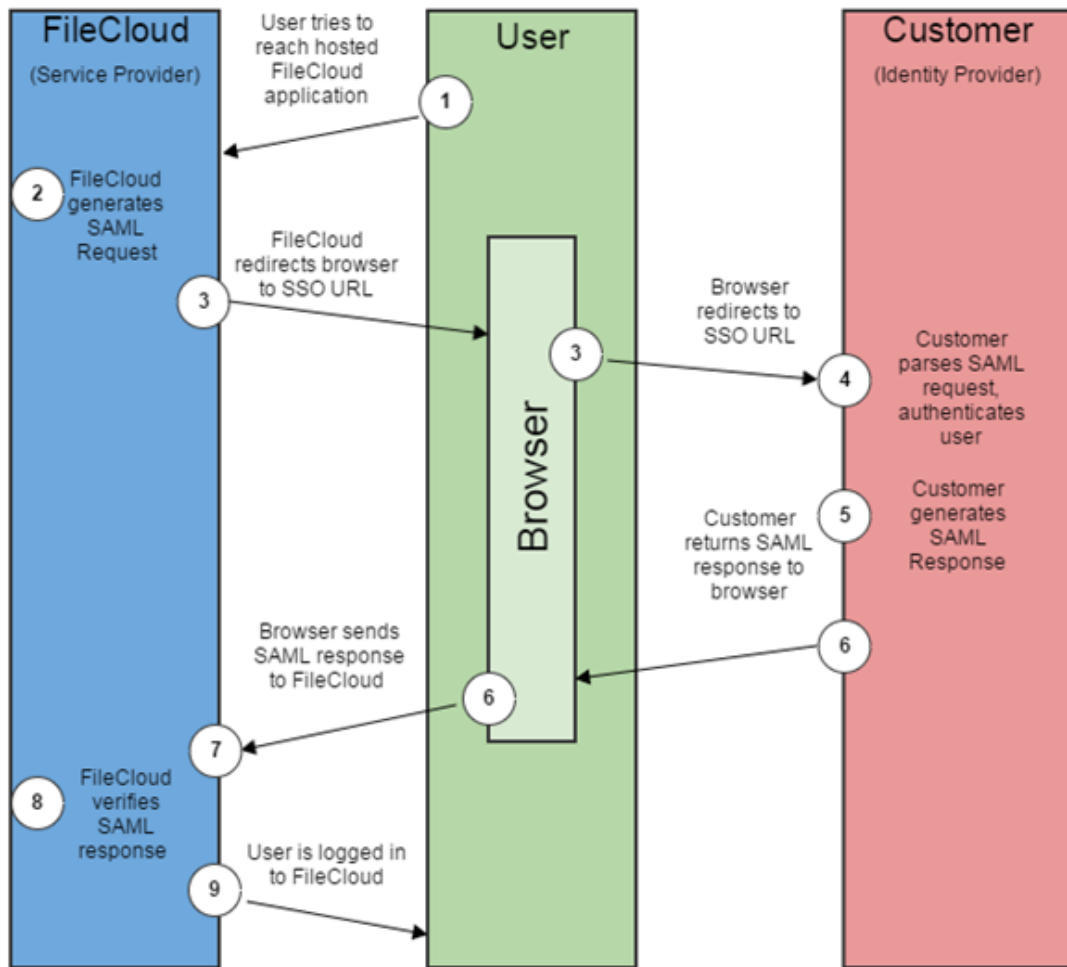
You can use SAML SSO to control the authorization and authentication of hosted user accounts that can access FileCloud Web based interface.

- SAML is an XML-based open standard data format for exchanging authentication and authorization data between parties.
- FileCloud supports SAML (Security Assertion Markup Language) based web browser Single Sign On (SSO) service
- FileCloud acts as a Service Provider (SP) while the Customer or Partner acts as the identity provider (IdP). FileCloud SAML SSO service is based on SAML v2.0 specifications.

### SSO Login Diagram

### SSO Login Diagram

The following process explains how the user logs into a hosted FileCloud application through customer-operated SAML based SSO service.



## FileCloud SAML Transaction Steps

1. The user attempts to reach the hosted FileCloud application through the URL.
2. FileCloud generates a SAML authentication request. The SAML request is embedded into the URL for the customer's SSO Service.
3. FileCloud sends a redirect to the user's browser. The redirect URL includes the SAML authentication request and is submitted to customer's SSO Service.
4. The Customer's SSO Service authenticates the user based on valid login credentials.
5. The customer generates a valid SAML response and returns the information to the user's browser.
6. The customer SAML response is redirected to FileCloud.
7. The FileCloud authentication module verifies the SAML response.
8. If the user is successfully authenticated, the user will be successfully logged into FileCloud.

When the IdP successfully authenticates the user account, the FileCloud (SP) authentication module verifies that the user account exists in FileCloud.


If the user account does not exist in FileCloud, then a new user account is created and the user is logged into FileCloud.

## SSO Configuration Steps

In order to successfully configure SAML SSO, the following steps must be followed.

1. Configure Apache Webserver.  
To configure Apache Webserver for SAML SSO, please Contact FileCloud Support.

### 2. Ensure the correct FileCloud URL is set and uses HTTPS

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Server** . The **Server** settings page opens.
2. In the **Server URL** field, confirm that your URL begins with HTTPS.
3. Click **Check URL** to make sure your URL is valid.

#### Server

[Reset to defaults](#)

Service Name

Name to use to refer to the service




Service URL

URL that accesses the service



### 3. Set SAML as the default single sign-on method in FileCloud

To set the SSO type in FileCloud:

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **SSO** . The **SSO** page opens.
2. In **Default SSO Type**, select **SAML**.

#### SSO

[Reset to defaults](#)

Default SSO type




### 4. Configure IdP settings in FileCloud

**Note:** If you are using Active Directory Federation Services (ADFS) Support for authentication, see [ADFS Single Sign-On Support](#) (see page 348).

**To configure IdP settings in FileCloud:**

1. In the FileCloud admin portal **SSO** settings page, fill in the settings under **SAML Settings**.

## SSO

Default SSO type

SAML

### SAML Settings

IdP endpoint URL or entity ID\*

http://www.okta.com/exk172d54g

IdP username parameter\*

uid

IdP email parameter\*

email

IdP given name (first name) parameter\*

givenName

IdP surname (last name) parameter\*

sn

IdP log out URL (optional)

URL to call to log out of identity provider

Limit log in to IdP group (optional)

Specify the identity provider group that users must belong to in order to log in.  
Note: Groups that a user belongs to must be passed from IdP in 'memberof' attribute.

admin

IdP Metadata\*

```

<md:IDPSSODescriptor
  xmlns:saml="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:bindings:HTTP-Redirect"
  Location="https://dev-823480.oktapreview.com/app/dev-823480_conf1testlab_1/exk172d54g9EArRV40h8/so/saml"/>
</md:IDPSSODescriptor>

```

## SSO error message (optional)

## SSO error message (optional)

```
<html>
<head>
<meta http-
equiv="Content-Type"
content="text/html;
charset=UTF-8">
<title>FileCloud SSO
Authorization
Page</title>
</head>
```

## Allow account signups



Allow new account creation through login process

## Automatic account approval

3 ▼

Set Admin approval for creating new accounts.

0 - No automatic approval, Admin has to approve account.

1 - Automatically approve new accounts to Full User.

2 - Automatically approve new accounts to Guest User.

3 - Automatically approve new accounts to External User

## Enable ADFS



Specify if IdP is Active Directory Federation Service (ADFS)

## User login token expiration follows IdP token expiration rule



User authentication token will expire as specified by identity provider.

## Enable browser-only SSO session timeout



If enabled, SSO session timeouts will be restricted to web browsers only

## Show the Idp login screen



Redirect user login to IdP login screen automatically.

## Log level

PROD ▼

Use DEV only for testing.

## Allow SSO for external users



Use the following table to understand the IdP settings.

FileCloud Parameters	IdP Settings
IdP End Point URL	Identity Provider URL
Idp Username Parameter	<p>Identifies the Username (must be unique for each user)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Usually uid or agencyUID</li> <li>Default value: uid</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The username must be unique.</b> If username sent by Idp is in email format, the email prefix will be used for username. The email prefix in this case must be unique.</p>
IdP Email Parameter	<p>Identifies the email of the user (must be unique)</p> <p>Default value: mail</p>
IdP Given Name Parameter	<p>Identifies the given name of the user</p> <p>Default value: givenName</p>
IdP Surname Parameter	<p>Identifies the surname of the user</p> <p>Default value: sn</p>
IdP Log Out URL (Optional)	URL for logging out of IdP
Limit Logon to IdP Group	<p>IdP Group Name</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Specifying a group name means that a user can login through SAML SSO only when the Identity Provider indicates that the user belongs to the specified IdP group</li> <li>The IdP must send this group name through the <b>memberof</b> parameter</li> <li>The <b>memberof</b> parameter can include a comma separated value of all groups to which the user belongs</li> </ul>
Show the IdP Logon Screen	<p>Identifies which Logon screen the user will see:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FileCloud screen = not selected</li> <li>IdP screen = selected</li> </ul>
IdP Metadata	Identity Provider metadata in XML Format

FileCloud Parameters	IdP Settings
SSO Error Message (Optional)  Added in FileCloud 20.1	Custom error message that appears when a signin is invalid. Enter in HTML format.
Allow Account Signups  Added in FileCloud 20.1	When TRUE, during the login process, if the user account does not exist, a new FileCloud user account is created automatically.
Automatic Account Approval  Added in FileCloud 20.1	This setting works with the <b>Allow Account Signups</b> setting to determine: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the account created by the user is disabled until the administrator approves it</li> <li>• If the account is approved with a specific level of access automatically without intervention from the Administrator.</li> <li>• Possible values are: 0 - No automatic approval, Admin has to approve account 1 - Automatically approve new accounts to Full User 2 - Automatically approve new accounts to Guest User 3 - Automatically approve new accounts to External User</li> </ul>
Enable ADFS	No
User login token expiration match Idp expiration	If enabled the user token expiration will be set based on Idp expiration settings If not enabled user token expiration will be set based on FileCloud Session Timeout (FileCloud admin UI - Settings - Server - Session Timeout in Days) Default: No (Not enabled)
Enable Browser-Only SSO Session Timeout  Added in FileCloud 23.232.1	If enabled, SSO session timeouts apply to browser sessions but not to client sessions.
Show the Idp Login Screen	If enabled, automatically redirect user to Idp log-in screen.
Log Level	Set the Log mode for the SAML Calls. Default Value: prod (Do not use DEV for production systems)

FileCloud Parameters	IdP Settings
Allow SSO for external users  Added in FileCloud 23.253	Only appears if feature is included in license. If enabled, SSO option appears on login screen when an external user logs in. Default value: Disabled.

## 5. Register FileCloud as a Service Provider (SP) with the IdP

Use the following URL (Entity ID) to register FileCloud as an SP with IdP or ADFS. The URL below also provides the metadata of the FileCloud SP:

<http://<Your Domain>/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/metadata.php/default-sp><sup>12</sup>

## 6. Enable the SSO link on the login page

You can customize the user log-in screen to display the SSO log-in option along with the direct log-in option or to only display the SSO log-in.

**To display the SSO log-in option along with the direct log-in option:**

1. From the left navigation pane, click **Customization**.
2. Select the **General** tab, and then the **Login** sub-tab.
3. Check **Show SSO Link** and **Show Login Options**.

The screenshot shows the 'Customization' section with the 'General' tab selected. Under 'General', the 'Login' sub-tab is active. The 'Customize User Login Screen' section contains the following settings:

- Show New Account Button**: ☒ Display "New Account" button in user login screen
- Show SSO Link**: ☒ Show "Single Sign On" option in user login screen (indicated by an orange arrow)
- Show Login Options**: ☒ Uncheck to hide all login screen options such as "Forgot Password", "SSO Login" (indicated by an orange arrow)

4. Save your changes.

Now, when users access the user portal log-in page, they will see:

12. <http://dev1.codelathe.com/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/metadata.php/default-sp>



Login ⊕ New Account


---

Account Password

---

> [Forgot Password](#)

Or use your SSO



On clicking the Single Sign-On link on the login page, the user is redirected to the SAML SSO Service web page.

To only display the SSO log-in the user portal or the admin portal, please Contact FileCloud Support.

## Integrating with other applications

- [Integrate Auth0 SSO with Filecloud \(see page 256\)](#)
- [Integrate Microsoft Entra ID with FileCloud \(see page 266\)](#)
- [Integrate Centrify with FileCloud \(see page 282\)](#)
- [Integrate CYBERARK with FileCloud \(see page 287\)](#)
- [Integrate JumpCloud with FileCloud \(see page 296\)](#)
- [Integrate Okta with FileCloud \(see page 303\)](#)

- [Integrate Google with FileCloud \(see page 320\)](#)
- [Integrate OneLogin with FileCloud \(see page 329\)](#)
- [Integrate ADSelfService Plus with FileCloud \(see page 335\)](#)
- (23.253) Integrating Multiple IDPs
- [Integrate Ping Identity SSO with Filecloud \(see page 339\)](#)
- [Setting Up and Configuring Certificates when Upgrading SSO \(see page 348\)](#)

## Integrate Auth0 SSO with Filecloud




Before completing the following procedures, configure Apache Web Server. See [SSO Configuration Step 1 \(see page 246\)](#) on the page [SAML Single Sign-On Support \(see page 246\)](#) for configuration instructions.

You can integrate Auth0 SSO with Filecloud using the SAML 2 protocol. Below are the steps to achieve this.

### Configuration in Auth0 portal

1. Log in to the Auth0 Dashboard and click the tab **Application** on the left panel.
2. Create the application.



Help & Support

Documentation

Talk to Sales

fctest

SA

Thank you for purchasing the Free Auth0 plan. You have 17 days left in your trial to experiment with features that are not in the Free plan. Like what you're seeing? Please enter your [billing information here](#).

BILLING

Dashboard

Applications

APIs

SSO Integrations

Connections

Universal Login

Users & Roles

→ Users

→ Roles

Rules

Hooks

Multifactor Auth

Emails

Logs


Anomaly Detection

Extensions

Get Support

Applications

Setup a mobile, web or IoT application to use Auth0 for Authentication. [Learn more](#)



Filecloud

REGULAR WEB APPLICATION

Client ID

oDwrtYKq1N8pTk9BD0Awq0y43yB8!

3. Name the application and click **Regular Web Applications**.

User Authentication Settings – 257


Create application

Name


My App

You can change the application name later in the application settings.


Choose an application type




**Native**  
Mobile or Desktop,  
apps that run natively  
in a device.  
eg: iOS SDK



**Single Page Web  
Applications**  
A JavaScript front-  
end app that uses an  
API.  
eg: Angular.JS +  
NodeJS



**Regular Web  
Applications**  
Traditional web app  
(with refresh).  
eg: Java ASP.NET



**Machine to  
Machine  
Applications**  
CLI, Daemons or  
Services running on  
your backend.  
eg: Shell Script

CREATE

CANCEL

- Click the created application again and go to the settings tab. Confirm that the application name is in the **Name** field and click **Addons**.

Auth0

Search for users or applications

Help & Support

Documentation

Talk to Sales

fctest

SA

Thank you for purchasing the Free Auth0 plan. You have 17 days left in your trial to experiment with features that are not in the Free plan. Like what you're seeing? Please enter your [billing information here](#).

BILLING

Dashboard

Applications

APIs

SSO Integrations

Connections

Universal Login

Users & Roles

→ Users

→ Roles

Rules

Hooks

Multifactor Auth

Emails

Logs

Anomaly Detection

Extensions

Get Support

← Back to Applications

Filecloud

REGULAR WEB APPLICATION

Client ID

oDwtyKq1N8pTk9BD0Awq0y43yB8S4zYL

Quick Start

Settings

Addons

Connections

Name

Filecloud

Domain

fctest.auth0.com

Client ID

oDwtyKq1N8pTk9BD0Awq0y43yB8S4zYL

Client Secret

.....

☐ Reveal client secret.

The Client Secret is not base64 encoded.

Description

Add a description in less than 140 characters

5. Click **SAML2 Web App**.

User Authentication Settings – 259

Thank you for purchasing the Free Auth0 plan. You have 17 days left in your trial to experiment with features that are not in the Free plan. Like [Auth0](#) are seeing? Please [Search for users or applications](#)

[Help & Support](#) [Documentation](#) [Talk to Sales](#) [Billing](#) [fctest](#) [SA](#)

[Dashboard](#) [Applications](#) [APIs](#) [SSO Integrations](#) [Connections](#) [Universal Login](#) [Users & Roles](#) [Rules](#) [Hooks](#) [Multifactor Auth](#) [Emails](#) [Logs](#) [Anomaly Detection](#) [Extensions](#) [Get Support](#)












[Back to Applications](#)

## Filecloud

REGULAR WEB APPLICATION Client ID oDwTyKq1N8pTk9BD0AwqOy43yB8S4zYL

[Quick Start](#) [Settings](#) [Addons](#) [Connections](#)

Addons are plugins associated with an Application in Auth0. Usually, they are 3rd party APIs used by the application that Auth0 generates access tokens for (e.g. Salesforce, Azure Service Bus, Azure Mobile Services, SAP, etc).

 <input type="checkbox"/>	 <input type="checkbox"/>	 <input type="checkbox"/>
 <input type="checkbox"/>	 <input type="checkbox"/>	 <input type="checkbox"/>
 <input type="checkbox"/>	 <input type="checkbox"/>	 <input type="checkbox"/>
 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	 <input type="checkbox"/>	

6. Enter your FileCloud URL in the **Application Callback URL**.

[https://your\\_filecloud\\_url/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/saml2-acps.php/default-sp](https://your_filecloud_url/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/saml2-acps.php/default-sp)<sup>13</sup>

13. <https://filecloud.techsavies.in/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/saml2-acps.php/default-sp>

Addon: SAML2 Web App

SettingsUsage

Application Callback URL

type/paste your FileCloud url here

https://[redacted]/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/saml2-ac.../default-sp

SAML Token will be POSTed to this URL.

Settings

```
        identifier",
27    //
    "http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identity/claims/emailaddress",
28    //
    "http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identity/claims/name
    "
29    // ],
30    // "authnContextClassRef":
    "urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:ac:classes:unspecified",
31    // "logout": {
32    //     "callback": "http://foo/logout",
33    //     "slo_enabled": true
34    // }
```

DEBUG

SAML Protocol Settings

- audience ( string )**: The audience of the SAML Assertion. Default will be the Issuer on SAMLRequest .
- recipient ( string )**: The recipient of the SAML Assertion (SubjectConfirmationData). Default is AssertionConsumerUrl on SAMLRequest or Callback URL if no SAMLRequest was sent.

7. Scroll down and click **Enable**.
8. Click **Usage**.

X
Addon: SAML2 Web App

Settings    Usage

### SAML Protocol Configuration Parameters

- SAML Version: 2.0
- Issuer:
 

urn:fctest.auth0.com

IDP endpoint URL
- Identity Provider Certificate: [Download Auth0 certificate](#)
- Identity Provider SHA1 fingerprint:
 

F2:62:74:37:F9:48:63:01:A6:09:76:03:2E:9D:8B:F5:C0:84:45:23
- Identity Provider Login URL:
 

<https://fctest.auth0.com/samlp/oDwtyKqIN8pTk9BD0AwqOy43yB8S4zYL>

Download this metadata
- Identity Provider Metadata: [Download](#)

Alternatively, you can add a connection parameter:


```
https://fctest.auth0.com/samlp/oDwtyKqIN8pTk9BD0AwqOy43yB8S4zYL?connection=User
name-Password-Authentication
https://fctest.auth0.com/samlp/oDwtyKqIN8pTk9BD0AwqOy43yB8S4zYL?connection=google-oauth2
```

In this case, Auth0 will redirect users to the specified `connection` and will not display the Login Widget. Make sure you send the SAMLRequest using `HTTP POST`.

9. Note down the value in the field **Issuer**.
10. Scroll down and download the metadata from **Identity Provider Metadata**.
11. Go to **Users** in the Auth0 Dashboard and create the user.

The screenshot shows the Auth0 dashboard. At the top, there's a navigation bar with the Auth0 logo, a search bar, and links for Help & Support, Documentation, Talk to Sales, and a user profile. Below this, a message about the Free Auth0 plan is displayed. The main content area is titled 'Applications' and includes a '+ CREATE APPLICATION' button. A sidebar on the left lists various dashboard sections, with 'Users & Roles' expanded and 'Users' highlighted by a red arrow. The 'Applications' section shows a table with one application, 'Filecloud', which is a 'REGULAR WEB APPLICATION'. It displays the 'Client ID' and several icons for managing the application.

## Configuration in FileCloud admin portal

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **SSO** . The **SSO** page opens.
2. Enter the below details in the required fields
  - **IdP End Point URL:** Paste here the value we note down from **Issuer:** (step 9, above)
  - **IdP Username Parameter:** <http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identity/claims/emailaddress>
  - **IdP Email Parameter:** <http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identity/claims/emailaddress>
  - **IdP Given Name Parameter:** <http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identity/claims/givenname>
  - **IdP Surname Parameter:** <http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identity/claims/surname>
  - **IdP Metadata:** Open the metadata file we have downloaded using notepad and copy paste value here.

## SSO

[Reset to defaults](#)

Default SSO type

SAML

## SAML Settings

IdP endpoint URL or entity ID\*

urn:fctest.auth0.com

IdP username parameter\*

http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/04/securecon

IdP email parameter\*

http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/04/securecon

IdP given name (first name) parameter\*

http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/04/securecon

IdP surname (last name) parameter\*

http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/04/securecon

IdP log out URL (optional)

URL to call to log out of identity provider

Limit log in to IdP group (optional)

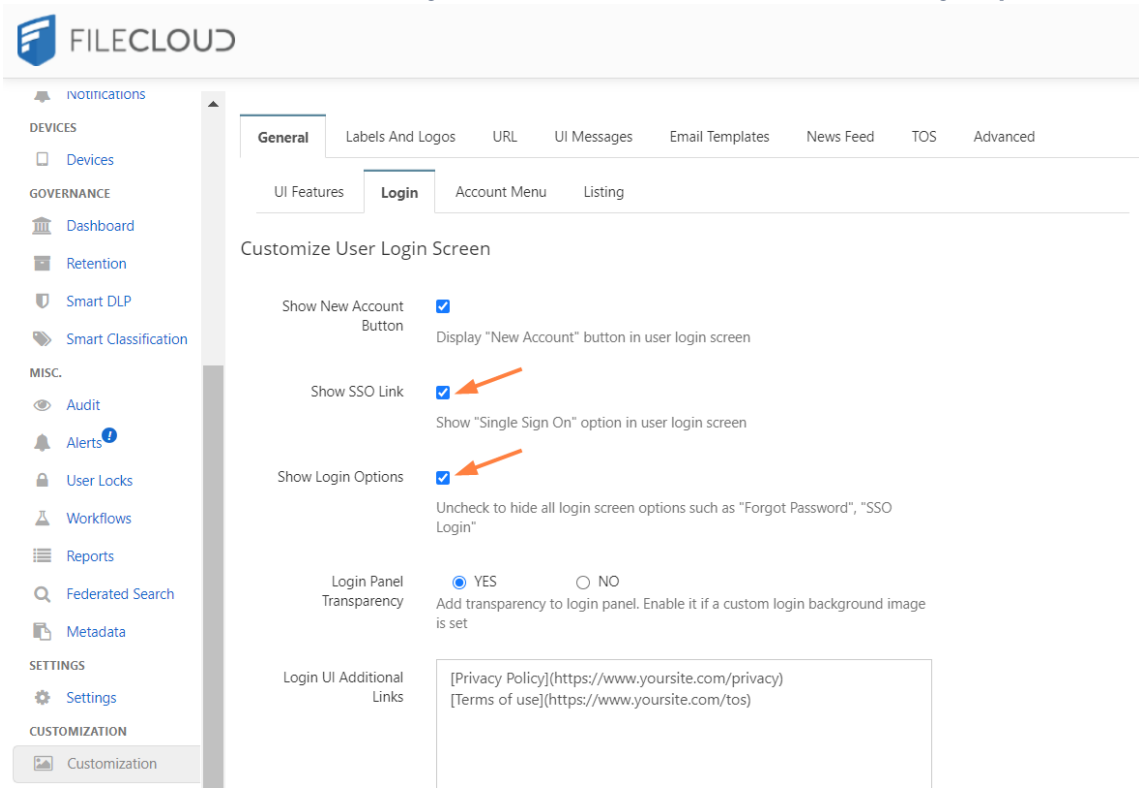
Specify the identity provider group that users must belong to in order to log in.  
 Note: Groups that a user belongs to must be passed from IdP in 'memberof' attribute.

admin

IdP Metadata\*

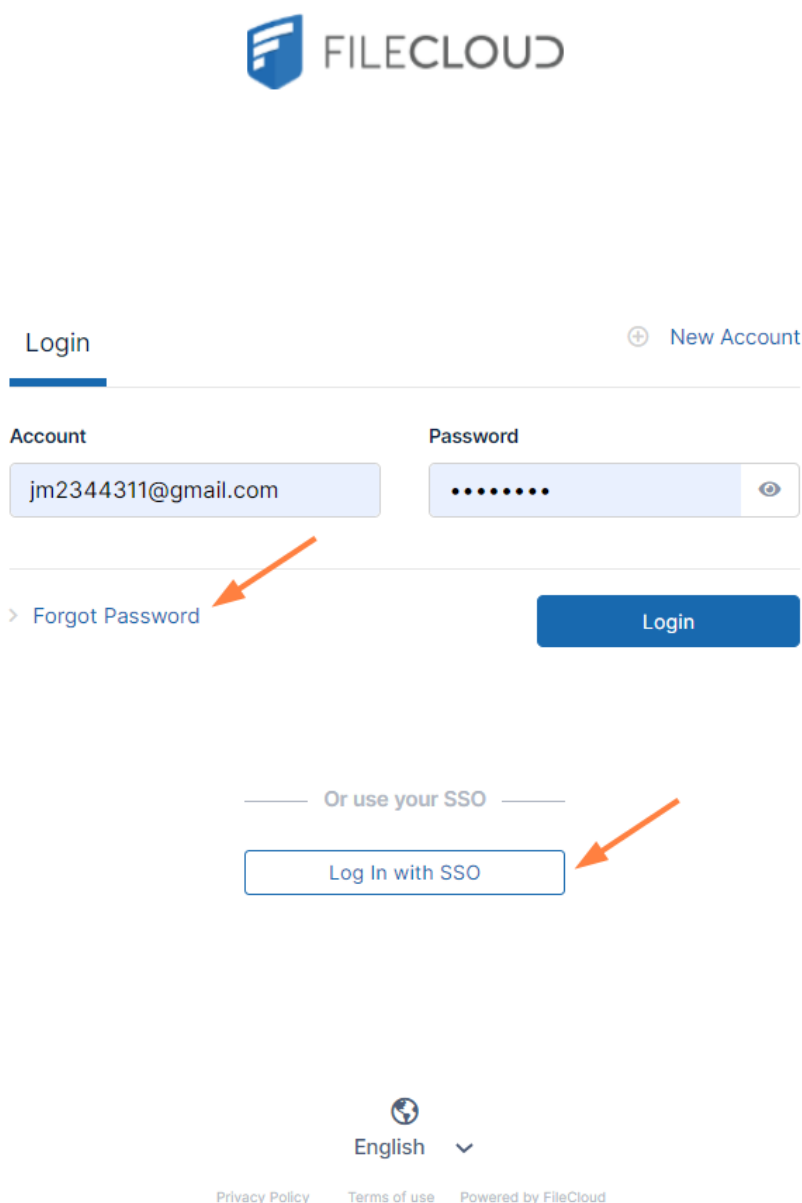
- For help filling the remaining files on the page, see [SAML Single Sign-On Support](#) (see page 246).
- Click **Save**.

5. Go to **Customization > General > Login** and check **Show SSO Link** and **Show Login Options**.



6. In the FileCloud user portal login page, click on the more option and access SSO. This will first redirect you to the Auth0 login page where you can authenticate as the user that you have created in Auth0.
- If that user doesn't exist in FileCloud, it will be created automatically after successful

authentication.



The image shows the FileCloud login interface. At the top is the FileCloud logo. Below it, there are two tabs: 'Login' (active) and 'New Account'. The 'Login' tab contains two input fields: 'Account' with the email 'jm2344311@gmail.com' and 'Password' with masked characters. Below the 'Account' field is a link '> Forgot Password' with an orange arrow pointing to it. To the right of the 'Forgot Password' link is a blue 'Login' button. Below the login fields is a section titled 'Or use your SSO' with a button 'Log In with SSO' and an orange arrow pointing to it. At the bottom, there is a language selector set to 'English' and a footer with links for 'Privacy Policy', 'Terms of use', and 'Powered by FileCloud'.

## Integrate Microsoft Entra ID with FileCloud



Before completing the following procedures, configure Apache Web Server. See [SSO Configuration Step 1](#) (see page 246) on the page [SAML Single Sign-On Support](#) (see page 246) for configuration instructions.

**Note:** Microsoft Entra ID can only be integrated if FileCloud has an SSL certificate in place, as Microsoft requires HTTPS URLs when configuring FileCloud in Entra ID.

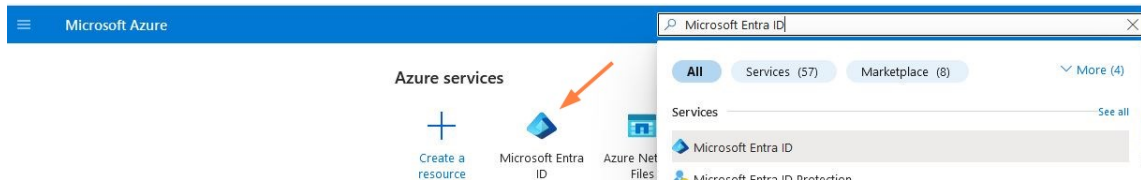
FileCloud can be integrated with Microsoft Entra ID.

- Microsoft Entra ID must be configured as an Identity Provider (IdP)
- FileCloud will act as the Service Provider (SP)

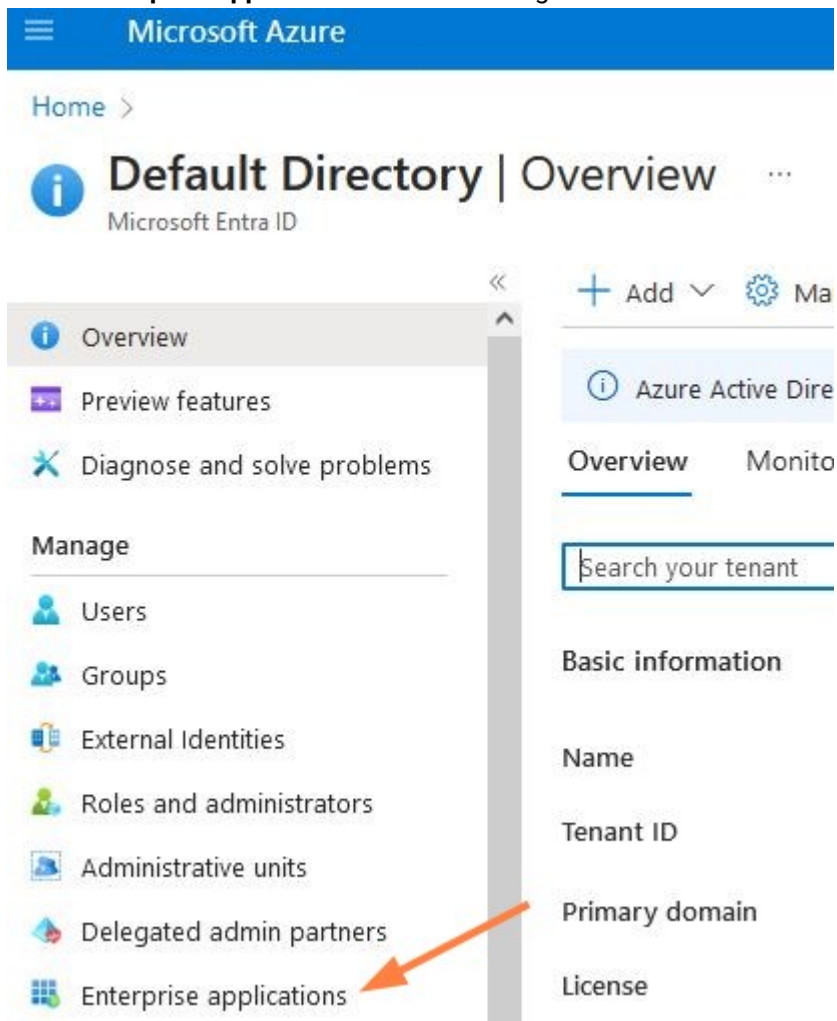
### To integrate Microsoft Entra ID with FileCloud:

Log in to the Azure Portal (<https://portal.azure.com><sup>14</sup>).

1. Search for **Microsoft Entra ID**, and then click the **Microsoft Entra ID** icon.

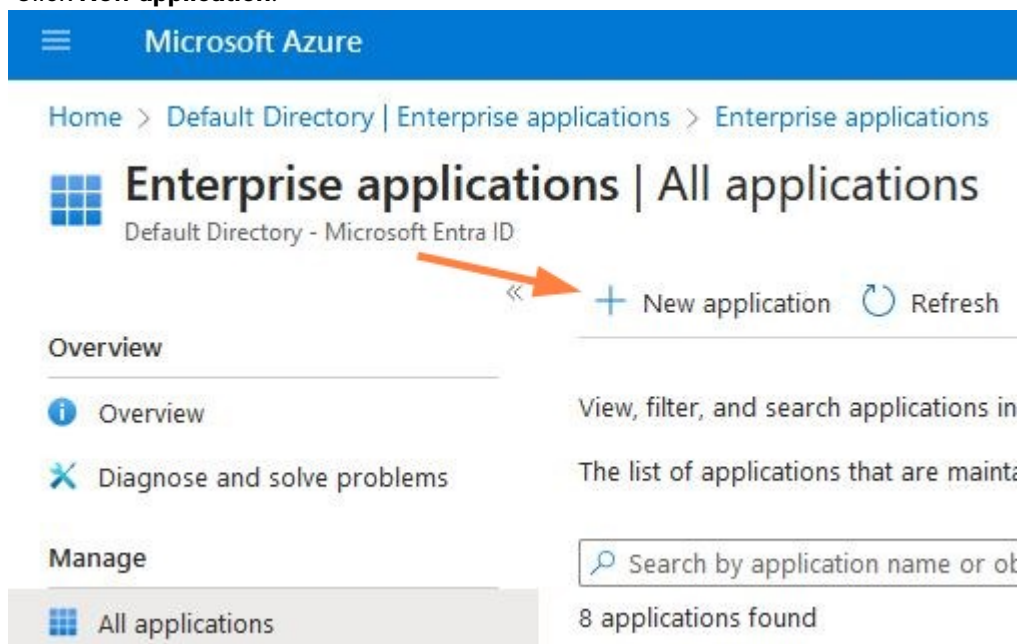


2. If you see a directory list, select the directory you want to integrate with FileCloud.
3. Select **Enterprise applications** in the left navigation menu.



14. <https://portal.azure.com/>

4. Click **New application**.





5. In the **Browse Microsoft Entra Gallery** page, enter **FileCloud** in the search box, and click the FileCloud icon.



... > [Browse Microsoft Entra Gallery](#) > [Enterprise applications](#) | [All applications](#) >

## Browse Microsoft Entra Gallery ...


+ Create your own application |  Got feedback?


The Microsoft Entra App Gallery is a catalog of thousands of apps that make it easy to deploy an application. When deploying an app from the App Gallery, you leverage prebuilt templates to connect your application here. If you are wanting to publish an application you have developed into the Microsoft Entra App Gallery, you can file a request using the process described in [this article](#).


 FileCloud  Single Sign-on : **All** User Account


 Federated SSO  Provisioning

Showing 19 of 19 results



**FileCloud**  
Codelathe  





**Lifesize Cloud**  
Lifesize  



FileCloud information appears in the right panel.

6. Enter a name for your FileCloud app, and click **Create**.

# FileCloud

×

 Got feedback?

Logo ⓘ  


Name \* ⓘ  
 ✓

Publisher ⓘ  
Codelathe

Provisioning ⓘ  
Automatic provisioning is not supported

Single Sign-On Mode ⓘ  
SAML-based Sign-on  
Linked Sign-on

URL ⓘ  
<https://www.getfilecloud.com>

[Read our step-by-step FileCloud integration tutorial](#)  

FileCloud is an Enterprise File Access, Sync and Share solution that is hosted on your server or hosted by us. Use Microsoft Entra ID to manage user access and enable single sign-on with FileCloud. Requires FileCloud subscription.

1

2

Create

The **Overview** page for the new application opens.

7. In the **Set up single sign on** box, click **Get started**.

User Authentication Settings – 270

Home > Default Directory | Enterprise applications > Enterprise applications | All applications >

## FileCloud app | Overview

Enterprise Application

Overview

Deployment Plan

Diagnose and solve problems

Manage

- Properties
- Owners
- Roles and administrators
- Users and groups
- Single sign-on
- Provisioning
- Self-service
- Custom security attributes

Security

### Properties

Name

FileCloud app

Application ID

61784ad9-1012-4834-88a2-...

Object ID

225c90cf-b75c-4f32-be36-1...

### Getting Started

**1. Assign users and groups**

Provide specific users and groups access to the applications

[Assign users and groups](#)

**2. Set up single sign on**

Enable users to sign into their application using their Microsoft Entra credentials

[Get started](#)

**3. Prerequisites**

You'll need to complete these prerequisites before you can set up the app

[Learn more](#)

The **Single sign-on** screen opens.

8. Click **SAML**.

Home > Default Directory | Enterprise applications > Enterprise applications | All applications > Browse Microsoft Entra Gallery > FileCloud app

## FileCloud app | Single sign-on

Enterprise Application

Overview

Deployment Plan

Diagnose and solve problems

Manage

- Properties
- Owners
- Roles and administrators
- Users and groups
- Single sign-on
- Provisioning
- Self-service

Single sign-on (SSO) adds security and convenience when users sign on to applications in Microsoft Entra ID by enabling a user in your organization to sign in to every application they use with only one account. Once the user logs into an application, that credential is used for all the other applications they need access to. [Learn more](#).

Select a single sign-on method [Help me decide](#)

**Disabled**

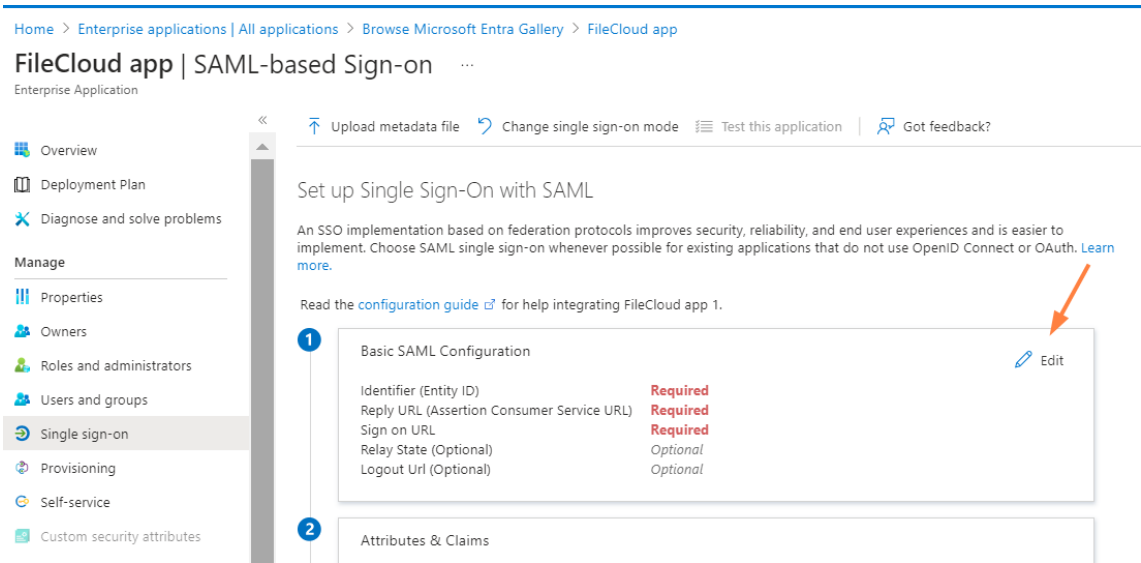
Single sign-on is not enabled. The user won't be able to launch the app from My Apps.

**SAML**

Rich and secure authentication to applications using the SAML (Security Assertion Markup Language) protocol.

The **SAML-based Sign-on** screen opens.

9. In the **Basic SAML Configuration** box, click **Edit**.



In the right panel, the **Basic SAML Configuration** form opens.

## Basic SAML Configuration

 Save |  Got feedback?

### Identifier (Entity ID) \* ⓘ

The unique ID that identifies your application to Microsoft Entra ID. This value must be unique across all applications in your Microsoft Entra tenant. The default identifier will be the audience of the SAML response for IDP-initiated SSO.

[Add identifier](#)

**Patterns:** [https://\\*.filecloudonline.com/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/metadata.php/default-sp](https://*.filecloudonline.com/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/metadata.php/default-sp),  
[https://\\*.filecloudhosted.com/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/metadata.php/default-sp](https://*.filecloudhosted.com/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/metadata.php/default-sp)

### Reply URL (Assertion Consumer Service URL) \* ⓘ

The reply URL is where the application expects to receive the authentication token. This is also referred to as the "Assertion Consumer Service" (ACS) in SAML.

[Add reply URL](#)

**Patterns:** [https://<SUBDOMAIN>.filecloudhosted.com/<CUSTOM\\_URL>](https://<SUBDOMAIN>.filecloudhosted.com/<CUSTOM_URL>),  
[https://<SUBDOMAIN>.filecloudonline.com/<CUSTOM\\_URL>](https://<SUBDOMAIN>.filecloudonline.com/<CUSTOM_URL>)

### Sign on URL \*

Sign on URL is used if you would like to perform service provider-initiated single sign-on. This value is the sign-in page URL for your application. This field is unnecessary if you want to perform identity provider-initiated single sign-on.

\*

Enter a sign on URL

**Patterns:** <https://EXAMPLE.filecloudhosted.com>, <https://EXAMPLE.filecloudonline.com>

✗ Please enter a valid URL starting with "https://". If your URL has query parameters, ensure that there is a slash preceding the question mark (i.e. /?)

✗ This field is required

### Relay State (Optional) ⓘ

The Relay State instructs the application where to redirect users after authentication is completed, and the value is typically a URL or URL path that takes users to a specific location within the application.

10. Enter the top three fields, **Identifier (Entity ID)**, **Reply URL**, and **Sign on URL** using your FileCloud domain, then click **Save**.

**Identifier (Entity ID)** - the FileCloud SSO endpoint, for example, <https://yourdomain.com/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/metadata.php/default-sp>

**Reply URL** - your FileCloud domain with the additional path indicated, <https://yourdomain.com/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/saml2-acps.php/default-sp><sup>15</sup>

**Sign on URL** - Your FileCloud site URL, for example, <https://yourdomain.com>

15. <https://yourfileclouddomain.com/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/saml2-acps.php/default-sp>


## Basic SAML Configuration

 Save |  Got feedback?

### Identifier (Entity ID) \* ⓘ

The unique ID that identifies your application to Microsoft Entra ID. This value must be unique across all applications in your Microsoft Entra tenant. The default identifier will be the audience of the SAML response for IDP-initiated SSO.

Default

✓ ☒ ⓘ 


[Add identifier](#)


**Patterns:** [https://\\*.filecloudonline.com/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/metadata.php/default-sp](https://*.filecloudonline.com/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/metadata.php/default-sp),  
[https://\\*.filecloudhosted.com/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/metadata.php/default-sp](https://*.filecloudhosted.com/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/metadata.php/default-sp)

### Reply URL (Assertion Consumer Service URL) \* ⓘ

The reply URL is where the application expects to receive the authentication token. This is also referred to as the "Assertion Consumer Service" (ACS) in SAML.

Index Default

✓ ☒ ⓘ 

☐ ⓘ 

[Add reply URL](#)

**Patterns:** [https://<SUBDOMAIN>.filecloudhosted.com/<CUSTOM\\_URL>](https://<SUBDOMAIN>.filecloudhosted.com/<CUSTOM_URL>),  
[https://<SUBDOMAIN>.filecloudonline.com/<CUSTOM\\_URL>](https://<SUBDOMAIN>.filecloudonline.com/<CUSTOM_URL>)

### Sign on URL \*

Sign on URL is used if you would like to perform service provider-initiated single sign-on. This value is the sign-in page URL for your application. This field is unnecessary if you want to perform identity provider-initiated single sign-on.


✓


**Patterns:** <https://EXAMPLE.filecloudhosted.com>, <https://EXAMPLE.filecloudonline.com>

### Relay State (Optional) ⓘ

11. Close the panel and scroll down to the **SAML Certificates** box.
12. Download and save the **Federation Metadata XML**.

**3** SAML Certificates

Token signing certificate		 Edit
Status	Active	
Thumbprint	6EC32192E9914E1840899CFFE95C5AB233CE37E5	
Expiration	4/1/2027, 9:32:35 AM	
Notification Email	jennifer.perkins@supportcodelathe.onmicrosoft.com	
App Federation Metadata Url	<a href="https://login.microsoftonline.com/ea98dd1f-a860-...">https://login.microsoftonline.com/ea98dd1f-a860-...</a>	
Certificate (Base64)	<a href="#">Download</a>	
Certificate (Raw)	<a href="#">Download</a>	
Federation Metadata XML	<a href="#">Download</a>	

Verification certificates (optional)  Edit

Required	No
Active	0
Expired	0

13. Click **Users and groups** in the left navigation panel, and click **Add user/group**.


Microsoft Azure

Home > Default Directory | Enterprise applications > Enterprise applications | All applications > FileCloud app

## FileCloud app | Users and groups

Enterprise Application

« [+ Add user/group](#) | [Edit assignment](#) | [Remove](#) | [Update credentials](#)

 The application will appear for assigned users within My Apps. Set 'visible to users?' to no in

Assign users and groups to app-roles for your application here. To create new app-roles for

[First 200 shown, to search all users & gro...](#)

Display Name

No application assignments found

**Users and groups**

Overview

Deployment Plan

Diagnose and solve problems

Manage

Properties

Owners

Roles and administrators

Single sign-on

Provisioning

14. In the **Add Assignment** page, click the link under **Users** or **Groups** to add users and groups.

[Home](#) > [Default Directory | Enterprise applications](#) > [Enterprise applications](#)

## Add Assignment ...

Default Directory



Groups are not available for assignment due to your Active Directory plan level. You can only assign users to the application.

Users

None Selected

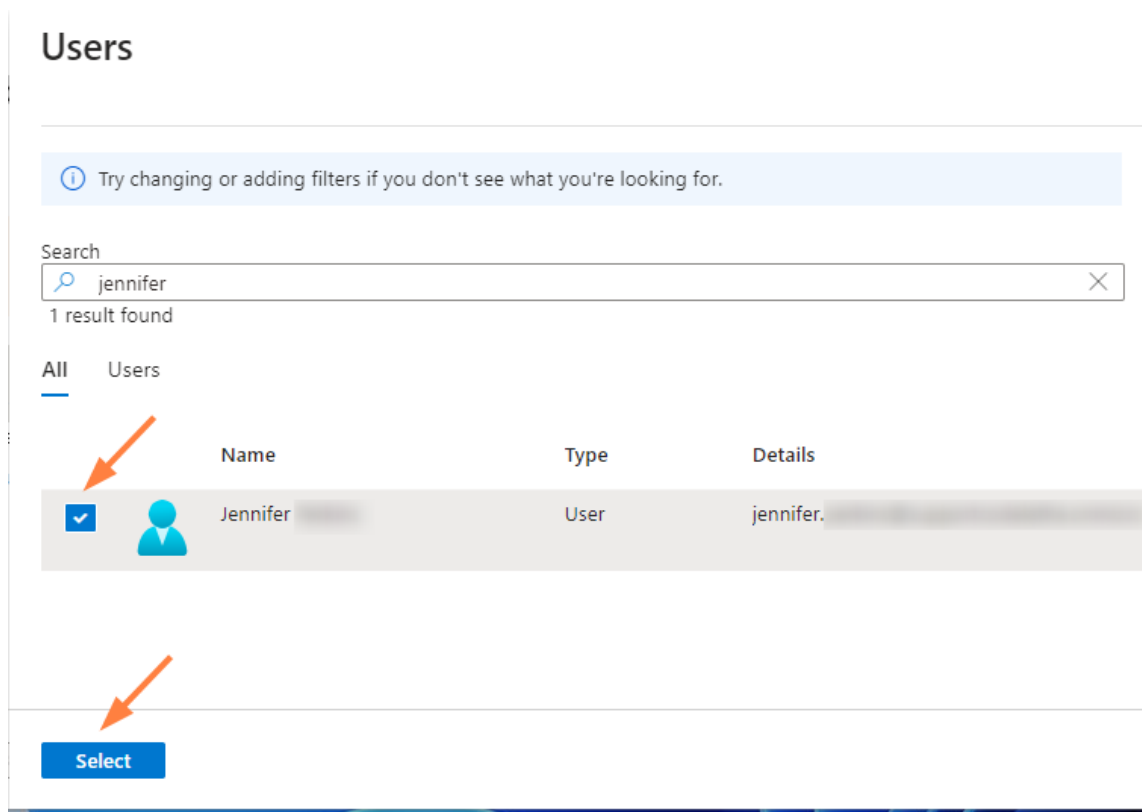


Select a role

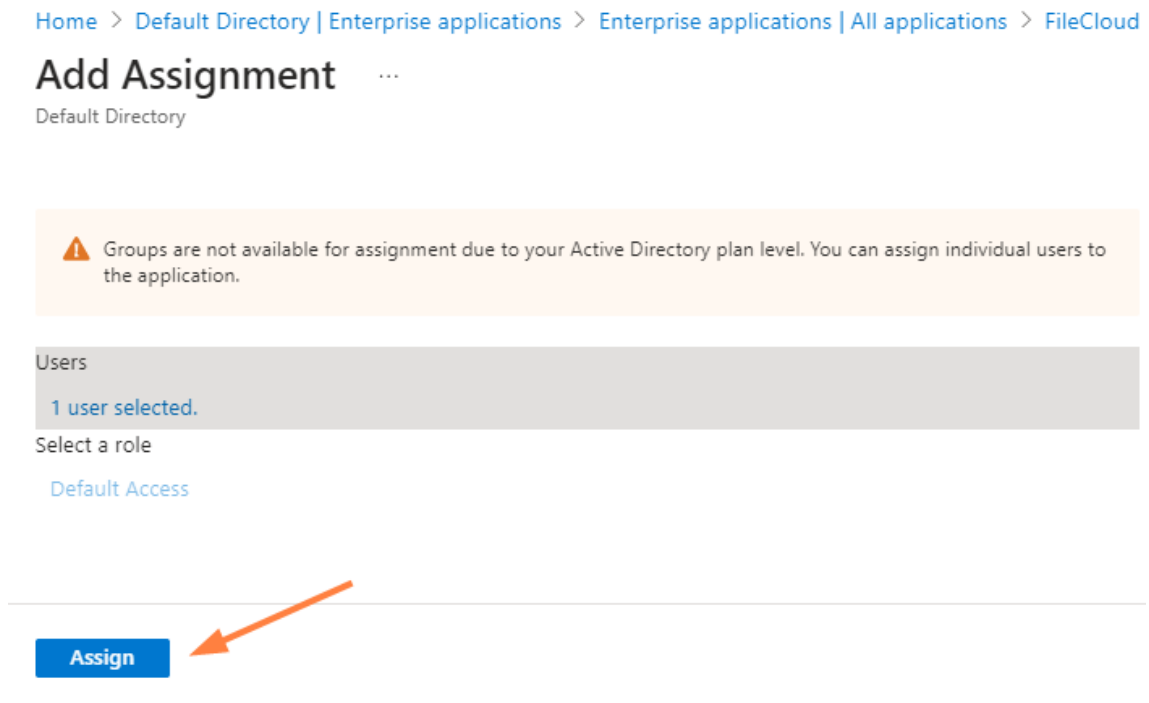
Default Access

The **Users** or **Groups** page opens.

15. Search for and check the users or groups that you want to assign to the app, and choose **Select** (at the bottom of the page).



16. At the bottom of the **Add Assignment** page, click **Assign**.



17. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **SSO** UNKNOWN ATTACHMENT. The **SSO** settings page opens.

18. In the **Default SSO Type** drop-down list, choose **SAML**.
19. Enter the following details:

Settings	Value
Default SSO type	SAML
IdP endpoint URL or entity ID	From the metadata XML downloaded, copy the entity ID on the first line of the XML document.
IdP username parameter	<a href="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identity/claims/name">http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identity/claims/name</a>
IdP email parameter	<a href="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identity/claims/name">http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identity/claims/name</a>
IdP given name (first name) parameter	<a href="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identity/claims/givenname">http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identity/claims/givenname</a>
IdP surname (last name) parameter	<a href="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identity/claims/surname">http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identity/claims/surname</a>
IdP Metadata	Copy the complete contents of the metadata XML downloaded.

To get the **IdP endpoint URL**, open your downloaded xml data and copy the **entityID** as shown in the screen shot below.



The screenshot shows an XML document with the following structure:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
- <EntityDescriptor xmlns="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:metadata" entityID="https://sts.windows.net/b096b215-a01c-4d3e-9f87-b2583e46d112/" ID="_80cd5b8e-32c2-49d9-8dda-8692491c137d">
  - <RoleDescriptor xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance" protocolSupportEnumeration="http://docs.oasis-open.org/wsrf/federation/200706" xmlns:fed="http://open.org/wsrf/federation/200706" xsi:type="fed:SecurityTokenServiceType">
    - <KeyDescriptor use="signing">
      - <KeyInfo xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#">
```

An orange arrow points to the **entityID** attribute value: `https://sts.windows.net/b096b215-a01c-4d3e-9f87-b2583e46d112/`.

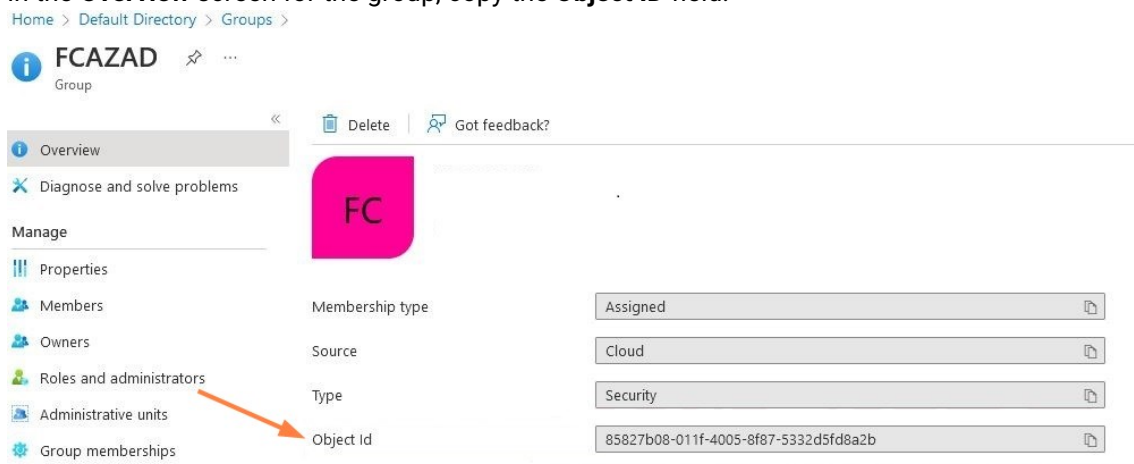
20. Save the above settings.
- This completes the Microsoft Entra ID SSO integration with FileCloud.

## Troubleshooting failed SSO login for a member of an IdP group

An IdP group is a group of users in Microsoft Entra ID who are authorized to log in to FileCloud. When a user logs in to FileCloud with SSO using Entra ID, FileCloud automatically checks the login user's FileCloud group name to see if it is the same as the user's IdP group name. However, this fails because Entra ID can only send the **Group ID**, not the group name, to FileCloud. To fix this, add a custom claim parameter named **memberof** in Entra ID to send the group's **Object ID (Group ID)** to be compared with the field **Limit log in to IdP group** in FileCloud SSO settings. Since the two values are identical, the user is able to log in to FileCloud.

To get the group's **Object ID**, in Microsoft Entra ID:

1. Log in the the Azure portal, and in the navigation panel, click **Microsoft Entra ID**.
2. In the navigation panel, click **Groups**, and then click the **Group** to limit the login to.
3. In the **Overview** screen for the group, copy the **Object ID** field:



4. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **SSO UNKNOWN ATTACHMENT**.
5. In **Limit log in to IdP group**, enter the **Object Id**.

## SSO

[Reset to defaults](#)

Default SSO type

SAML

## SAML Settings

IdP endpoint URL or entity ID\*

XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

IdP username parameter\*

http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/20

IdP email parameter\*

http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/20

IdP given name (first name) parameter\*

http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/20

IdP surname (last name) parameter\*

http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/20

IdP log out URL (optional)

URL to call to log out of identity provider

Limit log in to IdP group (optional)

Specify the identity provider group that users must belong to in order to log in.  
 Note: Groups that a user belongs to must be passed from IdP in 'memberof' attribute.

85827b08-011f-4005-8f87-5332c

6. In Microsoft Entra ID, go to the **Enterprise Applications** screen, and choose the FileCloud application
7. In the navigation panel, click **Single sign-on**.
8. Scroll down to **Attributes and Claims**, and click **Edit**.

[Home](#) > [Default Directory](#) | [Enterprise applications](#) > [Enterprise applications](#) | [All applications](#) > [FileCloud](#) >

## FileCloud | SAML-based Sign-on

Enterprise Application

[Deployment Plan](#)

[Manage](#)

- Properties
- Owners
- Roles and administrators
- Users and groups
- Single sign-on**
- Provisioning

[Upload metadata file](#)
[Change single sign-on mode](#)
[Test this application](#)
[Got feedback?](#)

Relay State (Optional) *Optional*  
Logout Url (Optional) *Optional*

**Attributes & Claims**
[Edit](#)

givenname	user.givenname
surname	user.surname
emailaddress	user.mail
name	user.userprincipalname
Unique User Identifier	user.userprincipalname

9. Click **Add a group claim**.  
A **Group Claims** form opens in the right panel.
10. In **Source attribute**, choose **Group ID**.
11. Check **Customize the name of the group claim**.
12. In **Name**, enter **memberof**.
13. Click **Save**.

The new claim is listed under **Additional claims** with the value **user.groups** (which is equal to **Object Id**).

The screenshot shows the Azure AD portal interface. On the left, the 'Attributes & Claims' page is visible, showing a table of 'Additional claims' with columns 'Claim name' and 'Value'. The table lists several claims, including 'memberof' with the value 'user.groups'. On the right, the 'Group Claims' configuration panel is open. It shows the 'Source attribute' set to 'Group ID'. Under 'Advanced options', the 'Customize the name of the group claim' checkbox is checked, and the 'Name (required)' field is set to 'memberof'.

Claim name	Value
Unique User Identifier (Name ID)	user.userprincipalname [nameid-format=emailaddress] ***

Claim name	Value
http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identity/claims/emailadd...	user.mail ***
http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identity/claims/givenname	user.givenname ***
http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identity/claims/name	user.userprincipalname ***
http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identity/claims/surname	user.surname ***
memberof	user.groups ***

Now **memberof** will be sent to FileCloud with the value of the user group, and when FileCloud compares it with the **Idp Group**, the values match, so FileCloud will allow the login.

## Integrate Centrify with FileCloud



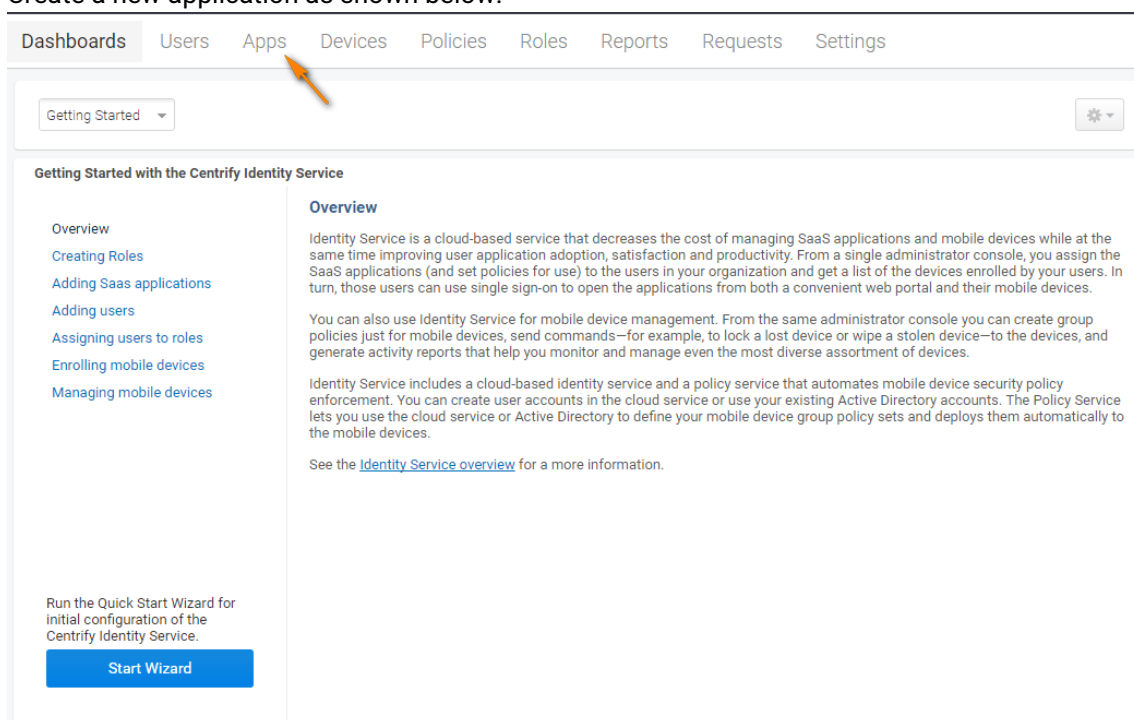
Before completing the following procedures, configure Apache Web Server. See [SSO Configuration Step 1](#) (see page 246) on the page [SAML Single Sign-On Support](#) (see page 246) for configuration instructions.

FileCloud can be integrated with Centrify. Centrify must be configured as an Identity Provider (IdP), and FileCloud will act as the Service Provider (SP).

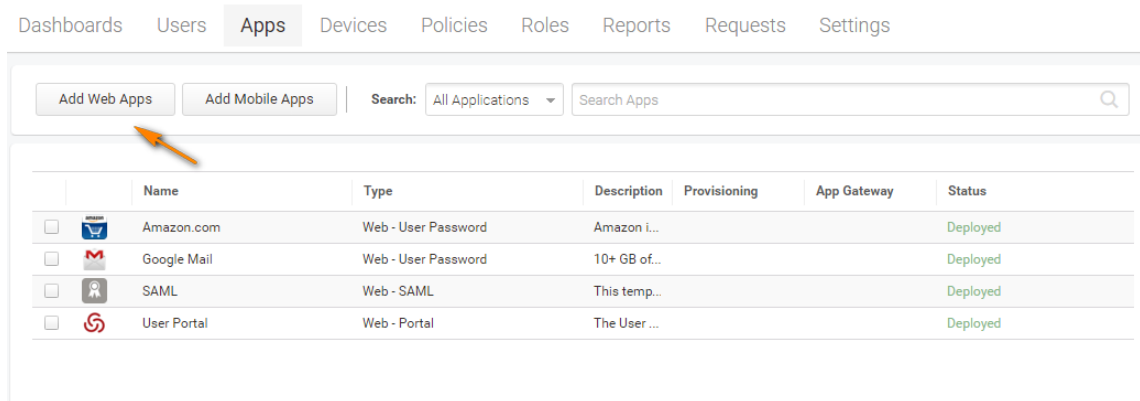
### To configure FileCloud with Centrify:

**PLEASE NOTE:** Any reference to [samlddev.codelathe.com](http://samlddev.codelathe.com) in this article should be replaced with your own FileCloud URL.

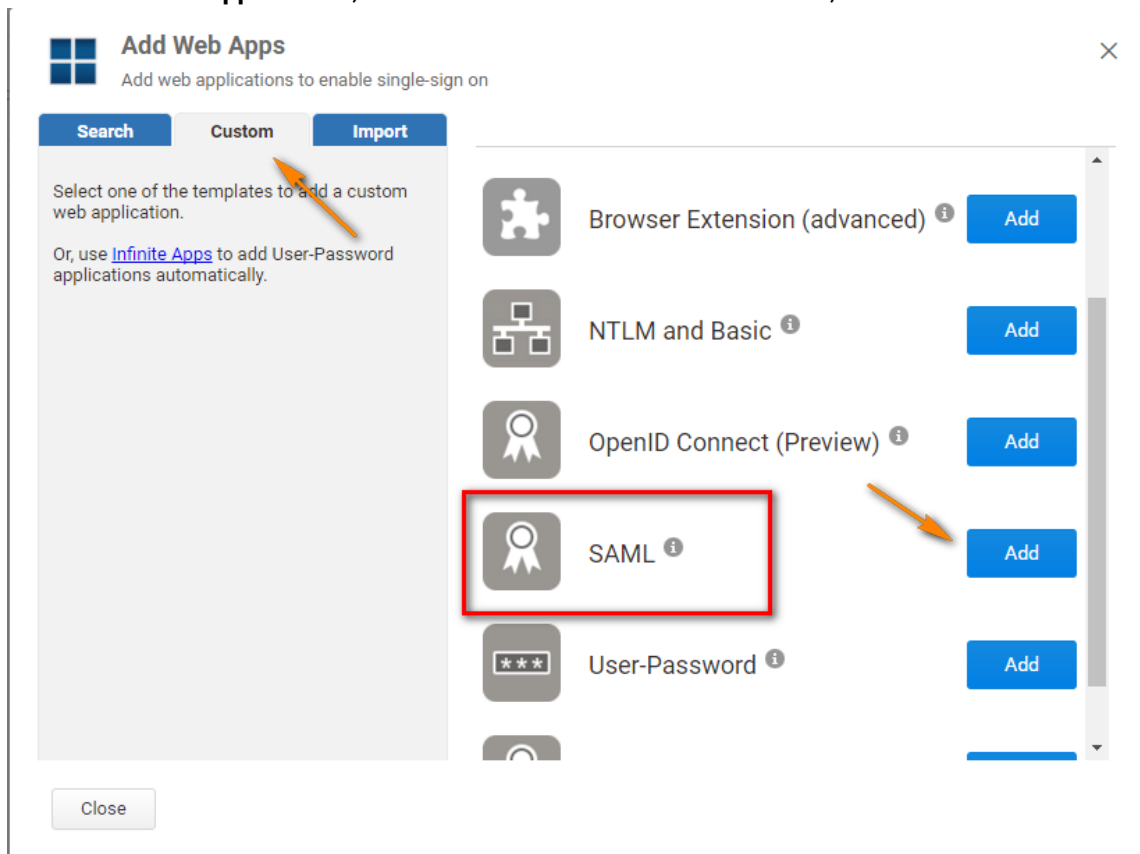
1. Log in to your Centrify issued URL.
2. After successful login to Centrify, go to the admin section and to the dashboard.
3. Create a new application as shown below.



4. From the **Apps** menu, click **Add Web Apps**.



5. On the **Add Web Apps** screen, click the **Custom** tab and choose **SAML**, then click **Add**.



6. In the SAML Web App Screen, click **Application Settings** in the navigation panel.
7. In **Assertion Consumer Service URL** enter the FileCloud assertion URL <http://<your domain>/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/saml2-acps.php/default-sp><sup>16</sup>
8. Download the **Identity Provider SAML Metadata** as shown below. Get the details for configuring FileCloud on this screen in the FileCloud admin portal on the **Settings > SSO** tab.

16. <http://module.php/saml/sp/saml2-acps.php/default-sp>

- a. The Identity Provider Single Sign On URL must match the **Issuer** URL in the screenshot below.
- b. The metadata downloaded from this screen must match the **IdP Metadata** in the FileCloud admin portal on the **Settings > SSO** tab.

**SAML**  
Web - SAML Deployed  
[Actions](#)

**Application Settings** [Learn more](#)

**Service Provider Info** [Upload SP Metadata](#)

**Assertion Consumer Service URL** ⓘ

**Issuer** ⓘ

☐ **Encrypt Assertion** ⓘ

Encryption Certificate:

Filename  [Browse](#) [Clear](#)

**Identity Provider Info**

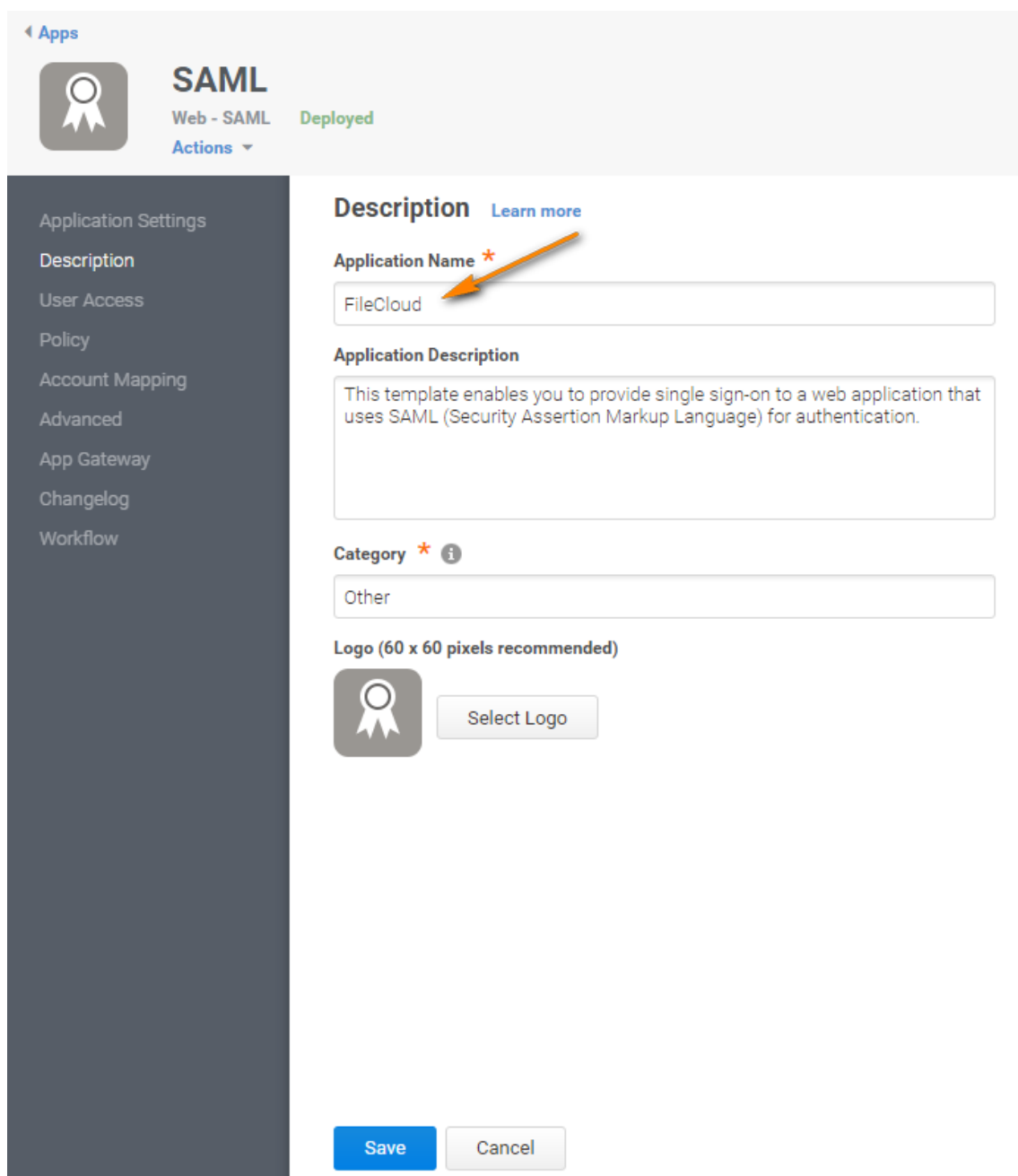
**Identity Provider Sign-in URL** ⓘ

**Identity Provider Error URL** ⓘ

**Identity Provider Sign-out URL** ⓘ

[Download Identity Provider SAML Meta data](#) ⓘ

9. In the SAML Web App Screen, click **Description** in the navigation panel.
10. Add the **Application Name** and **Application Description**.



**SAML**  
Web - SAML Deployed  
[Actions](#)

**Description** [Learn more](#)

**Application Name** \*

FileCloud


**Application Description**

This template enables you to provide single sign-on to a web application that uses SAML (Security Assertion Markup Language) for authentication.

**Category** \* [i](#)

Other

**Logo (60 x 60 pixels recommended)**

 [Select Logo](#)

[Save](#) [Cancel](#)

11. In the SAML Web App Screen, click **Account Mapping** in the navigation panel.
12. Select **Use Account Mapping Script** as shown below. This enables you to use your email as your username.

**SAML**  
Web - SAML Deployed  
Actions ▾

Application Settings  
Description  
User Access  
Policy  
**Account Mapping**  
Advanced  
App Gateway  
Changelog  
Workflow

**Account Mapping** [Learn more](#)

Map to User Accounts

☐ Use the following Directory Service field to supply the user name

☐ Everybody shares a single user name

☒ Use Account Mapping Script

Test

```
1 UserIdentifier = LoginUser.Username;
2 LoginUser.Username = LoginUser.Get('mail').split('@')[0];
```

13. In the SAML Web App Screen, click **Advanced** in the navigation panel.

14. Add the script as follows:

**SAML**  
Web - SAML Deployed  
Actions ▾

Application Settings  
Description  
User Access  
Policy  
Account Mapping  
**Advanced**  
App Gateway  
Changelog  
Workflow

**Advanced** [Learn more](#)

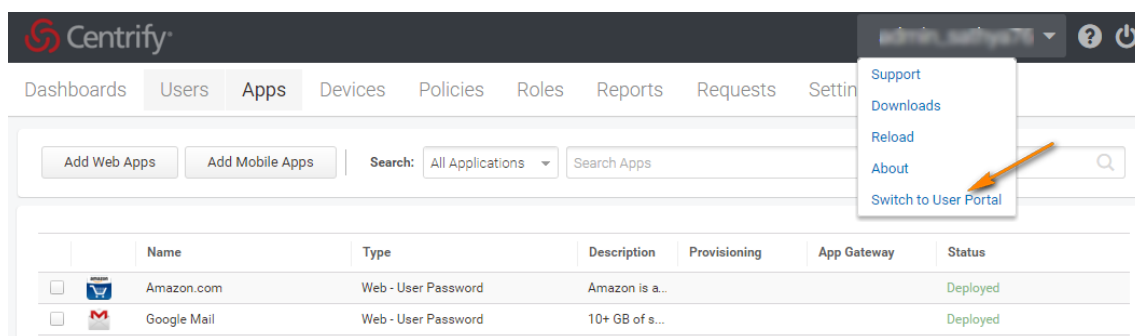
Reset Script Test

Script to generate a SAML assertion for this application

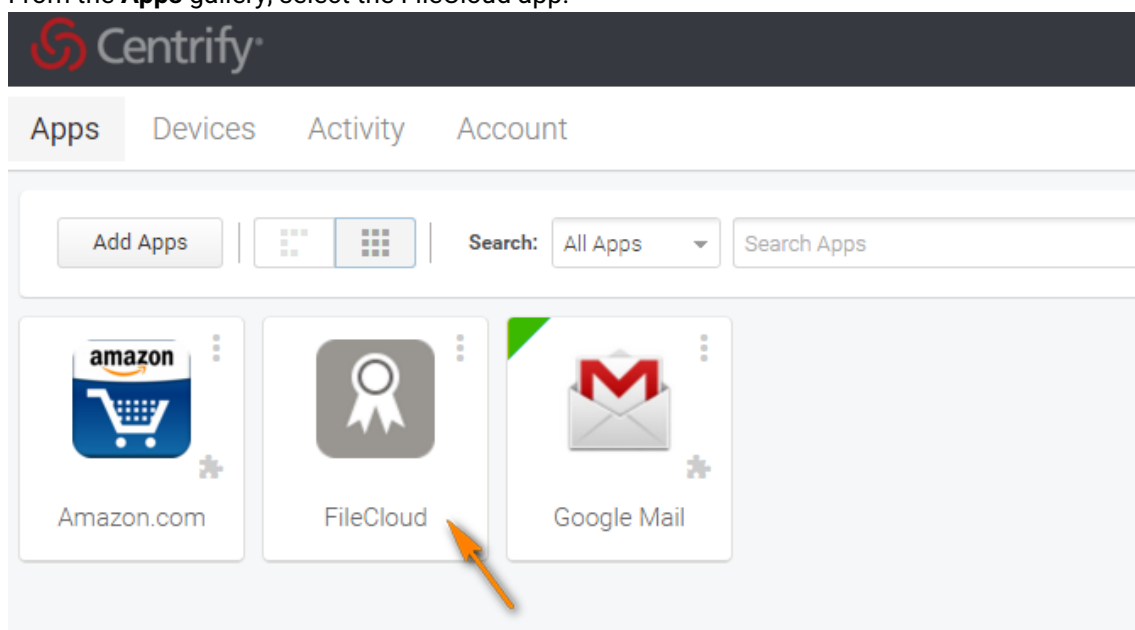
```
1 setIssuer(Issuer);
2 setSubjectName(UserIdentifier);
3 setServiceUrl(ServiceUrl);
4 setAttribute("mail", LoginUser.Get("mail"));
5 setAttribute("uid", LoginUser.Username);
6 setAudience("https://samldev.codelathe.com/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/metadata.php/default-sp");
7 setRecipient("https://samldev.codelathe.com/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/saml2-acis.php/default-sp");
8 setHttpDestination("https://samldev.codelathe.com/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/saml2-acis.php/default-sp");
9 setSignatureType("Response");
```

The configuration is now complete.

15. Choose **Switch to User Portal** and click **Apps**.



16. From the **Apps** gallery, select the FileCloud app.



From the FileCloud login screen, you can now select Single Sign-On to log in through Centrify.

## Integrate CYBERARK with FileCloud



Before completing the following procedures, configure Apache Web Server. See [SSO Configuration Step 1](#) (see page 246) on the page [SAML Single Sign-On Support](#) (see page 246) for configuration instructions.

As an administrator, you can integrate CYBERARK SSO via SAML into FileCloud. Once integrated your users will be able to access FileCloud with their CYBERARK credentials.



CYBERARK is a cloud-based platform

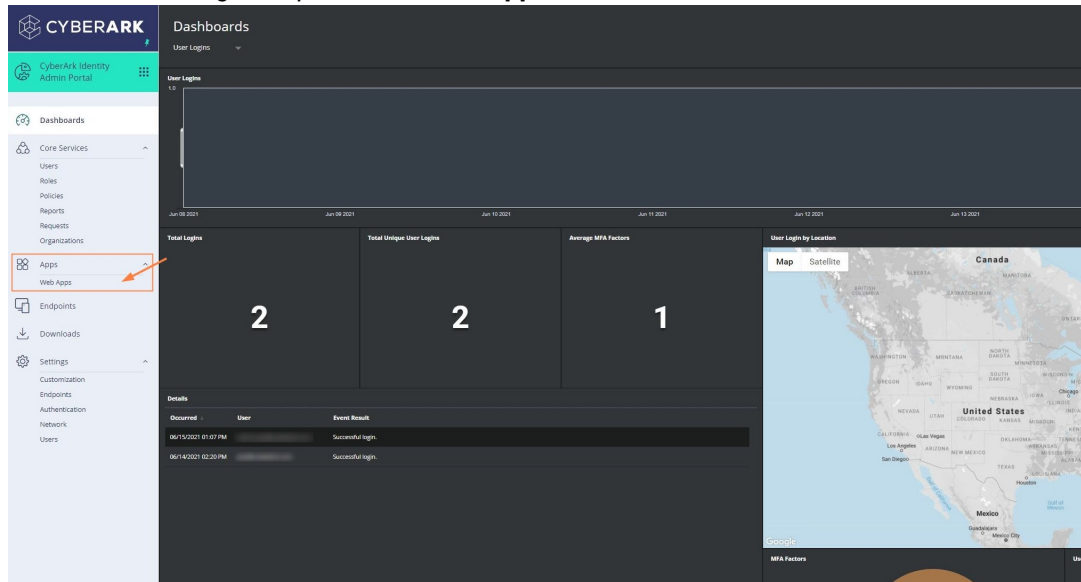
- Manage privileged accounts and credentials
- Secure workforce and customer identities
- Secure and manage access for applications and other non-human identities

In this integration scenario:

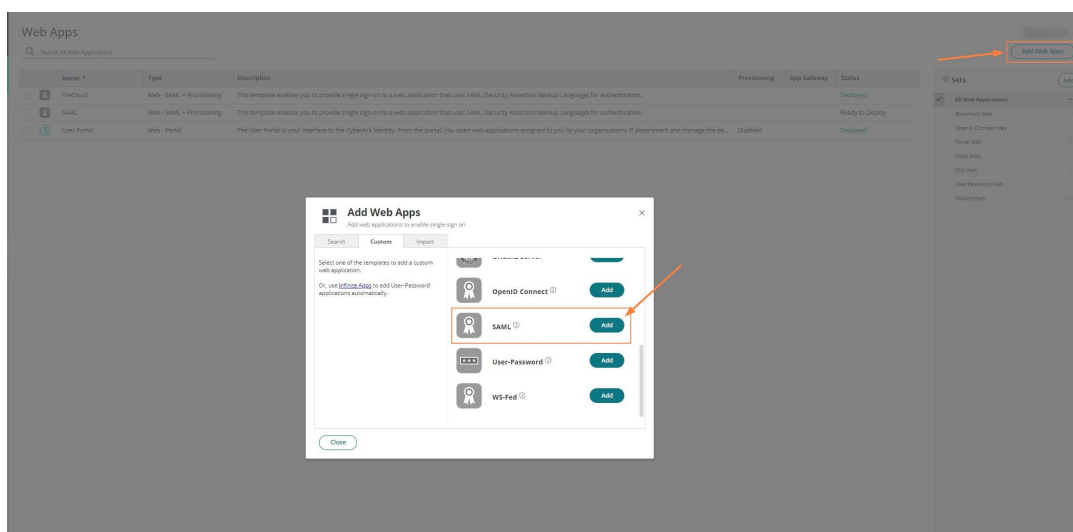
- CYBERARK must be configured as an Identity Provider (IdP)
- FileCloud will act as the Service Provider (SP)

## Configure FileCloud with CYBERARK

1. In CYBERARK, create a new web app.
  - a. Open a browser and log in to your CYBERARK admin portal.
  - b. From the left navigation pane, click **Web Apps**.

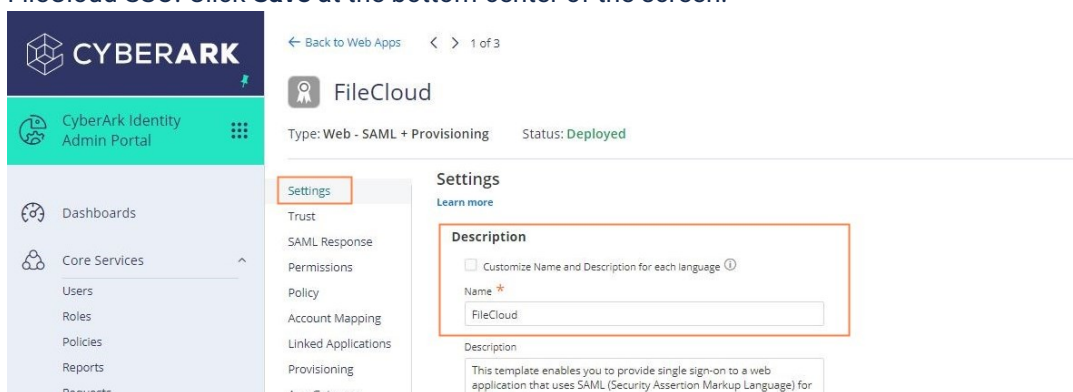


- c. On the Web Apps screen, in the top right corner, click **Add Web Apps**.
  - d. In the **Add Web Apps** popup, select the **Custom** tab and scroll down until you find **SAML**, and click **Add**. A confirmation panel may appear. Click **Yes**, and then close to access the added SAML Web App.

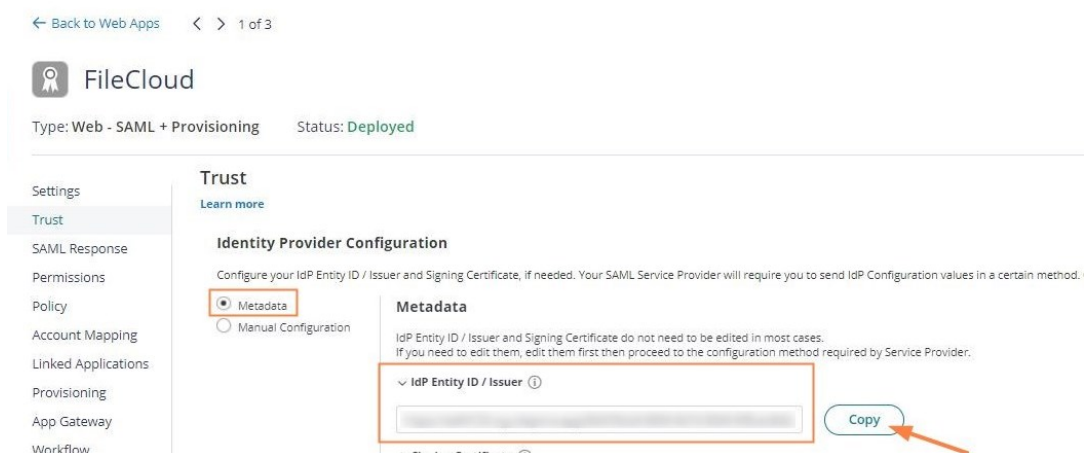


2. In CYBERARK, configure the added SAML Web App.

- a. Click **Settings** in the navigation panel. In **Description**, enter a meaningful name such as FileCloud SSO. Click **Save** at the bottom-center of the screen.



- b. Click **Trust** in the navigation panel, and download the metadata file.
- c. Under **Identity Provider Configuration**, expand **IdP Entity ID /Issuer** and copy the URL into a notepad.



- d. Select **Manual Configuration**, and copy the **Single Logout URL** into a notepad as it will be used in the next steps.

← Back to Web Apps > 1 of 3

**FileCloud**

Type: Web - SAML + Provisioning Status: Deployed

**Trust**  
Learn more

**Identity Provider Configuration**  
Configure your IdP Entity ID / Issuer and Signing Certificate, if needed. Your SAML Service Provider will require you to send IdP Configuration values in a certain method. Choose the m

☐ Metadata  
☒ **Manual Configuration**

**Manual Configuration**  
If your SAML Service Provider provides a SAML SSO configuration screen, copy the applicable IdP Configuration values from below, and paste them  
If SAML Service Provider requires you to send IdP Configuration values, copy them from below and send them to SP.

> IdP Entity ID / Issuer ⓘ

> Signing Certificate ⓘ

Single Sign On URL ⓘ  
https:// Copy

Single Logout URL ⓘ  
https:// Copy

- e. Access the **SAML Response** tab in the navigation panel, and add the following attribute values:

**uid = LoginUser.Username**

**mail = LoginUser.Email**

**givenName = LoginUser.DisplayName**

**sn = LoginUser.Shortname**

← Back to Web Apps > 1 of 3

**FileCloud**

Type: Web - SAML + Provisioning Status: Deployed

**SAML Response**  
Learn more

**Attributes**  
Click the Add button below to map attributes from your source directory to SAML attributes that should be included in the SAML response fo

Add

Attribute Name	Attribute Value
<input type="checkbox"/> uid	<input type="checkbox"/> LoginUser.Username
<input type="checkbox"/> mail	<input type="checkbox"/> LoginUser.Email
<input type="checkbox"/> givenName	<input type="checkbox"/> LoginUser.DisplayName
<input type="checkbox"/> sn	<input type="checkbox"/> LoginUser.Shortname

3. Export the metadata file into FileCloud and configure SSO.

- a. [Configure Apache Webserver](#)<sup>17</sup>
- b. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **SSO** UNKNOWN ATTACHMENT .  
The **SSO** page opens.
  - i. Configure the following attributes:  
**IdP Username Parameter = uid**  
**IdP Email Parameter = mail**  
**IdP Given Name Parameter = givenName**  
**IdP Surname Parameter = sn**
  - ii. Paste the **Single Logout URL** copied in step 2d into **IdP Log Out URL** (Optional)
  - iii. Paste the **IdP Entity ID/Issuer URL** copied in step 2c into **Idp Endpoint URL or EntityID**
  - iv. Open the metadata file downloaded in step 2b, and copy its content into **IdP Metadata**.
  - v. Fill in the other settings on the page as shown in [SAML Single Sign-On Support](#) (see [page 246](#)).
  - vi. Click **Save**.

---

17. <https://www.filecloud.com/supportdocs/display/cloud/SAML+Single+Sign-On+Support>

## SSO

[Reset to defaults](#)

Default SSO type

SAML

## SAML Settings

IdP endpoint URL or entity ID\*

IdP username parameter\*

uid

IdP email parameter\*

mail

IdP given name (first name) parameter\*

givenName

IdP surname (last name) parameter\*

sn

IdP log out URL (optional)

URL to call to log out of identity provider

Limit log in to IdP group (optional)

Specify the identity provider group that users must belong to in order to log in.  
 Note: Groups that a user belongs to must be passed from IdP in 'memberof' attribute.

admin

IdP Metadata\*

- c. Enable SSO Login. In the FileCloud admin portal, go to **Customization > General > Login**. Enable **Show SSO Link** and **Show Login Options**.

**General** Labels And Logos URL UI Messages Email Templates News Feed TOS Advanced

UI Features **Login** Account Menu Listing

Customize User Login Screen

Show New Account Button ☒ Display "New Account" button in user login screen

Show SSO Link ☒ Show "Single Sign On" option in user login screen

Show Login Options ☒ Uncheck to hide all login screen options such as "Forgot Password", "SSO Login"

4. Configure the service provider in CYBERARK.

- Click the **Trust** tab in the navigation panel for the Web App, and scroll down to **Service Provider Configuration**.
- In URL, add the following: <https://YOUR-FILECLOUD-URL/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/metadata.php/default-sp><sup>18</sup> and click **Load** to download FileCloud's metadata.

**Service Provider Configuration**

Select the configuration method specified by Service Provider, and then follow the instructions.

☒ Metadata  
☐ Manual Configuration

**Metadata**

Use one of the following methods to import SP Metadata given by your Service Provider.

URL  **Load**

File  Choose File

XML

- Once you have loaded FileCloud's metadata, change the settings from **Metadata** to **Manual Configuration** and disable **Encrypt SAML Response Assertion**. Click **Save**.

18. <https://www.filecloud.com/supportdocs/display/cloud/SAML+Single+Sign-On+Support>

### Service Provider Configuration

Select the configuration method specified by Service Provider, and then follow the instructions.

☐ Metadata

☒ Manual Configuration

#### Manual Configuration

Fill out the form below with information given by your Service Provider. Be sure to save your work wt

SP Entity ID / Issuer / Audience ⓘ

https:// /simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/met

Assertion Consumer Service (ACS) URL ⓘ

https:// /simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/sam

Recipient ⓘ ☒ Same as ACS URL

Enter Recipient here

Sign Response or Assertion?

☒ Response ☐ Assertion ☐ Both

NameID Format ⓘ

unspecified

Single Logout URL ⓘ

https:// /simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/sam

☒ Encrypt SAML Response Assertion ⓘ  
Subject Name: CN= , O= , L= , S= ,  
C= ,  
Thumbprint:

Choose File Encryption Certificate (Required)

Save

Cancel

5. Complete CYBERARK SSO integration.
- a. Access FileCloud's user portal and click **Login In with SSO**.

FILECLOUD

HYBRID CLOUD

Login

New Account

Account

Password

Username or Email

\*\*\*\*\*

Forgot Password

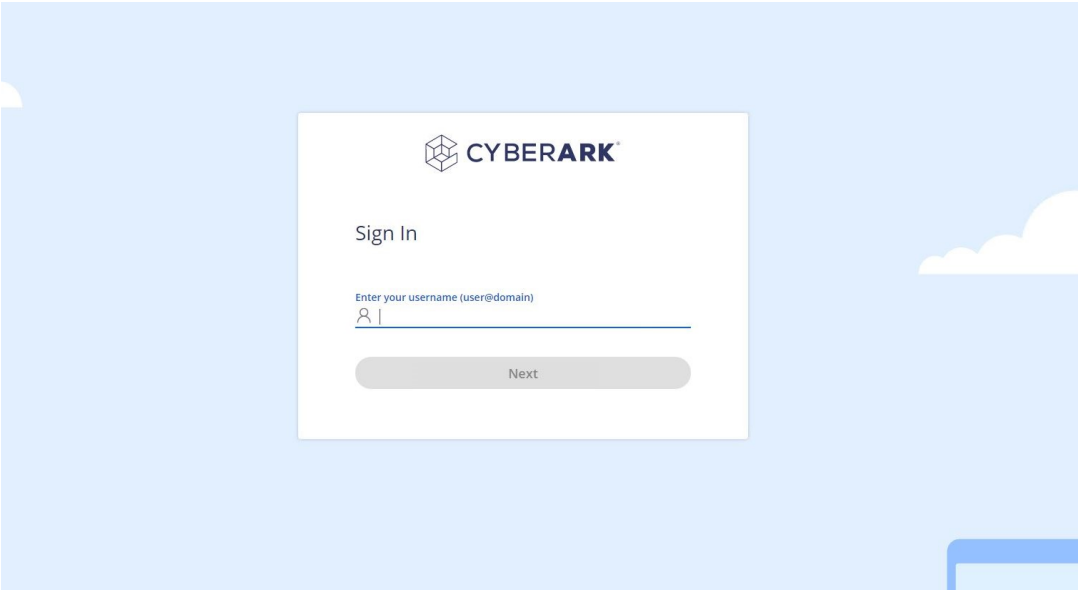
Login

Or use your SSO

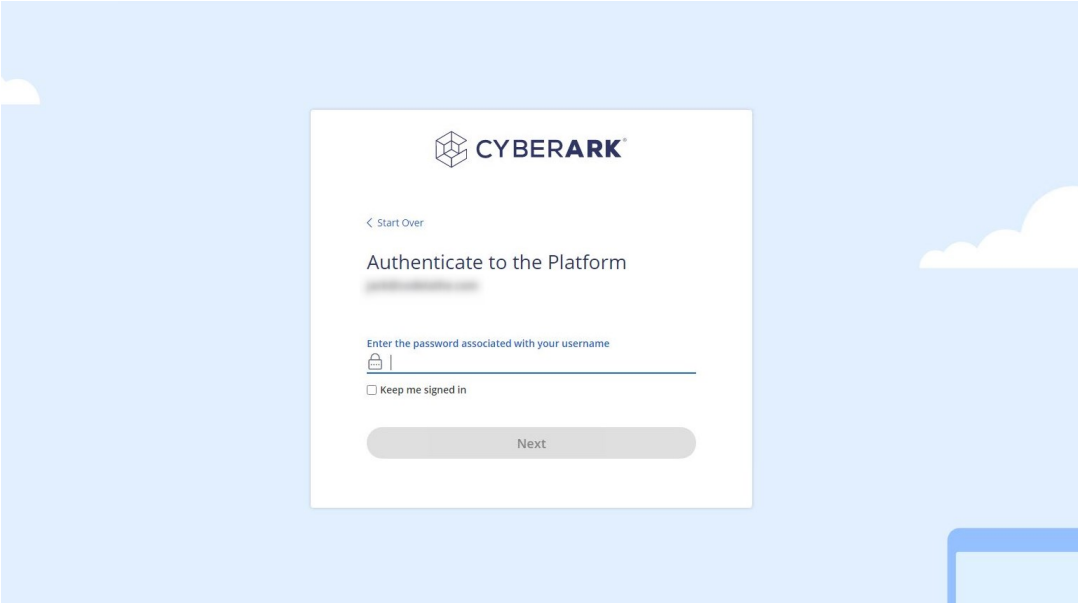
Login In with SSO



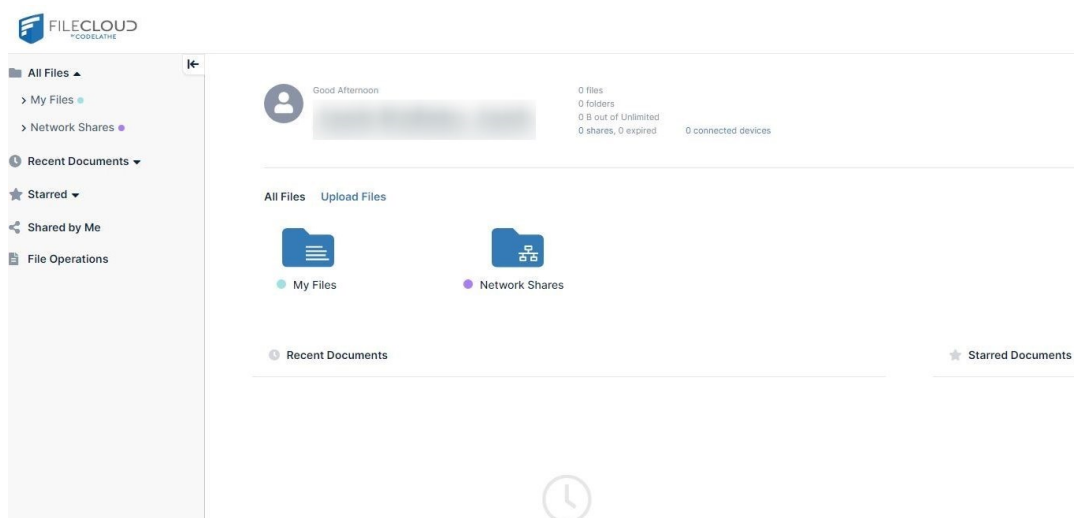
You are redirected to your CYBERARK login page.



b. Complete your user authentication.



You are redirected to FileCloud.



Now you can use single sign-on with CYBERARK from FileCloud.

## Integrate JumpCloud with FileCloud



Before completing the following procedures, configure Apache Web Server. See [SSO Configuration Step 1](#) (see page 246) on the page [SAML Single Sign-On Support](#) (see page 246) for configuration instructions.

As an administrator you can integrate these two systems so that your JumpCloud users can access their FileCloud account without having to enter their credentials a second time.



JumpCloud's is a cloud-based platform

- It enables IT teams to securely manage user identities
- It connects teams them to resources they need regardless of provider, protocol, vendor, or location

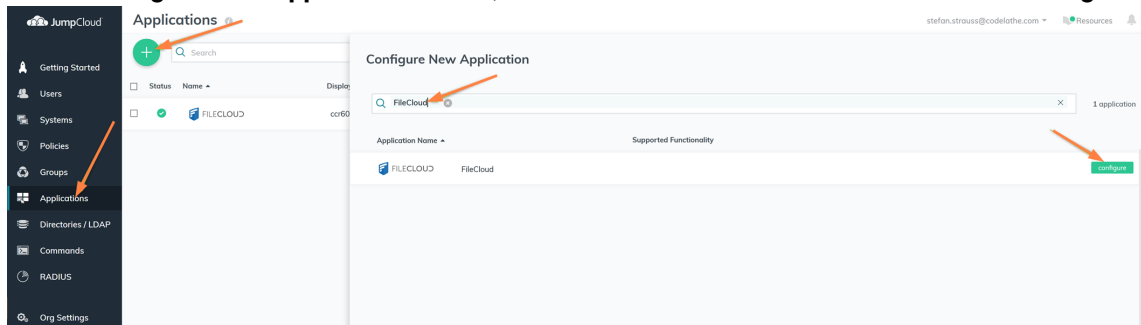
In this integration scenario:

- JumpCloud must be configured as an Identity Provider (IdP)
- FileCloud will act as the Service Provider (SP)

## Configure FileCloud with JumpCloud

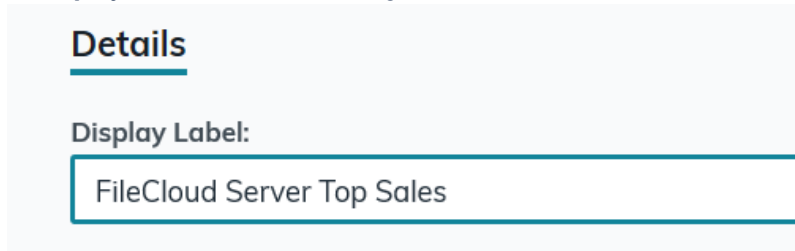
### 1. In JumpCloud, create a new application.

1. Open a browser and log in to your JumpCloud admin interface at <https://console.jumpcloud.com/login>.
2. From the left navigation pane, click **Applications**.
3. On the **Applications** screen, to add a new application, click the plus sign.
4. In the **Configure New Application** screen, enter **FileCloud** in the search field and click **configure**.

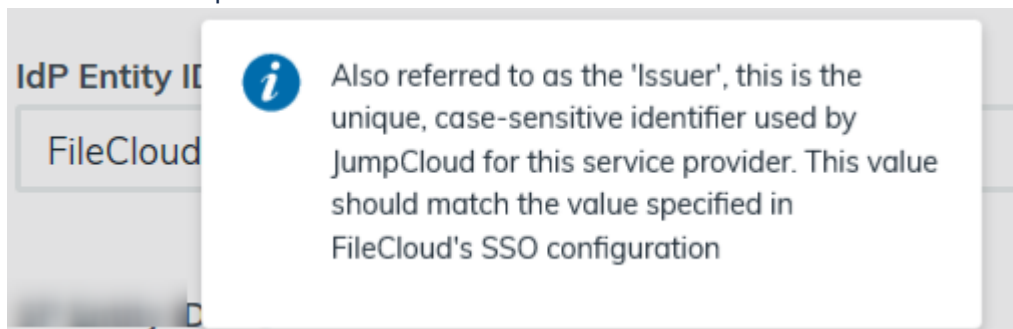


### 2. In JumpCloud, configure the FileCloud application

1. In **Display Label**, enter a meaningful name.



2. In **IDP Entity ID**, enter a unique, case-sensitive identifier to be used by JumpCloud for this FileCloud service provider.



3. Replace **YOUR\_DOMAIN** with your domain name in all fields.

SP Entity ID: ⓘ

[http://YOUR\\_DOMAIN/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/metadata.php/default-sp](http://YOUR_DOMAIN/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/metadata.php/default-sp)

ACS URL: ⓘ

[http://YOUR\\_DOMAIN/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/saml2-acis.php/default-sp](http://YOUR_DOMAIN/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/saml2-acis.php/default-sp)

Default RelayState: ⓘ

[http://YOUR\\_DOMAIN/auth/samlss0.php](http://YOUR_DOMAIN/auth/samlss0.php)

4. Enter a unique value for **IdP URL**.

Note that the IdP URL cannot be shared across applications, and this URL is not editable after creation.

IdP URL:

[https://sso.jumpcloud.com/saml2/filecloud\\_TopSales24](https://sso.jumpcloud.com/saml2/filecloud_TopSales24)

### 3. In JumpCloud, activate the new application and export metadata and certificate

1. In JumpCloud, on the configuration screen, save and activate the new application.

Please confirm your new SSO connector instance

Note that the IdP URL cannot be shared across applications and this URL is not editable after creation.

[cancel](#) [continue](#)

JumpCloud Attribute Name

firstname

lastname

email

email

uid

username

[add attribute](#)

CONSTANT ATTRIBUTES: ⓘ

[add attribute](#)

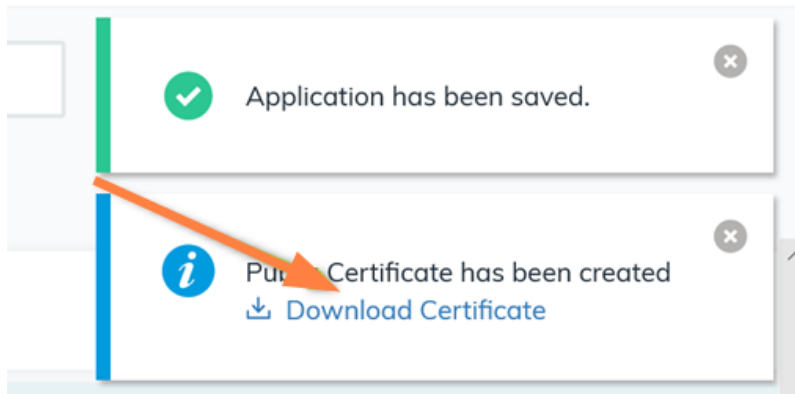
GROUP ATTRIBUTES ⓘ

☐

ⓘ An IDP Certificate and Private Key will be generated for this application after activation. [Click here to see the Knowledge Base article with details for configuring this application](#)

[cancel](#) [activate](#)

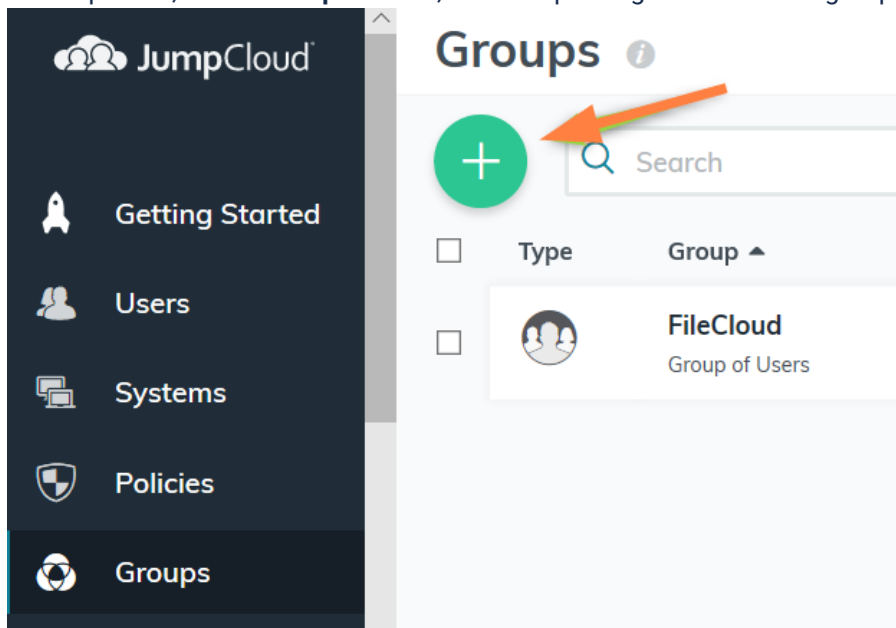
2. Download the generated certificate.



The saml.crt file must be copied into the correct location in the FileCloud root folder for your integration to work. Contact FileCloud support and request that your saml.crt file be copied into your Simple SAML certificate folder.

#### 4. In JumpCloud, create a group and add users


1. In JumpCloud, on the **Groups** screen, click the plus sign to add a new group.



2. Enter the group name.

## New User Group

**Details** Users System Groups Applications RADIUS Directories



### Group Configuration

NAME:



☐ Create Linux group for this user group [i](#)

☐ Enable Samba Authentication [i](#)

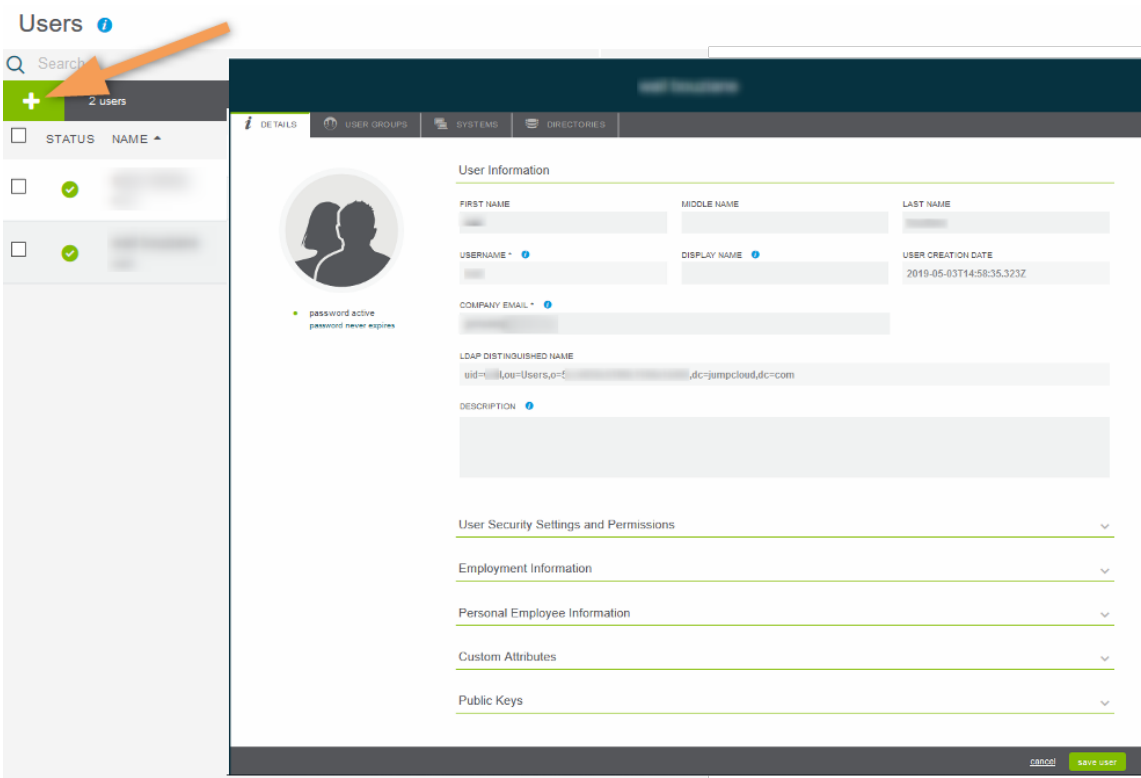
3. Enable the group to access FileCloud.

**Details** Users System Groups **Applications** RADIUS Directories

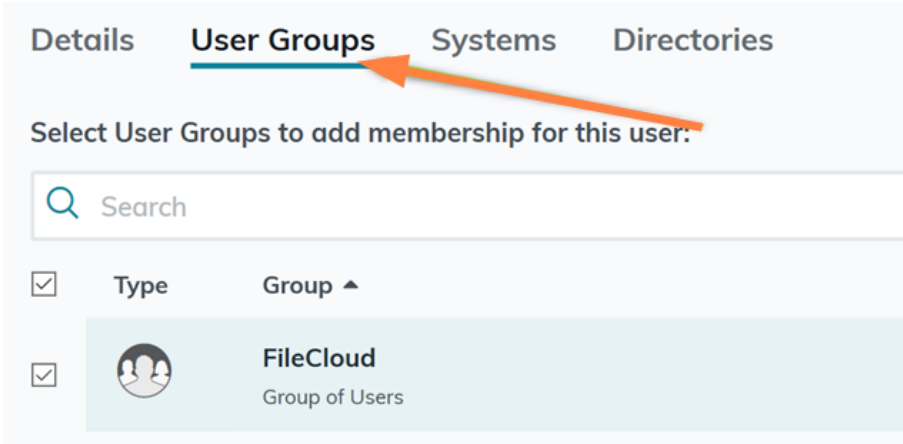
FileCloud user group is bound to the following applications:

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Status	Name ▲	Display Label
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		 FileCloud Top Sales 24	FileCloud Top Sales 24

4. On the **Users** screen, click the plus sign to add a new user.




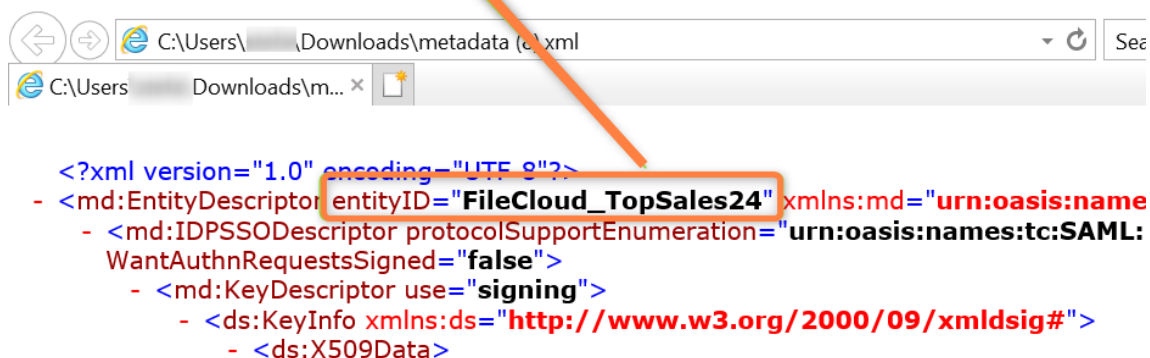
5. On the **New User** screen, click the **Details** tab and type in the user's information.
6. On the **New User** screen, click the **User Groups** tab and add the user to your FileCloud group.



7. Click **Save User**.

5. In FileCloud, configure the SSO settings.

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **SSO**  . The **SSO** page opens.
2. In **IdP End Point URL**, type or paste in the same value as the **IdP Entity ID** that you entered into JumpCloud.  
The correct string can also be seen in the metadata xml file:



3. Input the **Service Provider Attribute Name** information from the JumpCloud configuration screen into the corresponding fields in the FileCloud **Settings > SSO** tab.  
Copy these values from JumpCloud:

**Attributes**

If attributes are required by this Service Provider for SSO authentication, they are not editable. Additional attributes may be included in assertions, although support for each attribute will vary for each Service Provider.

USER ATTRIBUTE MAPPING: ⓘ	
Service Provider Attribute Name	JumpCloud Attribute Name
givenName	firstname
sn	lastname
email	email
uid	username

Enter them into the corresponding settings in FileCloud on the **Settings > SSO** tab.

4. On the server, open the XML file that contains the metadata you exported from JumpCloud. Copy the metadata in the file and paste it into the **IdP Metadata** field in FileCloud.

## SSO

[Reset to defaults](#)

Default SSO type SAML

### SAML Settings

2

IdP endpoint URL or entity ID\* FileCloud\_TopSales24

IdP username parameter\* uid

IdP email parameter\* email

IdP given name (first name) parameter\* 3 givenName

IdP surname (last name) parameter\* sn

IdP log out URL (optional)

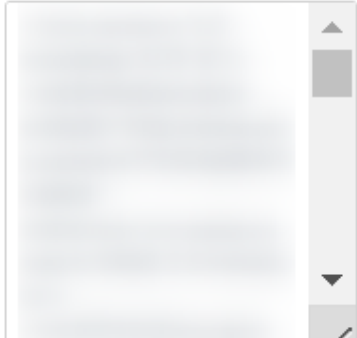
URL to call to log out of identity provider

Limit log in to IdP group (optional)

Specify the identity provider group that users must belong to in order to log in.  
Note: Groups that a user belongs to must be passed from IdP in 'memberof' attribute.

admin

IdP Metadata\* 4



- Fill in the other settings on the page as shown at [SAML Single Sign-On Support](#) (see page 246).
- Click **Save** and minimize the browser.

Now you can start using single sign-on with JumpCloud from FileCloud.

## Integrate Okta with FileCloud

To integrate with the Okta browser plugin, please see [Integrate with Okta using browser plugin](#) (see page 311).

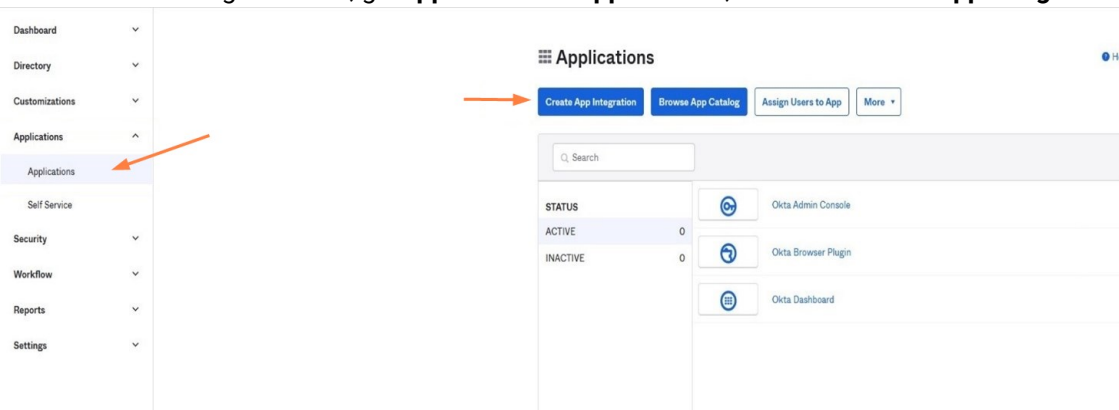


Before completing the following procedures, configure Apache Web Server. See [SSO Configuration Step 1](#) (see page 246) on the page [SAML Single Sign-On Support](#) (see page 246) for configuration instructions.

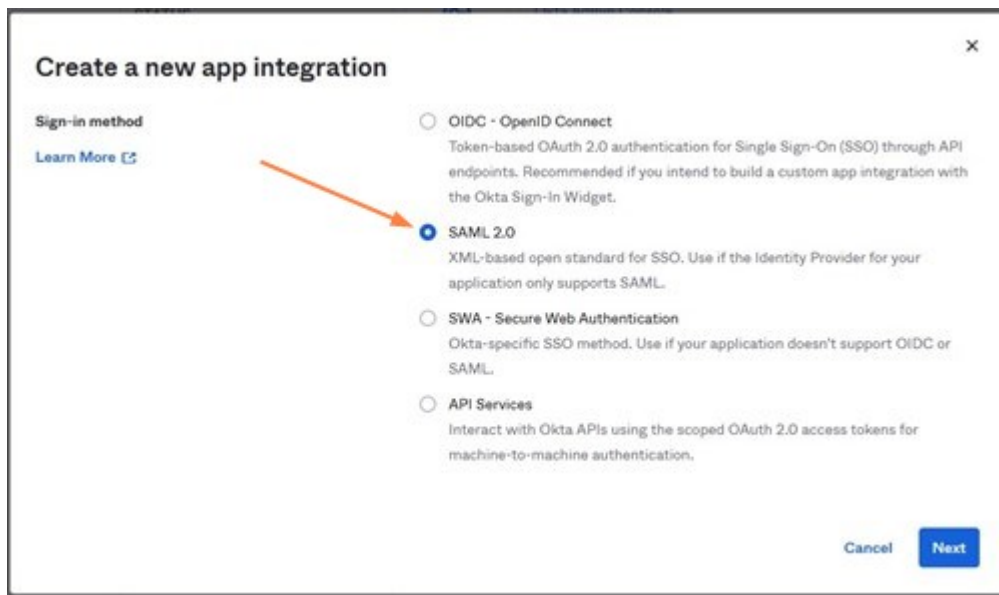
When FileCloud is integrated with Okta, Okta is configured as an Identity Provider (IdP) and FileCloud acts as the Service Provider (SP).

### To configure FileCloud with Okta:

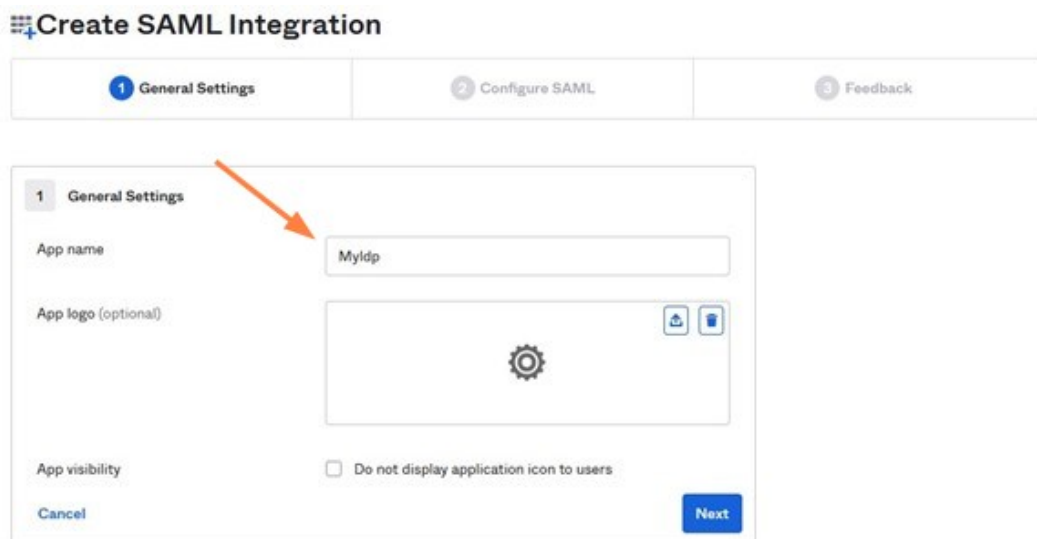
1. Log in to your Okta-issued URL, which has the format: <https://yourdomain-admin.okta.com/admin/dashboard>
2. After successful login to Okta, go **Applications > Applications**, and click **Create App Integration**.



3. In the **Create a new app integration** screen, select **SAML 2.0**, and click **Next**.



4. In the **General Settings** tab of the **Create SAML Integration** screen, enter a name for **App name**, and click **Next**.



5. In the **SAML Settings** screen, set the values as follows:

- Set **Single sign on URL** to the FileCloud assertion URL **http://<your domain>/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/saml2-acs.php/default-sp**
- Set **Audience URI (SP Entity ID)** to **http://<your domain>/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/metadata.php/default-sp**
- Set **Default Relay State** to **http://<your domain>/auth/samlssso.php**
- Under **Attribute Statements**, the attribute names must match the names set in the FileCloud admin portal in **Settings > SSO** for **Idp Username Parameter**, **Idp Email Parameter**, **Idp Given Name Parameter**, and **IDP Surname Parameter**. Set the **Values** for the **Attribute Statements** to the values shown in the screenshot.

Okta

FileCloud

A

SAML Settings

General

Single sign on URL

http://[redacted]/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/saml

☒ Use this for Recipient URL and Destination URL

☐ Allow this app to request other SSO URLs

Audience URI (SP Entity ID)

http://[redacted]/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/metadata

Default RelayState

http://[redacted]/auth/samlso.php

If no value is set, a blank RelayState is sent

Name ID format

Unspecified

Application username

Okta username

Update application username on

Create and update

Show Advanced Settings

Attribute Statements (optional)

LEARN MORE

Name	Name format (optional)	Value
givenName	Unspecified	user.firstName
sn	Unspecified	user.lastName
email	Unspecified	user.email
uid	Unspecified	substringBefore(user.email,"@")

Add Another

Group Attribute Statements (optional)

Name	Name format (optional)	Filter
	Unspecified	Starts with

Add Another

SSO

Reset to defaults

Default SSO type

SAML

SAML Settings

IdP endpoint URL or entity ID\*

http://www.okta.com/exo

IdP username parameter\*

uid

IdP email parameter\*

mail

IdP given name (first name) parameter\*

giveName

IdP surname (last name) parameter\*

sn

Enter these values into the Attribute Statements

6. Click the **Feedback** tab of the **Create SAML Integration** screen, then select **I'm an Okta customer adding an internal app**, and click **Finish**.

### Create SAML Integration

1 General Settings
2 Configure SAML
3 Feedback

3 Help Okta Support understand how you configured this application

Are you a customer or partner?

☒ I'm an Okta customer adding an internal app  
☐ I'm a software vendor. I'd like to integrate my app with Okta

The optional questions below assist Okta Support in understanding your app integration.

App type

☒ This is an internal app that we have created

Previous Finish

**Why are you asking me this?**

This form provides Okta Support with useful background information about your app. Thank you for your help—we appreciate it.

- Go to the **Sign On** tab, and click **View Setup Instructions** to view FileCloud SSO configuration details .

General
Sign On
Import
Assignments

### Settings

Edit

#### Sign on methods

The sign-on method determines how a user signs into and manages their credentials for an application. Some sign-on methods require additional configuration in the 3<sup>rd</sup> party application. Application username is determined by the user profile mapping. [Configure profile mapping](#)

SAML 2.0

Default Relay State http://filecloudsrv/auth/samlssso.php

SAML 2.0 is not configured until you complete the setup instructions.

View Setup Instructions

Identity Provider metadata is available if this application supports dynamic configuration.

#### Credentials Details

Application username format Okta username

A screen with information similar to the first image in the table below opens.

- Use the details in this screen to configure the settings in the FileCloud admin portal's **Settings > SSO** screen and to create a **saml.crt** file.

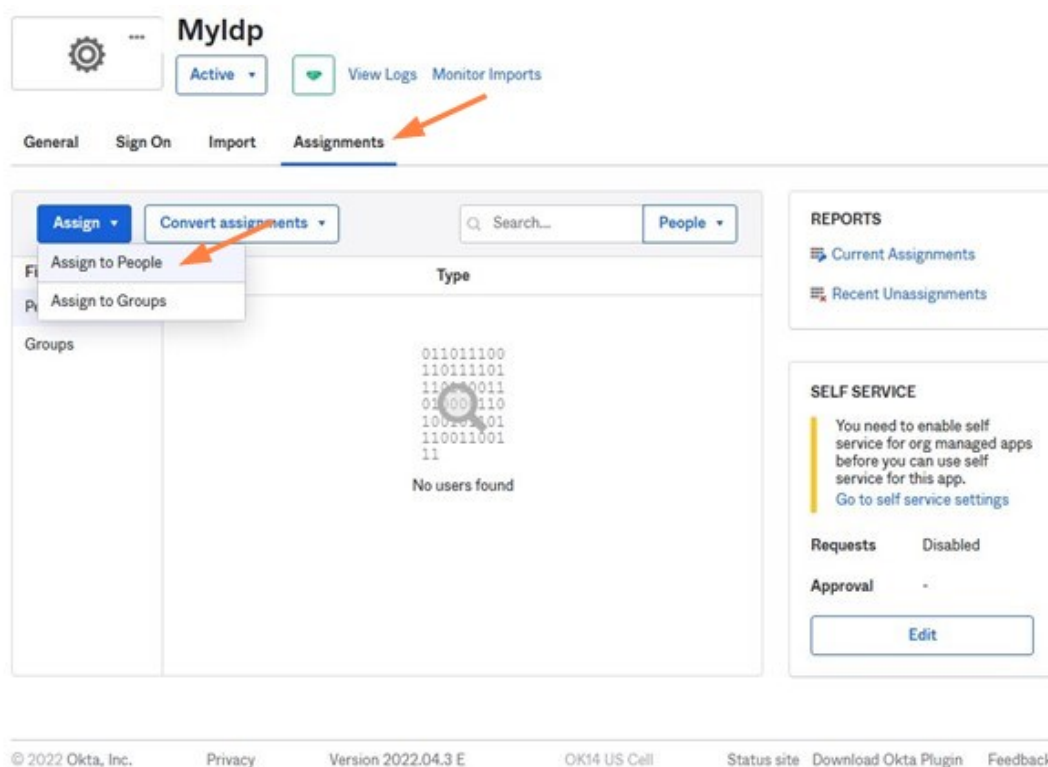
- a. Using the **IDP Metadata** text under **Optional**:
  - (1) Copy the **entityID** field from the text box into **Idp Endpoint URL or EntityID** in FileCloud admin UI interface under **Settings > SSO**.
  - (2) Confirm that the text in the **IDP Metadata** box is the same as the text in **Idp Metadata** in FileCloud admin UI interface under **Settings > SSO**.
- b. Click **Download certificate**, then copy the certificate file and rename it to **saml.crt**.

The **saml.crt** file must be copied into the correct location in the FileCloud root folder for your integration to work. Contact FileCloud support and request that your **saml.crt** file be copied into your Simple SAML certificate folder.

[illegible]

Now assign the Okta FileCloud integration to users so they can log in with Okta.

- Click the **Assignments** tab in Okta.
- In the **Assign** drop-down list, choose **Assign to People**.



A list of users who have both Okta and FileCloud accounts opens.

11. Select users from the list to allow them to sign in to FileCloud using Okta.

Once the application is created and FileCloud is configured you can start using single sign-on with Okta from FileCloud.

### Log in to FileCloud using Single Sign-on with Okta


Users can sign in to the user portal or admin portal with SSO using Okta.

1. In the FileCloud login screen, the user chooses **Log in with SSO**.

Login

---


Account Password



---


[Forgot Password](#)


Or use your SSO




If the user is already logged in to Okta, they are automatically logged in to FileCloud.

If the user not logged in to Okta, they are first redirected to the Okta sign in page, and after signing in to Okta, they are immediately redirected to FileCloud and logged in.


Connecting to 

Sign-in with your  account to access MyIdp



Sign In

Username

nathan. 

☐ Keep me signed in

Next

Help

### Integrate with Okta using browser plugin



Before completing the following procedures, configure Apache Web Server. See [SSO Configuration Step 1](#) (see page 246) on the page [SAML Single Sign-On Support](#) (see page 246) for configuration instructions.

The Okta plugin for browsers works by storing FileCloud user credentials in a web application that you add to Okta. After a user chooses to log in with Okta, the credentials are entered in the FileCloud page and log in proceeds automatically.

The Okta plugin works with default FileCloud login, not SSO. Do not configure SSO settings in FileCloud.

#### Procedure:

**Note:** You must have an Okta account before completing these steps.

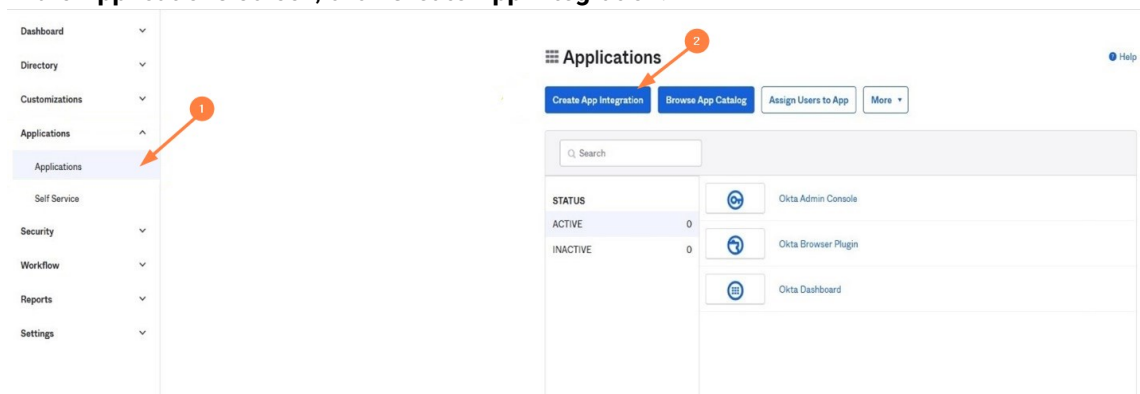
1. Set up the FileCloud application in the Okta admin panel
2. Assign the FileCloud application to users
3. Install the plugin on the user browser.
4. User logs in to FileCloud using the plugin.



The plugin supports different browsers. Setup and tests for this guide use Google Chrome.

#### Set up the FileCloud application in Okta admin panel

1. Log in as Admin in Okta.
2. In the navigation panel, click **Applications > Applications**.
3. In the **Applications** screen, click **Create App Integration**.



4. In the **Create a new app integration** screen, choose **SWA - Secure Web Authentication**, and click **Next**.

**Create a new app integration**

Sign-in method  
[Learn More](#)

- ☐ **OIDC - OpenID Connect**  
Token-based OAuth 2.0 authentication for Single Sign-On (SSO) through API endpoints. Recommended if you intend to build a custom app integration with the Okta Sign-In Widget.
- ☐ **SAML 2.0**  
XML-based open standard for SSO. Use if the Identity Provider for your application only supports SAML.
- ☒ **SWA - Secure Web Authentication**  
Okta-specific SSO method. Use if your application doesn't support OIDC or SAML.
- ☐ **API Services**  
Interact with Okta APIs using the scoped OAuth 2.0 access tokens for machine-to-machine authentication.

Cancel **Next**

5. Fill in the **Create SWA Integration** screen as shown in the following screenshot, and click **Finish**. In **App's login page URL**, enter the login page URL for the corresponding FileCloud installation.

## Create SWA Integration


1
General App Settings

Create

App name
FileCloud

App's login page URL
http://127.0.0.1/ui/core/index.html

Show Advanced Settings

App logo (optional)


App visibility
☐ Do not display application icon to users

App type
☐ This is an internal application that we created

2
How will your users sign in?

Create

Who sets the credentials?
User sets username and pas...

Application username
(None)

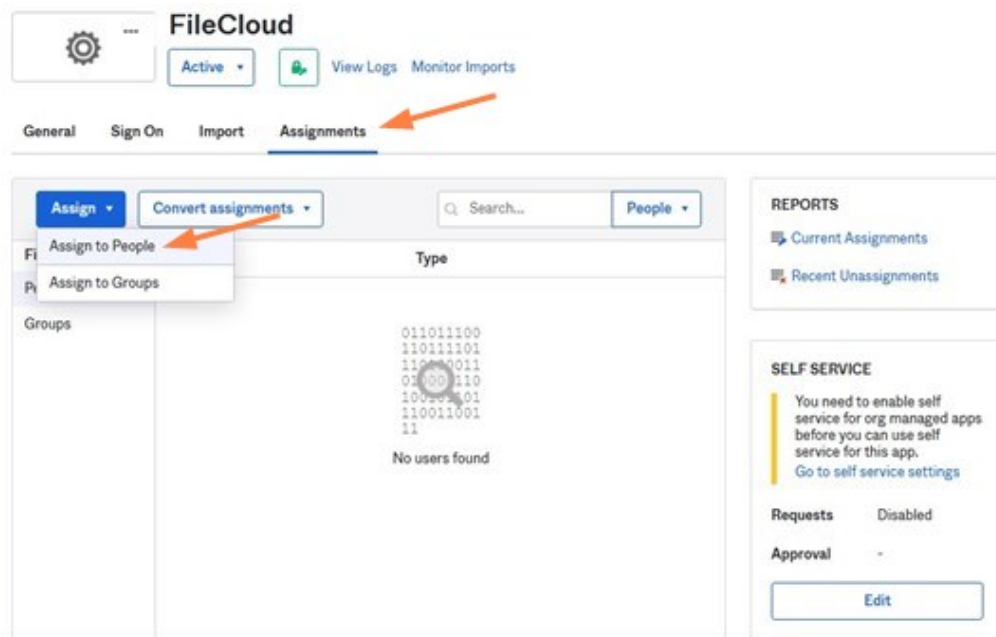
Update application username on
Create and update

Cancel
Finish

### Assign application to users

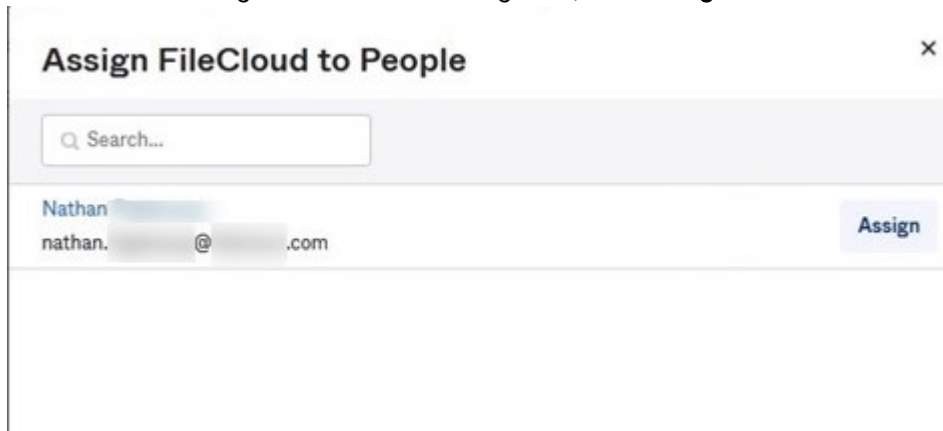
Now assign the Okta FileCloud integration to users so they can log in with Okta.

1. Click the **Assignments** tab in Okta.
2. In the **Assign** drop-down list, choose **Assign to People**.

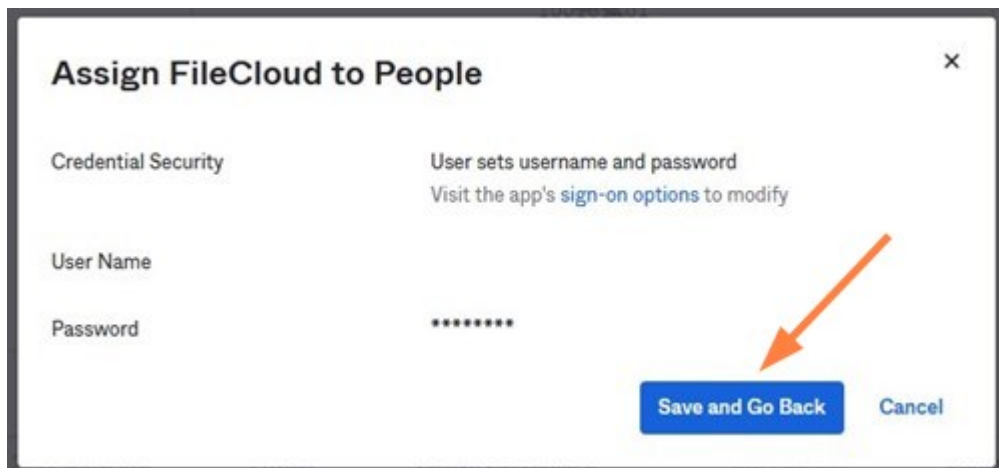


A list of users who have both Okta and FileCloud accounts opens.

3. To allow users to sign in to FileCloud using Okta, click **Assign** in the row with their email.



4. Enter a **User Name** and **Password** for the user, then click **Save and Go Back**.



**Assign FileCloud to People** [X]

**Credential Security**      User sets username and password  
Visit the app's [sign-on options](#) to modify

User Name

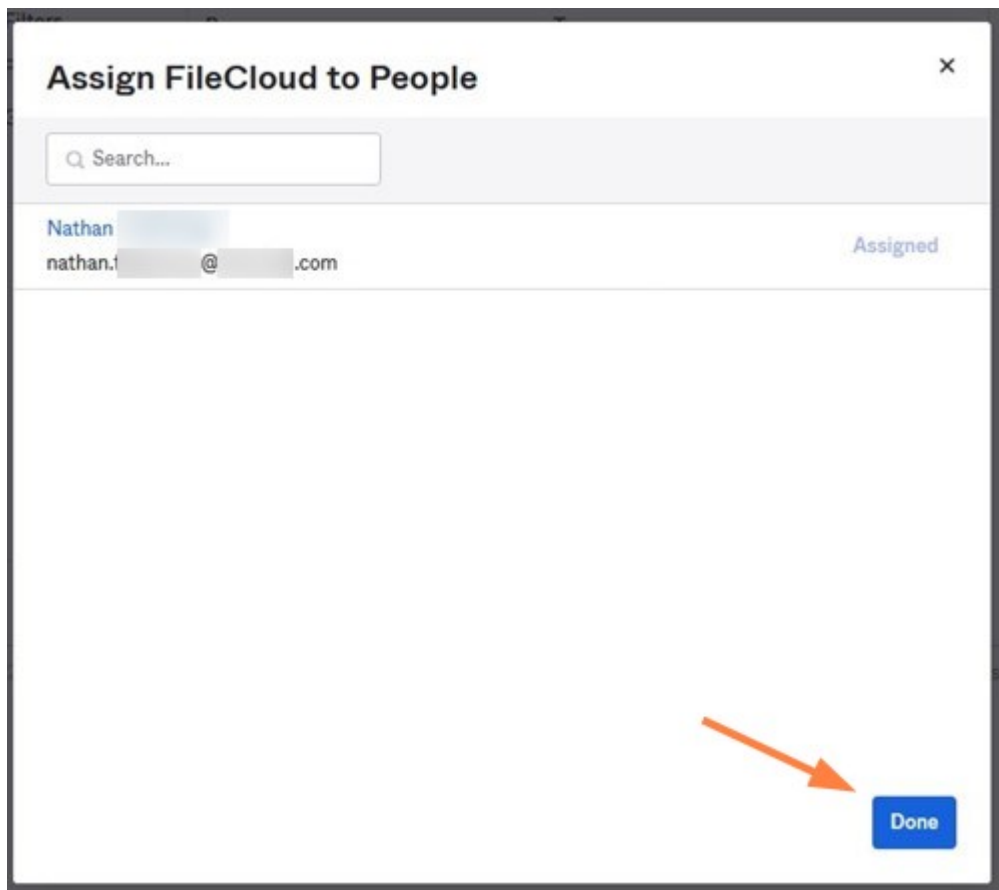
Password      .....

**Save and Go Back**      Cancel

An orange arrow points to the 'Save and Go Back' button.

ck

5. Click **Done**.



**Assign FileCloud to People** [X]

Search...

Nathan [redacted]  
nathan.t[redacted]@[redacted].com      Assigned

**Done**

An orange arrow points to the 'Done' button.

6. Repeat this process for all users you want to assign to the integration.

## Install the Plugin in the Browser


Information on plugin installation is available here:

[https://help.Okta.com/en/prod/Content/Topics/Apps/Apps\\_Browser\\_Plugin.htm](https://help.Okta.com/en/prod/Content/Topics/Apps/Apps_Browser_Plugin.htm)<sup>19</sup>

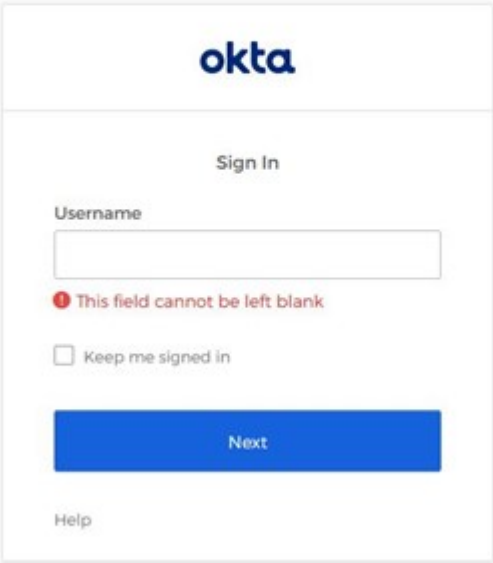
## Users log in to FileCloud using the plugin

Users can sign in to the user portal or admin portal with SSO using the Okta plugin..

1. In a browser where the Okta Plugin is installed, the user clicks the Okta plugin icon, and selects the FileCloud application.
2. If the user is not already logged in to Okta, they are prompted to log in.

Connecting to 

Sign-in with your filecloud-trial-4839737 account to access  
Okta Dashboard



The image shows a screenshot of an Okta 'Sign In' dialog box. At the top is the 'okta' logo. Below it is the text 'Sign In'. There is a 'Username' label above a text input field. Below the input field is a red error message: 'This field cannot be left blank'. Below the error message is a checkbox labeled 'Keep me signed in'. At the bottom of the dialog is a large blue button labeled 'Next'. Below the button is a small link labeled 'Help'.

3. In the plugin **Setup access** dialog box, the user enters their FileCloud **Username** and **Password**. In the future, when they open the plugin, they will not be prompted to enter credentials again.

<sup>19</sup>. [https://help.okta.com/en/prod/Content/Topics/Apps/Apps\\_Browser\\_Plugin.htm](https://help.okta.com/en/prod/Content/Topics/Apps/Apps_Browser_Plugin.htm)

< Back to My Apps

**Setup access to your FileCloud account in Okta**

Enter your username and password for FileCloud. If you don't have one, please create an account on FileCloud or contact your administrator.

**Username**

**Password**

[Sign in](#)

- The browser redirects the user to the FileCloud login page in the Okta Admin Panel. The login screen with credentials filled in may appear first, and after a few seconds the FileCloud user portal should open (the user does not need to click **Login**).



**Login** [+ New Account](#)

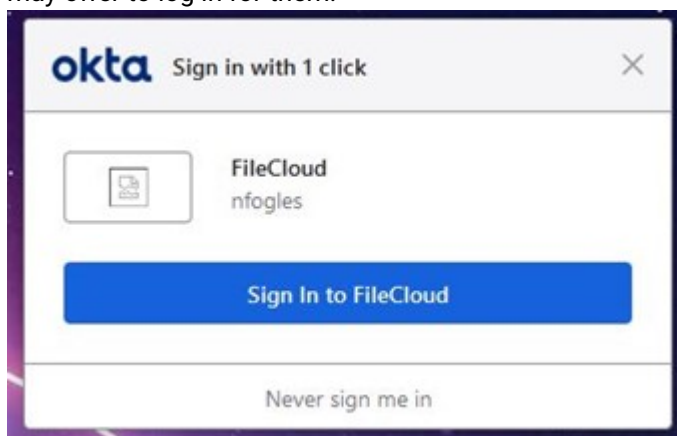
---

**Account** **Password**

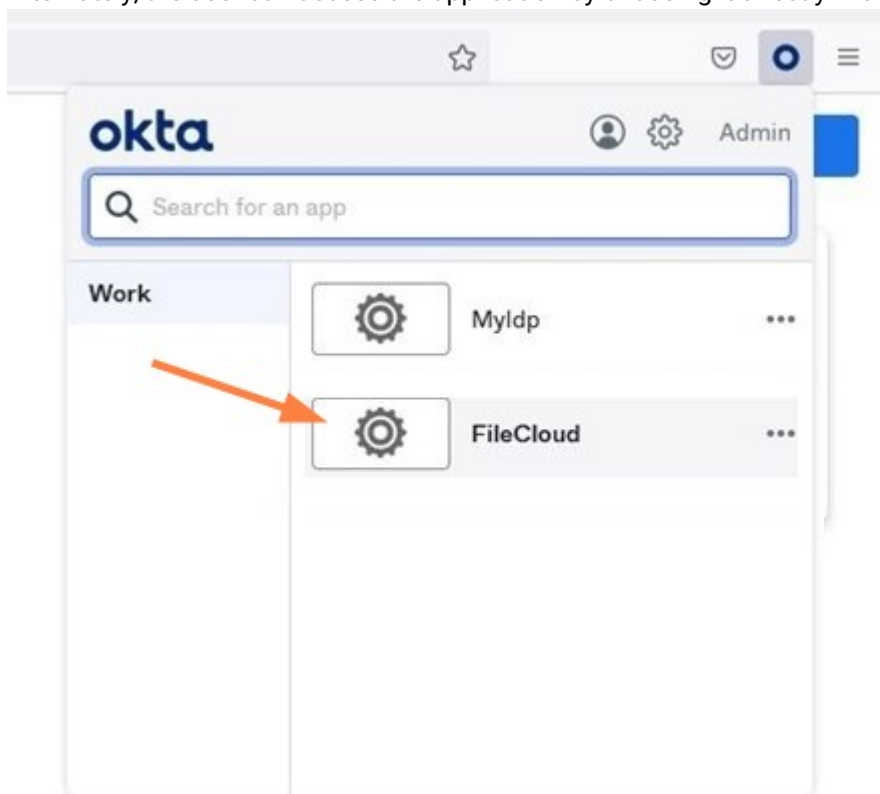
---

[> Forgot Password](#) [Login](#)

Depending on the browser, when the user accesses the FileCloud login page again, the plugin may offer to log in for them:



Alternately, the user can access the application by choosing it directly in the plugin:



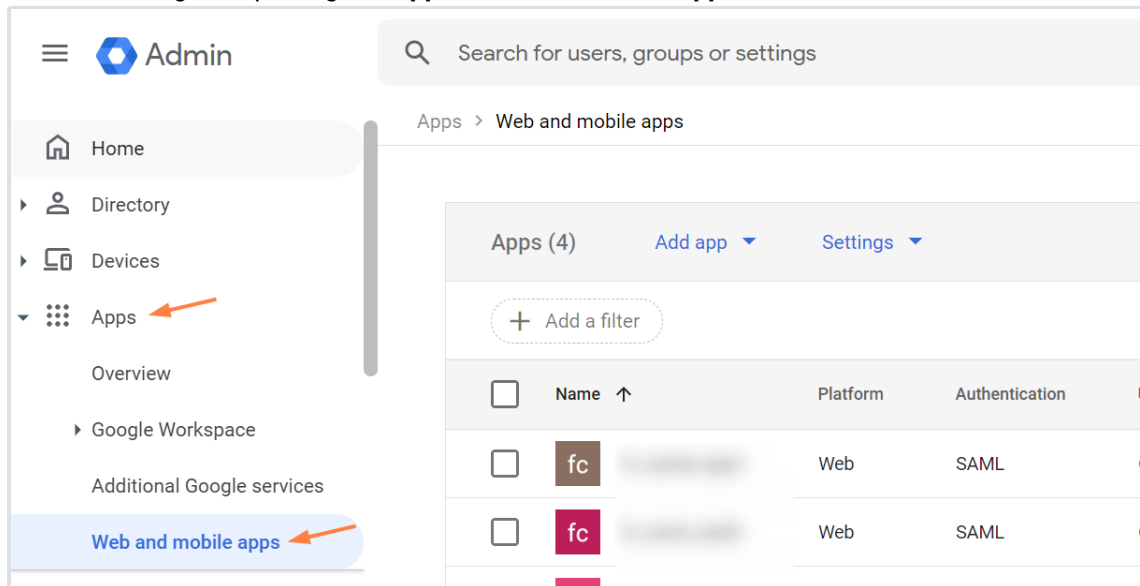
## Integrate Google with FileCloud

**✗** Before completing the following procedures, configure Apache Web Server. See [SSO Configuration Step 1](#) (see page 246) on the page [SAML Single Sign-On Support](#) (see page 246) for configuration instructions.

As an administrator you can integrate Google and FileCloud so that your Google users can access their FileCloud account without having to enter their credentials a second time.

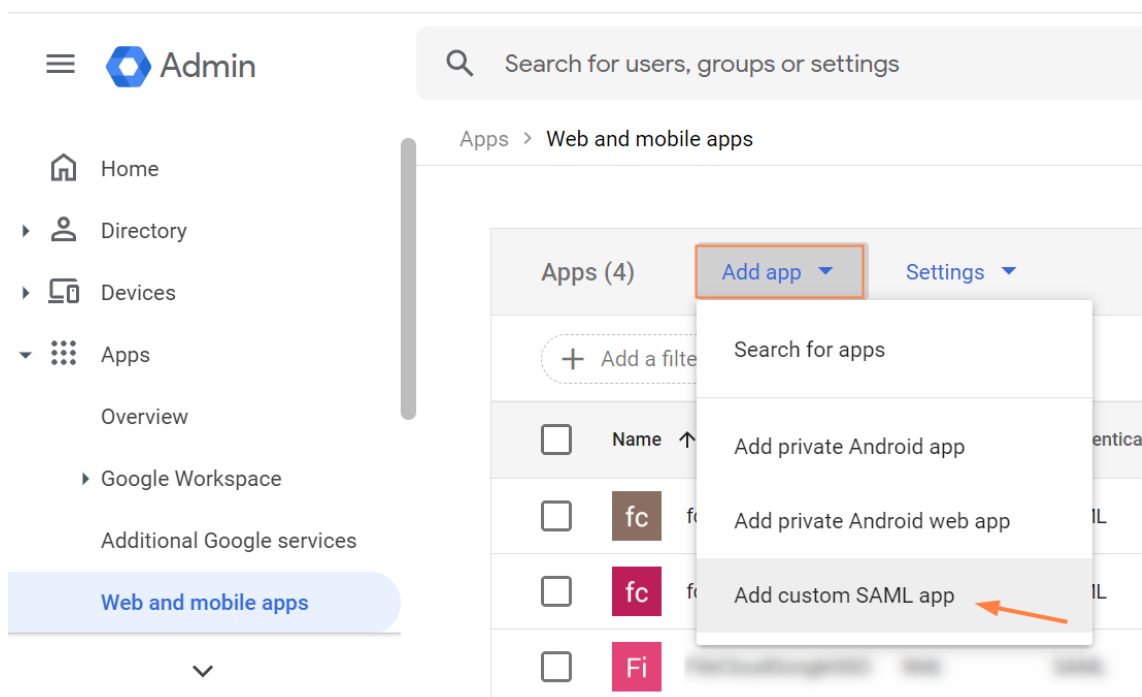
When FileCloud is integrated with Google, Google is configured as an Identity Provider (IdP) and FileCloud acts as the Service Provider (SP).

1. Log in to the Google Workspace Admin Center at [admin.google.com](http://admin.google.com)<sup>20</sup>.
2. In the left navigation pane, go to **Apps > Web and mobile apps**.



3. Click **Add app** and choose **Add custom SAML app**.

<sup>20</sup>. <http://admin.google.com>



4. Enter an **App name**, and click **CONTINUE**.

The screenshot shows the 'Add custom SAML app' form. At the top is a blue header with a close button and the title 'Add custom SAML app'. Below is a progress bar with four steps: 1. App details (active), 2. Google Identity Provider details, 3. Service provider details, and 4. Attribute mapping. The main form area has three sections: 'App details' with a text input for 'App name' containing 'FileCloudGoogleIntegration' (indicated by an orange arrow), 'Description' with a text input, and 'App icon' with a blue circle and a camera icon. At the bottom right are three buttons: 'File Explorer', 'CANCEL', and 'CONTINUE' (indicated by an orange arrow).

5. Click **CONTINUE**.

✕ Add custom SAML app

✓ App details — 2 Google Identity Provider detail: — 3 Service provider details — 4 Attribute mapping

To configure single sign-on (SSO) for SAML apps, follow your service provider's instructions. [Learn more](#)

**Option 1: Download IdP metadata**

[DOWNLOAD METADATA](#)

OR

**Option 2: Copy the SSO URL, entity ID, and certificate**

SSO URL

Entity ID

Certificate

Google\_2029-8-4-131312\_SAML2\_0  
Expires Aug 4, 2029

-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----

SHA-256 fingerprint

BACK CANCEL **CONTINUE**

6. Fill in the fields as follows, replacing **your-domain.com**<sup>21</sup> with your FileCloud domain. Click **CONTINUE**.

ACS URL: <https://your-domain/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/saml2-acs.php/default-sp>

Entity ID: <https://your-domain/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/metadata.php/default-sp>

Start URL: <https://your-domain/>

Name ID Format: **TRANSIENT**

NameID: **Basic Information > Primary Email**

21. <http://your-domain.com>

×

Add custom SAML app

✓ App details

✓ Google Identity Provider details

3 Service provider details

4 Attribute mapping

Service provider details

To configure single sign on, add service provider details such as ACS URL and entity ID. [Learn more](#)

ACS URL

https://your-domain.com/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/saml2-acis.php/default-sp

Entity ID

https://your-domain.com/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/metadata.php/default-sp

Start URL (optional)

https://your-domain.com/

☐ Signed response

Name ID

Defines the naming format supported by the identity provider. [Learn more](#)

Name ID format

TRANSIENT

Name ID

Basic Information > Primary email

BACK

CANCEL

CONTINUE

7. Click **ADD MAPPING**.

×

Add custom SAML app

✓ App details

—

✓ Google Identity Provider detail:

—

✓ Service provider details

—

4 Attribute mapping

Attributes

Add and select user fields in Google Directory, then map them to service provider attributes. Attributes marked with \* are mandatory. [Learn more](#)

Google Directory attributes

App attributes

ADD MAPPING

Group membership (optional)

Group membership information can be sent in the SAML response if the user belongs to any of the groups you add here.

Google groups

App attribute

Search for a group → Groups

BACK

CANCEL

FINISH

8. Choose the **Google Directory attributes** below, and add the specific values shown to **App attributes**. Then click **FINISH**.

✕ Add custom SAML app

✓ App details — ✓ Google Identity Provider detail: — ✓ Service provider details — 4 Attribute mapping

**Attributes**

Add and select user fields in Google Directory, then map them to service provider attributes. Attributes marked with \* are mandatory. [Learn more](#)

Google Directory attributes		App attributes
Basic Information > First name	→	givenName ✕
Basic Information > Last name	→	sn ✕
Basic Information > Primary email	→	mail ✕

ADD MAPPING

**Group membership (optional)**

Group membership information can be sent in the SAML response if the user belongs to any of the groups you add here.

Google groups		App attribute
Search for a group	→	Groups

BACK CANCEL **FINISH**

You should see a screen similar to the following.

9. Click **DOWNLOAD METADATA**.

SAML

**Fi** FileCloudGoogleInt  
egration

TEST SAML LOGIN

DOWNLOAD METADATA

EDIT DETAILS

DELETE APP

**User access**

To make the managed app available to select users, choose a group or organizational unit. [Learn more](#)

[View details](#)

OFF for everyone

**Service provider details**

Certificate Google_2029-8-4-...SAML2_0 (Expires Aug 4, 2029)	ACS URL <a href="https://.../simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/saml2-acis.php/default-sp">https://.../simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/saml2-acis.php/default-sp</a>	Entity ID <a href="https://.../simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/metadata.php/default-sp">https://.../simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/metadata.php/default-sp</a>
--	--	--

**SAML attribute mapping**

Map Google directory user profile fields to SAML service provider attributes.

givenName Basic Information > First name	mail Basic Information > Primary email	sn Basic Information > Last name
---	---	-------------------------------------

10. In the **Download metadata** popup, click **DOWNLOAD METADATA**.

The file **GoogleIDPMetadata.xml** is automatically downloaded.

11. Click the copy icon next to **Entity ID**, and save it. You will need it to complete your configuration in FileCloud.

## Download metadata

To configure single sign-on (SSO) for SAML apps, follow your service provider's instructions. [Learn more](#)

**Option 1: Download IdP metadata**

[DOWNLOAD METADATA](#)

OR

**Option 2: Copy the SSO URL, entity ID, and certificate**

**SSO URL**

`https://accounts.google.com/o/saml2/idp?idpid=C019j`

**Entity ID**

`https://accounts.google.com/o/saml2?idpid=C019j`

**Certificate**

Google\_ \_SAML2\_0  
Expires Aug 4, 2029

-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----  
MIIDdDCCA/vaAwIBAgI/BAa/GAZEKkTMA0GCSCaGSsIb3DOEBCwUAMHsxFO

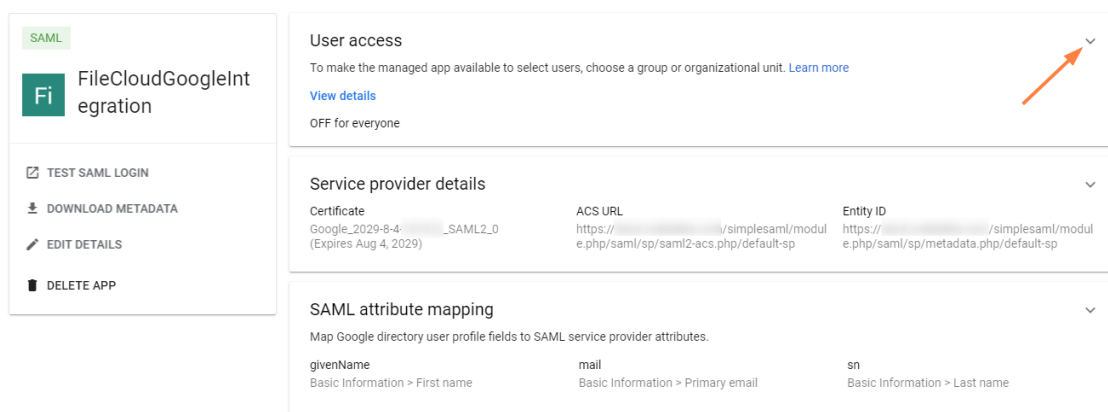
**SHA-256 fingerprint**

`5A:B6:88:58:8B:55:57:1A:0B:80:88:05:45:57:70:5C:45:55:8`

[CLOSE](#)

12. Click **CLOSE**.

13. Click the down arrow in the User access box.



**SAML**

**FileCloudGoogleIntegration**

TEST SAML LOGIN  
DOWNLOAD METADATA  
EDIT DETAILS  
DELETE APP

**User access**  
To make the managed app available to select users, choose a group or organizational unit. [Learn more](#)  
[View details](#)  
OFF for everyone

**Service provider details**

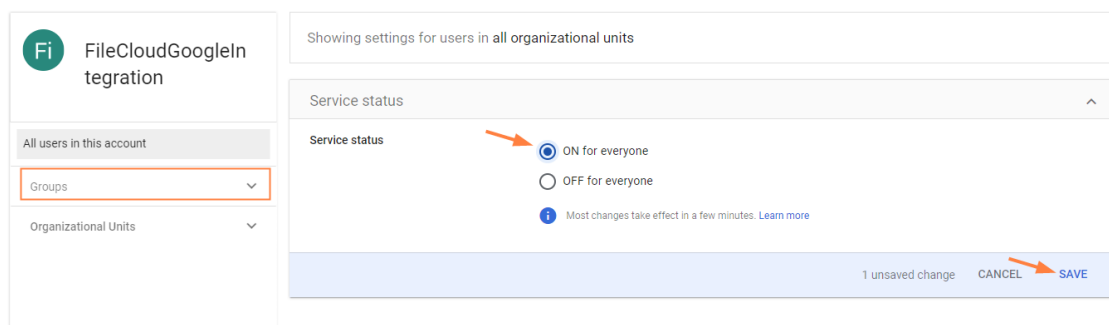
Certificate	ACS URL	Entity ID
Google_2029-8-4-..._SAML2_0 (Expires Aug 4, 2029)	https://.../simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/saml2-acs.php/default-sp	https://.../simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/metadata.php/default-sp

**SAML attribute mapping**  
Map Google directory user profile fields to SAML service provider attributes.

givenName	mail	sn
Basic Information > First name	Basic Information > Primary email	Basic Information > Last name

14. Select **ON for everyone**.

If you want to only enable this for certain groups, click the **Groups** down arrow and add the groups.



Showing settings for users in all organizational units

**Service status**

Service status

☒ ON for everyone  
☐ OFF for everyone  
Most changes take effect in a few minutes. [Learn more](#)

1 unsaved change CANCEL **SAVE**

15. Click **SAVE**.

## Configure Google SSO in the FileCloud admin portal

Now, add the values from your integration in the Google admin portal into the corresponding fields in FileCloud.

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **SSO** .  
The **SSO** page opens.
2. In **Default SSO Type**, select **SAML**.



**SSO**

Reset to defaults

Default SSO type

SAML

3. Fill in the settings under **SAML Settings**. The table below the image shows what to enter in each required IdP value.

## SSO

[↺ Reset to defaults](#)

Default SSO type

SAML

## SAML Settings

IdP endpoint URL or entity ID\*

<https://doi.org/10.1016/j.sbsbs.2019.05.001>

IdP username parameter\*

[mail](#)

IdP email parameter\*

[mail](#)

IdP given name (first name) parameter\*

givenName

IdP surname (last name) parameter\*

sn

IdP log out URL (optional)

URL to call to log out of identity provider

Limit log in to IdP group (optional)

Specify the identity provider group that users must belong to in order to log in.  
Note: Groups that a user belongs to must be passed from IdP in 'memberof' attribute.

IdP Metadata\*

IdP Metadata\*

```
<md:EntityDescriptor
xmlns:md="urn:oasis:nam
es:tc:SAML:2.0:metadata"
entityID="https://account
s.google.com/o/saml2?
```

Setting	Value
IdP endpoint URL or entity ID	Enter the value of Entity ID from your Google/FileCloud app in the Google admin portal, See the image below.

Setting	Value
IdP username parameter	mail
IdP email parameter	mail
IdP given name (first name) parameter	givenName
IdP surname (last name) parameter	sn
IdP log out URL	See <a href="#">SAML Single Sign-On Support</a> (see page 246)
Limit log in to IdP group	See <a href="#">SAML Single Sign-On Support</a> (see page 246)
IdP Metadata	Enter the content of the metadata file you downloaded from your Google/ FileCloud app in the Google admin portal. It should have been downloaded as GoogleIdPMetadata.xml.

**SAML**

**FileCloudGoogleInteigration**

**IDP metadata (contents you downloaded as GoogleIdPMetadata.xml)**

**DOWNLOAD METADATA**

**EDIT DETAILS**

**DELETE APP**

**User access**

To make the managed app available to select users, choose a group or organizational unit. [Learn more](#)

[View details](#)

OFF for everyone

**Service provider details**

**Certificate**  
Google\_2029-8-4-...\_SAML2\_0  
(Expires Aug 4, 2029)

**ACS URL**  
<https://.../simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/saml2-acs.php/default-sp>

**Entity ID**  
<https://.../simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/metadata.php/default-sp>

**SAML attribute mapping**

Map Google directory user profile fields to SAML service provider attributes.


<b>givenName</b> Basic Information > First name	<b>mail</b> Basic Information > Primary email	<b>sn</b> Basic Information > Last name
--	--	--

4. For help filling the remaining settings on the page, see Step 4 on page [SAML Single Sign-On Support](#)<sup>22</sup>.


22. <https://www.filecloud.com/supportdocs/spaces/FCDOC/pages/255428234/.SAML+Single+Sign-On+Support+v23.242>

- To display the SSO option on the user login page, see Step 6 on page [SAML Single Sign-On Support](#) (see page 246)

## Integrate OneLogin with FileCloud

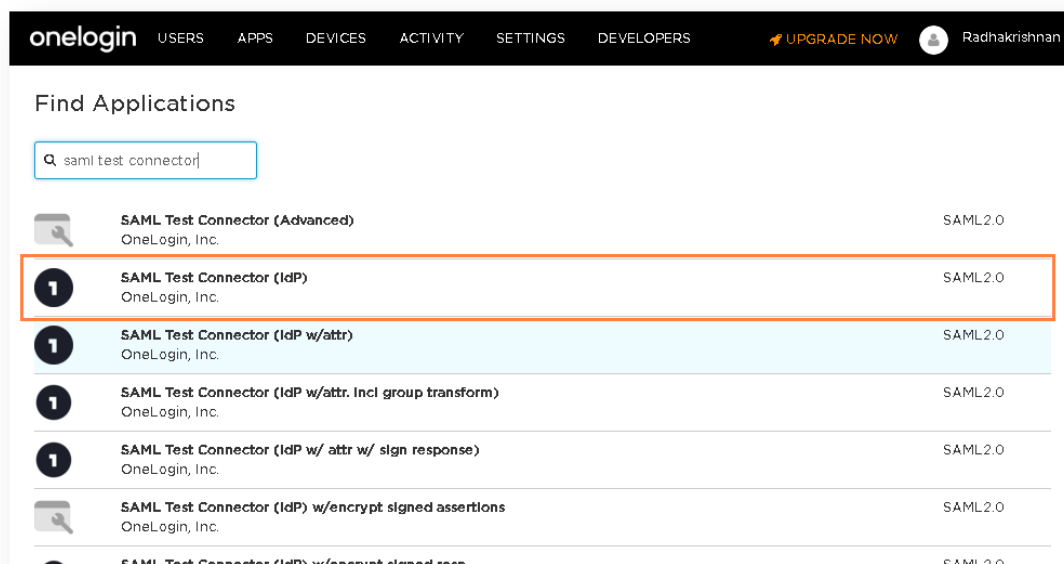
 Before completing the following procedures, configure Apache Web Server. See [SSO Configuration Step 1](#) (see page 246) on the page [SAML Single Sign-On Support](#) (see page 246) for configuration instructions.

This article describes how to integrate OneLogin as an SSO provider with FileCloud.

 **Pre-requisite:** The mcrypt module must be installed on FileCloud. In Windows, it should be installed by default. In Linux, if mcrypt is not installed, it must be installed

### OneLogin: Create App Connector

- Login into the OneLogin web UI.
- Click **Apps > Add Apps**.
- Search for **SAML Test Connector** and select **SAML Test Connector (IdP)**.



- In the add screen, enter a name for the connector. For example, something like **FileCloud Connector**.
- Click **Save**.

- Open the created connector and click the **Configuration** tab.
- Fill the following values into the configuration tab. Replace **dev.company.com** with your FileCloud site.

Configuration	Value
RelayState	<a href="https://dev.company.com/auth/samlso.php">https://dev.company.com/auth/samlso.php</a>
Audience	<a href="https://dev.company.com/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/metadata.php/default-sp">https://dev.company.com/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/metadata.php/default-sp</a>
Recipient	<a href="https://dev.company.com/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/saml2-ac.php/default-sp">https://dev.company.com/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/saml2-ac.php/default-sp</a>
ACS (Consumer) URL Validator*	<a href="https://dev.company.com/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/saml2-ac.php/default-sp">https://dev.company.com/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/saml2-ac.php/default-sp</a>
ACS (Consumer) URL*	<a href="https://dev.company.com/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/saml2-ac.php/default-sp">https://dev.company.com/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/saml2-ac.php/default-sp</a>

## ← SAML Test Connector (IdP)

MORE ACTIONS

SAVE

Info

**Configuration**

Parameters

Rules

SSO

Access

Users

Privileges

## Application Details

RelayState

<https://dev.company.com/auth/samlso.php>

Audience

<https://dev.company.com/simplesaml/module>

Recipient

<https://dev.company.com/simplesaml/module>

ACS (Consumer) URL Validator\*

<https://dev.company.com/simplesaml/module>

\*Required. Regular expression - Validates the ACS URL when initiated by an AuthnRequest

ACS (Consumer) URL\*

<https://dev.company.com/simplesaml/module>

\*Required

Single Logout URL

- Once the configuration tab is completed, click the **Parameters** tab.
- Add the following four parameters:

Field name	Flags	Value
givenName	Include in SAML assertion	F <sup>23</sup> irst Name
mail	Include in SAML assertion	E <sup>24</sup> mail
sn	Include in SAML assertion	L <sup>25</sup> ast Name
uid	Include in SAML assertion	U <sup>26</sup> sername

### New Field

Field name

givenName

This is the name of the field in the application's API

---

Flags

☒
☐

Include in SAML assertion

Multi-value parameter

CANCEL
SAVE

23. <https://dev.company.com/auth/samlssso.php>

24. <https://dev.company.com/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/metadata.php/default-sp>

25. <https://dev.company.com/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/saml2-acss.php/default-sp>

26. <https://dev.company.com/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/saml2-acss.php/default-sp>

USERSAPPSDEVICESACTIVITYSETTINGSDEVELOPERS

← SAML Test Connector (IdP)

MORE ACTIONS

SAVE

InfoConfigurationParametersRulesSSOAccessUsersPrivileges

Credentials are

☒ Configured by admin

☐ Configured by admins and shared by all users

SAML Test Connector (IdP) Field	Value	Add parameter
NameID (fka Email)	Email	
givenName	First Name	custom parameter
mail	Email	custom parameter
sn	Last Name	custom parameter
uid	Username	custom parameter

10. Save these changes. Then click the **SSO** tab.
11. In the **SSO** tab, copy and save **Issuer URL**.
12. Click **More Actions > SAML Metadata** and download the metadata file.

USERSAPPSDEVICESACTIVITYSETTINGSDEVELOPERS

← SAML Test Connector (IdP)

MORE ACTIONS

SAVE

InfoConfigurationParametersRulesSSOAccessUsers

Enable SAML2.0

Sign on method

SAML2.0

X.509 Certificate

Standard Strength Certificate (2048-bit)

Change | View Details

SAML Signature Algorithm

SHA-1

Issuer URL

https://app.onelogin.com/saml/metadata/4d597caf-0b30-4d1

SAML 2.0 Endpoint (HTTP)

https://codelathe-dev.onelogin.com/trust/saml2/http-post/ss

SLO Endpoint (HTTP)

https://codelathe-dev.onelogin.com/trust/saml2/http-redirect

Vendor Homepage

Reapply entitlement mappings

SAML Metadata

Delete

13. Finally, add users to the newly created FileCloud Connector either individually or as group.

## Integrate FileCloud with OneLogin SSO

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **SSO**.  
The **SSO** page opens.
2. In **Default SSO Type** choose **SSO**.
3. Use the following table to fill in the SAML configuration.

SAML Settings	Value
IdP Endpoint URL	<b>Issuer URL</b> saved in the previous section from OneLogin SSO tab
IdP Username Parameter	uid
IdP Email Parameter	mail
IdP Given Parameter	givenName
IdP Surname Parameter	sn
IdP Metadata	Copy and the paste the contents of SAML metadata from OneLogin.

## SSO

[Reset to defaults](#)

Default SSO type

SAML

## SAML Settings

IdP endpoint URL or entity ID\*

<https://app.onelogin.com/saml/me>

IdP username parameter\*

uid

IdP email parameter\*

email

IdP given name (first name) parameter\*

givenName

IdP surname (last name) parameter\*

sn

IdP log out URL (optional)

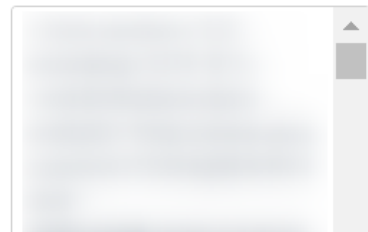
URL to call to log out of identity provider

Limit log in to IdP group (optional)

Specify the identity provider group that users must belong to in order to log in.  
 Note: Groups that a user belongs to must be passed from IdP in 'memberof' attribute.

admin

IdP Metadata\*



4. Save the changes.

## Integrate ADSelfService Plus with FileCloud

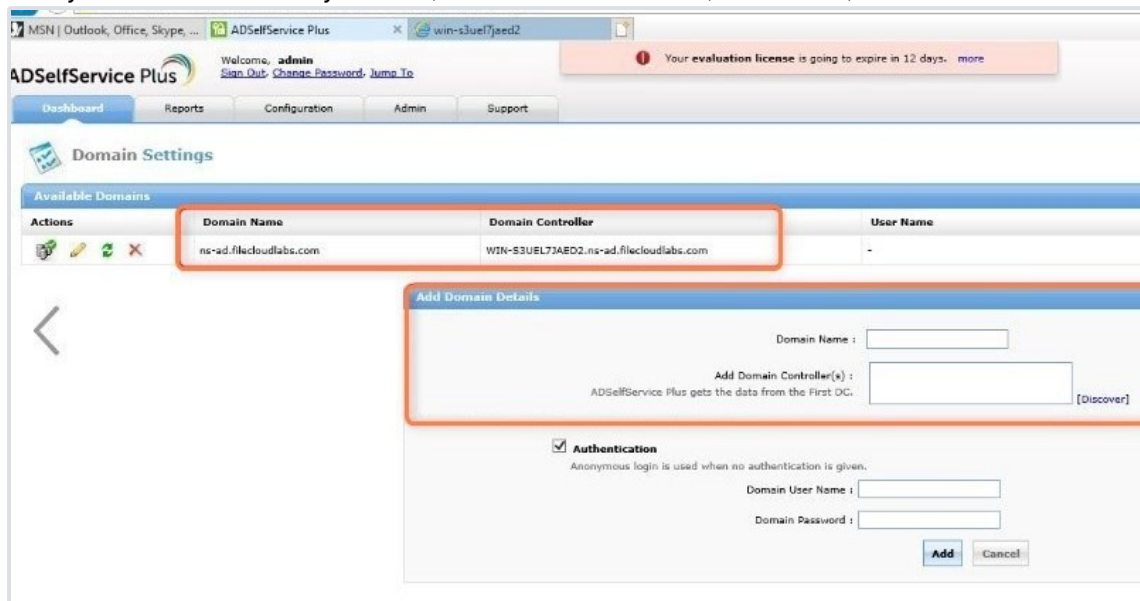
## Integrate ADSelfService Plus with SimpleSAML SSO



Before completing the following procedures, configure Apache Web Server. See [SSO Configuration Step 1](#) (see page 246) on the page [SAML Single Sign-On Support](#) (see page 246) for configuration instructions.

## Step 1: Install ADSelfService Plus and configure it to integrate with SimpleSAML SSO in FileCloud

1. [Install ADSelfService Plus](#)<sup>27</sup>.
2. Open the ADSelfService admin portal. Your URL should be similar to <http://win-s3uexxjaed2:8888/authorization.do><sup>28</sup>.  
The **Dashboard** tab should be selected, and the server name should be similar to: [win-s3uexxjaed2](http://win-s3uexxjaed2)<sup>29</sup>
3. If AD is already installed, **Domain Name** and **Domain Controller** are automatically detected and entered for you.  
If they are not automatically entered, in **Add Domain Details**, enter them, and click **Add**.

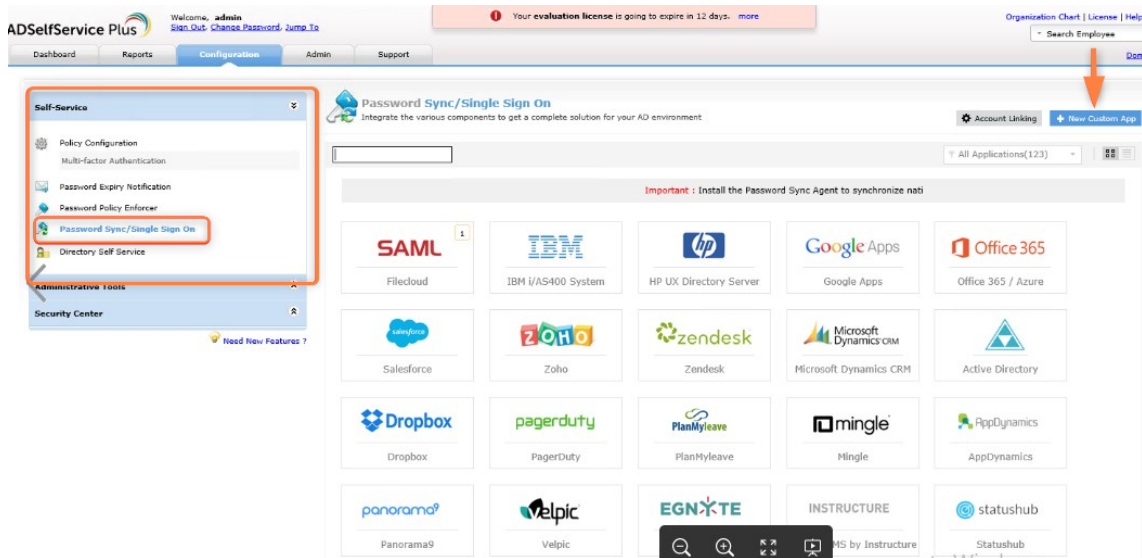


4. Click the **Configuration** tab.

27. <https://www.manageengine.com/products/self-service-password/download.html>

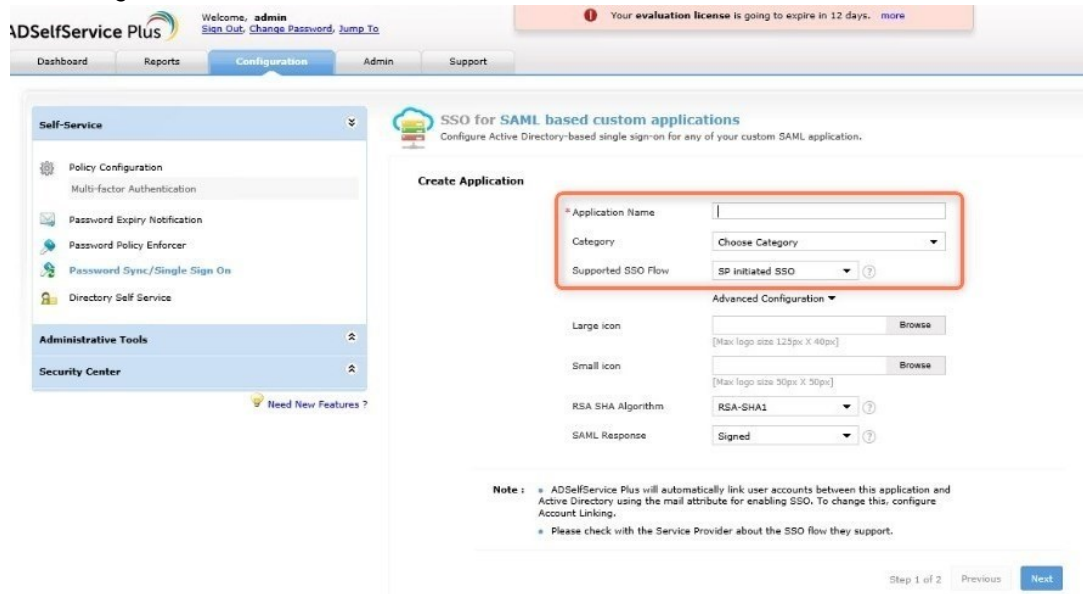
28. <http://win-s3uel7jaed2:8888/authorization.do>

29. <http://win-s3uel7jaed2:8888/authorization.do>



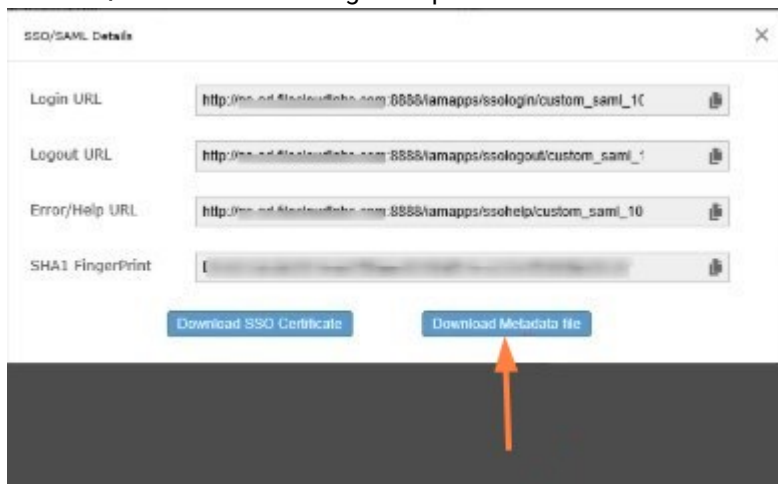
5. In the navigation bar, expand **Self-Service** and click **Password Sync/Single-Sign-On**.
6. Click **New Custom App**.
7. Fill in the following **Create Application** fields:
  - a. In **Application Name** enter **FileCloud**.
  - b. In **Category** drop-down list, choose any option.
  - c. In the **Supported SSO flow** drop-down list, choose **SP initiated SSO**.

The **Large icon** and **Small icon** fields are optional. You can leave the defaults for the remaining fields.




8. To go to the **SSO for SAML based custom applications/Configure Application** page, click **Next**.
9. Fill in the following **Configure Application** fields:

- a. In **Domain Name**, enter the domain name of your user's email address in AD.  
For example, if the email address is [fc@test.com](mailto:fc@test.com)<sup>30</sup>, enter [test.com](http://test.com)<sup>31</sup> as the domain name.
  - b. In **Display Name** enter any name.
  - c. In **SAML Redirect URL** enter <https://yourFileclouddomainname/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/metadata.php/default-sp>
  - d. In **ACS URL** enter <https://yourFileclouddomainname/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/saml2-acis.php/default-s>
10. Click **Save**.
  11. Click **Download SSO certificate** in the upper-right of the page.  
The **SSO/SAML Details** dialog box opens.



12. Click **Download Metadata file**, and save the metadata file (**metadata.xml**).

## Step 2: In FileCloud, configure your SSO settings for ADSelfService Plus

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **SSO** .  
The **SSO** page opens.
2. In **Default SSO Type**, choose **SAML**.
3. Fill in the SAML settings:
  - a. In **IDP Endpoint URL**,  
open the metadata.xml file you downloaded, and copy the URL after entityID. It should look similar to: entityID="[http://<sup>32</sup>yourFileclouddomainname<sup>33</sup>:8888/iamapps/ssologin/custom\\_saml\\_10000/e6c2b84d31da852eac8e0f88ee5c4703b9974c2f](http://ns-ad.filecloudlabs.com:8888/iamapps/ssologin/custom_saml_10000/e6c2b84d31da852eac8e0f88ee5c4703b9974c2f)<sup>34</sup>

30. <mailto:fc@test.com>

31. <http://test.com>

32. [http://ns-ad.filecloudlabs.com:8888/iamapps/ssologin/custom\\_saml\\_10000/e6c2b84d31da852eac8e0f88ee5c4703b9974c2f](http://ns-ad.filecloudlabs.com:8888/iamapps/ssologin/custom_saml_10000/e6c2b84d31da852eac8e0f88ee5c4703b9974c2f)

33. <https://yourFileclouddomainname/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/metadata.php/default-sp>

34. [http://ns-ad.filecloudlabs.com:8888/iamapps/ssologin/custom\\_saml\\_10000/e6c2b84d31da852eac8e0f88ee5c4703b9974c2f](http://ns-ad.filecloudlabs.com:8888/iamapps/ssologin/custom_saml_10000/e6c2b84d31da852eac8e0f88ee5c4703b9974c2f)

- b. In **IDP Username Parameter**, enter **mail**.
- c. In **IDP Email parameter** enter **mail**
- d. In **IDP Given Name Parameter** enter **givenName**.
- e. In **IDP Surname Parameter** enter **sn**.
- f. In **IDP Metadata** paste the entire contents of the metadata.xml file.



By default, ADSelfService Plus passes the **mail** attribute, and FileCloud creates the user from the username portion of the email address. For example, if the email is [sam@fc.com](mailto:sam@fc.com)<sup>35</sup>, FileCloud creates an account with **sam** as the username.

If you want to pass **userPrincipalName** as the parameter, contact the ADSelfService support team to make necessary changes in the database to pass that parameter. For example, to pass **userPrincipalName** instead of **mail**, ADSelfService must add the following entry to their database:

```
"userPrincipalName":"uid"
```

After they have added the entry, set **IDP Username Parameter** to **uid**.

## Integrate Ping Identity SSO with Filecloud



Before completing the following procedures, configure Apache Web Server. See [SSO Configuration Step 1](#) (see page 246) on the page [SAML Single Sign-On Support](#) (see page 246) for configuration instructions.

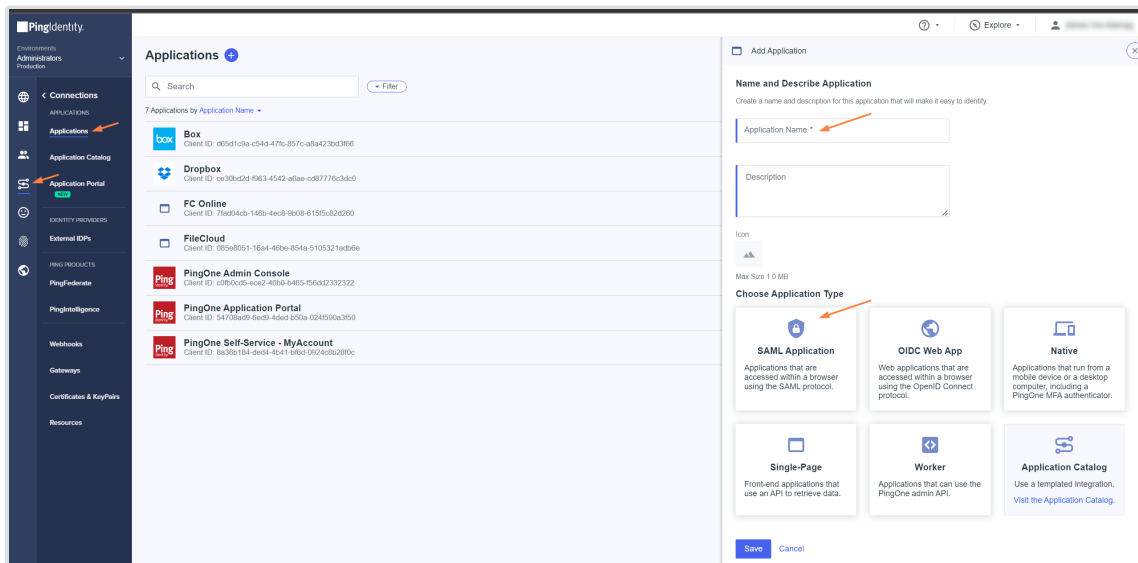
This article describes how to integrate PingOne as an SSO provider with FileCloud.

### Configuration in Ping Identity portal

1. Log in to the Ping Identity dashboard, and click the **Connections** icon in the navigation panel.
2. Click **Applications**, then click the **+** button.
3. In the right panel, click **SAML Application**.
4. Name and save the application.

---

35. <mailto:sam@fc.com>



The **SAML Configuration** screen appears in the right panel.

5. Select **Manually Enter**, and fill in the fields as follows:

**ACS URLs:**

[https://<your\\_filecloud\\_url>/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/saml2-accs.php/default-sp](https://<your_filecloud_url>/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/saml2-accs.php/default-sp)<sup>36</sup>

**Entity ID:**

[https://<your\\_filecloud\\_url>/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/metadata.php/default-sp](https://<your_filecloud_url>/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/metadata.php/default-sp)<sup>37</sup>

36. <https://yourdomain.com/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/saml2-accs.php/default-sp>

37. <https://jamesvontrial.filecloudonline.com/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/metadata.php/default-sp>

 Add Application

### SAML Configuration

Provide Application Metadata

☐ Import Metadata ☐ Import From URL ☒ Manually Enter


ACS URLs \*

[+ Add](#)

Entity ID \*


Save


Cancel

6. Click **Save**.  
Several tabs appear in the right panel.
7. Select the **Attribute Mappings** tab, then click , and add the following attributes:

Field name	Flags	Ping One Value
<b>givenName</b>	Include in SAML Assertion	Given Name
<b>mail</b>	Include in SAML Assertion	E <sup>38</sup> mail Address
<b>sn</b>	Include in SAML Assertion	Family Name
<b>uid</b>	Include in SAML Assertion	User ID

Overview Configuration **Attribute Mappings** Policies Access

These mappings associate PingOne user attributes to SAML or OIDC attributes in the application. See [Mapping attributes](#). 

 If this Application is accessible by users from more than one External IdP, it is recommended that you map the Identity Provider ID attribute so the Application can distinguish users by their IdP.

FC Online	PingOne
saml_subject	User ID <span>Required</span>
givenName	Given Name
mail	Email Address
sn	Family Name
uid	User ID

8. Click the **Configuration** tab.
9. To get a copy of the metadata file associated with the configuration, click **Download Metadata**. Save the file so you can enter its contents into the FileCloud admin portal.

38. <https://dev.company.com/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/metadata.php/default-sp>

Overview **Configuration** Attribute Mappings Policies Access

Configuration details for a SAML application.

### Connection Details

[Download Metadata](#) [Download Signing Certificate](#)

**Issuer ID**

**Single Logout Service**

**Single Signon Service**

**IDP Metadata URL**

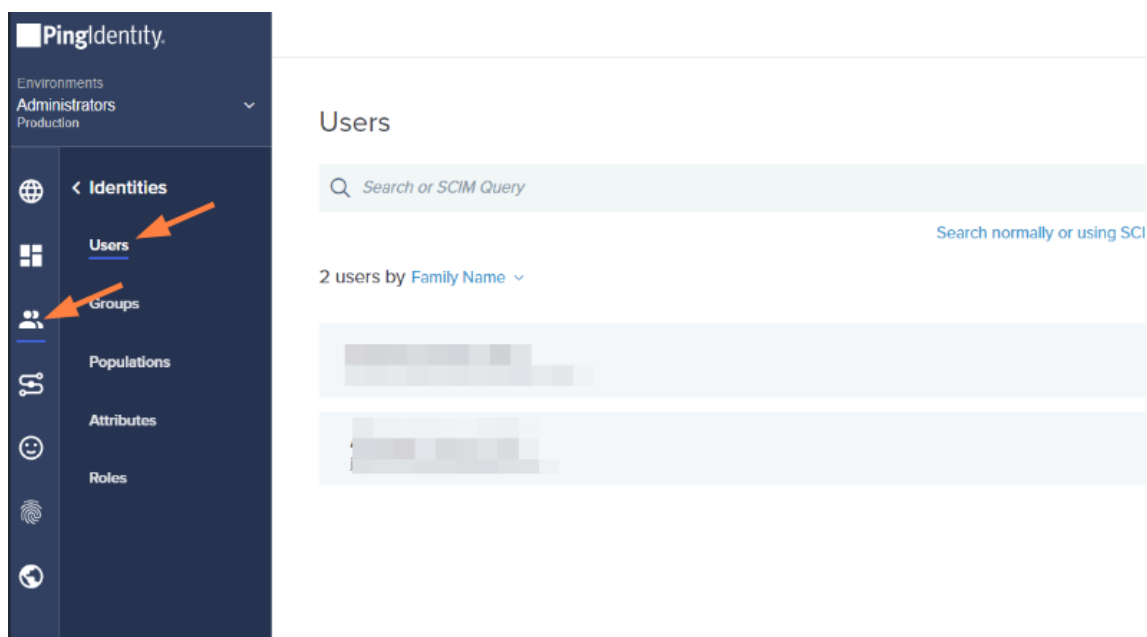
**Initiate Single Sign-On URL**

### SAML Settings


**ACS URLs**

Your application configuration is now complete.

10. Click the Identities icon in the Ping Identity navigation panel.
11. Click **Users**, and then add your users.



## Configuration in Filecloud Admin portal

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **SSO**  . The **SSO** page opens.
2. Enter the following information:

Field	Value
<b>IdP End Point URL</b>	Enter the value of <b>Issuer Id</b> : ( Configuration tab → Issuer ID just below the "Download Metadata" button)
<b>IdP Username Parameter</b>	uid
<b>IdP Email Parameter</b>	mail
<b>IdP Given Name Parameter</b>	givenName
<b>IdP Surname Parameter</b>	sn

Field	Value
IdP Metadata	Copy the contents of the metadata file downloaded above paste them here.

## SSO

[Reset to defaults](#)

Default SSO type

SAML

### SAML Settings

IdP endpoint URL or entity ID\*

IdP username parameter\*

uid

IdP email parameter\*

email

IdP given name (first name) parameter\*

givenName

IdP surname (last name) parameter\*

sn

IdP log out URL (optional)

URL to call to log out of identity provider

Limit log in to IdP group (optional)

Specify the identity provider group that users must belong to in order to log in.  
Note: Groups that a user belongs to must be passed from IdP in 'memberof' attribute.

admin

IdP Metadata\*

- If you want users to see the Ping Identity login after they click **Login with SSO**, scroll to the bottom of the screen and enable **Show the Idp Login Screen**.  
If you want users to be directly logged into FileCloud after they click **Login with SSO**, do not enable **Show the Idp Login Screen**.

**Show the Idp login screen** ☒  
 Redirect user login to IdP login screen automatically.

**Log level** DEV ▼  
 Use DEV only for testing.

4. Fill in the other fields on the page as shown at [SAML Single Sign-On Support](#) (see page 246).
5. Click **Save**.
6. Go to **Customization > General > Login** and check **Show SSO Link** and **Show Login Options**.

**FILECLOUD**

Notifications

DEVICES

Devices

GOVERNANCE

Dashboard

Retention

Smart DLP

Smart Classification

MISC.

Audit

Alerts

User Locks

Workflows

Reports

Federated Search

Metadata

SETTINGS

Settings

CUSTOMIZATION

Customization

General

Labels And Logos

URL

UI Messages

Email Templates

News Feed

TOS

Advanced

UI Features

Login

Account Menu

Listing

### Customize User Login Screen

Show New Account Button

☒

Display "New Account" button in user login screen

Show SSO Link

☒

Show "Single Sign On" option in user login screen

Show Login Options

☒

Uncheck to hide all login screen options such as "Forgot Password", "SSO Login"

Login Panel Transparency

☒ YES
 

☐ NO

Add transparency to login panel. Enable it if a custom login background image is set

Login UI Additional Links


[Privacy Policy](https://www.yoursite.com/privacy)

[Terms of use](https://www.yoursite.com/tos)

## Log in to FileCloud using Single Sign-on with Ping Identity

1. In the Filecloud User login page, the user chooses **Login with SSO**.

User Authentication Settings – 346



FileCloud

---

Login [+ New Account](#)

---


Account Password

---

[> Forgot Password](#) [Login](#)

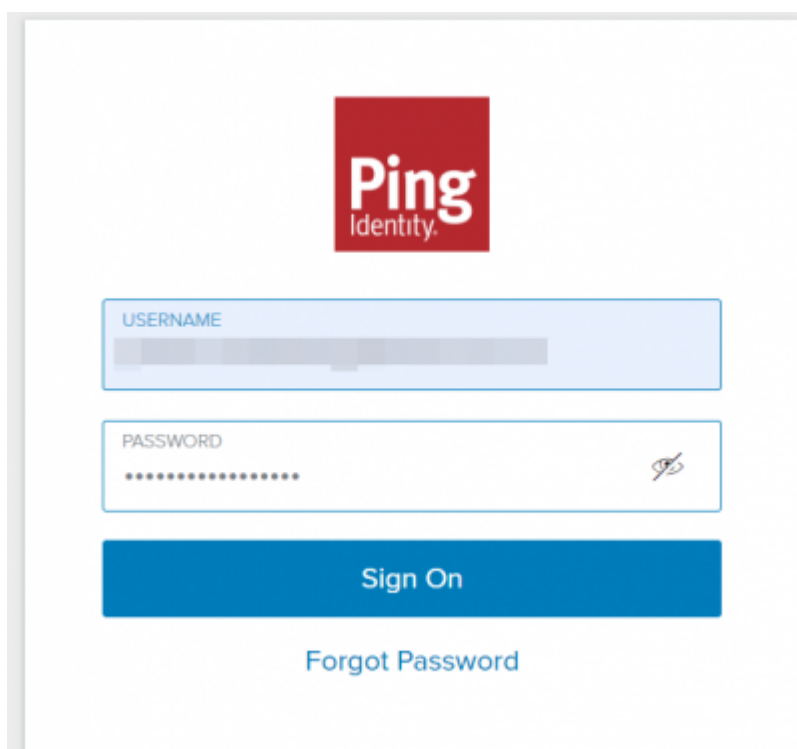
Or use your SSO

[Log In with SSO](#)

English 

[Privacy Policy](#) [Terms of use](#) [Powered by FileCloud](#)

If you have checked **Show the Idp Login Screen** in the FileCloud SSO settings, the user is redirected to the Ping Identity login screen, and must click **Sign On**.



The image shows a login interface for Ping Identity. At the top center is the Ping Identity logo, which consists of a red square with the word "Ping" in white and "Identity." in smaller white text below it. Below the logo are two input fields. The first field is labeled "USERNAME" in blue text and contains a greyed-out placeholder. The second field is labeled "PASSWORD" in blue text and contains a series of dots, with a small eye icon to its right for toggling visibility. Below these fields is a large blue button with the text "Sign On" in white. At the bottom, centered, is a blue link that says "Forgot Password".

Otherwise, the user is directly logged in to FileCloud.

## Setting Up and Configuring Certificates when Upgrading SSO

When you upgrade SSO, please Contact FileCloud Support to avoid overwriting your current certificates with the default certificates sent with the library.

## ADFS Single Sign-On Support

### Introduction

FileCloud offers a SAML-based Single Sign-On (SSO) service that provides customers with full control over the authorization and authentication of hosted user accounts.

Using the SAML model, FileCloud acts as the **service provider** and also a **claims-aware application**. FileCloud customers that host FileCloud can authenticate against Active Directory Federation Services (ADFS) and log in to FileCloud.

FileCloud acts as a Service Provider (SP) while the ADFS server acts as the identity provider (IdP).



**Active Directory Federation Services (ADFS) Support**

When SAML SSO Type is selected and ADFS is enabled in FileCloud, FileCloud accepts claims in the form of ADFS security tokens from the Federation Service, and can use ADFS claims to support Single Sign-On (SSO) into FileCloud.

To specify the identity claims that are sent to the FileCloud refer to the IdP Configuration section below.

## Prerequisites

- A Working ADFS implementation. This is beyond the scope of FileCloud. Please refer to articles available on the internet on setting up ADFS.
- FileCloud must be running on HTTPS using SSL. (Default self-signed SSLs that ship with FileCloud do not work). ADFS does not allow adding a relying party that is running on HTTP or self-signed SSL. For help setting up SSL in FileCloud, please Contact FileCloud Support.

## FileCloud SSO Configuration Steps


In order to successfully configure SSO:

1. Configure Apache Webserver.
2. Set SAML as a the default single sign-on method in FileCloud and configure IdP settings.
3. Enable single sign-on link on the login page.
4. Register FileCloud as a service provider (SP) with IdP by adding FileCloud as a Relying Party Trust in ADFS.

### Step 1: Apache Web Server Configuration

Follow the steps in [SAML Single Sign-On Support \(see page 246\)](#) to set up the Web Server configuration and enable SSO.

### Step 2: Set SAML as the default SSO method and configure IdP/ADFS

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **SSO** . The **SSO** page opens.
2. Set **Default SSO Type** to **SAML**.
3. Set the other fields as specified in the following table.

FileCloud Parameters	ADFS as IdP Data can be obtained from Federation Metadata	
Default SSO Type	For ADFS, select SAML	

IdP End Point URL	Identity Provider URL (Entity ID) e.g. <a href="http://yourADFSdomainName/adfs/services/trust">http://yourADFSdomainName/adfs/services/trust</a>	
IdP Username Parameter	<p>Identifies the Username (must be unique for each user) Usually SAMAccountName or User Principal Name defined in claim rules.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The username must be unique.</b> If username sent by Idp is in email format, the email prefix will be used for username. The email prefix in this case must be unique.</p> <p>value: <a href="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identity/claims/upn">http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identity/claims/upn</a> or upn</p> <pre>&lt;Attribute   Name="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identity/claims/upn"   NameFormat="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:attrname-format:uri"   FriendlyName="UPN" xmlns="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:assertion" /&gt;</pre>	
IdP Email Parameter	<p>Identifies the email of the user (must be unique)</p> <p><a href="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identity/claims/emailaddress">http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identity/claims/emailaddress</a> or emailaddress</p> <pre>&lt;Attribute   Name="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identity/claims/emailaddress"   NameFormat="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:attrname-format:uri"   FriendlyName="E-Mail Address"   xmlns="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:assertion" /&gt;</pre>	
IdP Given Name Parameter	<p>Identifies the given name of the user.</p> <p><a href="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identity/claims/givenname">http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identity/claims/givenname</a> or givenname</p> <pre>&lt;Attribute   Name="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identity/claims/givenname"   NameFormat="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:attrname-format:uri"   FriendlyName="Given Name"   xmlns="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:assertion" /&gt;</pre>	
IdP Surname Parameter	<p>Identifies the surname of the user</p> <p><a href="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identity/claims/surname">http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identity/claims/surname</a> or surname</p> <pre>&lt;Attribute   Name="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identity/claims/surname"   NameFormat="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:attrname-format:uri"   FriendlyName="Surname" xmlns="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:assertion" /&gt;</pre>	
IdP Log Out URL (Optional)	URL for logging out of IdP	

Limit Logon to IdP Group (Optional)	<div>IdP Group Name</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Specifying a group name means that a user can log in through SAML SSO only when the Identity Provider indicates that the user belongs to the specified IdP group</li><li>The IdP must send this group name through the <b>memberof</b> parameter</li><li>The <b>memberof</b> parameter can include a comma-separated list of all groups to which the user belongs</li></ul>																																																																																													
IdP Metadata	<div>Federation Metadata in xml format. Usually ADFS metadata is found at the URL Path below: e.g. <a href="https://yourADFSDomain/federationmetadata/2007-06/federationmetadata.xml">https://yourADFSDomain/federationmetadata/2007-06/federationmetadata.xml</a></div> <div><div><div>AD FS</div><div>Service</div><div>Endpoints</div><div>Certificates</div><div>Claim Descriptions</div><div>Trust Relationships</div><div>Claims Provider Trusts</div><div>Relying Party Trusts</div><div>Attribute Stores</div><div>Authentication Policies</div><div>Per Relying Party Trust</div></div><div><div>Endpoints</div><table><thead><tr><th>Enabled</th><th>Proxy Enabled</th><th>URL Path</th><th></th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>No</td><td>No</td><td>/ads/services/trust/13/issuetokenasymmetricbasic256</td><td>W</td></tr><tr><td>No</td><td>No</td><td>/ads/services/trust/13/issuetokenasymmetricbasic256h...</td><td>W</td></tr><tr><td>Yes</td><td>Yes</td><td>/ads/services/trust/13/issuetokenmixedasymmetricbasic...</td><td>W</td></tr><tr><td>No</td><td>No</td><td>/ads/services/trust/13/issuetokenmixedasymmetricbasic...</td><td>W</td></tr><tr><td>Yes</td><td>Yes</td><td>/ads/services/trust/13/issuetokenmixedasymmetricbasic2...</td><td>W</td></tr><tr><td>No</td><td>No</td><td>/ads/services/trust/13/issuetokenmixedasymmetricbasic2...</td><td>W</td></tr><tr><td>No</td><td>No</td><td>/ads/services/trust/13/issuetokenasymmetricbasic256</td><td>W</td></tr><tr><td>No</td><td>No</td><td>/ads/services/trust/13/issuetokenasymmetricbasic256sha...</td><td>W</td></tr><tr><td>No</td><td>No</td><td>/ads/services/trust/13/issuetokenasymmetrictripledes</td><td>W</td></tr><tr><td>No</td><td>No</td><td>/ads/services/trust/13/issuetokenasymmetrictripledesha...</td><td>W</td></tr><tr><td>No</td><td>No</td><td>/ads/services/trust/13/issuetokenmixedasymmetrictripledes</td><td>W</td></tr><tr><td>No</td><td>No</td><td>/ads/services/trust/13/issuetokenmixedasymmetrictripled...</td><td>W</td></tr><tr><td>No</td><td>No</td><td>/ads/services/trust/13/windows</td><td>W</td></tr><tr><td>No</td><td>No</td><td>/ads/services/trust/13/windowsmixed</td><td>W</td></tr><tr><td>No</td><td>No</td><td>/ads/services/trust/13/windowstransport</td><td>W</td></tr><tr><td>Yes</td><td>No</td><td>/ads/services/trusttcp/windows</td><td>W</td></tr><tr><td>No</td><td>No</td><td>/ads/services/trust/artifactresolution</td><td>S</td></tr><tr><td>Yes</td><td>Yes</td><td>/ads/oaauth2/</td><td>O</td></tr><tr><td colspan="4">Metadata</td></tr><tr><td>Yes</td><td>Yes</td><td>/ads/services/trust/mex</td><td>W</td></tr><tr><td>Yes</td><td>Yes</td><td>/FederationMetadata/2007-06/FederationMetadata.xml</td><td>W</td></tr><tr><td>Yes</td><td>No</td><td>/ads/its/federationserver/service.asmx</td><td>A</td></tr></tbody></table></div></div>	Enabled	Proxy Enabled	URL Path		No	No	/ads/services/trust/13/issuetokenasymmetricbasic256	W	No	No	/ads/services/trust/13/issuetokenasymmetricbasic256h...	W	Yes	Yes	/ads/services/trust/13/issuetokenmixedasymmetricbasic...	W	No	No	/ads/services/trust/13/issuetokenmixedasymmetricbasic...	W	Yes	Yes	/ads/services/trust/13/issuetokenmixedasymmetricbasic2...	W	No	No	/ads/services/trust/13/issuetokenmixedasymmetricbasic2...	W	No	No	/ads/services/trust/13/issuetokenasymmetricbasic256	W	No	No	/ads/services/trust/13/issuetokenasymmetricbasic256sha...	W	No	No	/ads/services/trust/13/issuetokenasymmetrictripledes	W	No	No	/ads/services/trust/13/issuetokenasymmetrictripledesha...	W	No	No	/ads/services/trust/13/issuetokenmixedasymmetrictripledes	W	No	No	/ads/services/trust/13/issuetokenmixedasymmetrictripled...	W	No	No	/ads/services/trust/13/windows	W	No	No	/ads/services/trust/13/windowsmixed	W	No	No	/ads/services/trust/13/windowstransport	W	Yes	No	/ads/services/trusttcp/windows	W	No	No	/ads/services/trust/artifactresolution	S	Yes	Yes	/ads/oaauth2/	O	Metadata				Yes	Yes	/ads/services/trust/mex	W	Yes	Yes	/FederationMetadata/2007-06/FederationMetadata.xml	W	Yes	No	/ads/its/federationserver/service.asmx	A	
Enabled	Proxy Enabled	URL Path																																																																																												
No	No	/ads/services/trust/13/issuetokenasymmetricbasic256	W																																																																																											
No	No	/ads/services/trust/13/issuetokenasymmetricbasic256h...	W																																																																																											
Yes	Yes	/ads/services/trust/13/issuetokenmixedasymmetricbasic...	W																																																																																											
No	No	/ads/services/trust/13/issuetokenmixedasymmetricbasic...	W																																																																																											
Yes	Yes	/ads/services/trust/13/issuetokenmixedasymmetricbasic2...	W																																																																																											
No	No	/ads/services/trust/13/issuetokenmixedasymmetricbasic2...	W																																																																																											
No	No	/ads/services/trust/13/issuetokenasymmetricbasic256	W																																																																																											
No	No	/ads/services/trust/13/issuetokenasymmetricbasic256sha...	W																																																																																											
No	No	/ads/services/trust/13/issuetokenasymmetrictripledes	W																																																																																											
No	No	/ads/services/trust/13/issuetokenasymmetrictripledesha...	W																																																																																											
No	No	/ads/services/trust/13/issuetokenmixedasymmetrictripledes	W																																																																																											
No	No	/ads/services/trust/13/issuetokenmixedasymmetrictripled...	W																																																																																											
No	No	/ads/services/trust/13/windows	W																																																																																											
No	No	/ads/services/trust/13/windowsmixed	W																																																																																											
No	No	/ads/services/trust/13/windowstransport	W																																																																																											
Yes	No	/ads/services/trusttcp/windows	W																																																																																											
No	No	/ads/services/trust/artifactresolution	S																																																																																											
Yes	Yes	/ads/oaauth2/	O																																																																																											
Metadata																																																																																														
Yes	Yes	/ads/services/trust/mex	W																																																																																											
Yes	Yes	/FederationMetadata/2007-06/FederationMetadata.xml	W																																																																																											
Yes	No	/ads/its/federationserver/service.asmx	A																																																																																											
SSO Error Message (Optional)	<div>Custom error message that appears when a signin is invalid. Enter in HTML format.</div>																																																																																													
Added in FileCloud 20.1																																																																																														
Allow Account Signups	<div>When TRUE, during the login process, if the user account does not exist, a new FileCloud user account is created automatically.</div>																																																																																													
Added in FileCloud 20.1																																																																																														

Automatic Account Approval  Added in FileCloud 20.1	<p>This setting works with the <b>Allow Account Signups</b> setting to determine:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the account created by the user is disabled until the administrator approves it</li> <li>• If the account is approved with a specific level of access automatically without intervention from the administrator.</li> <li>• Possible values are: 0 - No Automatic approval, Admin has to approve account 1 - Automatically approve new accounts to Full User 2 - Automatically approve new accounts to Guest User 3 - Automatically approve new accounts to External User</li> </ul>	
Enable ADFS	Yes	
User login token expiration match Idp expiration	<p>If enabled the user token expiration will be set based on ADFS expiration settings</p> <p>If not enabled user token expiration will be set based on FileCloud Session Timeout (FileCloud admin UI - Settings - Server - Session Timeout in Days)</p> <p>Default: No (Not enabled)</p>	
Enable Browser-Only SSO Session Timeout  Added in FileCloud 23.232.1	If enabled, SSO session timeouts apply to browser sessions but not to client sessions.	
Show the IdP Login Screen	If enabled, automatically redirect user to IdP log-in screen.	
Log Level	<p>Set the Log level for SAML calls.</p> <p>Default Value: PROD (Do not use DEV for production systems)</p>	
Allow SSO for external users  Added in FileCloud 23.253	<p>Only appears if feature is included in license.</p> <p>If enabled, SSO option appears on login screen when an external user logs in.</p> <p>Default value: Disabled.</p>	

**Notes:**

For **IDP Log Out URL** to be effective, request that [FileCloud Support](https://www.filecloud.com/supportdocs/display/FCDOC/.Contact+FileCloud+Support+v23.241.3)<sup>39</sup> add the corresponding setting to your FileCloud configuration. to be effective, you must also add a setting to the FileCloud config file:

39. <https://www.filecloud.com/supportdocs/display/FCDOC/.Contact+FileCloud+Support+v23.241.3>

1. Open the configuration file:  
Windows: XAMPP DIRECTORY/htdocs/config/cloudconfig.php  
Linux: /var/www/config/cloudconfig.php
2. To make the **IdP Log Out URL** setting effective, add:  
`define("TONIDOCLOUD_SAML_SIGNED_LOGOUT", 1);`

For help configuring multiple IDPs with **Automatic Account Approval** settings specific to each one, see [Integrating Multiple IDPs](#)<sup>40</sup>.

**Note:** For **IDP Log Out URL** to be effective, request that [FileCloud Support](#)<sup>41</sup> add the corresponding setting to your FileCloud configuration.

## SSO

Default SSO type

SAML

### SAML Settings

IdP endpoint URL or entity ID\*

http://yourADFSdomainName/adfs

IdP username parameter\*

http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/20

IdP email parameter\*

http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/20

IdP given name (first name) parameter\*

http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/20

IdP surname (last name) parameter\*

http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/20

IdP log out URL (optional)

URL to call to log out of identity provider

Limit log in to IdP group (optional)

Specify the identity provider group that users must belong to in order to log in.  
Note: Groups that a user belongs to must be passed from IdP in 'memberof' attribute.

40. <https://www.filecloud.com/supportdocs/display/FCDOC/.Integrating+Multiple+IDPs+v23.1Client>

41. <https://www.filecloud.com/supportdocs/display/FCDOC/.Contact+FileCloud+Support+v23.241.3>

### Step 3: Enable SSO link on the login page

Follow the steps in [SAML Single Sign-On Support](#) (see page 246) (under SSO Configuration Steps, Step 6) to enable SSO sign-in on the user portal or admin portal.

### Step 4: Register FileCloud as SP in IdP/ADFS

Registering FileCloud as SP in ADFS involves series of steps from adding FileCloud as a Relying Party Trust in ADFS to setting up Claim Rules for FileCloud in ADFS. Please follow the steps below to successfully register FileCloud in ADFS.

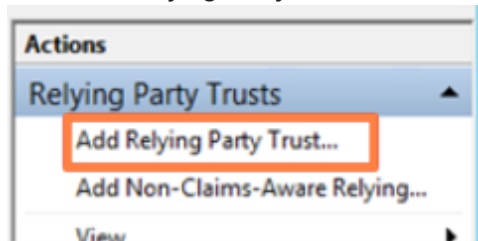
**Before you proceed, you must be able to download the metadata of FileCloud from the following Entity ID URL.** (Note HTTPS).



<https://<Your Domain>/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/metadata.php/default-sp><sup>42</sup>

If you have trouble downloading the metadata from the above URL, please check if HTTPS is working and Steps 1, 2 and 3 above were completed successfully.

1. On your ADFS server, open the ADFS management console, expand **Trust Relationships** and select the **Relying Party Trust** node. In the **Actions** pane, click **Add Relying Party Trust**.



2. Click **Start**, then paste the **Entity ID URL** from above into the **Federation Metadata address** field and click **Next**.

42. <http://dev1.codelathe.com/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/metadata.php/default-sp>

**Add Relying Party Trust Wizard**

**Select Data Source**

**Steps**

- Welcome
- Select Data Source
- Specify Display Name
- Configure Multi-factor Authentication Now?
- Choose Issuance Authorization Rules
- Ready to Add Trust
- Finish

Select an option that this wizard will use to obtain data about this relying party:

- ☒ Import data about the relying party published online or on a local network  
Use this option to import the necessary data and certificates from a relying party organization that publishes its federation metadata online or on a local network.  
Federation metadata address (host name or URL):  
  
Example: fs.contoso.com or https://www.contoso.com/app
- ☐ Import data about the relying party from a file  
Use this option to import the necessary data and certificates from a relying party organization that has exported its federation metadata to a file. Ensure that this file is from a trusted source. This wizard will not validate the source of the file.  
Federation metadata file location:
- ☐ Enter data about the relying party manually  
Use this option to manually input the necessary data about this relying party organization.

< Previous   Next >   Cancel

**Note:** You can do this manually by downloading your metadata file from <http://<your domain>/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/metadata.php/default-sp><sup>43</sup> and importing it into ADFS by choosing **Import data about the relying party from a file**.



Once you access the metadata URL you need to enter admin credentials to be able to download the metadata file. The username is **admin** and the password can be found in: **<FileCloud WEB ROOT>/thirdparty/simplesaml/config/config.php**

3. Accept the warning
4. Enter the display name for the Relying Party Trust, usually your FileCloud URL.

43. <http://yourdomain.okta.com/>

44. <http://dev2.codelathe.com/simplesaml/module.php/saml/sp/metadata.php/default-sp>

**Add Relying Party Trust Wizard**

**Specify Display Name**

**Steps**

- Welcome
- Select Data Source
- Specify Display Name**
- Configure Multi-factor Authentication Now?
- Choose Issuance Authorization Rules
- Ready to Add Trust
- Finish

Enter the display name and any optional notes for this relying party.

Display name:

Notes:

< Previous   Next >   Cancel

5. Click **Next** several times in the wizard until you reach the **Ready to Add Trust** page. Here, review the tabs. The **Encryption** and **Signature** tabs must have values associated with them.

**Add Relying Party Trust Wizard**

**Ready to Add Trust**

**Steps**

- Welcome
- Select Data Source
- Specify Display Name
- Configure Multi-factor Authentication Now?
- Choose Issuance Authorization Rules
- Ready to Add Trust**
- Finish

The relying party trust has been configured. Review the following settings, and then click Next to add the relying party trust to the AD FS configuration database.

**Monitoring** | Identifiers | Encryption | Signature | Accepted Claims | Organization | Endpoints | Notes

Specify the monitoring settings for this relying party trust.

Relying party's federation metadata URL:

☒ Monitor relying party

☒ Automatically update relying party

This relying party's federation metadata data was last checked on:  
18-03-16

This relying party was last updated from federation metadata on:  
18-03-16

< Previous   Next >   Cancel

- Click **Next**. The new **Relying Party Trust** is now added.
- Select the **Relying Party Trust** we have just added and then click **Edit Claim Rules**.

**Relying Party Trusts**

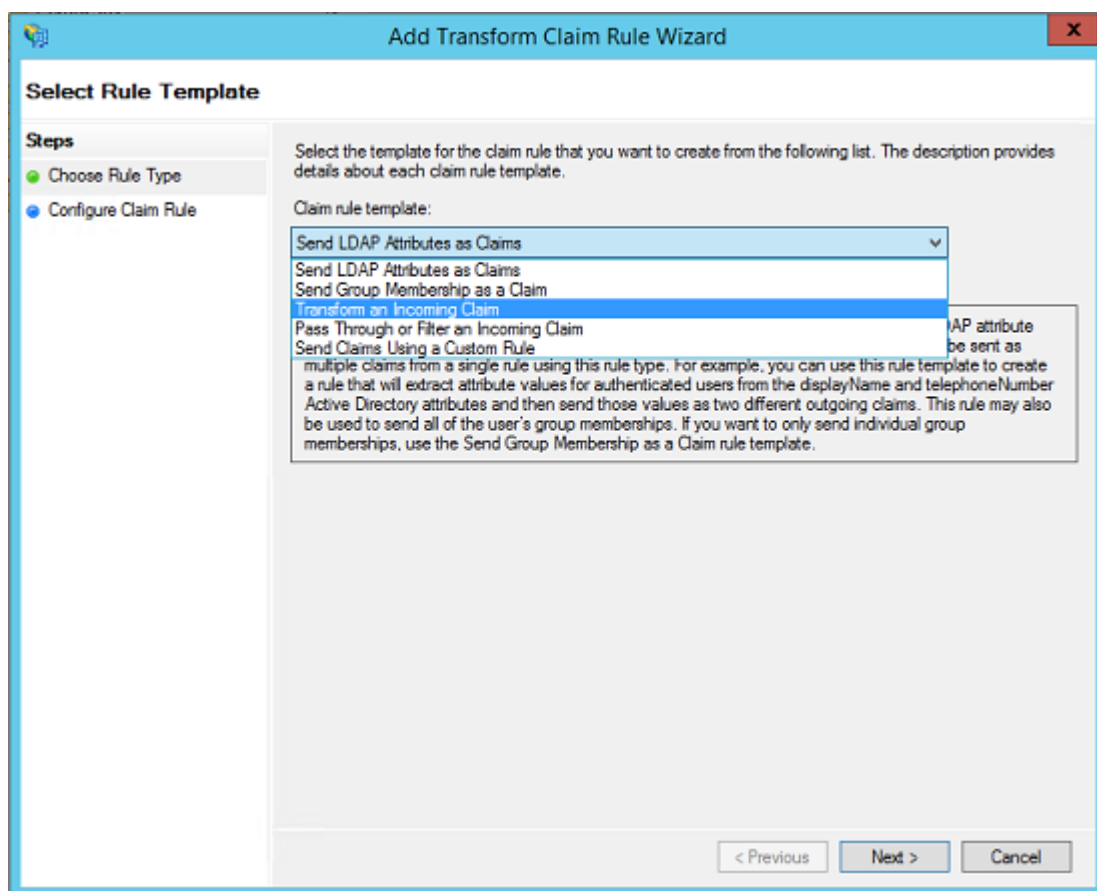
Display Name	Enabled	Type	Identifier
Device Registration Service	Yes	WS-T...	um.ms-drs.fs.transishun.co
Microsoft Office 365 Identity Platform	Yes	WS-T...	https://login.microsoftonli
...	Yes	WS-T...	https://www.transishun.co

**Actions**

**Relying Party Trusts**

- Add Relying Party Trust...
- Add Non-Claims-Aware...
- View
- New Window from Here
- Refresh
- Help
- Update from Federation
- Edit Claim Rules...**
- Disable
- Properties
- Delete
- Help

- Add an **Issuance Transform Rule**. Choose the **Transform an Incoming Claim** rule template.



9. Give a **Claim rule name** (Name ID Transform - can be anything). Choose **Windows account name** as **Incoming claim type** and **Name ID** as **Outgoing claim type**. Choose **Transient Identifier** for **Outgoing name ID format**. Select the radio button **Pass through all claim values**. Click **Finish** to add the claim rule.

**Add Transform Claim Rule Wizard**

**Configure Rule**

**Steps**

- Choose Rule Type
- Configure Claim Rule

You can configure this rule to map an incoming claim type to an outgoing claim type. As an option, you can also map an incoming claim value to an outgoing claim value. Specify the incoming claim type to map to the outgoing claim type and whether the claim value should be mapped to a new claim value.

Claim rule name:

Rule template: Transform an Incoming Claim

Incoming claim type:

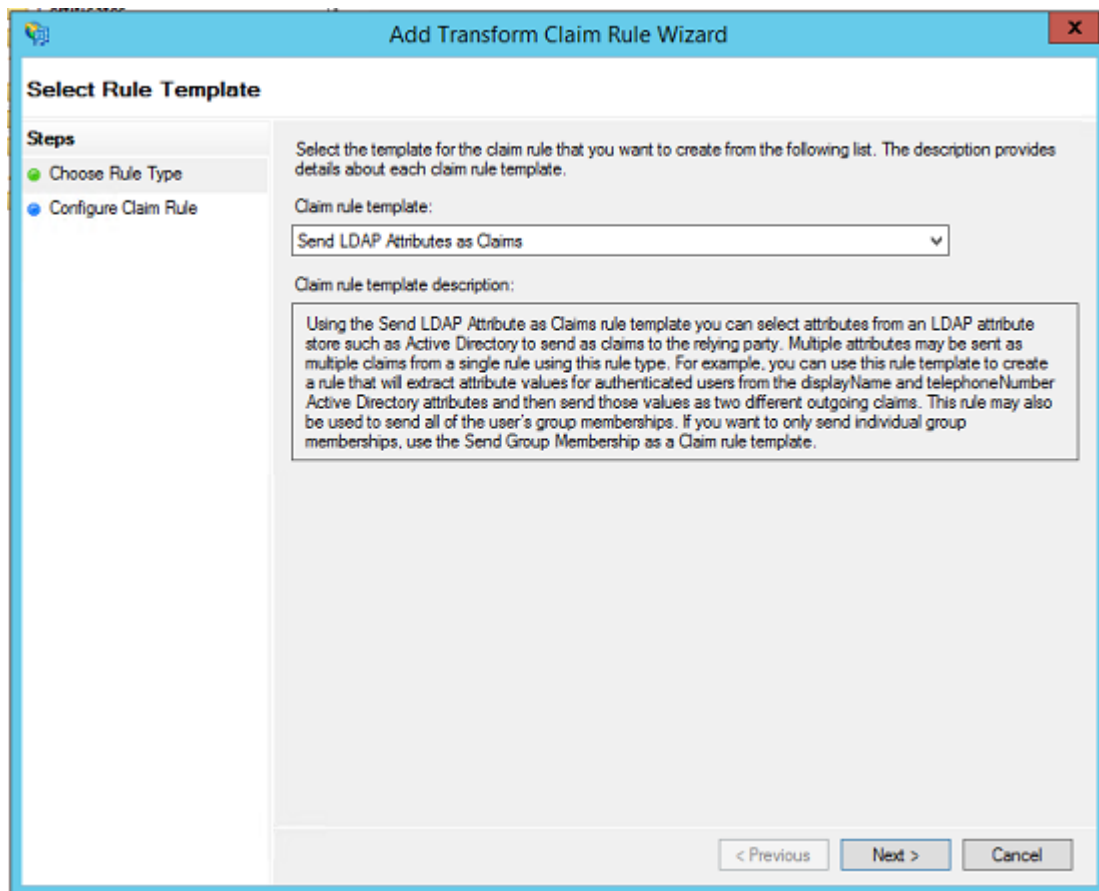
Incoming name ID format:

Outgoing claim type:

Outgoing name ID format:

☒ Pass through all claim values  
☐ Replace an incoming claim value with a different outgoing claim value  
 Incoming claim value:   
 Outgoing claim value:    
☐ Replace incoming e-mail suffix claims with a new e-mail suffix  
 New e-mail suffix:   
 Example: fabrikam.com

10. Add another issuance transform rule. Select **Send LDAP Attributes as Claims** template.



11. Fill in the rule fields:

- Enter a **Claim rule name** (LDAP Claims - can be anything).
- Select **Active Directory** as **Attribute store**.
- Enter the mapping values of **LDAP Attributes** to **Outgoing Claim Types**. The outgoing claim type must match the names as specified in FileCloud SSO Settings UI Page (the screenshot below follows the FileCloud SSO Settings as documented above).
- For **Outgoing Claim Type**, **uid** and **mail** are required. **SAM-Account-Name** in the screenshot below can be replaced with **UPN** if desired.

**Add Transform Claim Rule Wizard**

**Configure Rule**

**Steps**

- Choose Rule Type
- Configure Claim Rule

You can configure this rule to send the values of LDAP attributes as claims. Select an attribute store from which to extract LDAP attributes. Specify how the attributes will map to the outgoing claim types that will be issued from the rule.

Claim rule name:  
LDAP Claims

Rule template: Send LDAP Attributes as Claims

Attribute store:  
Active Directory

Mapping of LDAP attributes to outgoing claim types:

LDAP Attribute (Select or type to add more)	Outgoing Claim Type (Select or type to add more)
SAM-Account-Name	uid
E-Mail-Addresses	mail
Given-Name	givenName
Surname	sn
*	

< Previous Finish Cancel

- For ADFS configuration, add an additional claim parameter (**Token-Groups - Unqualified Names > memberof**).

**Edit Rule - LDAP Claims** ✕

You can configure this rule to send the values of LDAP attributes as claims. Select an attribute store from which to extract LDAP attributes. Specify how the attributes will map to the outgoing claim types that will be issued from the rule.

Claim rule name:

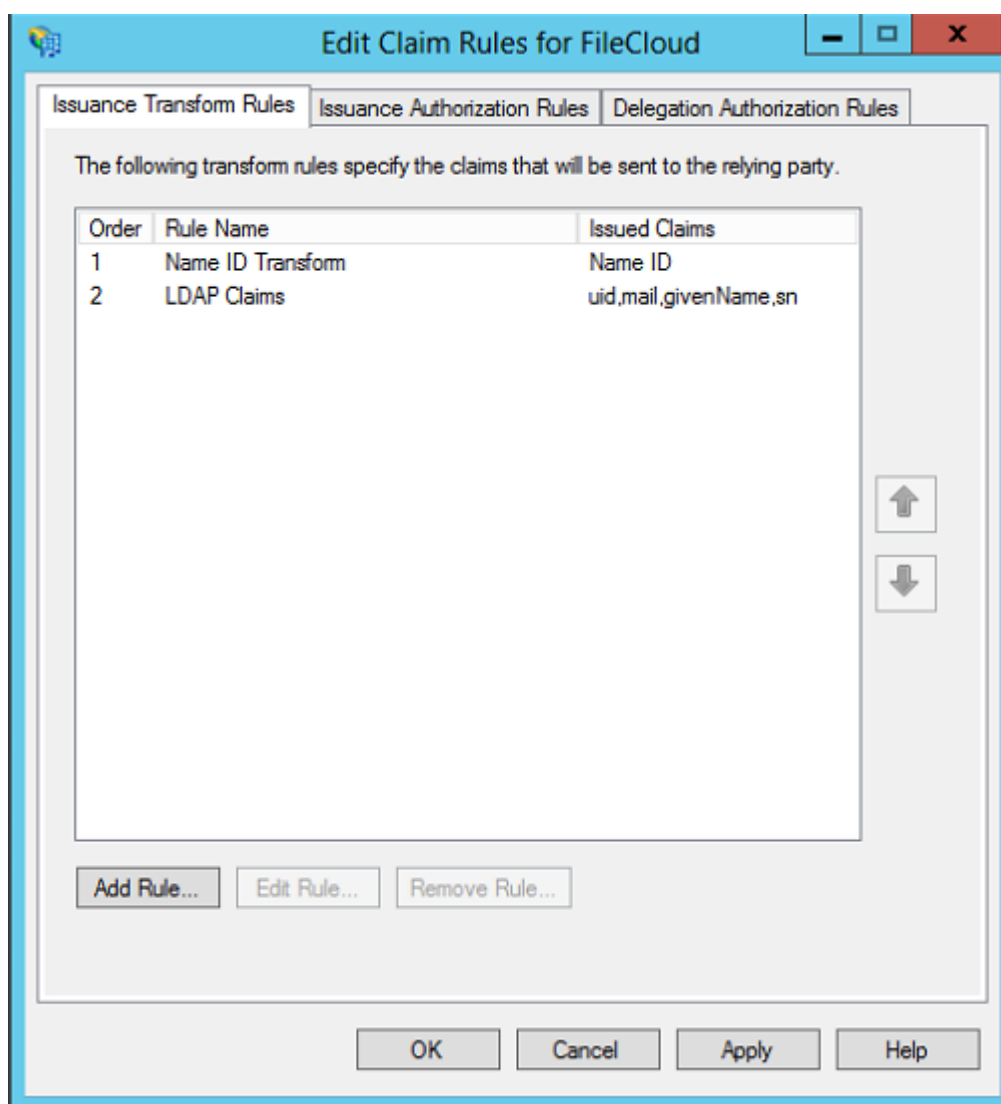
Rule template: Send LDAP Attributes as Claims

Attribute store:

Mapping of LDAP attributes to outgoing claim types:

	LDAP Attribute (Select or type to add more)	Outgoing Claim Type (Select or type to add more)
▶	SAM-Account-Name	uid
	E-Mail-Addresses	mail
	Given-Name	givenName
	Surname	surname
	Token-Groups - Unqualified Names	memberof

- Click **Finish** to add the rule.
12. Once configured, you should have two issuance transform rules (**Name ID Transform** and **LDAP Claims** if you followed the steps above). Click **Apply** and **Exit**.



This completes the ADFS configuration and FileCloud is added as a Relying Party Trust in the ADFS server. You can now test SSO from FileCloud by going to the FileCloud login page and clicking the Single Sign-On link as mentioned in Step 3, above.

## NTLM Single Sign-On Support

FileCloud supports NTLM for User Login through SSO.

### Prerequisites

For NTLM SSO to work, the FileCloud Server must be connected to the AD domain.

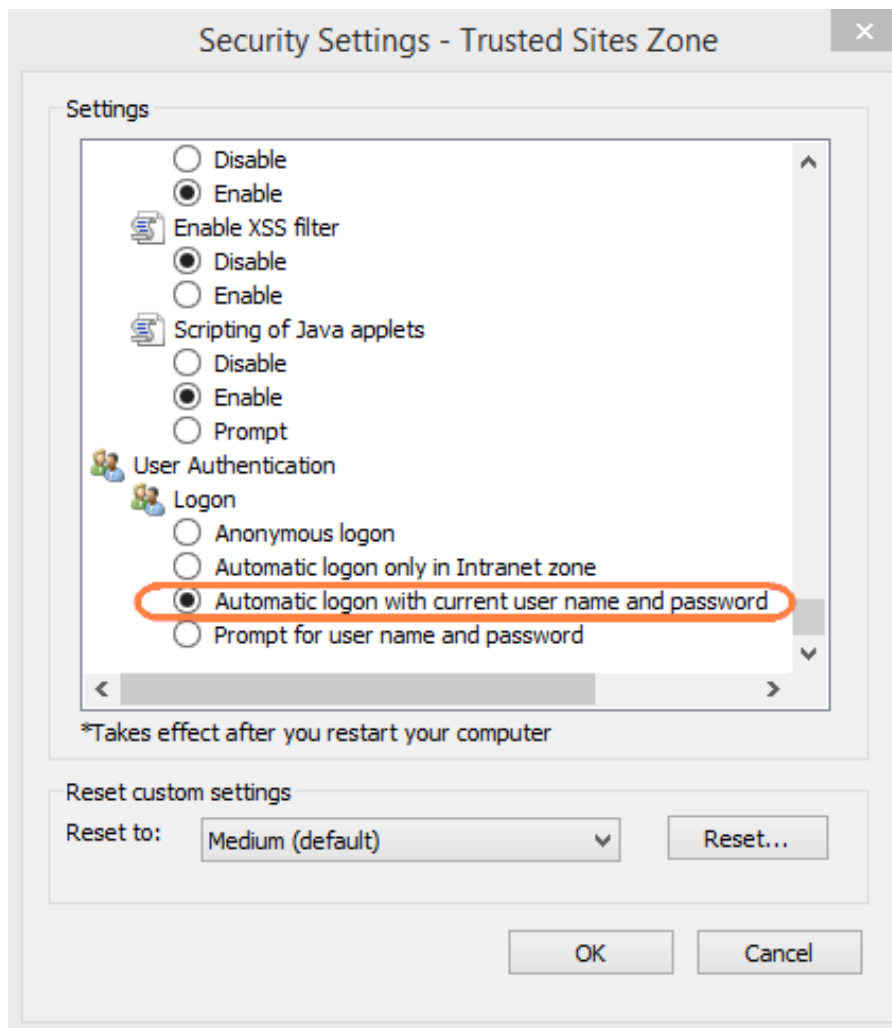
## Web Server Settings

To configure your Web server for NTLM SSO, please Contact FileCloud Support.

## Browser Settings to Enable Domain User SSO Login

### For Internet Explorer and Google Chrome

1. Add the site URL to trusted site.
2. In the settings for trusted sites, enable user login to be sent, see screenshot below.



## Troubleshooting

In some environments, additional code may be needed to complete authentication from the server.

After configuration, if you attempt to login with the AD username and password and are repeatedly prompted to enter your AD credentials instead of being transferred to the user portal:

1. Edit the file at c:\xampp\htdocs\.htaccess

2. Locate this section:

```
#-----
# ADVANCED CUSTOMIZATION SECTION - END
#-----

#Route all requests to our handler
RewriteRule ^(.*)/?$ public/index.php [L]
```

3. Above the line:

```
#Route all requests to our handler
```

add the code:

```
RewriteRule ^auth/index\.php$ - [L]
```

## Oracle Identity Manager LDAP integration with FileCloud



### Oracle Identity Manager

Oracle Identity Management enables system administrators to integrate multiple Active Directories and control them from one location. To ensure a smooth configuration please ensure:

- The server that is hosting FileCloud is able to communicate to the server that is hosting OIM.
- You have access to the Admin user and are able to access WebLogic Admin server.
- Both server's firewalls accept the incoming connection.

## Integrating OIM's LDAP with FileCloud

To successfully integrate OIM's LDAP with FileCloud, ensure that FileCloud is able to pull the corresponding attributes such as Name, Email, and password. To verify this, please review your connection settings under

Oracle's WebLogic Admin Server under **Domain Structure > Services > Security Realms > [myrealm] > Providers**. Under **Providers > Authentication** select the authentication provider to use to connect to FileCloud via LDAP.

**ORACLE WebLogic Server® Administration Console**

Home > Summary of Servers > Summary of Security Realms > myrealm > Summary of Security Realms > myrealm > Providers

**Settings for myrealm**

Configuration Users and Groups Roles and Policies Credential Mappings **Providers** Migration

**Authentication** Password Validation Authorization Adjudication Role Mapping Auditing Credential Mapping

An Authentication provider allows WebLogic Server to establish trust by validating a user. You must have one Authenticating security realm. Different types of Authentication providers are designed to access different data stores, such as LDAP server to work with users and groups from previous releases of WebLogic Server.

[Customize this table](#)

**Authentication Providers**

New Delete Reorder

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Description
<input type="checkbox"/>	DefaultAuthenticator	WebLogic Authentication Provider
<input type="checkbox"/>	OIMAuthenticationProvider	Provider that performs authentication through the Oracle Identity Manager
<input type="checkbox"/>	DefaultIdentityAsserter	WebLogic Identity Assertion provider
<input type="checkbox"/>	<b>ADAuthenticationProvider</b>	Provider that performs LDAP authentication

New Delete Reorder

Click the authentication provider name to access its settings. Navigate to the **Provider Specific** tab to enable FileCloud LDAP to pull the necessary attributes add the following ObjectClass string under **All Users Filter**.

(&(objectClass=user)(cn=^NAME^))

Then, fill out the other required fields based on your Active Directory configuration.

**ORACLE WebLogic Server® Administration Console**

Home > Summary of Servers > Summary of Security Realms > myrealm > Summary of Security Realms > myrealm > Providers > ADAuthenticationProvider

**Settings for ADAuthenticationProvider**

Configuration Performance

Common **Provider Specific**

Save

Use this page to define the provider specific configuration for this Active Directory Authentication provider.

**Connection**

Host: 10.0.7.23 The host name or IP address of the LDAP server.

Port: 389 The port number on which the LDAP server listens.

Principal: CN=admin,DC=filecloudserv The Distinguished Name (DN) of the LDAP administrator user who connects to the LDAP server. [More Info...](#)

**Credential:** ..... The credential (usually a password) used to connect to the LDAP server. [More Info...](#)

**Confirm Credential:** .....

☐ **SSLEnabled** Specifies whether the SSL protocol should be used to connect to the LDAP server. [More Info...](#)


**Users**

**User Base DN:** dc=filecloudserver,dc=us The base distinguished name (DN) of the LDAP server. [More Info...](#)

**All Users Filter:** (&(objectClass=user)(cn=^NAME^)) If the attribute (user object class) is not specified, a default search filter is created based on the user base DN.

**User From Name Filter:** ..... If the attribute (user name attribute and user object class) is not specified, a default search filter is created based on the user base DN.

Once you have added the **ObjectClass** attribute on the WebLogic Server realm provider's configuration, access FileCloud's admin portal.

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Authentication** . The **Authentication** page opens.
2. Under **Authentication Settings**, in **Authentication Type** select **LDAP**.



Authentication

Reset to defaults

Authentication type

LDAP

3. To successfully configure LDAP, see [LDAP Based Authentication](#) (see page 223).
4. To ensure a successful connection, in **LDAP User Filter Template** add: `(&(objectClass=user)(cn=^NAME^))`

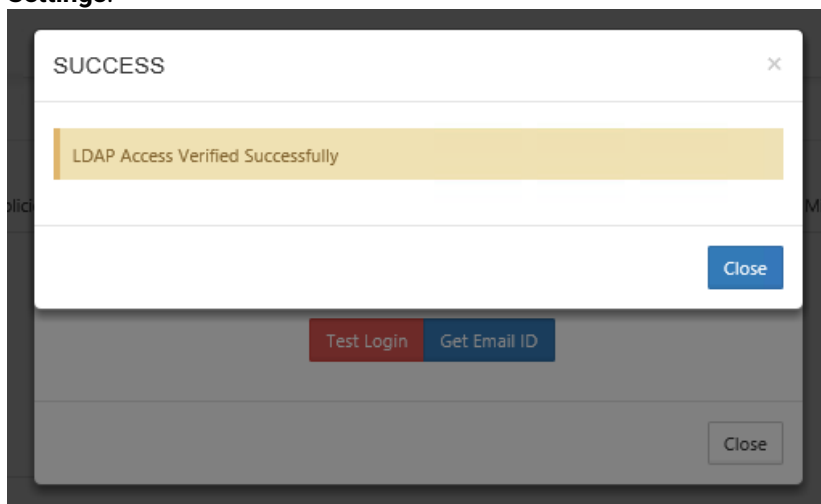
### LDAP Settings

Check LDAP connectivity and settings.

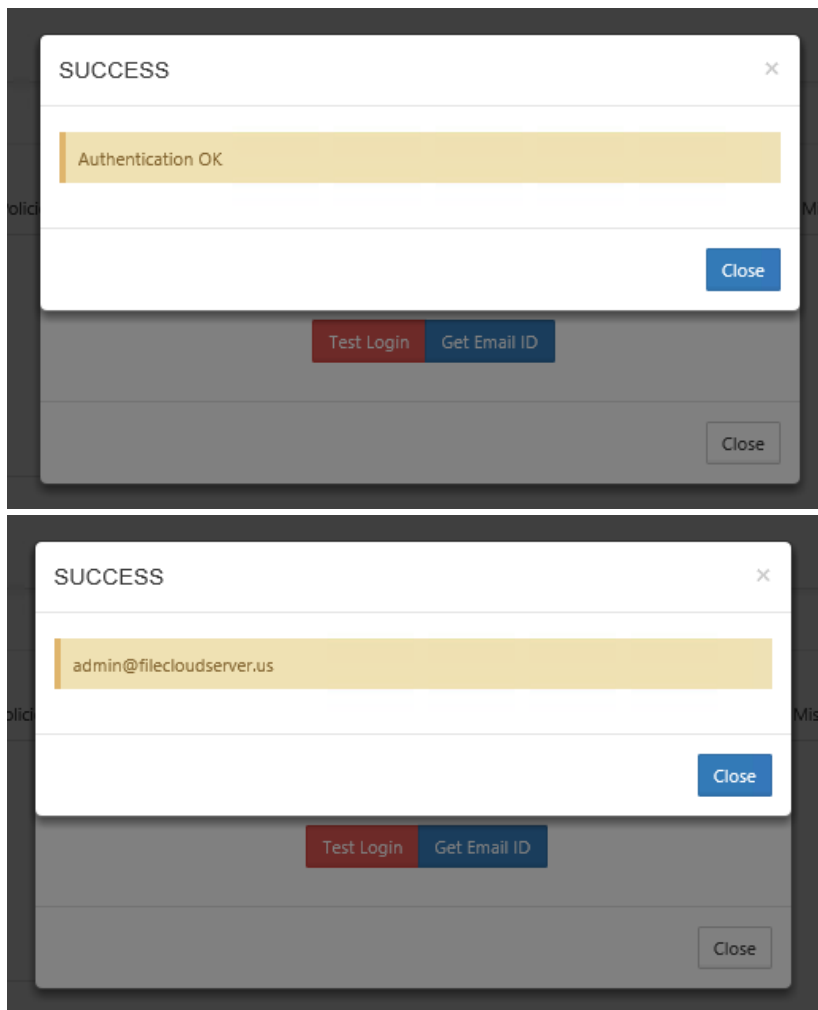
LDAP Test

LDAP host*	ldap://
LDAP host name	
LDAP port*	389
LDAP port number	
LDAP account name*	admin
The LDAP account to use to query the LDAP server.	
LDAP account password*	*****
The LDAP account password	
LDAP user DN template	CN=^NAME^,OU=filecloud-users,D
LDAP search DN	OU=filecloud-users,DC=fileclouds,
LDAP user filter template	(&(objectClass=user)(cn=^NAME^))
Mail attribute	mail

Next, verify your connectivity to OIM's LDAP by clicking **LDAP Test** and clicking **Validate LDAP Settings**.



If you obtain a successful confirmation message proceed to verify that FileCloud is able to login and obtain the email ID as seen on the screenshots below. Upon completion without any errors FileCloud has been successfully integrated with OIM'S LDAP connection.




## Desktop Apps Code-Based Authentication

Code-based device authentication is set by policy. It requires users to request approval to log in to a desktop app or mobile app. When the request is approved, a code is created which the user must enter into the app to log in. Requests are approved in the user portal, but additional admin approvals may also be required.

### Enabling code-based device authentication

#### Enable Code based device authentication

To enable code-based device authentication:

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Policies** . The **Policies** settings page opens.
2. Click the Edit icon in the row for the users' policy.

## Policies

New Policy

Create a new policy

New Policy

Policy Name	User Count	Group Count	Default	Actions
Global Default Policy	1	0		
TEAM FOLDER POLICY	1	0		

<< < Page 1 of 1 > >>

2 rows

The **Policy Settings** dialog box opens.

- 3. Click the **User Policy** tab.
- 4. In the **User Policy** tab, set **Enable code-based device authentication** to **yes**.

Effective Policy: "Global Default Policy"

General2FAUser PolicyClient Application PolicyDevice ConfigurationNotifications

Some policy settings will not be applicable for Guest and External users.

User Policy

Disable invitations to new users

Do not allow user to send invitations to new users when shares are created.

no

Create account on new user share

Create accounts automatically when share invitations are sent to new users.

no

Enable code-based device authentication

yes

Require admin approval for code-based device authentication

no

Now, when a user logs in to a client app, an approval request appears in in the user portal. The user must approve the request to receive a code that is entered into the client app to successfully log in.

**How users log in with device authentication**, below, shows how this process works.

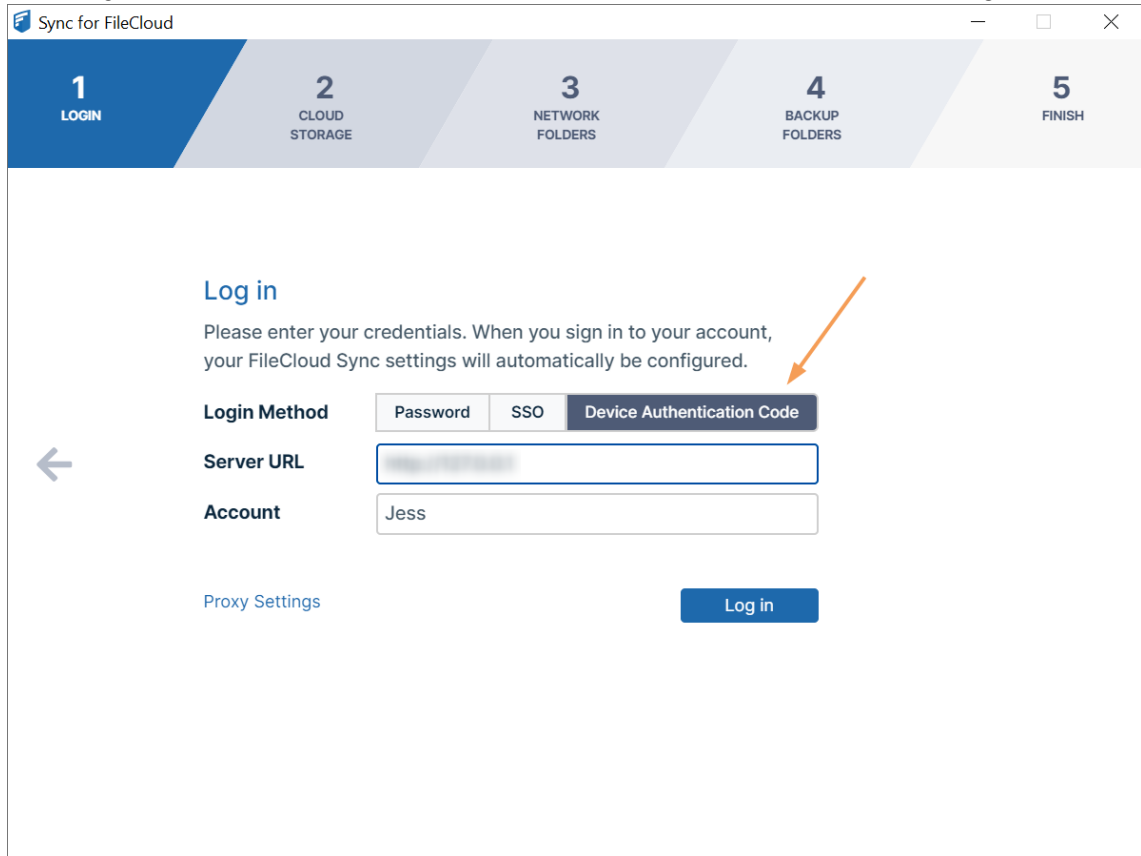
### How users log in with device authentication

#### How users log in with device authentication to desktop apps

Once code based authentication is enabled, the user can follow these steps to log in via a desktop app.

The following example uses the Sync application, but the procedure is the same for all of the desktop applications and the mobile apps.

1. In the login screen, the user selects **Device Authentication Code** and then clicks **Log in**.



The following dialog box opens.

**Enter Device Code**
✕




User needs to approve and submit device code:

Enter Code

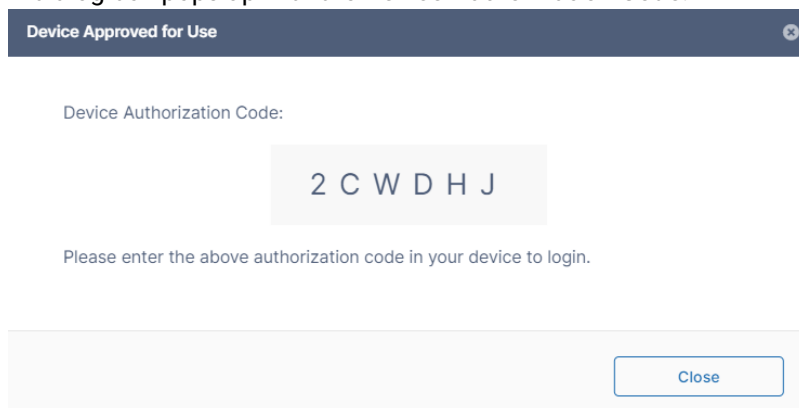
[Open Website](#)

Submit

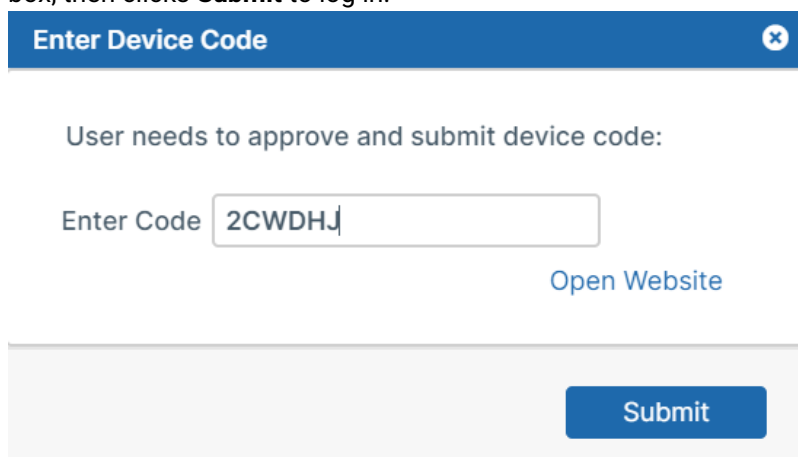
2. To get the device authorization code:
  - a. The user logs in to the user portal, then clicks the arrow next to the username and chooses **Settings**..
  - b. In the **Settings** screen, the user click the **Devices** tab.
  - c. The user clicks the check next to **Needs Approval**.

General <u>Devices</u>				
<a href="#" style="background-color: #0056b3; color: white; padding: 5px 10px; border-radius: 5px;">Refresh</a>				
Device Name	Device Details	Last Login	Device Status	Actions
 Cloud Sync (DESKTOP-N71N3EH)	OS: Windows 8 6.2 (Build 9200), App: 20.2.0.4954	November 19th 2020 11:29AM	Needs Approval ✓	✕
 MS Outlook (DESKTOP-N71N3EH)	OS: Windows Microsoft Windows NT 10.0.18363.0, App: 15.1.2.3	October 8th 2020 2:08PM	Approved	✕
 FileCloud Drive (DESKTOP-N71N3EH)	OS: Windows 8 6.2 (Build 9200), App: 20.2.0.4723	October 8th 2020 1:46PM	Approved	✕

A dialog box pops up with the **Device Authorization Code**:



3. The user copies the **Device Authorization Code** and pastes it into the **Enter Device Code** dialog box, then clicks **Submit** to log in.




## Requiring admin approval as well as user approval for devices

### Requiring admin approval to log in with client devices

The **Enable code based device authentication** setting lets users log in to desktop apps using a device authorization code without admin approval. You can also can configure FileCloud to require logins to desktop apps to be approved by admins before being approved by users.

#### To require admin approval for device authentication:

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Policies** . The **Policies** settings page opens.
2. Open a policy for edit.
3. In the **User Policy** tab, set **Enable code based device authentication** to **YES**. The **Require Admin Approval for Device Authentication** setting becomes enabled.

#### 4. Set **Require Admin Approval for Device Authentication** to **YES**.

Effective Policy: "Admin Users"

General 2FA **User Policy** Client Application Policy Device Configuration Notifications

Some policy settings will not be applicable for Guest and External users.

User Policy

**Disable invitations to new users**  
Do not allow user to send invitations to new users when shares are created. no

**Create account on new user share**  
Create accounts automatically when share invitations are sent to new users. yes

**Enable code-based device authentication** yes

**Require admin approval for code-based device authentication** yes

**Enforce session timeout for devices using code-based device authentication.** no

**Allow folder level security**  
Allow users to set folder level security for granular permissions. no

Cancel Reset Save

### To approve a client device that has been sent to you for admin approval

1. Go to **Device Management** in the admin portal to view the listing for the device approval.  
The device is listed with **Status** showing **Needs Admin Approval** and **Access** set to **Blocked**.

Manage Devices

Filter: Username, Device name/details Access Filter: All

Message Get Logs Command Delete

Health	Type	User name	Device Name	Device Details	Last Access	Status	Access	Action	Logs
<input type="checkbox"/>		jenniferp	Cloud Sync	App version: 23.232.0.8639 OS: Windows 11 - 10.0 (Build 22621)	Today at 11:44 AM from 127.0.0.1	Needs Admin Approval	Blocked	1	

2. In the **Access** column, change **Blocked** to **Allowed**.  
Now the **Status** column shows **Needs User Approval**, and the user must approve the client device (as shown above in **How users log in with device authentication**) and get an authorization code before log in can occur.

Manage Devices

Filter: Username, Device name/details Access Filter: All

Message Get Logs Command Delete

Health	Type	User name	Device Name	Device Details	Last Access	Status	Access	Action	Logs
<input type="checkbox"/>		jenniferp	Cloud Sync	App version: 23.232.0.8639 OS: Windows 11 - 10.0 (Build 22621)	Today at 11:50 AM from 127.0.0.1	Needs User Approval	Allowed	0	


## Enabling Basic Authentication

FileCloud supports enabling basic authentication for users through a policy setting.

To enable basic authentication:













1. Add the setting for basic configuration to cloudconfig.php:
  - a. Open cloudconfig.php.
    - Windows Location : C:\xampp\htdocs\config\cloudconfig.php
    - Linux Location : /var/www/html/config/cloudconfig.php
  - b. Add the following and save:

```
define("TONIDOCLOUD_ENABLE_BASIC_AUTHENTICATION",1);
```

2. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Policies**  . The **Policies** settings page opens.
3. Click the Edit icon in the row for the users' policy.

### Policies

New Policy  
Create a new policy New Policy

Policy Name	User Count	Group Count	Default	Actions
Global Default Policy	1	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	     
TEAM FOLDER POLICY	1	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	     

<< < Page  of 1 > >>  
 2 rows

The **Policy Settings** dialog box opens.

4. Scroll to the bottom of the policy's **General** tab.
5. Set **Enable Basic Authentication** to **enabled**.

Effective Policy: "Global Default Policy"

0 = unlimited storage

Enable Privacy Settingsno

Store deleted files in the recycle binno

Automatically delete files from recycle bin after set number days0  
0 = do not delete files automatically

Do not store deleted files greater thanUnits100MB  
0 = do not delete files automatically

Enable Basic Authenticationenabled

Enable Basic Authentication

Cancel

Reset

Save

6. Click **Save**.
7. To enable specific users to use basic authentication, assign the policy to them.

## Share Settings



The **Attach Share Password by Default for Public Shares** setting is available beginning in FileCloud 20.1.

File sharing allows users to provide public or private access to files stored in FileCloud Server with various levels of access privileges.

To control how users share files and folders in ways that are appropriate for your organization, administrators configure share settings.

- [Configure Sharing Defaults](#) (see page 377)
- [Set the Share Mode](#) (see page 391)
- [Specify Sharing Expiration](#) (see page 393)
- [Secure Shares](#) (see page 399)
  - [User Account Search Mode](#) (see page 406)
  - [User Search Account Type](#) (see page 408)

## Configure Sharing Defaults

The field **Allow comments for external users** is available beginning in FileCloud 23.251.

The fields **Public share default password length** and **Require complex public share passwords** are available beginning in FileCloud 23.242. Shares created with passwords prior to 23.242 maintain the passwords they were created with and are not required to comply with the new settings.




Beginning with FileCloud 23.241, the **Default Share Type** is **Private Share**. Prior to FileCloud 23.241, the **Default Share Type** was **Public Share**.

When a user wants to share a file or folder, administrators can decide which options should be automatically selected.

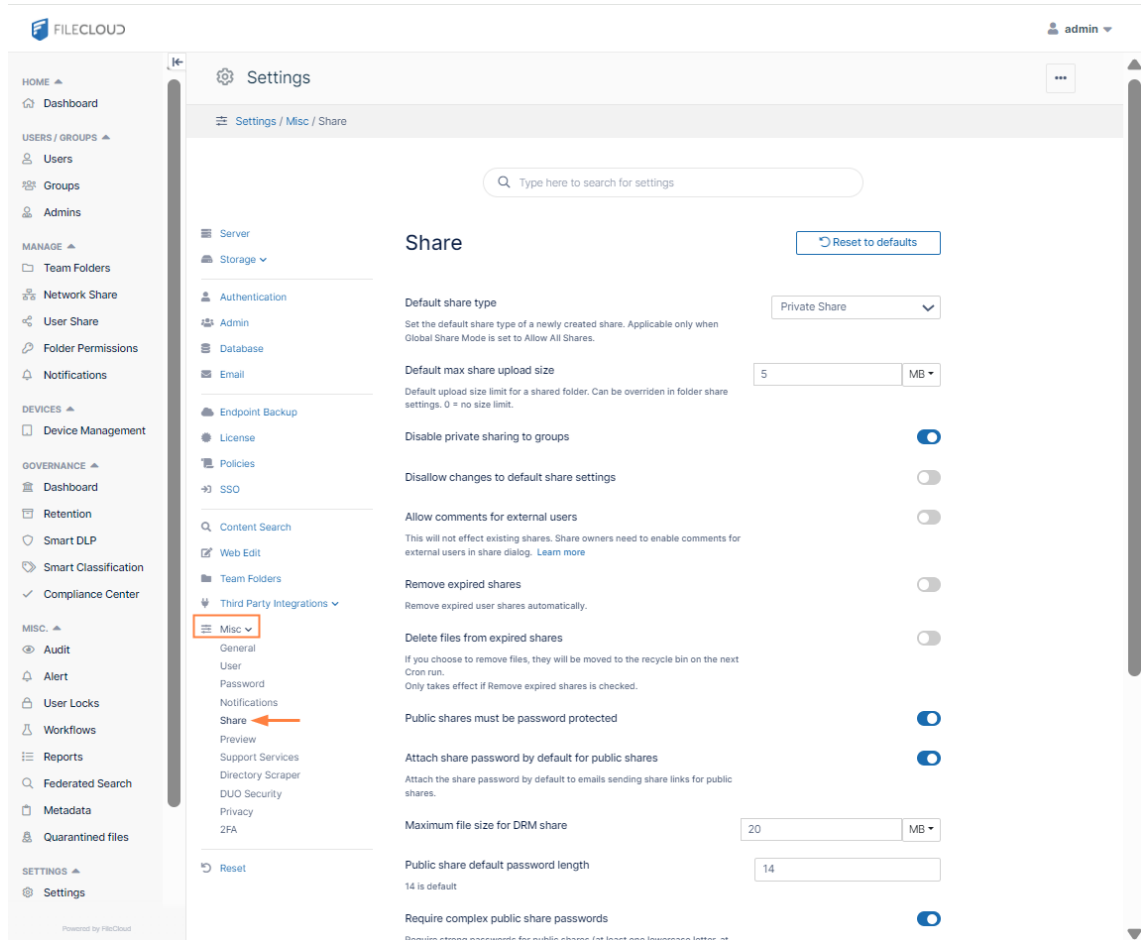
The settings are really just a recommendation and can be changed by the user, unless you disable the ability to change the defaults.

Most of the settings below are set the Share settings page.

**To open the Share settings page:**

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Misc** .

- In the inner navigation bar on the left of the **Settings** page, expand the **Misc** menu, and click **Share**, as shown below.



The **Share** settings page opens.

Follow the procedures below to change the sharing defaults.

### Default Share Type

This option tells FileCloud Server what type of share to automatically select when a user shares a file or folder. By default it is set to **Private Share**, but you may change it.

- Applicable only when **Share Mode** is set to **Allow All Shares**.
- This type can be changed by the user unless **Disallow Default Share Settings Change** is set.

### To change the Default Share Type:

- Open the Share settings page.
- In **Default share type**, select the option you want to use.

# Share

[Reset to defaults](#)

## Default share type

Set the default share type of a newly created share. Applicable only when Global Share Mode is set to Allow All Shares.

## Default max share upload size

Default upload size limit for a shared folder. Can be overridden in folder share settings. 0 = no size limit.

Unit

Public Share

Public Share

Private Share

Password Protected Share

Public Share	<p>Allows users to share with anyone who has the link to the share.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Does not require the user you want to share with to have a FileCloud account.</li><li>Share a file with everyone with or without restrictions.</li><li>Share a file with everyone and require a password.</li></ul>
Private Share (Default)	<p>Allows users to share with anyone who has the link and can log in to a FileCloud account.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Does require the user you want to share with to have a FileCloud account.</li><li>Requires an invitation to be sent to someone to create a FileCloud account if they don't already have one.</li><li>Share a file with all FileCloud users with or without restrictions.</li><li>Share a file with specific FileCloud users with or without restrictions.</li></ul>
Password Protected Share	<p>Forces users to create a password when sharing a file or folder.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Recipients of the share are given the password when they receive the link to the share.</li><li>The share can be public or private.</li></ul>


3. Click [Save](#).

## Set Expiration Days Default

You can allow users to share files and folders for as long as they exist, or you can set the number of days that a share remains active by default.

**Note:** This setting can be changed by the user unless **Disallow changes to default share settings** is set in the Share settings page.

**To set the Share Expiry default in a policy:**













1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Policies** . The **Policies** settings page opens.
2. Click the Edit icon in the row for the users' policy.

## Policies

### New Policy

Create a new policy

New Policy

Policy Name	User Count	Group Count	Default	Actions
Global Default Policy	1	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	     
TEAM FOLDER POLICY	1	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	     

« < Page 1 of 1 > »

2 rows

3. Click the **General** tab.
4. Change the value of the **Default Share Expiry in Days** setting.  
A value of **0** means that unless changed by a user, shares do not expire.

Effective Policy: "Global Default Policy"

General 2FA User Policy Client Application Policy Device Configuration Notifications

Some policy settings will not be applicable for Guest and External users.

General

Share Mode Allow All Shares

Default share expiry in days 0  
Number of days shares remain active. 0 = shares do not expire

Default max number of downloads allowed 0  
Number of downloads allowed.  
0 = maximum number of downloads is unlimited

User storage quota Units 2 GB  
0 = unlimited storage

Enable Privacy Settings yes

Cancel Reset Save

5. Click **Save**.

The value is only changed for users who are using this policy.

### Default Max Share Upload Size

Administrators can allow users to upload files into a shared folder no matter how big it is, or you can set a suggested size limit.

- You can set a maximum size limit in any of the following units: **B, KB, MB, GB**.
- Using a value of **0** means that users can upload files into a shared folder no matter how big it is.
- This setting can be changed by the user in the shared folder settings.

### To set the Max Upload size default for Shares:

1. Open the Share settings page.
2. In **Default max share upload size**, select a choice in **Units**, and then type in the file size limit you want to use.

**Share** [Reset to defaults](#)

**Default share type**  
Set the default share type of a newly created share. Applicable only when Global Share Mode is set to Allow All Shares. Public Share

**Default max share upload size**  
Default upload size limit for a shared folder. Can be overridden in folder share settings. 0 = no size limit. Units  Bytes

**Disable private sharing to groups** ☐

**Disallow changes to default share settings** ☐

3. Click **Save**.

### Disable Sharing to Groups for Private Share

You can check **Disable private sharing to groups** to hide the Group option when users or admins privately share a file or folder.

### To disable users and admins from sharing to groups:

1. Open the Share settings page.
2. Scroll down to **Disable private sharing to groups** and enable it.

## Share

[Reset to defaults](#)

### Default share type

Set the default share type of a newly created share. Applicable only when Global Share Mode is set to Allow All Shares.

Public Share

### Default max share upload size

Default upload size limit for a shared folder. Can be overridden in folder share settings. 0 = no size limit.

Units ▾

0

Bytes

### Disable private sharing to groups



### Disallow changes to default share settings



### 3. Click **Save**.

Now when a file or folder is shared, the Manage Share window does not display the **Group** tab.

Share link for file Preliminary.dwg

Share Link

https:// /url/mfxyjtrygum6rhnt

Modify Link

Shared File

/jennifer/Preliminary.dwg

Share Options

Share History

Share Name: Preliminary.dwg [Change](#)

Expires: Never Expires [Change](#)

Send Email Notifications: Yes

☐ Allow anyone with link  
☐ Allow anyone with link and a password  
☒ Allow selected users or groups

Users

Sharing Permissions:

[Invite Users](#)

User	View	Download	Upload	Share	Sync	Delete	Manage
No entries							

Remove Share

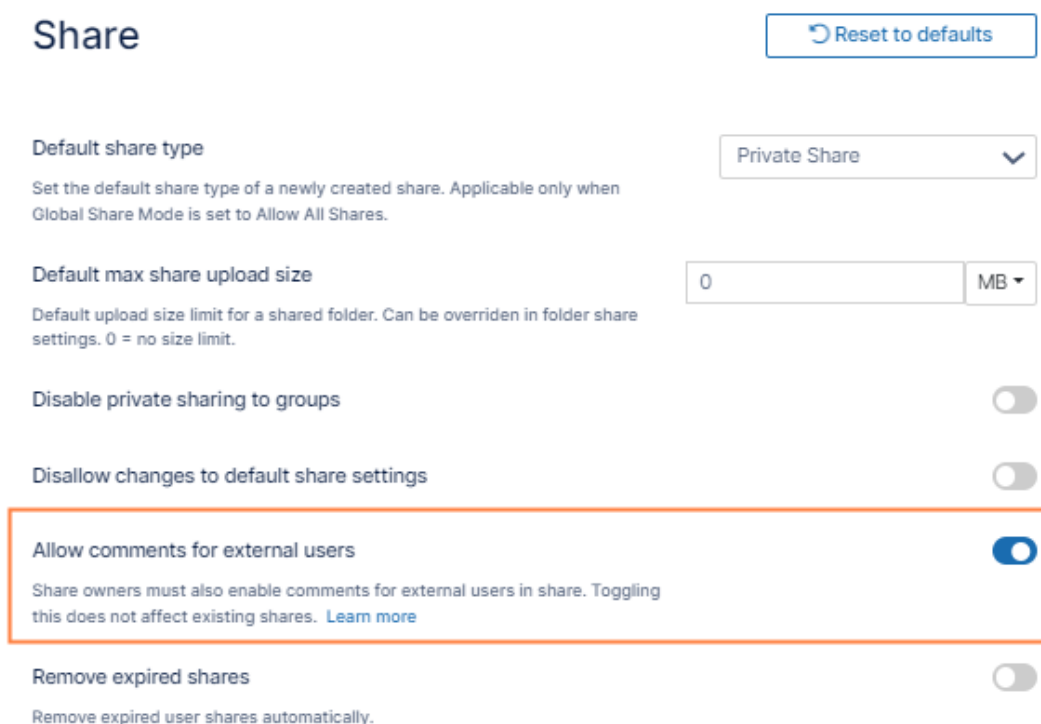
OK

## Allow External Users to Add Comments

By default, external users cannot add comments to shares. However, you can enable the **Allow comments for external users** setting to allow external users to add comments to private shares of files and folders. Note that for this setting to be effective, the share creator must also allow comments by external users and give the external user write access to the share.

### To allow external users to add comments:

1. Open the Share settings page.
2. Scroll down to **Allow comments for external users** and enable it.



**Share** [Reset to defaults](#)

**Default share type**  
Set the default share type of a newly created share. Applicable only when Global Share Mode is set to Allow All Shares.

Private Share ▼

**Default max share upload size**  
Default upload size limit for a shared folder. Can be overridden in folder share settings. 0 = no size limit.

0 MB ▼

**Disable private sharing to groups** ☐

**Disallow changes to default share settings** ☐

**Allow comments for external users** ☒  
Share owners must also enable comments for external users in share. Toggling this does not affect existing shares. [Learn more](#)

**Remove expired shares** ☐  
Remove expired user shares automatically.

Now, if a share creator enables the option **Allow Comments for External Users** and gives the external user write (upload) access, as shown below . . .

Share link for file Bank Account statement.pdf

Share Link

http://127.0.0.1/url/wamakasqztzeu7k

Modify Link

Shared File

/SHARED/jenniferp/Bank Account statement.pdf

Share Options

Share History

Share Name:

Bank Account statement.pdf

Change

Expires:

Never Expires

Change

Allow Comments for External Users: 1

☒ Yes

☐ No

Save

Send Email Notifications:

Yes

Sharing Permissions:

☐ Allow anyone with link

☐ Allow anyone with link and a password

☒ Allow selected users or groups

This share is private.

Only certain users/groups are allowed

Users (1)

Groups

Invite Users

User	<div>View</div>	<div>Download</div>	<div>Upload</div>	<div>Share</div>	<div>Sync</div>	<div>Delete</div>	<div>Manage</div>	
aliah@example.com	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<div>×</div>

Remove Share

OK

... the external user can select the share in the **Shared with Me** listing, click the Comments tab, and add a comment to the share:

How did I comment to Jennifer?

---

Home >
Shared with Me >
jenniferp

## jenniferp

3 items

<input type="checkbox"/> Name ▾ <input type="text" value="Filter Items"/>	Modified
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Bank Account statement.pdf	May 27, 2020 2:22 PM
bank statement1.xlsx	Jul 20, 2020 11:42 AM
PO 72135.pdf	Jul 27, 2022 1:26 PM

✕ Info

Details
 Activity
 Metadata
 Comments

Bank Account statement.pdf

**Add Comment**  
  

Add
11/256

Comments \_\_\_\_\_

## Disallow/Allow Default Share Settings Change

The **Share link** dialog box appears with settings that the user can modify:

Share link for file Feature List.xlsx

Share Link

http://127.0.0.1/url/mrn2h2jpuxcq3qtg
Modify Link

Shared File
/jenniferp/Feature List.xlsx

Share Options
Share History

Share Name:
RJsOXjdVpBiMMDWt
Change

Expires:
Never Expires
Change

Max number of downloads:
No Restrictions

Send Email Notifications:
Yes

Sharing Permissions:

☒ Allow anyone with link

Allow
View + Download

☐ Allow anyone with link and a password
☐ Allow selected users or groups
☐ Allow Anyone with Secure Web Viewer link and a password

This share is **Public**  
Anyone with a link can view.

Remove Share
OK

However, you can prevent users from changing these settings.

To require users to share files and folders with the default settings you have configured:

1. Open the Share settings page.
2. Scroll down to **Disallow changes to default share settings** and enable it:

# Share

[Reset to defaults](#)

## Default share type

Set the default share type of a newly created share. Applicable only when Global Share Mode is set to Allow All Shares.

Public Share

▼

## Default max share upload size

Default upload size limit for a shared folder. Can be overridden in folder share settings. 0 = no size limit.

Units ▼

0

Bytes

## Disable private sharing to groups

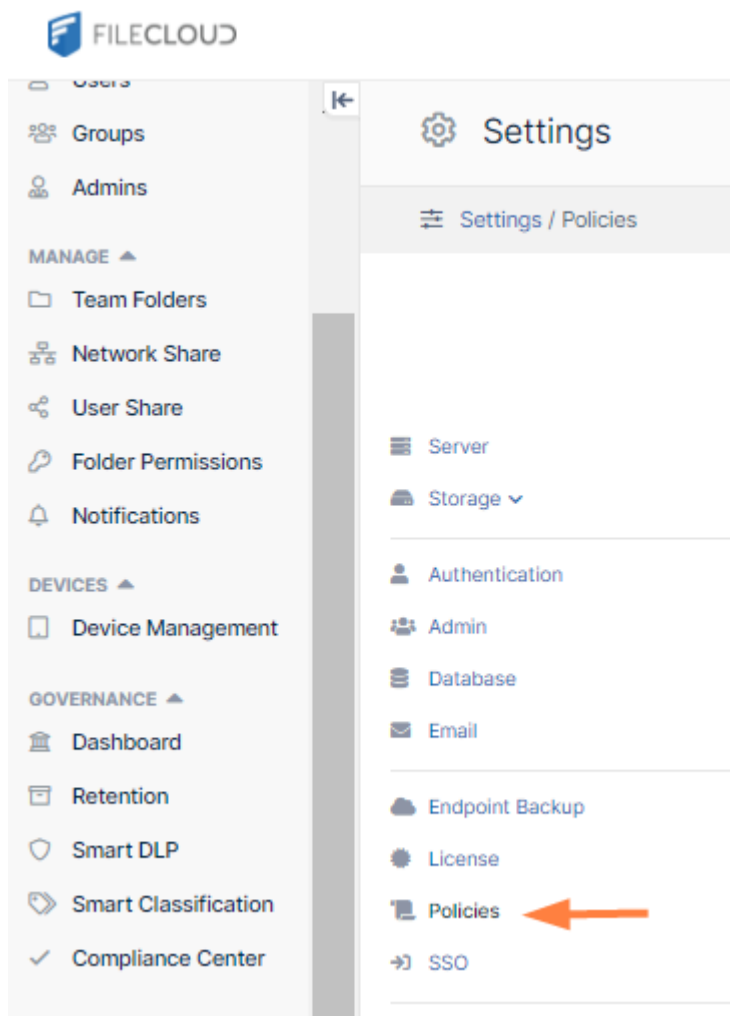
☒

Disallow changes to default share settings

☒

AND

3. In the inner navigation bar on the left of the page, click **Policies**



4. The **Policies** page opens.
5. Click the Edit icon for the policy of the users who you want to prevent from changing default share settings.

# Policies

New Policy

Create a new policy

New Policy

Policy Name	User Count	Group Count	Default	Actions
Global Default Policy	1	0		
TEAM FOLDER POLICY	1	0		

<< < Page 1 of 1 > >>

2 rows

6. Click the **User Policy** tab.
7. Scroll down to **Disallow Default Share Settings Change**, and enable it.

Enable recycle bin clearing

Allow users to clear recycle bins.

Disallow default share settings change

Do not allow users to change settings of existing shares and default settings of new shares.

Disable Everyone group sharing

8. Repeat steps 5, 6, and 7 for the policies of all users who you want to prevent from changing default share settings.

Now, for users with those policies, the **Share link** dialog box has a message at top that share settings cannot be changed, and there are no change buttons or clickable options:

Share link for file Feature List.xlsx

Share settings cannot be changed. Users and groups can be invited. For more information contact your administrator.

Share Link

http://127.0.0.1/url/umgaxuunx4mqwikf

Shared File

/jenniferp/Feature List.xlsx

Share Options

Share History

Share Name:

fJ2Y6Batbg2GzieY

Expires:

Never Expires

Change

Max number of downloads:

No Restrictions

Send Email Notifications:

Yes

Sharing Permissions:

This share is **Public**

Anyone with a link can view.

Allow Anyone with Secure Web Viewer link and a password

OK

Hide Direct Link option for shared files and folders

In the User portal, the **Direct Link** action is available when users select a file or folder in Team Folders or Shared with Me:

team folder a > HR Resources

HR Resources

9 items

Add Files and Folders

Name

Filter Items

Modified

Size

Folder A

08/24/2020 11:39:20 by demo

Direct Link

LendingInvoice.doc

LendingLoanLabels.doc

LendingLoanShippingLabels.doc

Direct Link is Ready

Copy Link

Cancel


Beginning in FileCloud 20.2, FileCloud can be configured to hide the **Direct Link** action.

Please Contact FileCloud Support to hide the action.

## Disable sharing to the Everyone group













The **Everyone** group includes all of your active Full users. If you do not want to allow sharing of files or folders with all of your users at once, you can disable sharing to the **Everyone** group.

### To disable sharing to the Everyone group:

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Policies** . The **Policies** page opens.
2. Click the Edit icon for the policy of the users who you want to prevent from sharing with the **Everyone** group.

## Policies

New Policy  
Create a new policy New Policy

Policy Name	User Count	Group Count	Default	Actions
Global Default Policy	1	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	     
TEAM FOLDER POLICY	1	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	     

« < Page 1 of 1 > »  
2 rows

3. The **Policy Settings** dialog box opens.
4. Click the **User Policy** tab.
5. Scroll down to **Disable Everyone group sharing** and enable it.

Disallow default share settings change ☐  
Do not allow users to change settings of existing shares and default settings of new shares.

**Disable Everyone group sharing** ☒

Allow group creation ☐  
Allows users to create groups from user portal

6. Click **Save**.
7. Repeat steps 2 through 5 for the policies of all users who you want to prevent from sharing with the **Everyone** group.

Now, when these users select a group to share with, the **Everyone** group does not appear.

## Default settings for public share passwords

There are several share settings that enable you to set defaults for public share passwords.

To access and configure the public share password settings:

1. Open the Share settings page.
2. Scroll down to the public share settings:

Public shares must be password protected ☐

Attach share password by default for public shares ☒  
 Attach the share password by default to emails sending share links for public shares.

Maximum file size for DRM share Units ▾ 20 MB

Public share default password length 14  
 14 is default

Require complex public share passwords ☒  
 Require strong passwords for public shares (at least one lowercase letter, at least one uppercase letter, at least one number, and at least one special character).

3. To require users to password protect public shares, enable **Public shares must be password protected**.  
 The option **Allow anyone with link** is now unavailable when a user shares a file or folder.
4. When **Attach share password by default for public shares** is set to **enabled** (the default value), share passwords are included in share link emails sent from the share. Disable the setting to avoid including share passwords in the emails.
5. **Public share default password length** is **14**. Enter a new value to change the minimum length.
6. By default, **Require complex public share passwords** is enabled. This requires share passwords to have at least one lowercase letter, one uppercase letter, one number, and one special character. To allow users to enter any combination of characters, disable the setting.

To require users to accept FileCloud Terms of Service before accessing a public share or a password-protected share, see [Terms of Service \(see page 530\)](#)


## Set the Share Mode

FileCloud allows administrators to manage file shares created by their users.

- You can choose to allow or restrict file sharing for accounts in FileCloud by setting the **Share Mode**.

- The **Share Mode** setting appears in policies on the **General** tab of a policy, and is set to **Allow All Shares** by default.

**To manage the share mode for a set of users:**

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Policies**  . The **Policies** settings page opens.
2. Click the Edit icon for the policy associated with the set of users.

## Policies

New Policy  
Create a new policy

New Policy

Policy Name	User Count	Group Count	Default	Actions
Global Default Policy	1	0		
TEAM FOLDER POLICY	1	0		

<< <

Page 1 of 1

> >>

2 rows

3. Click the **General** tab.
4. Click the **Share Mode** drop-down list, and choose one of the options. Then click **Save**.

Effective Policy: "Global Default Policy"

General2FAUser PolicyClient Application PolicyDevice ConfigurationNotifications

Some policy settings will not be applicable for Guest and External users.

General

Share Mode

Default share expiry in days

Number of days shares remain active. 0 = shares do not expire

Default max number of downloads allowed

Number of downloads allowed.

0 = maximum number of downloads is unlimited

Allow All Shares

Allow All Shares

Allow Private Shares Only

Shares Not Allowed

0

0

Option	Description
<b>Allow All Shares</b>	<p>Allows users to share any file or folder with custom permissions.</p> <p>A file or folder can be shared with:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Anyone with access to the link (Public Share). <b>No FileCloud account required.</b></li> <li>• Anyone with access to the link (Public Share) and a password. <b>No FileCloud account required.</b></li> <li>• Another user in FileCloud (Private share). <b>FileCloud account required.</b> The shared files will show up in the <b>Shared with Me</b> folder.</li> </ul>
<b>Allow Private Shares Only</b>	<p>Allows users to share any file or folder with a user that has an existing FileCloud account.</p> <p>Sharing Privately requires:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The recipient(s) to be another user in FileCloud (Private share). <b>FileCloud account required.</b> The shared files will show up in the "Shared with Me" folder.</li> <li>• An invitation to be sent to someone to create a FileCloud account so that they can access a share.</li> <li>• Users to configure the share with or without restrictions.</li> </ul>
<b>Shares Not Allowed</b>	<p>Prevents users from sharing any file or folder.</p> <p>⚠ If you choose this option, then no other sharing settings that you configure will be in effect.</p>

## Specify Sharing Expiration

Administrators can configure 3 main expiration features of a shared file or folder.

Feature	Options	Description
Number of days	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• No expiration (0)</li> <li>• Expire in a certain number of days</li> </ul>	Allow sharing to happen for a temporary time, or allow shares to exist as long as the file or folder exists.
Remove share links/shared files	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Remove the URL links to shares automatically</li> <li>• Remove shared files automatically</li> </ul>	<p>Specify what happens when a shared file or folder is no longer accessible from the Share link.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Expired URL links will be removed automatically on the next Cron run (In this case the files will not be affected.).</li> <li>• If you choose to remove files, they will be moved to the Recycle Bin on the next Cron run.</li> </ul>

Feature	Options	Description
Notifications	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Alert users with access to a share that it will expire soon</li> <li>Specify the number of days before the share expires that you want to send the email notification</li> </ul>	You can have FileCloud send email to everyone who has access to the shared file or folder.


## Set Expiration Period

### Set Expiration Days Default

You can allow users to share files and folders for as long as they exist, or you can set the number of days that a share remains active by default.

**Note:** This setting can be changed by the user unless **Disallow changes to default share settings** is set in the Share settings page.

#### To set the Share Expiry default in a policy:













1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Policies** . The **Policies** settings page opens.
2. Click the Edit icon in the row for the users' policy.

## Policies

New Policy

Create a new policy

New Policy

Policy Name	User Count	Group Count	Default	Actions
Global Default Policy	1	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	     
TEAM FOLDER POLICY	1	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	     

« < Page 1 of 1 > »

2 rows

3. Click the **General** tab.

- Change the value of the **Default Share Expiry in Days** setting.  
A value of **0** means that unless changed by a user, shares do not expire.

The screenshot shows the 'Effective Policy: "Global Default Policy"' configuration window. It has tabs for General, 2FA, User Policy, Client Application Policy, Device Configuration, and Notifications. The 'General' tab is active. A message states: 'Some policy settings will not be applicable for Guest and External users.' Under the 'General' section, there are several settings: 'Share Mode' (set to 'Allow All Shares'), 'Default share expiry in days' (set to '0', highlighted with an orange box), 'Default max number of downloads allowed' (set to '0'), 'User storage quota' (set to '2 GB'), and 'Enable Privacy Settings' (set to 'yes'). At the bottom are 'Cancel', 'Reset', and 'Save' buttons.

- Click **Save**.  
The value is only changed for users who are using this policy.


## Set Expiration Actions

### Remove Expired Shares

Expired URL links will be removed automatically on the next Cron run (In this case the files will not be affected.)

If you choose to remove files, they will be moved to the Recycle Bin on the next Cron run

**To automatically remove expired links or expired files:**

- Open the Share settings page.  
**To open the Share settings page**
  - In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Misc** .
  - In the inner navigation bar on the left of the **Settings** page, expand the **Misc** menu, and click **Share**, as shown below.

The screenshot shows the FileCloud Settings interface. On the left, a sidebar lists various settings categories. The 'Misc' category is expanded, and 'Share' is selected, indicated by an orange arrow. The main panel shows the 'Share' settings, which include a search bar, a 'Reset to defaults' button, and several configuration options:

- Default share type:** Set to 'Public Share'.
- Default max share upload size:** Set to 0 Bytes.
- Disable private sharing to groups:** Disabled (toggle off).
- Disallow changes to default share settings:** Disabled (toggle off).
- Remove expired shares:** Enabled (toggle on).
- Delete files from expired shares:** Enabled (toggle on).
- Public shares must be password protected:** Disabled (toggle off).
- Attach share password by default for public shares:** Enabled (toggle on).
- Maximum file size for DRM share:** Set to 20 MB.
- Public share default password length:** Set to 8.
- Require complex public share passwords:** Disabled (toggle off).

The Share settings page opens.

2. Enable **Removed expired shares**,

or

enable both **Remove expired shares** and **Delete files from expired shares**.

**Note:** **Delete files from expired shares** is not effective unless **Removed expired shares** is also

enabled.

## Share

[Reset to defaults](#)

### Default share type

Set the default share type of a newly created share. Applicable only when Global Share Mode is set to Allow All Shares.

Public Share

### Default max share upload size

Default upload size limit for a shared folder. Can be overridden in folder share settings. 0 = no size limit.

Units

0

Bytes

### Disable private sharing to groups



### Disallow changes to default share settings



### Remove expired shares

Remove expired user shares automatically.



### Delete files from expired shares

If you choose to remove files, they will be moved to the recycle bin on the next Cron run.

Only takes effect if Remove expired shares is checked.



3. Click **Save**.

## Send Expiration Notifications

### Alert share Users About Upcoming Expiration

You can have FileCloud send email to all of a share's recipients to notify them that the share will expire soon. You can also specify how many days before the share expires that the email notification is sent.

**To send an email alert that a share will soon expire, and to specify the number of days before expiration the email is sent:**

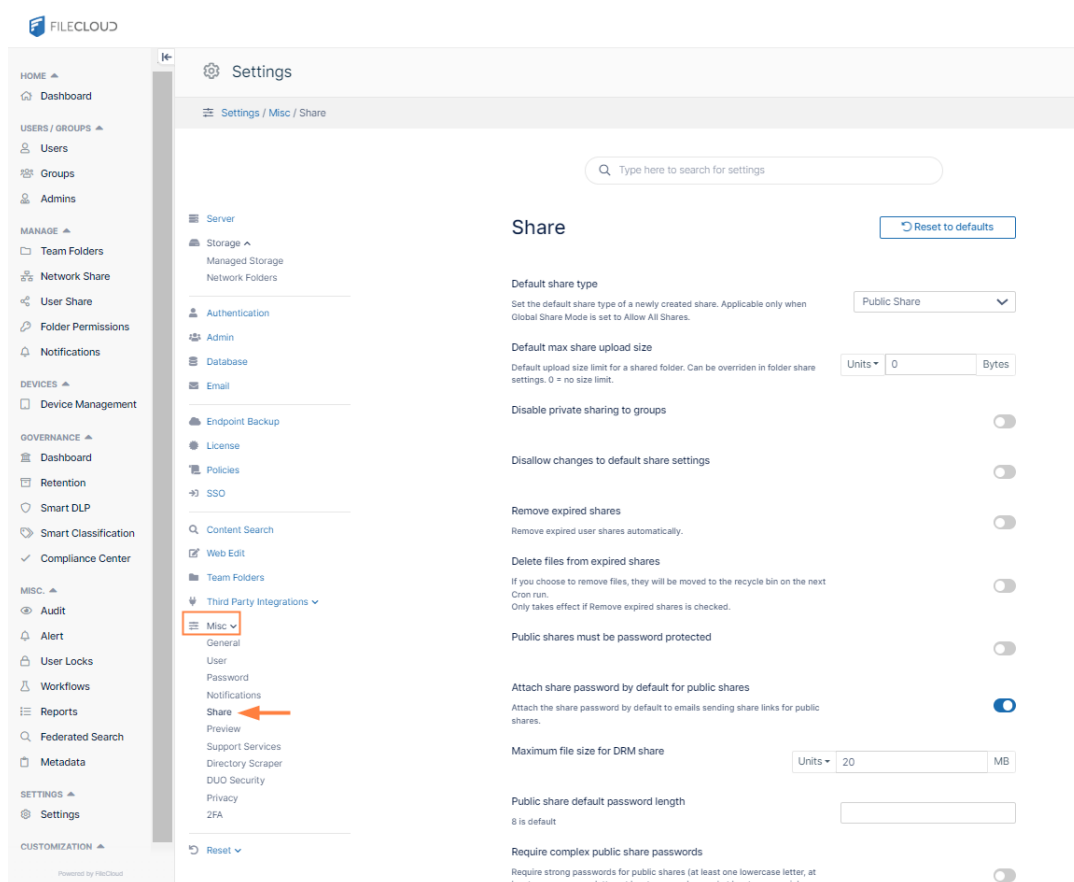
1. Open the Share settings page.

**To open the Share settings page**

a. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on

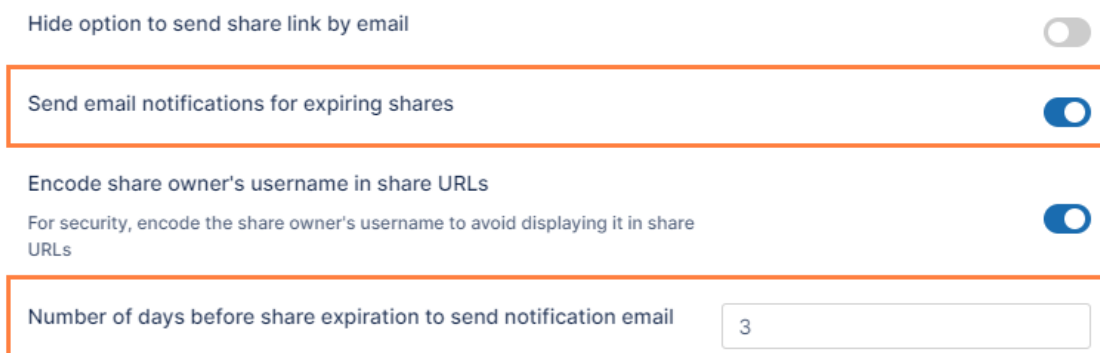
the **Settings** navigation page, click **Misc** .

b. In the inner navigation bar on the left of the **Settings** page, expand the **Misc** menu, and click **Share**, as shown below.



The Share settings page opens.

2. Scroll to the bottom of the page.
3. To send emails notifying share recipients that shares are expiring, enable **Send email notifications for expiring shares**.  
By default, the number of days before a share expires that an email is sent is **3**.
4. To change the number of days before a share expires that an email is sent, change the value in **Number of days before share expiration to send notification email**.  
This setting only applies if **Send email notifications for expiring shares** is enabled.

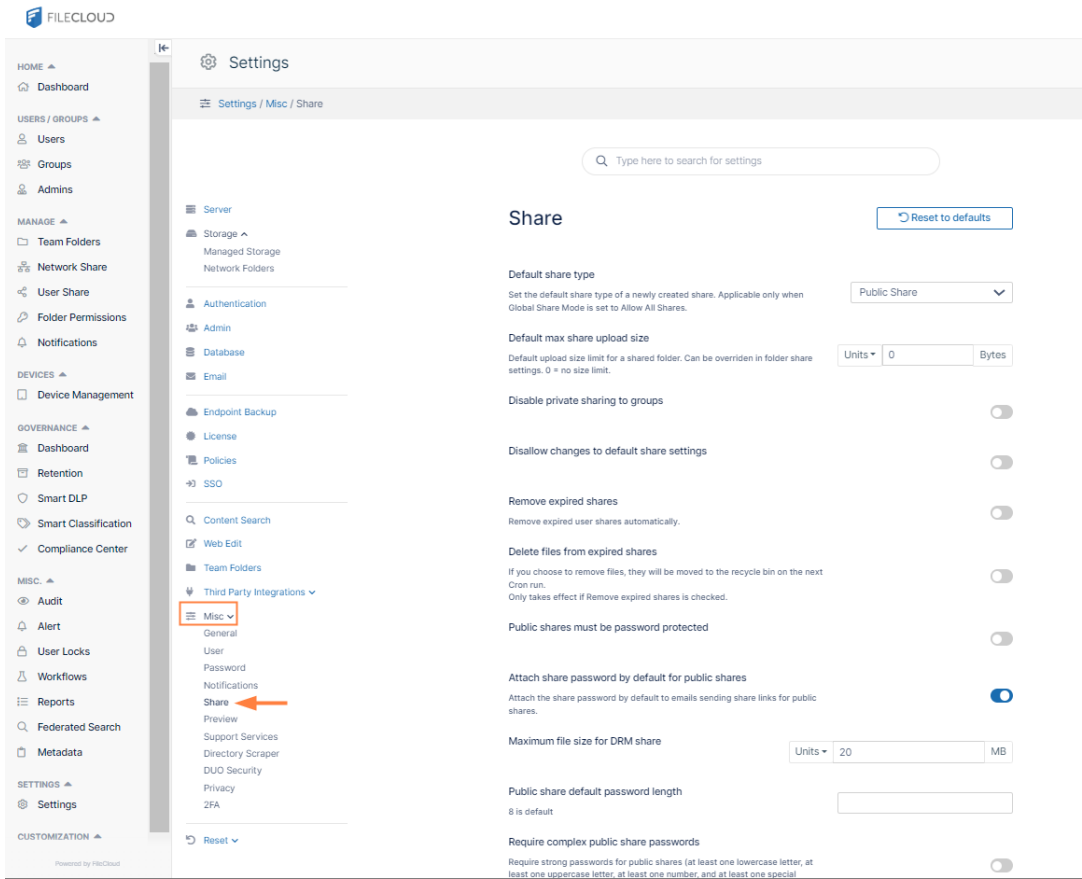


# Secure Shares

Instead of just communicating the most secure sharing procedure to your users, administrators can configure special settings to ensure a more secure environment when users are sharing files.

To password protect shares, prevent share name changes, or hide the option for sending share links by email:

- 1. Open the Share settings page.  
To open the Share settings page:
  - a. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Misc** .
  - b. In the inner navigation bar on the left of the **Settings** page, expand the **Misc** menu, and click **Share**, as shown below.



The **Share** settings page opens.

## Share

[Reset to defaults](#)

### Default share type

Set the default share type of a newly created share. Applicable only when Global Share Mode is set to Allow All Shares.

Public Share

### Default max share upload size

Default upload size limit for a shared folder. Can be overridden in folder share settings. 0 = no size limit.

Units ▾

0

Bytes

### Disable private sharing to groups



2. Configure any of the following secure share settings:

### Password Protect Shares and Require Complex Passwords

Administrators can require users to create all public shares with a password for an extra layer of security. Users cannot disable the use of passwords when this is set.

By default, FileCloud requires public share passwords of 14 characters in length that include at least one uppercase letter, at least one lowercase letter, at least one number, and at least one special character. Administrators may change these settings.

Public shares must be password protected



Attach share password by default for public shares



Attach the share password by default to emails sending share links for public shares.

Maximum file size for DRM share

Units ▾

20

MB

Public share default password length

14 is default

14

Require complex public share passwords



Require strong passwords for public shares (at least one lowercase letter, at least one uppercase letter, at least one number, and at least one special character).

### To require strong password protection:

1. In the **Share** settings page, scroll down to the password settings.
2. Enable **Public shares must be password protected**.

3. Leave **Public share default password length** at **14**, or change it to another number.
4. Leave **Require complex public share passwords** enabled.

### Disallow Share Name Change




For security reasons, shares have a randomly generated name that is created by default.

- Randomly generated names are more difficult for attackers to guess.
- Randomly generated names do not expose user names or a description of the data.

This is how the randomly generated name looks in the user portal when creating a share:

Share link for customerid.docx

Share Link

http://127.0.0.1/url/bjyph2xrabuphuhr [Modify Link](#)   

Shared File

/jenniferp/DI 19-20/Documents/customerid.docx

Share Options

Share History

Share Name: ePvq0eFpt11glFAT [Change](#)

Expires: Never

Max number of downloads: No Restrictions

Send Email Notifications: Yes

Sharing Permissions:

☒ Allow anyone with link

☐ Allow anyone with link and a password

☐ Allow selected users or groups

Remove Share

OK

By default, users may change randomly generated share names to custom names. However, you may prevent users from changing share names.

### To prevent users from changing randomly generated share names:

1. In the **Share** settings page, scroll down to the setting **Disallow share name change**, and enable it.

Disallow share name change

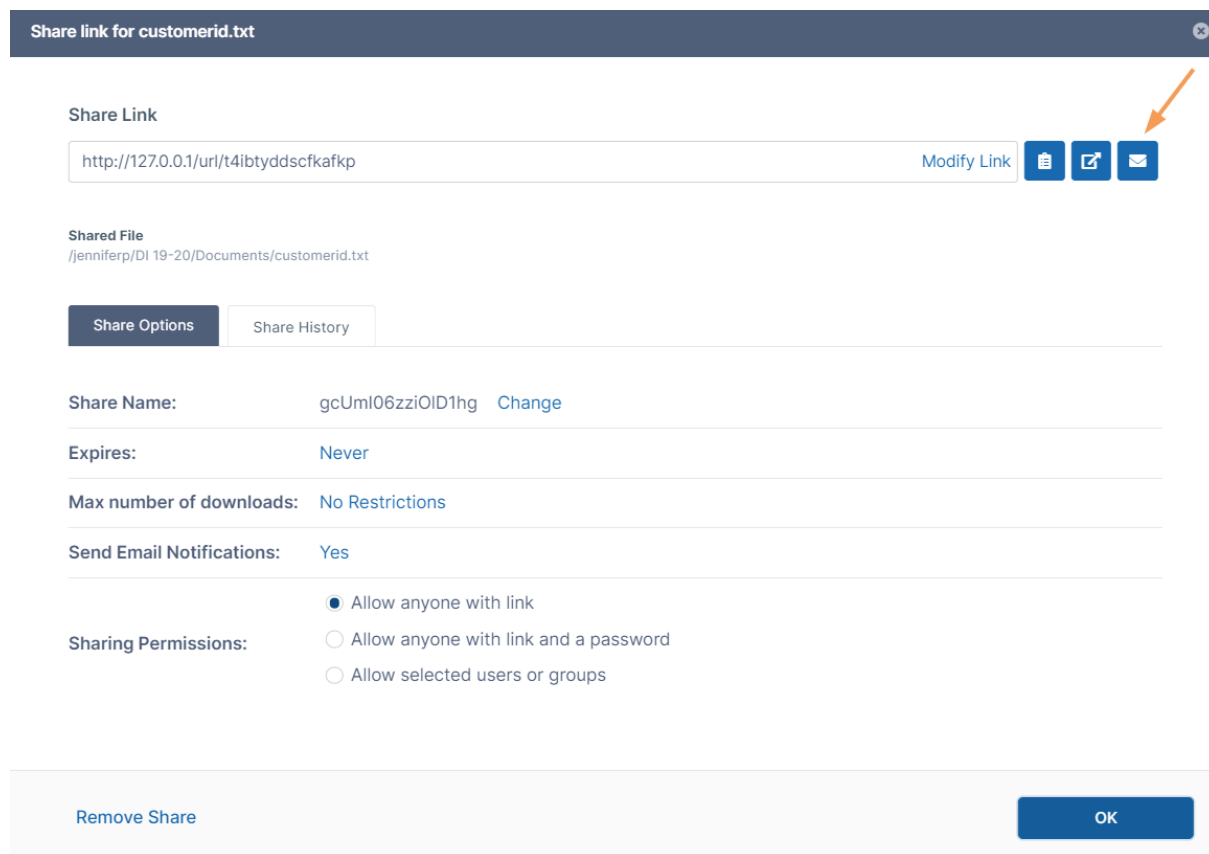
Don't allow users to change autogenerated share names.



2. Click **Save**.




## Hide Send Share Link Via Email

Users can send a share link by email by clicking the mail icon shown in the following image. To secure share links, you can hide the mail icon to make it unavailable to users.



Share link for customerid.txt

Share Link

<http://127.0.0.1/url/t4ibtyddscfkafkp> [Modify Link](#)   

Shared File

/jenniferp/DI 19-20/Documents/customerid.txt

Share Options [Share History](#)

Share Name: gcUml06zziOID1hg [Change](#)

Expires: [Never](#)

Max number of downloads: [No Restrictions](#)

Send Email Notifications: [Yes](#)

Sharing Permissions:

- ☒ Allow anyone with link
- ☐ Allow anyone with link and a password
- ☐ Allow selected users or groups

[Remove Share](#) [OK](#)

**To hide the option for sending a link to the share in email:**

1. In the **Share** settings page, scroll down to the setting **Hide option to send share link by email**, and enable it.

Hide option to send share link by email



2. Click **Save**.

**To limit user account searches:**



### Limit User Account Searches

You can limit how users search for other user accounts.

By default, when user1 shares a file or folder with user2, user1 can search for user2's account by the user name or email id. The search results list both exact and partial matches.

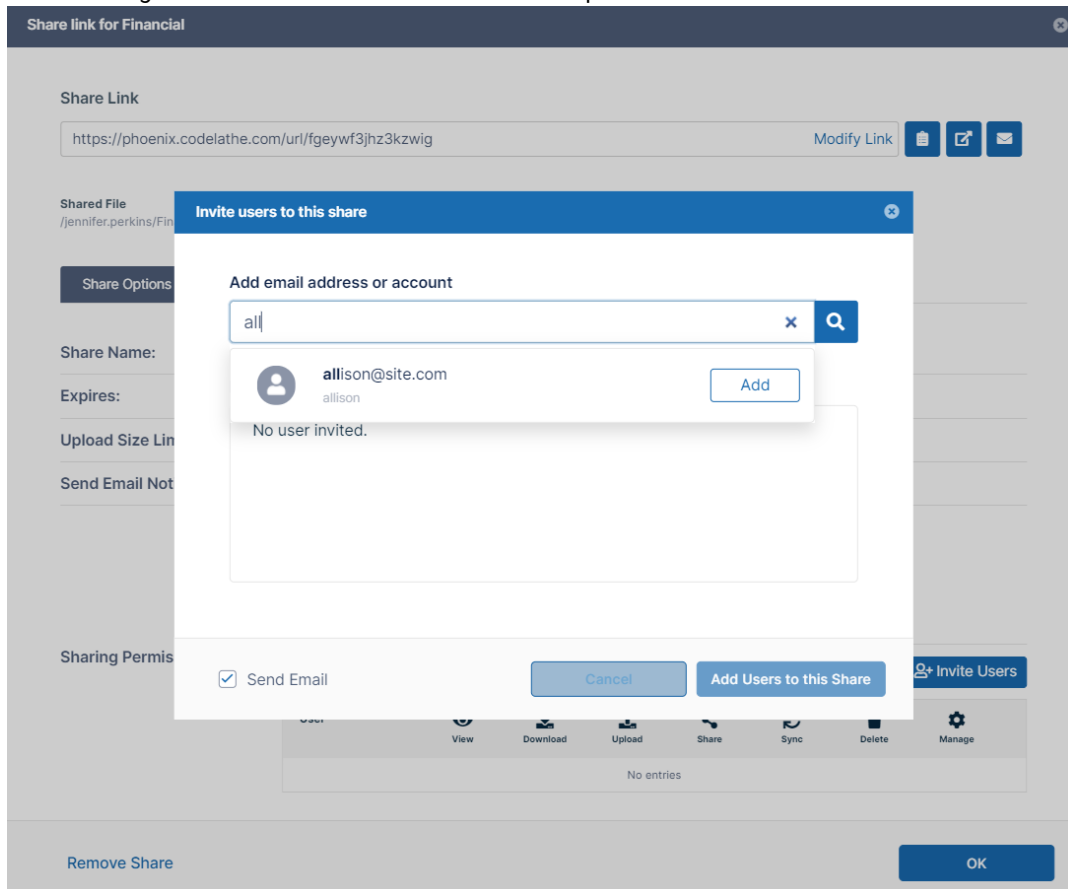
However, this is not desirable in certain cases and organizations, as the search results reveal user accounts that exist in the FileCloud system.

Therefore, FileCloud allows you to restrict user searches using two search modes:

User Account	User Account Type
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Exact Email Search With Explicit Account Invite</li> <li>Exact Email Search With Implicit Account Invite</li> <li>Exact Name/Email Search</li> <li>Partial Name/Email Search</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ALL</li> <li>FULL</li> <li>GUEST</li> <li>EXTERNAL</li> </ul>
 How to enable <a href="#">User Account Search Mode</a> (see page 406)	 How to enable User Search Account Type (see page 408)
<p><b>NOTE:</b> You can use these search limitations together.</p> <p>For example, you can set the <b>User Account Search Mode</b> to <b>Partial Name/Email Search</b>, and then use the <b>User Account Type</b> search mode to limit the results to only accounts with FULL access.</p>	

**Note**

Using a search mode limits account searches for all the users in the FileCloud system. These settings affect searches in shares for share recipients.



Share link for Financial

Share Link  
https://phoenix.codelathe.com/url/fgeywf3jhz3kzwig Modify Link

Shared File  
/jennifer.perkins/Fin

Share Options

Share Name:

Expires:

Upload Size Limit

Send Email Notification

Sharing Permissions

☒ Send Email

Cancel Add Users to this Share Invite Users

View Download Upload Share Sync Delete Manage

No entries

Remove Share OK

**To make it clearer which user has shared a file:**

**Use Display Name as well as User Account Name**

To make it clearer which user has shared a file, you can change how a user name is displayed in sharing details.

## **How user names are defined in FileCloud**

In the admin portal, when you create a user, you set 2 different names.

### **1. User name**

- In the user portal, by default, FileCloud displays the **User name**.
- It may not be clear to users who is sharing the file with them, especially if **User name** includes only abbreviations and numbers.
- The **User name** cannot be changed after the user has been created.

### **2. Display name**

- You can have FileCloud use the **Display name** as well as the **User name** on the **Details** tab when showing the share information.
- Using the **Display name** makes it clearer to users who is sharing the file with them.
- The **Display name** can be changed after the user has been created.

Add User ✕

Authentication

Default Authentication

Access Level

Full

User name\*

elin frei

Display Name

Elin

Password\*

.....

Email

efrei@example.com

Send Email Notification

☒

Include Password in Email

☒

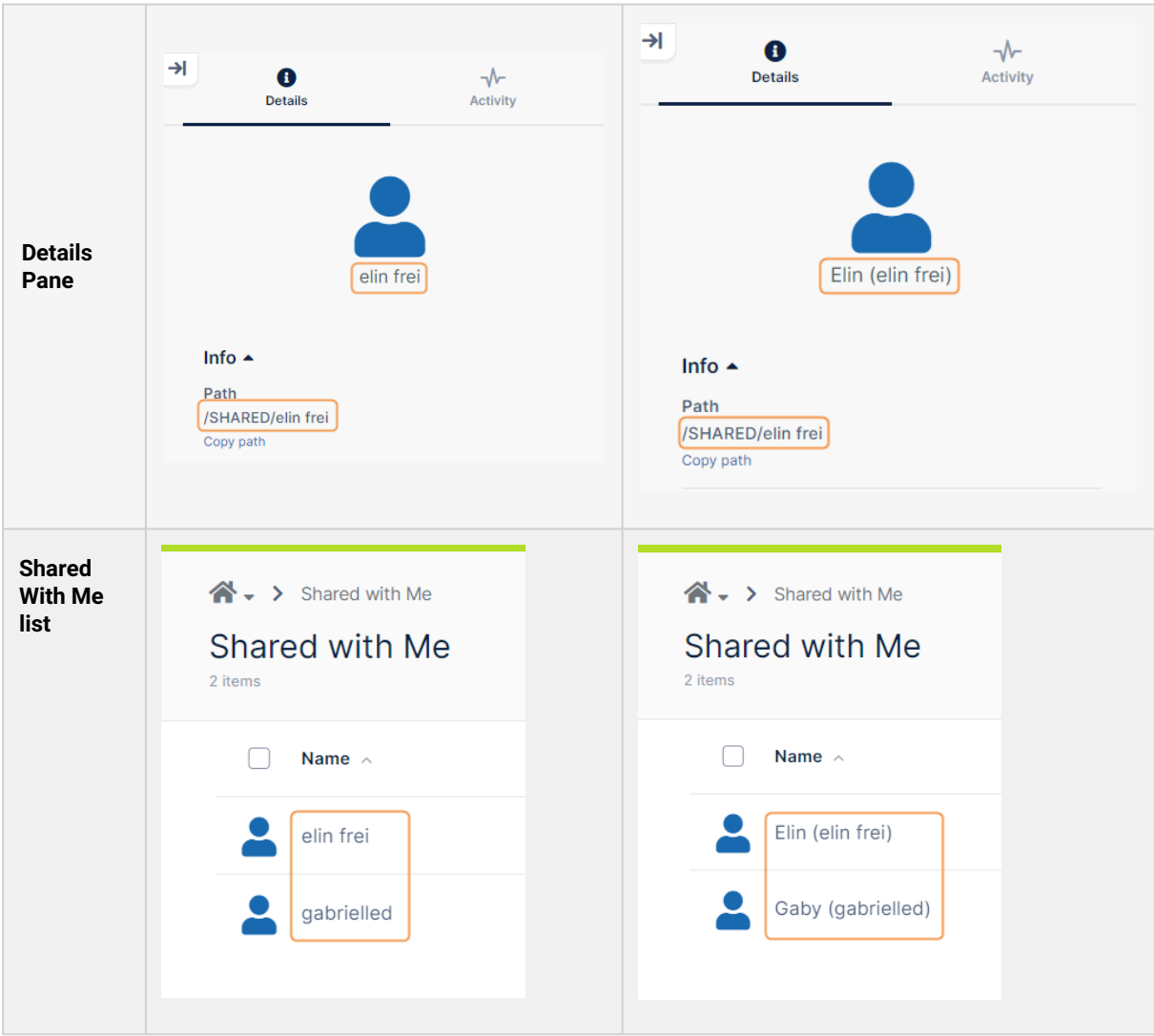
Create

Close

Where Your Changes Appear

In the user portal, the user's name is displayed differently after you change the default display to include the **Display name**.

	BEFORE (User Name)	AFTER (Display Name and User Name)
--	--------------------	------------------------------------



## User Account Search Mode

For security reasons, you can restrict user searches so that your users have to know the exact email address of the person they want to add to a share or a workflow. Alternatively, you can set this option to allow users to search for another user with just a known partial email address.

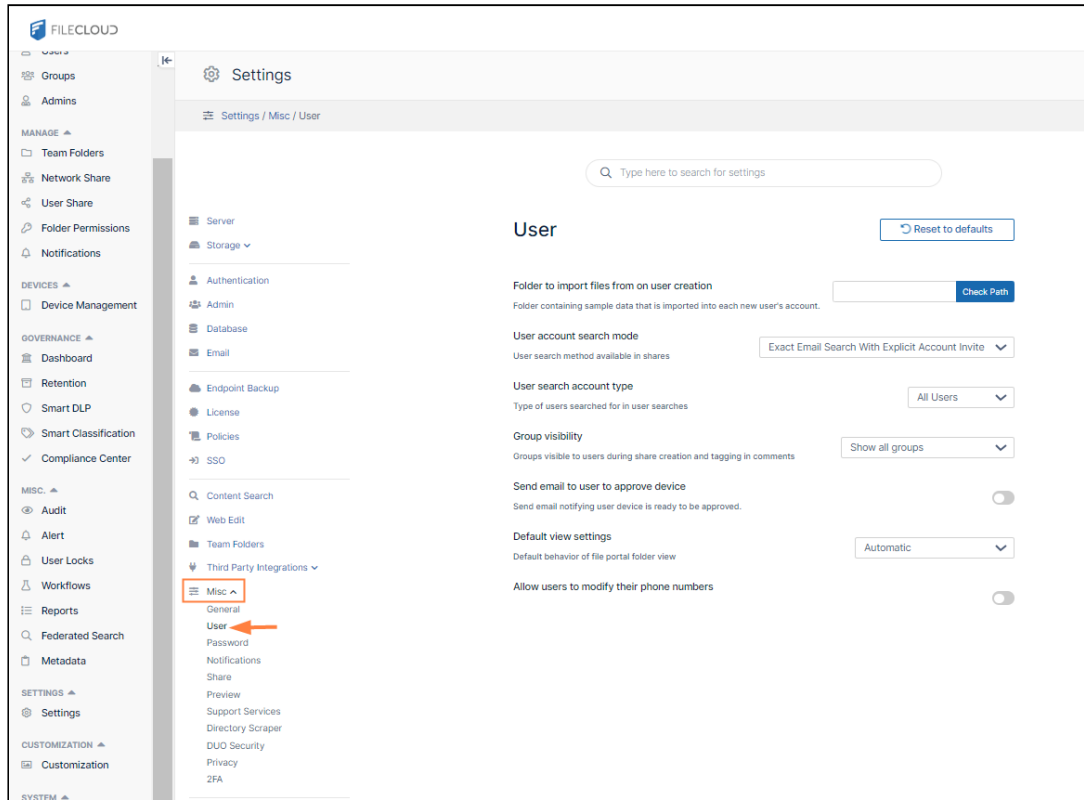
To access the User Account Search Mode Settings:

1. Open the **User** settings page.

To open the User settings page:

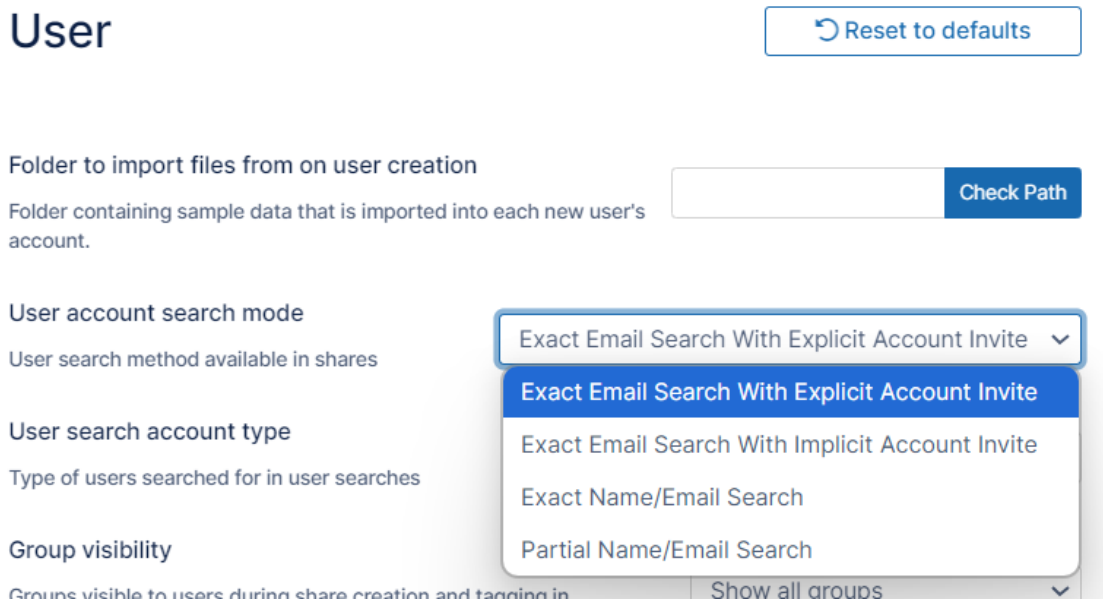
- a. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Misc** .

- b. In the inner navigation bar on the left of the **Settings** page, expand the **Misc** menu, and click **User**, as shown below.



The **User** settings page opens.

2. Click the **User account search mode** drop-down list:



3. Choose a search mode, and click **Save**.

Search Mode	Example	When this search mode is set by admin, the following behavior will be seen during sharing by users:
Exact Email Search With Explicit Account Invite	<a href="mailto:JoeCarpenter@MyFileCloud.com">JoeCarpenter@MyFileCloud.com</a> <sup>45</sup>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Only email search is allowed</li> <li>If the email doesn't exist in the system, an explicit invite option will be shown</li> <li>With this option, a user may still figure out other users that exist in the system</li> </ul>
Exact Email Search With Implicit Account Invite	<a href="mailto:JoeCarpenter@MyFileCloud.com">JoeCarpenter@MyFileCloud.com</a> <sup>46</sup>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Only email search is allowed</li> <li>If the email doesn't exist in the system, then the system will send an invite to the entered email address without notifying the user</li> <li>With this option, a user cannot figure out other users that exist in the system</li> </ul>
Exact Name / Email Search	Joe Carpenter	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Both name and email search is allowed</li> <li>No partial matches are allowed.</li> <li>If the name doesn't exist in the system, the system will not give the user option to invite the specified user</li> <li>If the email doesn't exist in the system, the system will give the user option to invite the specified user</li> </ul>
Partial Name / Email Search	Joe C	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Both name and email search is allowed</li> <li>Partial matches are allowed</li> <li>If the name doesn't exist in the system, the system will not give the user option to invite the specified user</li> <li>If the searched email doesn't exist in the system, the system will give the user option to invite the specified user</li> </ul>

## User Search Account Type

For security reasons, you can restrict user searches so that your users can only search for user accounts that are assigned a specific level of access.

**To access the User search account type setting:**


1. Open the **User settings** page.

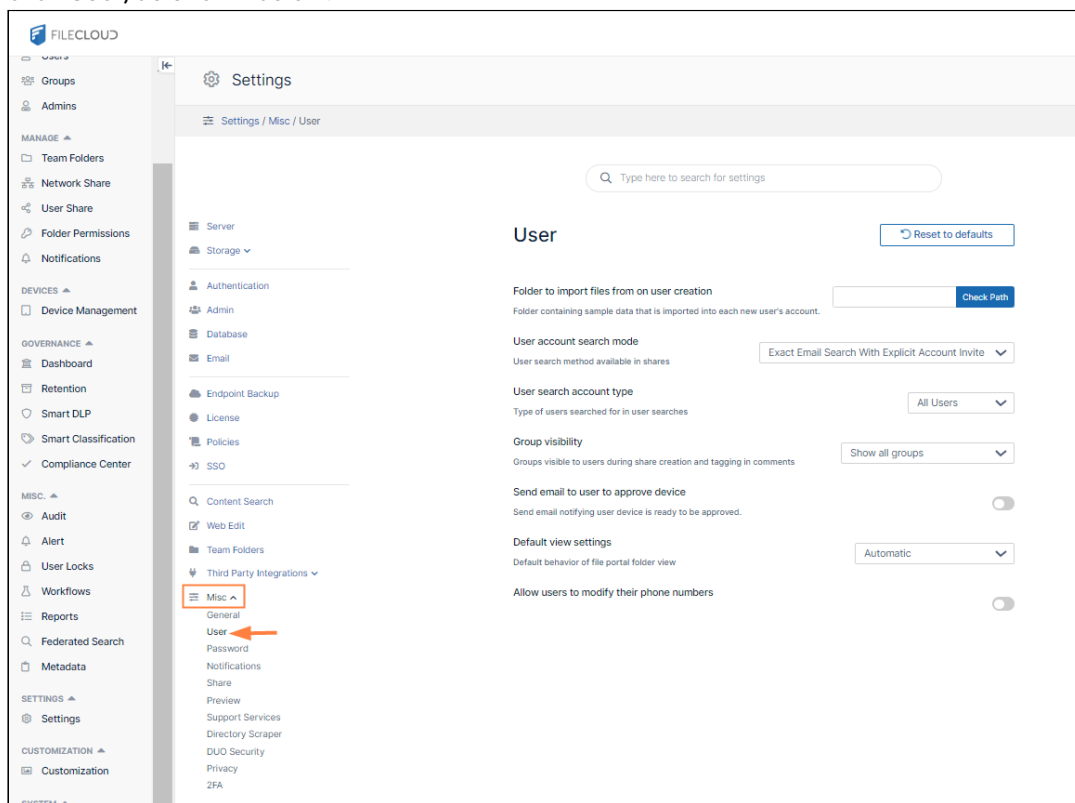
**To open the User settings page:**

---

45. <mailto:JoeCarpenter@MyFileCloud.com>

46. <mailto:JoeCarpenter@MyFileCloud.com>

- a. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Misc** .
- b. In the inner navigation bar on the left of the **Settings** page, expand the **Misc** menu, and click **User**, as shown below.



The **User** settings page opens.

2. Click the **User search account type** drop-down list:

**User** [Reset to defaults](#)

Folder to import files from on user creation  
Folder containing sample data that is imported into each new user's account.  [Check Path](#)

User account search mode  
User search method available in shares [Exact Email Search With Explicit Account Invite](#) ▾

User search account type  
Type of users searched for in user searches

Group visibility  
Groups visible to users during share creation and tagging in comments [Show all groups](#)

[Send email to user to approve device](#)

**User search account type dropdown menu:**

- All Users (selected)
- Full Users
- Guest Users
- External Users

3. Choose the account type to search on, and click **Save**.

User account type	Level of access
ALL	No restriction of account searches
FULL	<p>An account with full access has its own private cloud storage space in the "My Files" area.</p> <p>These users can:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>store files in their own private cloud storage space</li> <li>view/download files stored in their storage space</li> <li>view/download files shared with them by other user accounts</li> </ul>
GUEST	<p>An account with guest access level has restricted access to the FileCloud system.</p> <p>These user accounts do not have private cloud storage. These users can:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>view/upload/download files shared to them by other user accounts</li> <li>re-share content if they have permission</li> </ul>
EXTERNAL	<p>An account that can only be used to access the User Portal through a Web browser.</p> <p>External Accounts can:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>view/upload/download content shared with them</li> </ul> <p>External Access accounts can only be local user accounts.</p>

# Document Settings

In this section:

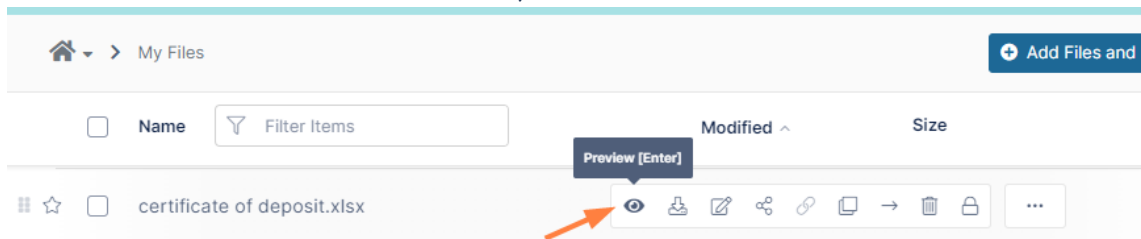
- (23.253) Setting up Content Search for Documents
- [Setting Up Document Preview \(see page 411\)](#)
- [Enabling Watermarks On Previews \(see page 412\)](#)
- [Import Files : Pre-seeding \(see page 418\)](#)
- (23.253) Enabling ASCII Sort order for Listings of Users, Files and Folders
- (23.253) Enabling PDF Merge
- [Optimize PDF Preview \(see page 420\)](#)
- [Managing File Extensions \(see page 423\)](#)
- [Restricting File Names \(see page 427\)](#)
- [Manage File Versioning \(see page 428\)](#)
- [Configuring Zip Files and Zero Trust File Sharing \(see page 431\)](#)

## Setting Up Document Preview

When users preview supported file types directly in the User Portal through the web browser, they can see part of the file without having to install the application that created it.

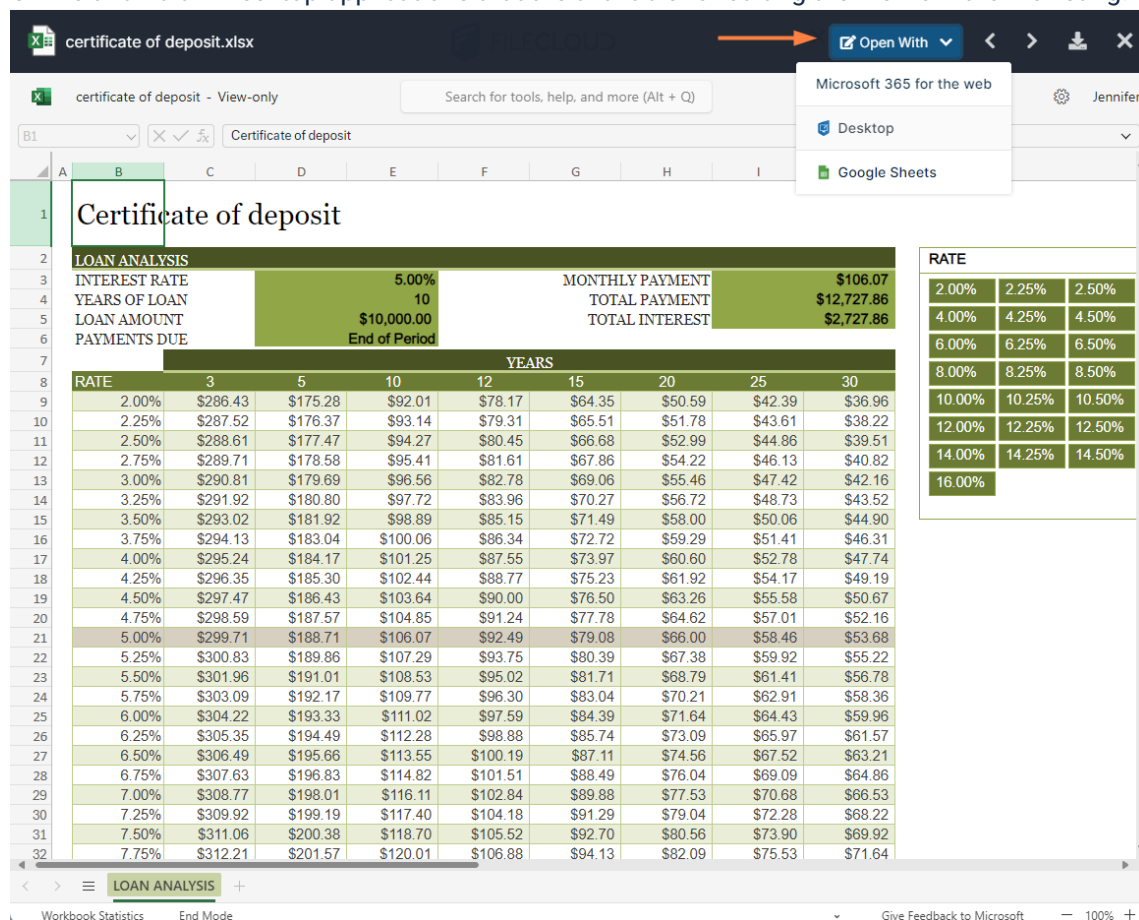
This type of preview commonly uses the Quick JS Preview feature which enables previewing of DOCX, PPTX, XLSX, and PDF files when DocConverter is enabled. See LibreOffice Windows Instructions.

1. When a user selects a file in the User Portal, a Preview button becomes available.



2. When the user clicks the **Preview** button, a separate window opens showing an image of the file. Beginning in FileCloud 22.1, many of the previews can be edited with the same Web edit/Office

Online and Edit in Desktop applications that are available for editing the file from the file listing.



To include watermarks on previewed documents, see [Enabling Watermarks On Previews](#) (see page 412)

## Enabling Watermarks On Previews

Administrators can add watermarks to all previews generated in FileCloud.



The options of applying multiline watermarks and choosing a font size are available in FileCloud 23.251 and later.




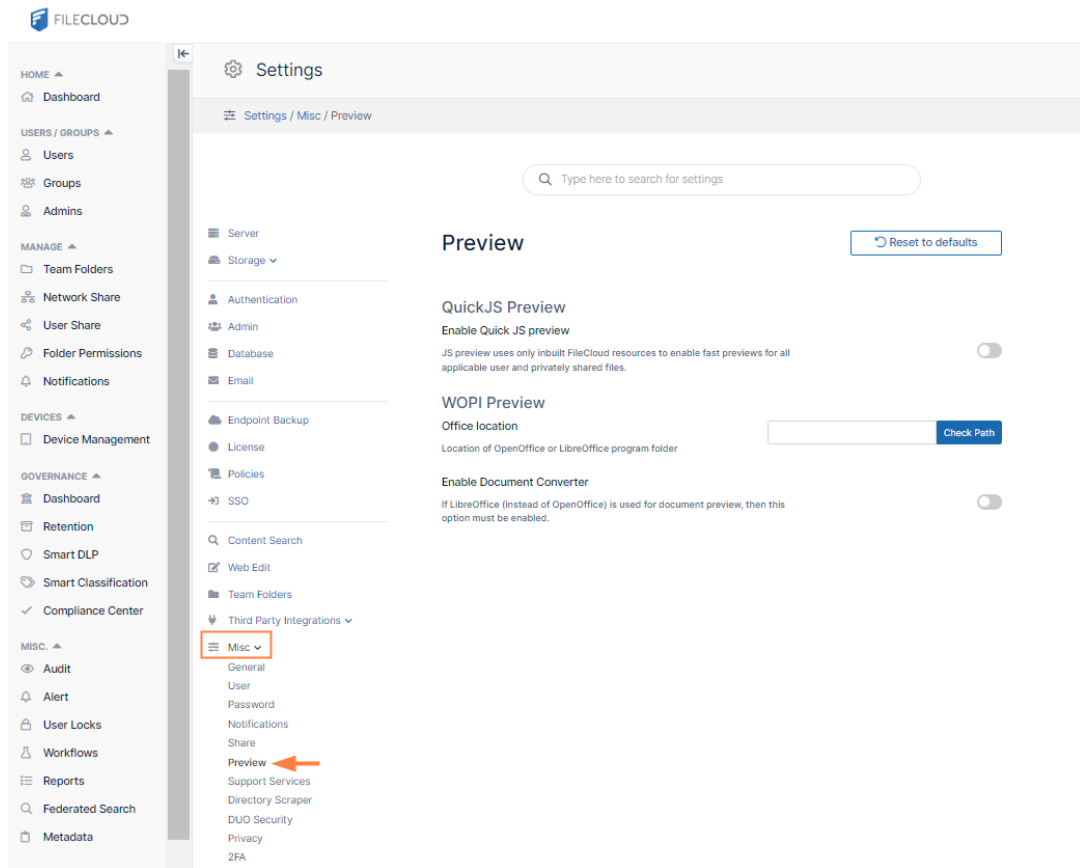
Password protected PDF previews are not showing watermarks. This is an issue with the third-party application used for previewing PDFs, and will be resolved when an update of the application becomes available.

Example of a single line (default) watermark on a document preview in the admin and user portals.

DESCRIPTION	QUANTITY	UNIT PRICE	SUBTOTAL
ITEM DESCRIPTION	1	100000	100000
		SUBTOTAL	: 100000
		TAX	: 10000
		TOTAL	: 110000
TERMS:			
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>This is a computer generated invoice and does not require signature.</li></ul>			
THANK YOU FOR YOUR PURCHASE.			

To display watermarks for previews:

1. Open the Preview settings page.
  - a. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Misc** .
  - b. In the inner navigation bar on the left of the **Settings** page, expand the **Misc** menu, and click **Preview**, as shown below.



The **Preview** settings page opens.

- c. In **Anonymous access watermark**, type in the text, including any of the parameters listed below, that you want embedded on previews by anonymous users. **Anonymous access watermarks** appear to unauthorized users (users viewing public shares).
- d. In **Authorized access watermark**, type in the text, including any of the parameters listed below, that you want embedded on previews by authorized users.
- e. In **Watermark font size**, choose a font size.
- f. In **Watermark template**:

- Leave **Default** if you want the watermark to appear in one line across each page of the document.
- Choose **Multiline** if you want the watermark to appear repeatedly in multiple line across each page of the document.

**Watermark preview** displays a sample of how your watermark would appear on previewed pages. You may change the settings before saving, and the preview will reflect your unsaved changes.

## Preview

 Reset to defaults

### QuickJS Preview

#### Anonymous access watermark

Enter a string to appear as a watermark on anonymously (publicly shared) previewed files.

Viewed by ^USERNAME^ at ^DATE

#### Authorized access watermark

Enter a string to appear as a watermark on files previewed by authorized users.

Viewed by ^USERNAME^ at ^LICEN

#### Watermark font size

Select a font size for the watermark.

Medium 

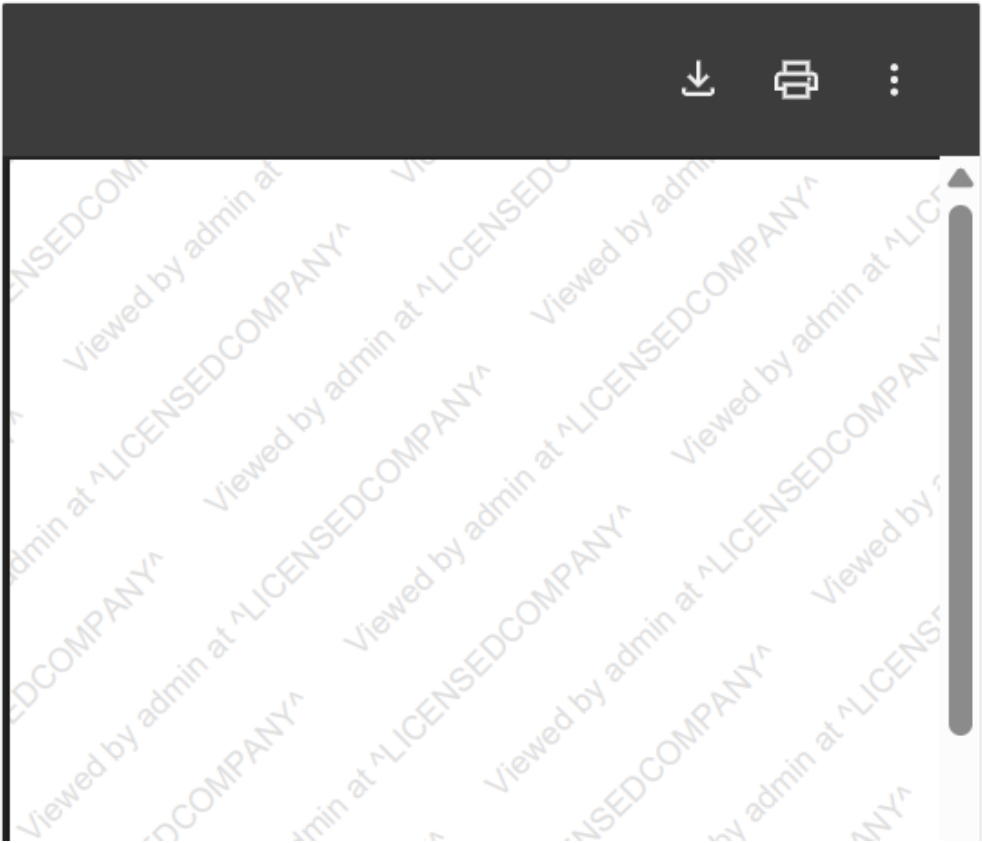
#### Watermark template

Select a template for the watermark.

Multiline 

#### Watermark preview

Preview the watermark on a file using the "Authorized access watermark" and "Watermark template" settings.



**Available parameters:**

^USERNAME^ - The user who is viewing this file.

**^SHARE\_OWNER^** - The user who shared this file.

**^FILE\_OWNER^** - The file owner.

**^OWNER^** - If this is a shared file, the user who shared this file. If this is not a shared file, the file owner.

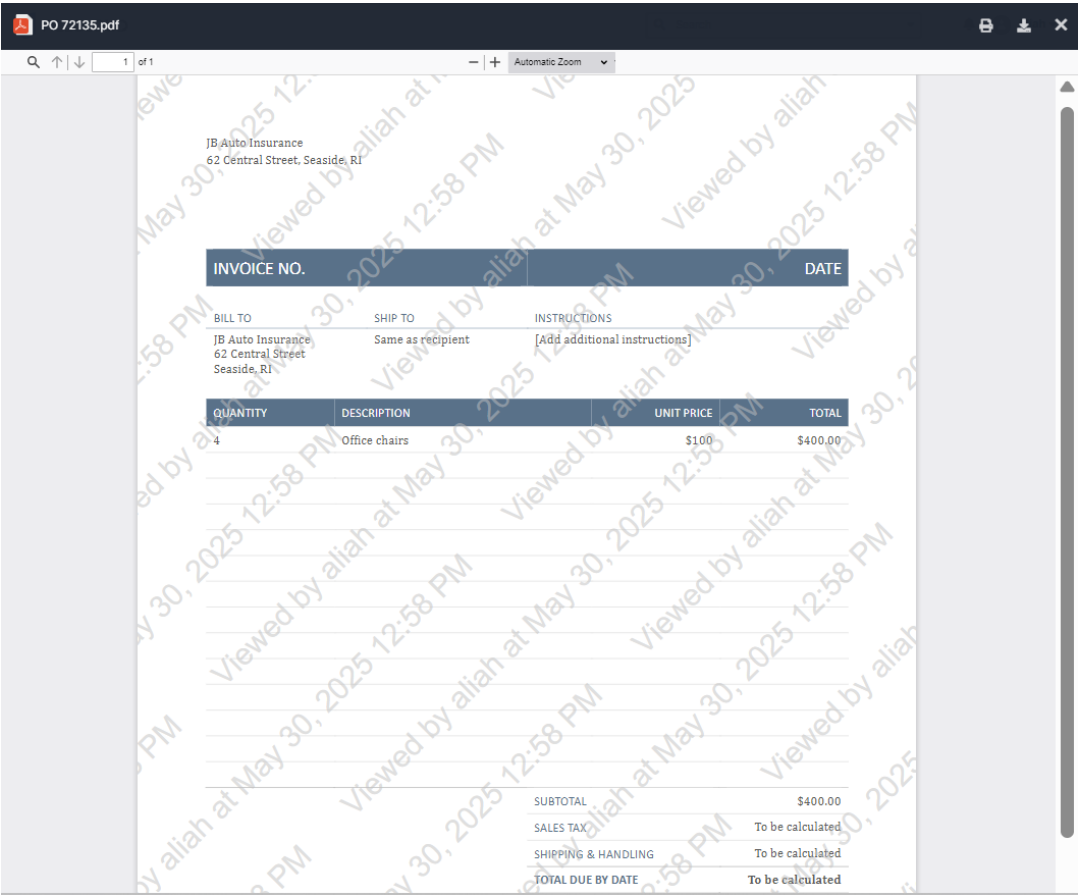
**^DATETIME^** - Date and time of preview.

**^GEOIP\_LOCATION^** - Geographic location of IP performing preview.

**^LICENSED\_COMPANY^** - The company listed on the current license.

**^PREVIEW\_ID^** - An encrypted ID that can be used in place of **^USERNAME^**. The encrypted ID appears on the file preview. Admins can identify the user (and the device's IP address) by viewing the audit log for the preview action. Note that if the user previews the file additional times, it will have different preview IDs each time.

Now whenever a user previews a document, they see the watermark for anonymous or authorized access embedded in the preview.



Displaying an encrypted User ID in the a watermark

To display an encrypted User ID instead of the actual User ID in a watermark:

- 1. In the Preview settings page, use the parameter **^PREVIEW\_ID^** instead of **^USERNAME^** in the field **Anonymous access watermark** or **Authorized access watermark**:

Anonymous access watermark

Enter a string to appear as a watermark on anonymously (publicly shared) previewed files.

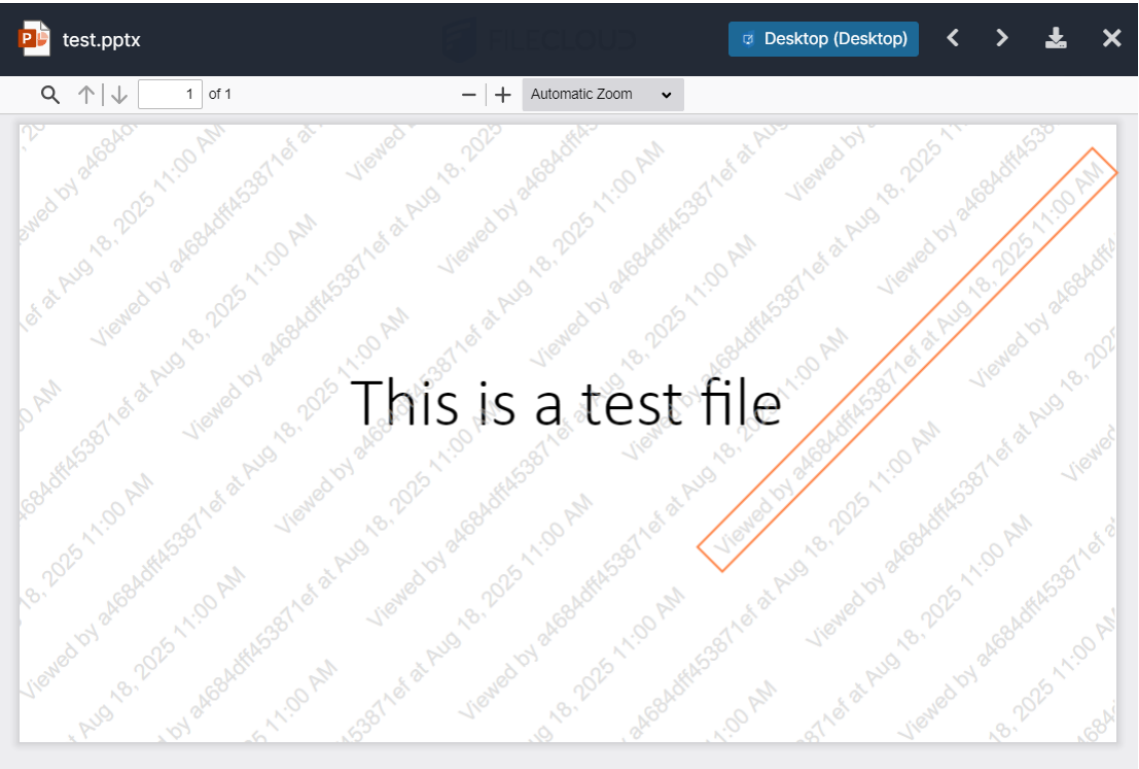
Viewed by ^PREVIEW\_ID^ at ^DATE

Authorized access watermark

Enter a string to appear as a watermark on files previewed by authorized users.

Viewed by ^PREVIEW\_ID^ at ^DATE

This produces a preview with a watermark like the following one:



Note that if the user previews the file additional times, it will have different preview IDs each time.

- 2. To identify the user who previewed the file, go to the Audit Logs, and locate the log with the encrypted ID in the message. The message will identify the actual user who previewed the file, and, as with any audit log record, the IP address of the device where the action was performed.

User Name	Message	IP	Agent	Created On
tester	tester previewed file /tester/tester-sample/FCD.xlsx with watermark: Viewed by 3c8155ee13d9e5a7 at Aug 18, 2025 11:18 AM	139.162.50.236	Web browser	2025-Aug-18 11:18 AM

## Import Files : Pre-seeding

Administrators can import files to managed storage configuration to prepare FileCloud for users.

### ⚠ NOTES:

- During the seeding operation, the system is operating under a special mode and user access must not be allowed (though it is not prevented automatically).
- Therefore, ideally, seeding should be done during initial system setup.

## Import Files into Local Managed Storage

### Prerequisite:

In order for the data to be imported, the following conditions must be met.

1. The data must be in locally accessible disk. Ideally, the data must reside in the same drive as the managed storage (for example, if managed storage is in C:\fileclouddata, then the import data must also be in C: drive)
2. The data must be in following structure. <ImportPath><users><data>. For example, if you have four users, bshepard, jsmith, mjackson, sjane, then the structure should be:

fcimport	subfolder1	5/18/2017 11:12 AM	File folder	
bshepard	file1.txt	5/18/2017 11:12 AM	Text Document	0 KB
jsmith	file2.txt	5/18/2017 11:12 AM	Text Document	0 KB
mjackson	file3.txt	5/18/2017 11:12 AM	Text Document	0 KB
sjane				

3. The users must already be created in the system (bshepard, jsmith, mjackson, sjane must already be valid full users in the system).
4. The users must have enough quota assigned to allow the data import.

### To import files into local managed storage:

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Misc** UNKNOWN ATTACHMENT. By default, **General** settings are opened.
2. Scroll down to **Import Files**, and click the **Import Files** button.

**Scheduled tasks**

Manually execute scheduled tasks which are normally run using cron. Run

---

**Import files**

Import files into managed storage. Import Files

---


**Allowed file extensions**

Only files with these extensions are uploaded. Use '

- On the **Import files into managed storage** dialog box, in **File Import Path**, type the location to the files you want to import in the format **C:\importpath** or **\import\data**.

Import files into managed storage

File import path


**WARNING: DO NOT PERFORM ANY USER LOGINS AND FILE ACCESS DURING SEEDING OPERATION**

Path must have the following structure IMPORTPATH/USERNAME/USERDATA. All top level folders in the upload folder should match an existing username in the system.

- Last import start time:
- Last import end time:
- Last import count:

Import

Close

- Click **Import**.

## Import Files into S3 Managed Storage

Prerequisite:

In order for the data to be imported, the following conditions must be met

- The data must be in a bucket that is accessible with the same credentials as the Managed Storage bucket
- Both Managed Storage as well as the seeding bucket should not have encryption enabled.
- The data must be in following structure. <Toplevel Folder><List of valid user account folders><data for each of the folder>
- The users must already be created in the system with full user status.
- The users must have enough quota assigned to allow the data import.

### To import files into S3 managed storage:

- In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Misc** **UNKNOWN ATTACHMENT**. By default, **General** settings are opened.
- Scroll down to **Import Files**, and click the **Import Files** button.

**Scheduled tasks**

Manually execute scheduled tasks which are normally run using cron. Run

---

**Import files** Import Files

Import files into managed storage.

**Allowed file extensions**

Only files with these extensions are uploaded. Use '

3. On the **Import files into managed storage** dialog box, fill in the fields as follows:
- File import path** - The originating folder of the content to be imported.
- Bucket** - the name of the bucket that contains the files you want to import.
- S3 folder name** - the name of the top level folder in the bucket that contains the files you want to import.

**Import files into managed storage** ✕

File import path

Bucket

S3 folder name

Submit Close

4. Click **Submit**.

## Optimize PDF Preview

Administrators can configure FileCloud to show a preview of PDF files directly in the User Portal without forcing a user to download the file first.

This is configured when you [Set Up Document Preview](#) (see page 410).

### How users experience PDF previews

If you choose to allow previews of PDF files, you should be aware of what the user's experience will be on the user portal.

In some cases, viewing PDF files can take more time than expected.

The time it takes to generate a preview of a PDF depends on the how the file is created.

In general, a PDF can be categorized in to two main types:

- Native (quicker)
- Scanned (slower)

### **Why is a Native PDF quicker to preview?**

## **Native**

Information is saved as text when you save a file as PDF if you have created the file from the following sources:

- A word processing program such as Microsoft Word, Excel or PowerPoint
- A browser page printed to PDF
- A file saved directly from PDF generation software such as Nitro PDF, Adobe PDF, etc.

When information is saved as text, searching, copying, and other text-based operations on the PDF are quicker.

💡 It also takes less time to generate a preview of a native PDF file than a scanned PDF file.

## **Scanned**

When PDFs are created from scanning, there is no information about the content because the PDF file just serves as a container of images.

💡 While this format is useful when the objective is to showcase graphics material, the rendering of this file can take a long time.

When a scanned PDF needs to be previewed in FileCloud:

1. The client's User Portal needs to check the entire PDF embedded text to allow search, copy or any other text based operations.
2. This text processing operation is done at the moment when the client's User Portal requests a preview.
3. The processing on the client-side portal can make the preview loading slow for general use.

If you have a scanned PDF file that has been created from one of the following sources, your best option is to convert the file to native PDF before uploading it to FileCloud:

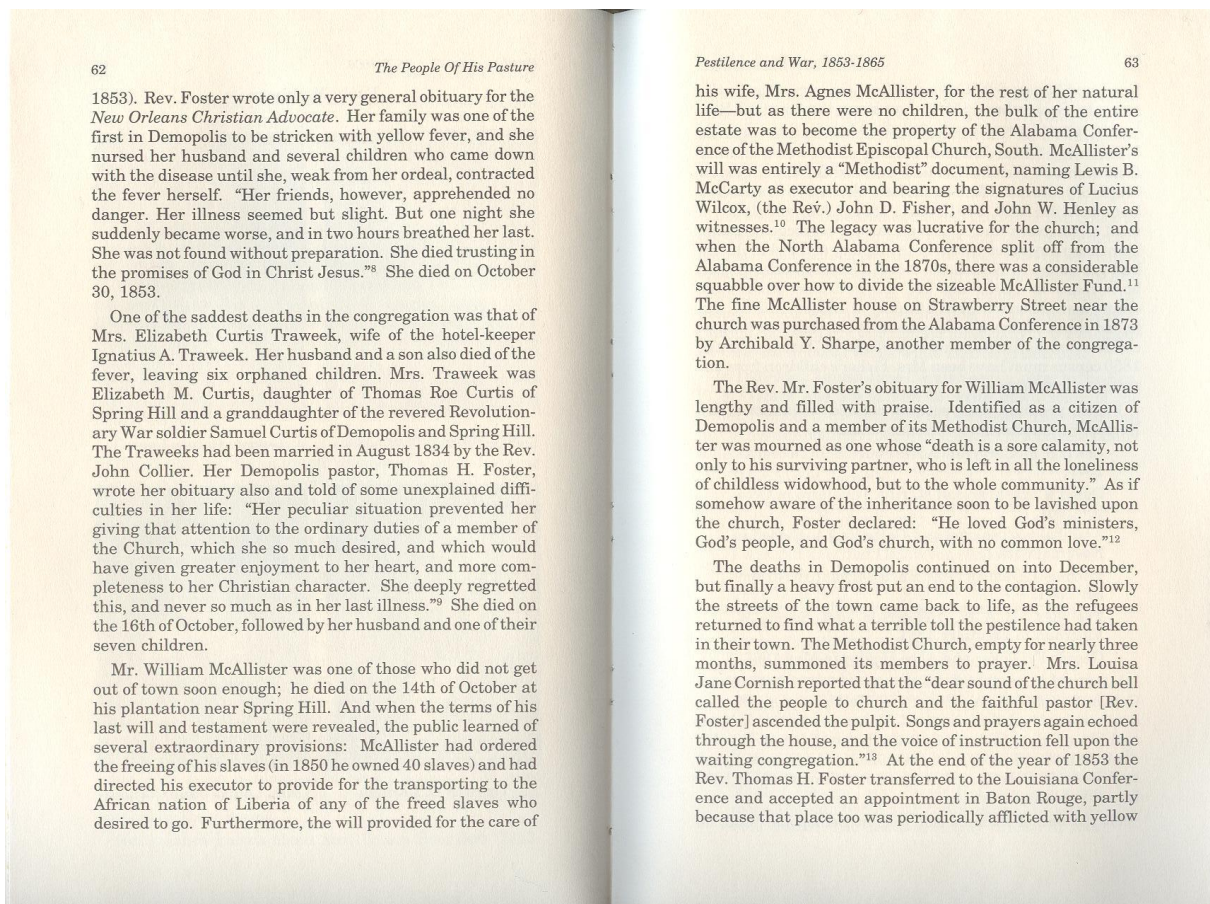
- Legal documents
- Insurance patient documents
- Blueprints and manuals

Optimizing files in this way allows a file to be opened with less processing time and generates a preview quicker.

## How Do I Convert a Scanned PDF to Native?

There are several tools in the market you can use to convert scanned PDF files to native PDF files (OCR reading).

For example, if you have a scanned image similar to the following, you should convert it Native PDF:



In our example:

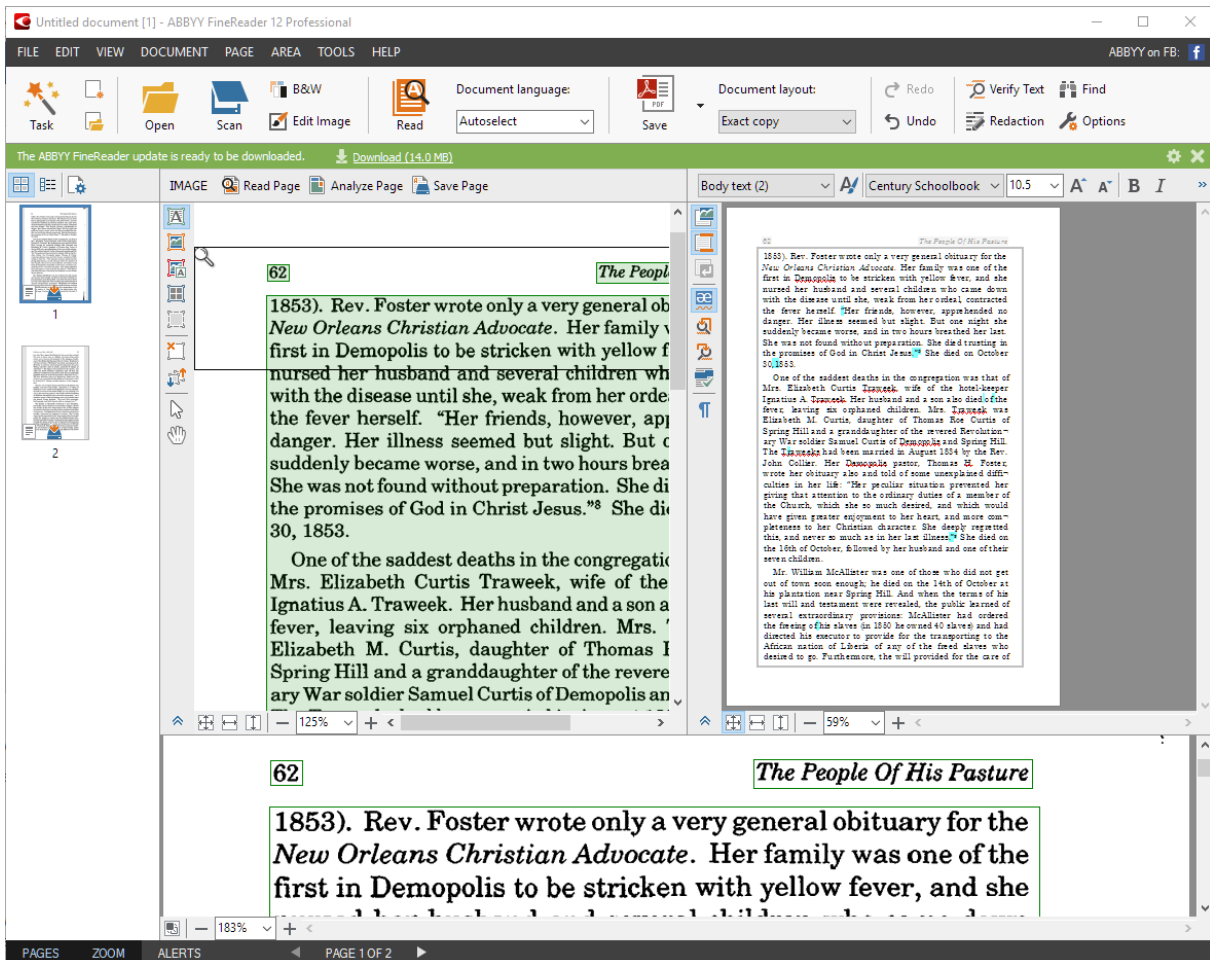
- this file is scanned and saved as a PDF named **Scanned\_PDF.pdf**
- If we use this file as it is, the FileCloud Preview will take a longer than expected time to render this on the User Portal

For test purposes, CodeLathe has tested and recommends the following tool to optimize PDF files for generating a preview:

- ABBYY produces [FineReader](https://www.abbyy.com/en-eu/finereader/)<sup>47</sup>, an all-in-one OCR and PDF software application for increasing business productivity when working with documents.

47. <https://www.abbyy.com/en-eu/finereader/>

- Using ABBYY Fine Reader software, you can open and convert this PDF file to a Native PDF file.



The use of ABBYY FineReader was used for explanation purposes only. Any other tool that can read a PDF file can be used to optimize the PDF files for web viewing.

## Managing File Extensions



As of Version 23.232.1, FileCloud lists **php**, **php5**, **phar**, **phtml**, **php7**, and **htaccess** as disallowed file extensions. If you are using a version of FileCloud earlier than 23.232, you are advised to add any of these extensions that are not include by default onto the **Disallowed File** list.

For security reasons you may want to restrict uploading of files with specific extensions.

- You can either create a list of file extensions to restrict, or create a list of file extensions to allow.
- If you create an Allowed list of file extensions, then any settings in the Disallowed list will be ignored.

- These restrictions help to prevent users from uploading malicious attachments and viewing them.
- By default FileCloud restricts users from uploading any files with **php** extensions. This is to prevent any code injection.

In FileCloud's **Misc/General** settings you may specify allowed and disallowed file extensions.

#### Allowed file extensions

Only files with these extensions are uploaded. Use | as the delimiter.

#### Disallowed file extensions

Files with these extensions are not uploaded. Use | as the delimiter.

php|php5|phar|phtml|php7|htacce

### Which list should I use? Allowed or Disallowed?

- If you know which file types you don't want to allow and this list is short, you can use the **Disallowed** setting.
- If you want to allow only a few file types to be uploaded, you can use the **Allowed** setting.
- If you create an **Allowed** list of file extensions, then any settings in the **Disallowed** list will be ignored.

## What Do You Want to Do?

### Allow File Extensions




If you leave an empty space in your list, then you will allow files that don't have an extension to be uploaded.

- An empty space is defined as a delimiter character followed by no value.

Examples	Description	Impact on Uploading Files
<div> <p>png   jpg  </p> </div>	<p>Allow files to be uploaded with an extension of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• png</li> <li>• jpg</li> <li>• <i>empty</i></li> </ul>	<p>Only the following files can be uploaded by users:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Portable Network Graphics</li> <li>• Joint Photographic Experts Group</li> <li>• Any file without an extension (for example, a file named <i>config</i>)</li> </ul>

Examples	Description	Impact on Uploading Files
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;">           png   jpg         </div>	Allow files to be uploaded with an extension of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• png</li> <li>• jpg</li> </ul>	Only the following files can be uploaded by users: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Portable Network Graphics</li> <li>• Joint Photographic Experts Group</li> </ul>

#### To allow extensions in the Admin Portal:

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Misc** . By default, **General** settings are opened.
2. Scroll down until you see the **Allowed File Extensions** box.
3. In the **Allowed File Extensions** box, specify the allowed extensions, using the "|" character to separate each extension.

#### Notes:

⚠ If you add extensions to the **Allowed File Extensions** list, then any extensions in the **Disallowed File Extension** list will be ignored.

⚠ If you leave an empty space in your list, then you will allow files that don't have an extension to be uploaded.

#### Allowed file extensions

Only files with these extensions are uploaded. Use | as the delimiter.

This list of extensions must use the following character as the delimiter:

- - '|'
  - For example, to restrict the mp4 and mp3 extensions:

mp4 | mp3

#### Disallow File Extensions

##### To disallow extensions in the admin portal:

1. Log into admin portal.
2. From the left navigation panel, select **Settings**.
3. On the **Settings** screen, select the **Misc.** tab, and then the **General** tab.
4. Scroll down until you see the **Disallowed File Extensions** box.
5. In the **Disallowed File Extensions** box, add the additional restricted extensions.



If you add extensions to the **Allowed File Extensions** list, then any extensions in the **Disallowed File Extension** list will be ignored.

Disallowed file extensions

Files with these extensions are not uploaded. Use | as the delimiter.

php|php5|phar|phtml|php7|htacce

This list of extensions must use the following character as the delimiter:


- '|'
- For example, to add restrictions for mp3 and mp4 to the list of disallowed extensions:  
php|php5|phar|phtml|php7|htaccess|mp3|mp4

## Restricting File Extensions

As an administrator, for security reasons you may want to create a set of rules for the working environment where many users have access to a central resource, such as files and folders in FileCloud.

- This helps prevent users from uploading malicious attachments and viewing them.
- By default FileCloud will restrict files with php extensions. This is to prevent any code injection.

**To manage extensions in the Admin Portal:**

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Misc** . By default, **General** settings are opened.
2. Scroll down until you see the **Disallowed File Extensions** box.
3. In the **Disallowed File Extensions** box, specify the restricted extensions.

Disallowed file extensions

Files with these extensions are not uploaded. Use | as the delimiter.

php|php5|phar|phtml|php7|htacce

This list of extensions must use the following character as the delimiter:

- '|'
- For example, to add restrictions for mp3 and mp4 to the list of disallowed extensions:

php | php5 | phar | phtml | mp3 | mp4

## Restricting File Names

For security reasons you may want to create a set of rules for the working environment where many users have access to a central resource, such as files and folders in FileCloud Server. In this case, you may want to make sure that certain files are not available.

### To restrict names of files that can be uploaded:

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on

the **Settings** navigation page, click **Misc** .

By default, **General** settings are opened.

2. Add the file names to the **Disallowed file names** field.

Separate multiple names with |.

Disallowed file extensions

Files with these extensions are not uploaded. Use | as the delimiter.

php|php5|phar|phtml|php7|htacce

Disallowed file names

Files with these names are not uploaded. Use | as the delimiter.

attack|threat.exe

Check for double file extension

Searching deeper for double file extensions will improve the search for disallowed file extension although it could block uploads where the name matches the defined extensions.

☐


Files matching or including any term entered are not uploaded. If you do not specify an extension, files matching or including the term and any extension are not uploaded.

To understand how to create a list of file names, use the examples below.



 If you leave an empty space in your list:

- In the User Portal, all files are blocked from being uploaded.
- The Sync client does not check for restricted names.

 If you add an extension to the file name, then only the combination of name + extension is restricted.



To manage file extensions ONLY, you can either create a list of file extensions to restrict, or create a list of file extensions to allow. See Manage File Extensions ([see page 422](#)) for instructions.

Example	Description	Impact on Uploading Files
<div>           attack              threat.exe                      </div>	Restrict any file from being uploaded if it contains any of the 3 strings in the file name: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• attack</li> <li>• threat.exe</li> <li>• <i>empty</i></li> </ul>	The following files cannot be uploaded by users: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• *attack*.*</li> <li>• *threat.exe</li> <li>• Any file</li> </ul> The following files can be uploaded by users: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• No files can be uploaded until the <i>empty delimiter</i> is removed.</li> </ul>
<div>           attack              threat.exe         </div>	Restrict any file from being uploaded if it contains any of the 2 strings in the file name: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• attack</li> <li>• threat.exe</li> </ul>	The following files cannot be uploaded by users: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• *attack*.*</li> <li>• *threat.exe</li> </ul> The following files can be uploaded by users: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Any file not containing <i>attack</i></li> <li>• Any file not containing <i>threat.exe</i></li> <li>• threat.* (<i>where * is NOT .exe</i>)</li> </ul>

## Manage File Versioning

You can allow a user to upload changes to a file and create another version of a file. This is called file versioning.

- This allows users to have an older version of the file on the site
- Users can download a previous version
- Users can remove previous versions to save space

### How do I know if there are previous versions of a user file?

1. Open the user's details and click Manage Files.

User Details

Name

Email

Last Login

TOS Date

Group

com

18 Oct 2024 14:38

Not Accepted

Manage

Total Quota

Used Quota

Available Quota

Used Storage

2 GB

1.2 GB

812.1 MB

1.2 GB

More

Manage Files

Manage Policy

Manage Shares

Mobile Devices

Reset Password

Send Email

Manage Notifications

Manage Backups

Delete Account

Manage Files

Update

Remove

2. In the **Manage files** screen, navigate to a file and click its Versions icon

Annuity template.docx

51 KB

Oct 22, 2024 12:47 PM

3. The **Previous Versions** window opens and lists all versions of the file.

Previous Versions

Current Version

Version 1

51 KB

57 KB

Oct 22, 2024 12:47 PM

Sep 05, 2024 01:01 PM

💡 If file versioning is causing issues, you can turn it off.


Document Settings – 429

- File versioning can cause loss of data when a user accidentally overwrites a file with the same name.
- Users may be storing too many unnecessary versions of a file and are taking up too much space.

When you configure file versioning, use the following values:

Option	Setting	Result
Number of old versions to keep for each file	-1	The user tries to upload another version but the upload will FAIL
Number of old versions to keep for each file	any number greater than 0	When the user uploads a new version of a file, it is saved, and the latest <Number of old versions to keep for each file> versions are kept.

#### To manage file versioning:

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Storage**  . The **Managed Storage settings** page opens by default.
2. In **Number of old versions to keep for each file** type in **-1** to turn versioning off or any number greater than **0** to use versioning.

## Managed Storage

[Reset to defaults](#)

### Storage path

Location for storing cloud files (location must be writable by web server)

Example location on Windows: c:\clouddata

Example location on Linux: /opt/cloud/data

 [Check Path](#)

**Note :** To change the storage location after it has been configured, move the contents from the old storage location to the new.

Number of old versions to keep for each file

Set to -1 to turn off versioning and instead create a new copy on each upload.


Disable 'My Files'

Disable 'My Files' (managed storage)




3. To save your changes, click **Save**.

# Configuring Zip Files and Zero Trust File Sharing



Beginning with FileCloud 23.241, zip files are enabled by default. Prior to FileCloud 23.241, zip files were disabled by default.  
Functionality for creating and working with content in zip files in My Files is available beginning with FileCloud 22.1.  
Functionality for creating and working with content in zip files in Network Shares is available beginning with FileCloud 23.232.



If you use encrypted storage and have zip files enabled, FileCloud creates temporary unencrypted copies of the files when performing actions on them. These files are only present briefly; however, if you want to avoid having the unencrypted data on your system, contact FileCloud Support to disable zip files.

Users can create and upload zip files into their My Files and Network Shares folders, and then preview, download, add, and delete contents of these zip files.

When users create zip files within FileCloud, they may add a password to them to create them as encrypted Zero Trust folders The password (decryption key) must be entered by the user who created the zip file or anyone they share the file with to access it. Note that the decryption key is not stored in FileCloud or known by the FileCloud system, and therefore makes the file invulnerable to attacks where the system is compromised.

For information about how users add and work with zip files, see Working with Zip Files.

By default, after the password is entered the first time during a log-in session, it does not have to be entered again during that session, but a setting in policies enables you to require users to enter the password each time they access it during a session.

## To disable or re-enable the zip file feature

By default, the zip file feature described above is enabled. Please Contact FileCloud Support to disable it, or re-enable it after it is disabled.

## Zip File Settings

The following are default settings for zip files.


Setting	Default value
Encryption method	WinZip AES-256

Setting	Default value
Compression level	Normal
Compression method	Deflated
Fallback character set	None
Max zip file size	100 MB



WinZip AES-256 encryption is not supported in Windows. If you are using Windows, Contact FileCloud Support to change your setting for the encryption method.

## To require the password each time an encrypted zip file is accessed:















1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Policies** . The **Policies** page opens.
2. Click the Edit icon for the policy of the users who you want to apply the restriction to.

## Policies

### New Policy

Create a new policy

New Policy

Policy Name	User Count	Group Count	Default	Actions
Global Default Policy	1	0		     
TEAM FOLDER POLICY	1	0		     

« < Page 1 of 1 > »

2 rows

3. The **Policy Settings** dialog box opens.
4. Click the **User Policy** tab.
5. Scroll down to **Save zip file session password** and enable it.

Max. file upload size

Units
0
Bytes

Maximum storage for file upload. 0 = unlimited. Warning: Renaming and editing files may fail if the maximum is exceeded.

Save zip file session password

Allow passwords to be saved inside encrypted zip files during the log-in session. Warning: Disabling the setting requires a user to enter the password every time they access a zip file.

☒

Cancel

Reset

Save

6. Click **Save**.

Now, the users must enter the password each time they access the contents of the zip file.

## Permissions in shared zip files

When a zip file is shared publicly, share users can view the contents of the zip file and download them. When a zip file is shared privately, the operations that share users can perform on its contents depends on their share permissions.

The following table shows what each share permission allows share users to do with the contents of a zip file

Permission	Description
View	Preview files and open folders in the zip file.
Download	Download files in the zip file and save them. Downloading folders in the zip file is not permitted.
Upload	Upload files into the zip file and delete files in the zip file.
Share	Share the zip file. Sharing of files and folders inside the zip file is not permitted.

## Email Settings



Beginning with version 23.253, you may automatically embed QR codes in share emails. To configure automatic embedding of QR codes, see (23.253) Email Templates .



Beginning with version 23.241.1, Azure XOAUTH XMTP with GCC High is supported.



Microsoft is replacing basic authentication with oAuth for emails sent using Office 365 in 2023. To address this change, beginning with version 22.1.1, FileCloud supports oAuth as an SMTP authentication method. To use SMTP oAuth with FileCloud, you must use Azure as an authorization provider.


FileCloud can send various messages to users via email, including:

- share notifications
- file change notifications
- error notifications

For email to work smoothly with your system, configure the Email Settings below.

### To configure email settings:

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on

the **Settings** navigation page, click **Email**  .  
The **Email** settings page opens.

The general settings on the page begin with **System email from address** and go through **Email type**, as shown in the screenshot below.

2. Fill in the settings as shown in the following screenshot, using the table below as a guide.

## Email

[Reset to defaults](#)

Test email

[Send email](#)

System email from address

The from email address to use on outgoing mails from FileCloud.

System email from name

The from email name to use on all outgoing emails from FileCloud.

Use system from name and address

To conceal the sender, list Email From Address and Email From Name for all user share emails, even if an actual from address and name exist.



Email Reply to address

The email address to display in the 'Reply to' field

Email Reply to name

The name to display in the 'Reply to' field

Use Reply to name and email


To conceal the sender, list Reply To Address and Reply To Name for all user share emails, even if an actual reply to address and name exist.



Email type



**General email setting information:**

Setting	Description
System email from address	<p>By default, <b>System email from address</b> is listed on emails if there is no email from address (for example, when emails are sent by the system or by workflows).</p> <p>⚠ By default, admins cannot change the <b>System email from address</b>; it is set to <code>fchosted@filecloudmail.com</code><sup>48</sup>. If you want to change the <b>System email from address</b> or you want admin permission to change the <b>System email from address</b>, please Contact FileCloud Support.</p> <div>  If you are using <b>SMTP</b> as your email type, and set <b>SMTP AUTH type</b> (listed below, under <b>SMTP Configuration</b> (see page 437)) to <b>XOAUTH2</b>, then set <b>System email from address</b> to the same value as <b>SMTP AUTH username</b>. This is required for successful use of Azure as the authentication provider. </div>
System email from name	By default, <b>System email from name</b> is listed as the from display name from which email messages are sent to users. It is used if there is no email from name (for example, when emails are sent by the system or by workflows).
Use system from name and address	To conceal the sender, list the <b>System email from address</b> and <b>System email from name</b> for all user share emails, even if an actual from address and name exist.
Email Reply to address	By default, <b>Email Reply to address</b> is listed on emails if a reply to address does not exist (for example, when emails are sent by the system or by workflows).
Email Reply to name	By default, <b>Email Reply to name</b> is listed on emails when a recipient replies to an email without a reply to name (for example, when emails are sent from the system or by workflows).
Use Reply to name and address	To conceal the sender, list <b>Email Reply to address</b> and <b>Email Reply to name</b> for all user share emails, even if an actual reply to address and name exist.
Email type	<p>Specify the email facility to be used. The type can be <b>SMTP</b>, <b>Mail</b> or <b>SendMail</b>.</p> <p>Note that <b>Mail</b> and <b>SendMail</b> use the underlying OS's function (and are available only for Debian/Ubuntu installation).</p> <p>The recommended setting is <b>SMTP</b>.</p>

---

48. <mailto:fchosted@filecloudmail.com>

3. If you choose **SMTP** for **Email Type**, complete the following steps for filling in the SMTP fields. If you choose **Mail** or **SendMail** for **Email Type**, skip these steps, and go to [Do Not Email Settings](#) (see page 443).

## SMTP Configuration

**Note:** You must have an SMTP account to set up email using SMTP.

**To configure SMTP in Email settings:**

1. In **Email Type**, choose **SMTP**.  
The SMTP fields below it become enabled.

Email type SMTP

SMTP host smtpcorp.com

SMTP host name

SMTP port 2525

SMTP connection security None

SMTP AUTH enabled ☒

SMTP AUTH type Basic

SMTP AUTH username fcdemo241

SMTP AUTH password .....

2. Fill in the SMTP fields according to the descriptions in the following tables.  
The value you choose for **SMTP Auth Type** determines which additional SMTP fields are displayed below.



### Office 365 Settings

When using Office 365, SMTP settings must be set to the following values:

Setting	Recommended value
SMTP host	smtp.office365.com <sup>49</sup>
SMTP port	587
SMTP connection security	TLS
SMTP AUTH username, SMTP AUTH password	Enter the sign in credentials of the hosted mailbox being used.



For more information about SMTP configuration for Office 365 accounts see the [Microsoft Office Support Article](#)<sup>50</sup>.

SMTP Setting	Description
SMTP Host	SMTP Server to use for sending email
SMTP Port	The SMTP port to use to connect to SMTP Host (provided by your SMTP provider)
SMTP Security	If your SMTP provider uses SSL or TLS security then select the appropriate value.
SMTP AUTH enabled	If SMTP requires authentication, then check this to enable and enter the authentication settings.
SMTP AUTH type	<p><b>SMTP Auth Type</b> may be <b>Basic</b> or <b>XOAUTH2</b>. The option you choose determines which additional SMTP fields follow.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Basic</b> authentication requires the user to enter a username and password. It is supported by many email providers, but is being deprecated in Microsoft 365 in Exchange Online in early 2023.</li> <li>• <b>XOAUTH2</b> refers to OAuth 2.0 authentication, which uses temporary single-use tokens to provide a more secure method of verification. XOAUTH2 will now be used with Microsoft 365 for Exchange Online and is also the method used by a number of other providers.</li> </ul>

If you choose **Basic** for **SMTP Auth Type**, enter values for the following fields:

49. <http://smtp.office365.com>

50. <https://support.office.com/en-us/article/How-to-set-up-a-multifunction-device-or-application-to-send-email-using-Office-365-69f58e99-c550-4274-ad18-c805d654b4c4?ui=en-US&rs=en-US&ad=US&fromAR=1>

Field	Value to enter
SMTP AUTH username	The authentication username.
SMTP AUTH password	The password for SMTP AUTH username.

If you choose **XOAUTH2** for **SMTP Auth type**:

- a. Review the following information.



XOAUTH2 token generation must be performed by the FileCloud master admin and not by a promoted admin user.

To avoid configuration issues with Microsoft 365 XOAUTH2 setup due to Azure permissions settings, we recommend the following:

**If you are able to use an Azure global admin as the SMTP AUTH username in FileCloud:**

- i. Use an Azure global admin account to create the FileCloud XOAUTH2 application.
- ii. Use the same Azure global admin account in the FileCloud email settings **System Email from address**, **Email Reply to address**, and **SMTP AUTH username**.
- iii. Use the Azure global admin account to grant permissions when generating the XOAUTH2 token.

**If you are not able to use an Azure global admin as the SMTP AUTH username in FileCloud:**


- i. Use an Azure global admin account to create the FileCloud XOAUTH2 application.
- ii. Do not use the same Azure global admin account for the FileCloud email settings **System Email from address**, **Email Reply to address**, and **SMTP AUTH username**, but do set all three of these fields to a single email address.
- iii. Assign the email entered into **SMTP AUTH username** to the FileCloud XOAUTH2 application:
  1. Log into **portal.azure.com** and go to **Microsoft Entra ID > App registrations**.
  2. Click the FileCloud XOAUTH2 application, and in the navigation panel, click **Roles and administrators**.
  3. Click **Cloud Application Administrator**, and then click **Add assignments** and assign the FileCloud **SMTP AUTH username** to the FileCloud XOAUTH2 application.
- iv. Use the **SMTP AUTH username** to grant permissions when generating the XOAUTH2 token.

**If neither of the above options work, confirm that SMTP AUTH is enabled for the SMTP AUTH username and your Organization:**

To check if SMTP AUTH is enabled for the **SMTP AUTH username**:


- i. Open Microsoft 365 admin center and go to **Users > Active Users** and check the **SMTP Auth User**.
  - ii. In the right panel, click **Mail**, and then click **Manage Email** apps.
  - iii. If **Authenticated SMTP** is not checked, check it.
- To check if SMTP AUTH is enabled for your **Organization**:
- i. Go to the Microsoft Exchange admin center and click **Settings**, then click **Mail flow**.
  - ii. If **Turn Off SMTP Auth Protocol for your Organization** is not checked, check it and click **Save**.
- If none of these options work, contact Microsoft Support for help.**

- b. Go to the page [Microsoft Azure and XOAUTH2 setup guide](#)<sup>51</sup> and follow the instructions under **Configure an OAuth2 app in Microsoft Azure** to register your OAuth application in portal.azure.com.
- c. In the **Email** settings page, scroll down to **SMTP Auth type** and the **OAuth** fields.

SMTP AUTH type	XOAUTH2 ▾
SMTP AUTH username	<input type="text" value="fcdemo241"/>
SMTP OAuth Provider	Azure ▾
OAuth Client Secret Value	<input type="password" value="....."/> 
OAuth Client ID	<input type="text"/>
OAuth Tenant ID	<input type="text"/>
OAuth Redirect URI	<input type="text"/>
OAuth Azure Graph URL (Optional)	<input type="text"/>
OAuth Azure Auth URL (Optional)	<input type="text"/>
OAuth Azure Outlook URL (Optional)	<input type="text"/>
Complete OAuth Setup	<input type="button" value="Generate OAuth Token"/>

51. <https://github.com/PHPMailer/PHPMailer/wiki/Microsoft-Azure-and-XOAUTH2-setup-guide>

- d. Fill in the SMTP oAuth fields on the Email Settings page listed in the table below:  
For the fields **oAuth Client Secret Value**, **oAuth Client ID**, **oAuth Tenant ID**, and **oAuth Redirect URI**, retrieve the values from portal.azure.com<sup>52</sup> after registering the oAuth application.

SMTP Auth User	<p>Enter the authentication username</p> <div>  You must set <b>Email From Address</b> (described above under <b>General email setting configuration</b>) to the same value as <b>SMTP Auth User</b>. This is required for successful use of Azure as the authentication provider. </div>
SMTP oAuth Provider	<p>Choose the oAuth provider (authorization server). Currently, the only available option is <b>Azure</b>.</p>
oAuth Client Secret Value	<p>The secret key your FileCloud system uses to get a temporary token from the authorization server.</p>
oAuth Client ID	<p>Application (client) ID from the SMTP provider application. This ID is used to get the temporary token from the authorization server.</p>
oAuth Tenant ID	<p>Directory (tenant) ID used to get the temporary token from the authorization server. (This field is applicable only when Azure is the provider; when other providers are added, it will not be required for them.)</p>
oAuth Redirect URI	<p>The location (appended with the parameter holding the token) where the authorization server should send the user after the token has been generated. The location specified should be your FileCloud domain.</p> <p>Use the format <a href="https://your-filecloud-domain.com/admin/getoauthtoken">https://your-filecloud-domain.com/admin/getoauthtoken</a></p>

52. <http://portal.azure.com>

oAuth Azure Graph URL oAuth Azure Auth URL oAuth Azure Outlook URL	<p>If you are using Azure XOAUTH SMTP with GCC High, fill in these fields as follows:</p> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; align-items: flex-start;"> <div style="width: 60%;">oAuth Azure Graph URL (Optional)</div> <div style="width: 35%; border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">https://graph.microsoft.us</div> </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; align-items: flex-start; margin-top: 10px;"> <div style="width: 60%;">oAuth Azure Auth URL (Optional)</div> <div style="width: 35%; border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">https://login.microsoftonline.us</div> </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; align-items: flex-start; margin-top: 10px;"> <div style="width: 60%;">oAuth Azure Outlook URL (Optional)</div> <div style="width: 35%; border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">https://outlook.office365.us</div> </div> <p>If you are using Azure XOAUTH SMTP without GCC High, these settings default to the correct values for the non-GCC High setup, and it is not necessary to enter them. However, you may enter the correct values, which are:</p> <p><a href="https://graph.microsoft.com">https://graph.microsoft.com</a>  <a href="https://login.microsoftonline.com">https://login.microsoftonline.com</a>  <a href="https://outlook.office.com">https://outlook.office.com</a></p>
Complete oAuth Setup	Click <b>Generate oAuth Token</b> so you can begin using email with oAuth.

- e. If your **SMTP AUTH type** is **XOAUTH2**, do the following:

After you have filled in the SMTP fields, click **Generate OAuth Token**.

If you are not logged in to your Microsoft authenticator app, you are prompted to log in so you can access Azure to generate the token.

Once the OAuth token is generated, the following XML appears on your screen:

This XML file does not appear to have any style information associated with it. The document tree is shown below.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
<commands>
  <command>
    <type>getoauth2token</type>
    <result>1</result>
    <message>OAuth refresh token has been retrieved successfully.</message>
  </command>
</commands>
```

3. Click **Send email** at the top of the screen to test the settings.

## Email

Reset to defaults

Test email

Send email

System email from address

The from email address to use on outgoing mails from FileCloud.

hello@filecloudmail.com

If your setup is valid, the email is sent to the admin's email, and a success notification appears on your screen.

## Do Not Email Settings

- Emails get added to the **Do not email** list when users click **unsubscribe** in the email body.
- Beginning with FileCloud version 20.3, admins can add or remove users from the **Do not email** list by clicking **Manage** beside **Do not email list**.
- Admins can specify the maximum number of emails that system can send in a 24 hour span.
- Users on the **Do not email** list do not receive any emails unless **Ignore "Do not email" list for priority emails** or **Ignore "Do not email" list** are checked.

### To send emails to users on the Do not email list

By default, users on the **Do not email** list do not receive any emails

- To allow users on the **Do not email** list to receive important emails like password recovery and 2FA, check the **Ignore "Do not email" list for priority emails** checkbox .
- To ignore the **Do not email** list and send all emails to users who are on the list., check the **Ignore "Do not email" list** checkbox.

Do not email list

Manage

Manage

Ignore "Do not email" list for priority emails

Users on "Do not email" list will still receive priority emails.



Ignore "Do not email" list

Users are emailed even if they are on the "Do not email" list.

NOTE: If both options are unchecked, users added to the "Do not email" list do not receive any emails.



## To add or remove users from the Do Not Email list:

- Next to **Do not email list**, click **Manage**.  
The **Manage Do Not Email List** dialog box opens.

**Manage Do Not Email List**

Add Email Remove Email Clear All

Email
<input type="checkbox"/> gabrielle95@example.com
<input type="checkbox"/> jonathan81@example.com

Close

- To add an email to the list, click **Add Email**, then enter and save an email address.
- To remove an email from the list, check the box next to the email and click **Remove Email**.

## To limit the number of emails sent to a user

If your users are receiving too many email notifications, you can limit the number of FileCloud system-generated emails sent to them in 24 hours.

In the field **Maximum number of emails to send in 24h** at the bottom of the **Email** settings page, enter the maximum number of system emails to be sent each user per day.

Maximum number of emails to send in 24h

If the maximum number is reached, additional emails sent during the 24h are not delivered (0 = no limit).


0

## Configuring System Generated Emails

### Controlling System Generated Automatic Emails

It is possible to control which emails are sent by the system.

**To change the email settings:**

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Admin** . The **Admin** settings page opens.
2. Scroll down to the email settings, and enable or disable the settings to send or not send the specific email types.

Send account approval pending emails	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Send welcome/verification emails	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Send approval emails to users	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Send daily admin summary emails	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Send account approval pending emails	Send an approval pending email to the admin when a new user account is created and admin approval is required.
Send welcome/verification emails	Send verification emails to users to verify their email addresses.
Send approval emails to users	Send account approval emails to users.
Send daily admin summary emails	Send daily system summary emails to the main admin account, This only works if a Cron Task or Windows Task Manager is setup.

3. Click **Save**.

# Endpoint Backup Settings


FileCloud lets you configure automatic backup settings for users' files and folders to ensure their data is secure.

**Note:** FileCloud supports backing up files and photos from different devices.

## What Do You Want To Do?

### Configure backup settings for all users

To configure the backed up settings for all users:

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Endpoint Backup** . The **Endpoint Backup** settings page opens.
2. Fill in the settings as shown in the following screenshot using the table below as a guide.

## Endpoint Backup

[Reset to defaults](#)

### Allow users to back up

Enable users to back up with FileCloud Sync app.



### Allow camera uploads

Allow automatic backup of photos and videos from mobile devices.



### Backup path

Root storage path for user backups. Admin can override in user details. If 'My Files' is disabled, admin must specify a new path in user details for each user.

### Backup notification email

Email for notification of backup status

Settings Name	Description
<b>Allow users to back up</b>	Allow users to back up files and folders using the FileCloud Sync app. See Backing Up Files. This setting also enables you to configure Sync backup of specific files and folders for all users. See Globally Backing Up User Files and Folders.
<b>Allow camera uploads</b>	Allow mobile clients to automatically back up photos and videos to their FileCloud accounts. Turning off this setting prevents this server from being used to back up audio/video files.  All camera uploads are stored in the user's backup folder. This location cannot be changed. For example, if the user name is jdoe, the camera uploads are stored in /jdoe/backups/<phone name>
<b>Backup path</b>	The location where automatically updated media and backup files are stored. This is a read-only field meant for display only.  You can override this path for specific users to have them back up to a different location in the <b>User Details</b> screen (see below).
<b>Backup notification email</b>	An additional email ID to which Backup Complete notifications are sent.

### Configure a specific user's backup folder

It is possible to set a different backup folder path for each user, overriding the default global path specified.

You must know the exact folder path you want to use.

For more information, see Identifying a FileCloud Specific Path.

#### To set the Backup Path for a user:

1. Log in to the FileCloud admin portal.
2. In the navigation panel, click **Users**.
3. Click the **Edit** icon for the user whose path you want to change.
4. On the **User Details** screen, scroll down to the **Backup Path** field.

5. In **Backup Path**, type in the folder path you want to use.

User Details

Name	demo	Total Quota	2 GB
Email	de@de.pl.pp	Used Quota	3 KB
Last Login	31 Oct 2024 09:31	Available Quota	2 GB
TOS Date	Not Accepted	Used Storage	3 KB
Group	<a href="#">Manage</a>	<a href="#">More</a>	

Manage Files

Manage Policy

Manage Shares

Mobile Devices

Reset Password

Send Email

Manage Notifications

Manage Backups

Delete Account

☐ (Automatic Sync of My Files and Network Folders)
 

Disable Sync

Backup Path

Change Password on Login

Account Locked

Creation Source

Phone Number

☐ (Offline Network Share Sync)
 

/demo/backups

☐

☐

Default

Save

Close

6. To save your changes, click **Save**.

### View a user's backed-up files

To view details of the backed up files for a specific user:

1. Log in to the FileCloud admin portal.
2. In the navigation panel, click **Users**.
3. Click the **Edit** icon for the user whose path you want to change.
4. On the **User Details** screen, click **Manage Backups**.

User Details

Name

jenniferp

Email

Last Login

22 Oct 2024 12:45

TOS Date

Not Accepted

Group

Manage

Total Quota

2 GB

Used Quota

1.2 GB

Available Quota

811.9 MB

Used Storage

1.2 GB

More

Manage Files

Manage Policy

Manage Shares

Mobile Devices

Reset Password

Send Email

Manage Notifications

Manage Backups

Delete Account

Profile Image

Update

Remove

Access Level

Full

Authentication

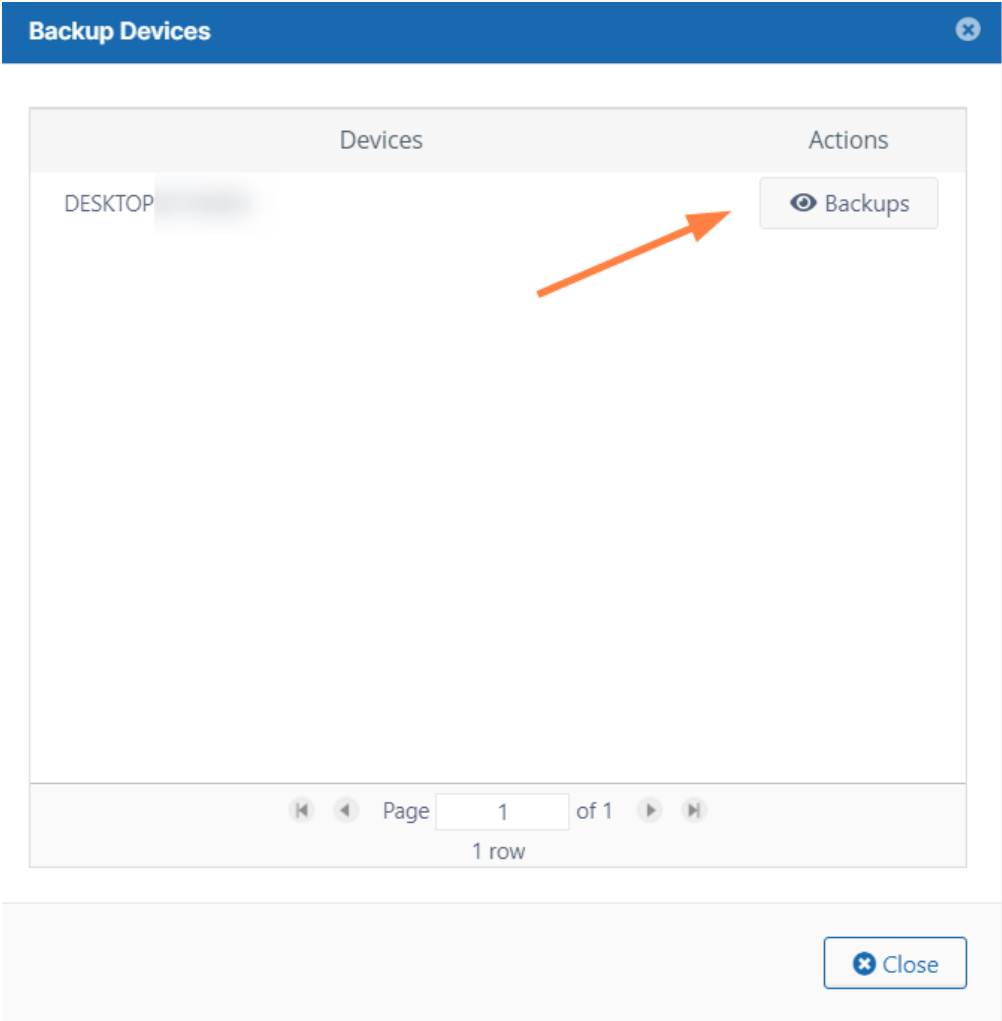
Default

Save

Close

Endpoint Backup Settings – 449

5. On the **Backup Devices** screen, to view the paths backed up from a device, click **Backups**.



6. On the **Backup Sets for client** screen, click **Backup History** for a client.

Backup Sets for client - DESKTOP

Path	Actions
C:\DavidSync\FileCloud\My Files\Docs	Backup History
C:\data	Backup History

Page 1 of 1

2 rows

Close

7. On the **Backup Records for path** screen, view the backup dates and number of files backed up.

Backup Records for path - C:\DavidSync\FileCloud\My Files\Docs

Backup Date	Files Backed Up
2024-10-23 10:31:00	2

Page 1 of 1


1 row

Close

Also see:

- [Automatic Database Backup](#) (see page 452)
- [Setting Up Persona Backup Using Sync](#) (see page 454)
- (23.253) Disabling Deletion of Backup Files

## Automatic Database Backup



In environments where high availability architecture is being used, automatic backups are performed during Cron runs.


By default, automatic database backups are enabled with the following configuration:

- Daily backups are stored in the following directory: .../scratch/autobackups/
- Backups are maintained for the last 15 days before being overwritten with new backups

As an administrator, you can change the location where backups are stored, the number of backups to maintain, and the number of days between backups. Or, if you already have a back-up strategy, you can disable automatic backups.

## To configure automatic database backups:

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on

the **Settings** navigation page, click **Misc**  .  
By default, **General** settings are opened.

2. Scroll down to the backup settings and modify them depending on your system's needs.

Disable automatic database backup	<input type="checkbox"/>
Database backup storage path	<input type="text" value="/var/www/html/scratch/autobacku"/>
Path must be writeable.	
Number of backups to store	<input type="text" value="15"/>
Number of settings backups to maintain	
Database backup interval	<input type="text" value="0"/>
0 = back up every day, 1 = back up every other day, etc.	

**Disable automatic database backup** - Enable to prevent database back up during a Cron run. When disabled, automatic backup runs, and the last automatic backup run date is displayed.

**Database backup storage path** - The path to the directory where backed-up database files are saved. You must use a path that is accessible to the FileCloud server, can have files saved to it, and has enough room for the backup files

**Number of backups to store** -The number of days you want stored in a single backup file. By default, each backup file contains 15 days worth of data. If you want smaller files, you can lower this number. For example, if you type in 2 for **Number of backups to store**, the backup file will only contain 2 days worth of data. After those 2 days, the backup file is overwritten to store the next 2 days worth of data. This setting controls how far back you can recover data.

**Database backup Interval** - The interval in days between each backup. The default is 0 which creates a daily backup of the number of days set in **Number of backups to store**.

3. Click **Save**.

## Example

The Cherry Road Real Estate company needs to back up data from the last 30 days and wants the back-up refreshed every week. To do this, these are the settings they use:

- **Disable automatic database backup** = not selected
- **Database backup storage path** = /var/scratch/autobackups
- **Number of backups to store** = 30
- **Database backup Interval** = 7

## Setting Up Persona Backup Using Sync


As an admin, you can use the FileCloud Sync app to set up a persona backup for all users of your FileCloud System. A persona backup saves individual settings and preferences for users across their FileCloud devices, making it easy for you to restore them.

To set up persona backup for users, open the policy used by them in the admin portal, and add device configuration code for Sync backup that includes the local paths that contain user specific configurations.

### Steps:

1. [Enable Endpoint Backup for FileCloud Sync from the Admin Portal.](#)
2. [Install FileCloud Sync on the users' computers, and enable Remote Management in Sync.](#)
3. [Set a default device configuration for Sync in the users' policy from the admin portal.](#)

## 1) Enable Endpoint Backup for FileCloud Sync from the Admin Portal

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Endpoint Backup** . The **Endpoint Backup** settings page opens.
2. Enable the **Allow Users To Backup** option, and click **Save**.

## Endpoint Backup

[Reset to defaults](#)

### Allow users to back up

Enable users to back up with FileCloud Sync app.



### Allow camera uploads

Allow automatic backup of photos and videos from mobile devices.



### Backup path

Root storage path for user backups. Admin can override in user details. If 'My Files' is disabled, admin must specify a new path in user details for each user.

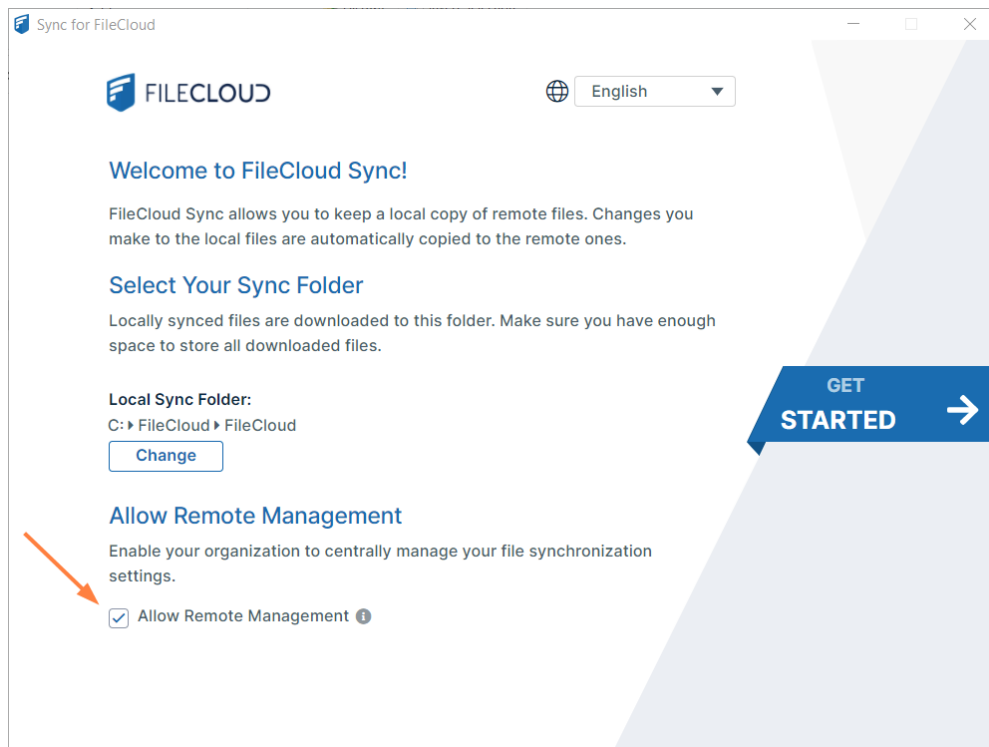
### Backup notification email

Email for notification of backup status

## 2) Install FileCloud Sync and enable Remote Management

For backup to take place using the device configuration set up in the policy, Remote Management must be enabled in the FileCloud Sync App. This can be done by either:

- The user manually enabling the option in the FileCloud Sync App



- On a [Mass Deployment](#)<sup>53</sup>, an admin enabling remote management by setting the **allowcentralmgmt** parameter to **1**. This requires registry entries to be created before FileCloud Sync is initialized on the users' local machines.  
**Note:** If FileCloud Sync is initialized prior to the creation of registry keys in the users' local machines, the configuration to enable remote management will not take effect.

### 3) Set a default device configuration for Sync in the user's policy

**Note:** You must identify the local paths from the user's computer to include in the Sync Backup before creating the device configuration XML. Refer to the [Device Configuration XML](#)<sup>54</sup> documentation for Sync.

1. Log in to the admin portal.
2. Navigate to **Settings > Policies** and edit the users' policy.
3. Go to the **Device Configuration** tab and enter the configuration in XML format. Below is a sample script to use.  
 The first parameter of the XML, **<offline\_folder\_1>**, is a local path in the user's computer. The lines after it are the other local directories that must be included in the Sync Backup.

```
<xml>
```

53. <https://www.getfilecloud.com/supportdocs/display/cloud/Mass+Deployment+-+Default+Configuration+Support>

54. <https://www.getfilecloud.com/supportdocs/display/cloud/Device+Configuration+XML+For+Sync>

```

<cloudsync>
<allowuserconfigforbackup>0</allowuserconfigforbackup>
<offline_folder_count>7</offline_folder_count>
<offline_folder_1>C:\Users\${USER}\AppData\Roaming\Microsoft\Outlook\|/${USERID}/
backups/${USERID}/Outlook|1|30m|1|0|0</offline_folder_1>
<offline_folder_2>C:\Users\${USER}\Pictures\|/${USERID}/backups/${USERID}/Pictures|
1|30m|1|0|0</offline_folder_2>
<offline_folder_3>C:\Users\${USER}\Desktop\|/${USERID}/backups/${USERID}/Desktop|1|
30m|1|0|0</offline_folder_3>
<offline_folder_4>C:\Users\${USER}\Music\|/${USERID}/backups/${USERID}/Music|1|30m|
1|0|0</offline_folder_4>
<offline_folder_5>C:\Users\${USER}\Favorites\|/${USERID}/backups/${USERID}/
Favorites|1|30m|1|0|0</offline_folder_5>
<offline_folder_6>C:\Users\${USER}\AppData\Roaming\Microsoft\Templates\|/${USERID}/
backups/${USERID}/Office_Templates|1|30m|1|0|0</offline_folder_6>
<offline_folder_7>C:\Users\${USER}\Documents\|/${USERID}/backups/${USERID}/
Documents|1|30m|1|0|0</offline_folder_7>
</cloudsync>
</xml>

```

## Policy Settings - Global Default Policy



**Note:** Some policy settings will not be applicable for Guest and Limited users.

General
2FA
User Policy
Client Application Policy
**Device Configuration**
Notifications

Manage Device Configuration

Client Configuration

ic|/\${USERID}/backups/\${USERID}/Music|1|30m|1|0|0</offline\_folder\_4>  
<offline\_folder\_5>C:\Users\\${USER}\Fav  
orites\|/\${USERID}/backups/\${USERID}/Fav  
orites|1|30m|1|0|0</offline\_folder\_5>  
<offline\_folder\_6>C:\Users\\${USER}\App  
Data\Roaming\Microsoft\Templates\|/\${U  
SERID}/backups/\${USERID}/Office\_Templ  
ates|1|30m|1|0|0</offline\_folder\_6>  
<offline\_folder\_7>C:\Users\\${USER}\Doc  
uments\|/\${USERID}/backups/\${USERID}/  
Documents|1|30m|1|0|0</offline\_folder\_

Save
Reset
Close

## Client Security Settings

- (23.253) Preventing an attacker from bypassing 2fa
- [Setting Client Application Policies](#) (see page 458)
- [Using a Proxy Server](#) (see page 462)
- (23.253) Improving Cookie Security
- [Configuring OAuth for SCIM Integration](#) (see page 463)
- (23.253) Dynamic CSP in FileCloud

## Setting Client Application Policies

FileCloud allows customization of the client application (mobile clients) policies.

Effective Policy: "Global Default Policy" ✕

General
2FA
User Policy
Client Application Policy
Device Configuration
Notifications

Some policy settings will not be applicable for Guest and External users.

Client Application Policy

**Require passcode lock for mobile clients**

Require mobile FileCloud users to use a passcode to access the FileCloud app (valid only in clients that support passcode). ☐

**Disable all mobile client apps from connecting** ☐

**Disable 'Edit' functions in mobile client apps** ☐

Disable rename, copy, upload, etc in mobile client apps (if applicable).

**Disable 'Print' option in mobile client apps** ☐

Type	Description
<b>Require Passcode lock for mobile clients</b>	Force mobile clients to enable FileCloud app pincode. If the pincode is not enabled, the login is rejected with an appropriate message.
<b>Disable all mobile client apps from connecting</b>	Prevent login to FileCloud system using mobile client apps (users are allowed to login only via the web browser).
<b>Disable edit functions in mobile client apps</b>	Prevent delete, copy, and move operations from being performed from mobile client apps.
<b>Disable "Print" option in mobile client apps</b>	Prevent printing from mobile client apps (At this point only iOS app provides print function)

Type	Description
<b>Disable "Download" option in mobile client apps</b>	Prevent file downloads in mobile client apps.
<b>Disable "Open with" option in mobile client apps</b>	Hide option to open a file in third party apps. NOTE: In Android, all files are opened in third party apps and this setting has no effect.
<b>Disable "Share" options in mobile client apps</b>	Hide file and folder sharing from mobile client apps.
<b>Disable "Add to favorites" options in mobile client apps</b>	Hide "Add to favorites" option from mobile client apps

You may override a policy when you are editing the user details for a specific user; however, the new policy settings apply to all users who are assigned that policy.

To change a policy through a user's details:

1. In the admin portal, go to **Users**.
2. Edit the user record.
3. Click **Manage Policy**.

User Details

Namejohn

Emailjohn@xyz.com

Last Login04 Feb 2018 10:38

Group

Manage

Total Quota2 GB

Used Quota5.1 GB

Available Quota0 B

Used Storage5.1 GB

More

Mobile Devices

Manage Files

Manage Shares

Reset Password

Email Password

Delete Account

Manage Policy

Manage Backups

Access LevelFull

AuthenticationDefault

Emailjohn@xyz.com

Display Namejohn

Account Expires On

Password Expires On

Email Verified☒

Save

Close

4. Next to **Effective Policy**, click **Calculate**.

Client Security Settings – 460

User Policy : john

Policy Selected

'Mobile user policy' is selected.

Policy Name

No policy

TEAM FOLDER POLICY

Mobile user policy

HR Policy

Global Default Policy

Clear

Effective Policy

Mobile user policy

Calculate

Calculate effective policy of the user, as group associations may change enforced policy.

Close

Account Expires On

Password Expires On

Email Verified

☒

Save

Close

5. Next to **Effective Policy**, click **Open**.

The policy opens.

Effective Policy: "Mobile app users"

General 2FA User Policy **Client Application Policy** Device Configuration Notifications

Some policy settings will not be applicable for Guest and External users.

Client Application Policy

**Require passcode lock for mobile clients**

Require mobile FileCloud users to use a passcode to access the FileCloud app (valid only in clients that support passcode). ☐

**Disable all mobile client apps from connecting** ☐

**Disable 'Edit' functions in mobile client apps**

Disable rename, copy, upload, etc in mobile client apps (if applicable). ☐

**Disable 'Print' option in mobile client apps** ☐

**Disable 'Download' option in mobile client apps** ☐

Cancel Reset Save

6. Change the settings and click **Save**.

Note that the settings are changed for all users who belong to the policy.

## Using a Proxy Server

As an Administrator, you can configure proxy network settings.

### What is a proxy server?

A proxy server is a computer system or an application that acts as an intermediary for requests from clients seeking resources from other servers.

1. A client connects to the proxy server, requesting some service, such as a file, connection, web page, or other resource available from a different server.
2. The proxy server evaluates the request as a way to simplify and control its complexity.

Proxies are used to add structure and encapsulation to distributed systems.

Today, most proxies are web proxies, facilitating access to content on the World Wide Web, providing anonymity and bypassing IP address blocking.

**To configure proxy settings:**

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on

the **Settings** navigation page, click **Misc** .

By default, **General** settings are opened.

2. Scroll down to **Enable Proxy Settings**, and enable it.

Additional proxy settings appear.

3. Enter values for **Proxy host**, **Proxy port**, **Proxy user name**, and **Proxy password**.

Enable proxy settings ☒

Proxy host

Proxy port

Proxy user name

Proxy password

4. Click **Save**.

## Configuring OAuth for SCIM Integration



Configuration of OAuth credentials that give external applications access to FileCloud resources is available beginning in FileCloud 23.252. SCIM is currently the only application that can gain access through this OAuth configuration, but in the future, additional applications may be added. FileCloud supports SCIM integration with Azure, Okta, and OneLogin, but most other SCIM IdPs should be able to connect to FileCloud using OAuth. Please contact your authentication service for support in configuring its integration with FileCloud.

OAuth 2.0 authorization enables an application to securely access FileCloud resources without requiring a manual action or scheduled command to trigger the access request. OAuth 2.0 provides secure access by specifying scopes (permitted actions) associated with the access, and by creating unique tokens for accessing FileCloud. A token remains valid for an interval set in the configuration that may range from 1 hour to 5 years.

Currently, SCIM (System for Cross-domain Identity Management) is the only application that uses this OAuth configuration in FileCloud. SCIM is a protocol that enables you to update FileCloud user and group information by syncing it with changes made to user and group information in other applications. When SCIM detects a change in one of the apps, it uses OAuth 2.0 to gain access to FileCloud and update its user/group data.

### To configure OAuth application credentials for SCIM in FileCloud:

1. In the FileCloud admin portal, open the Application Credentials page.

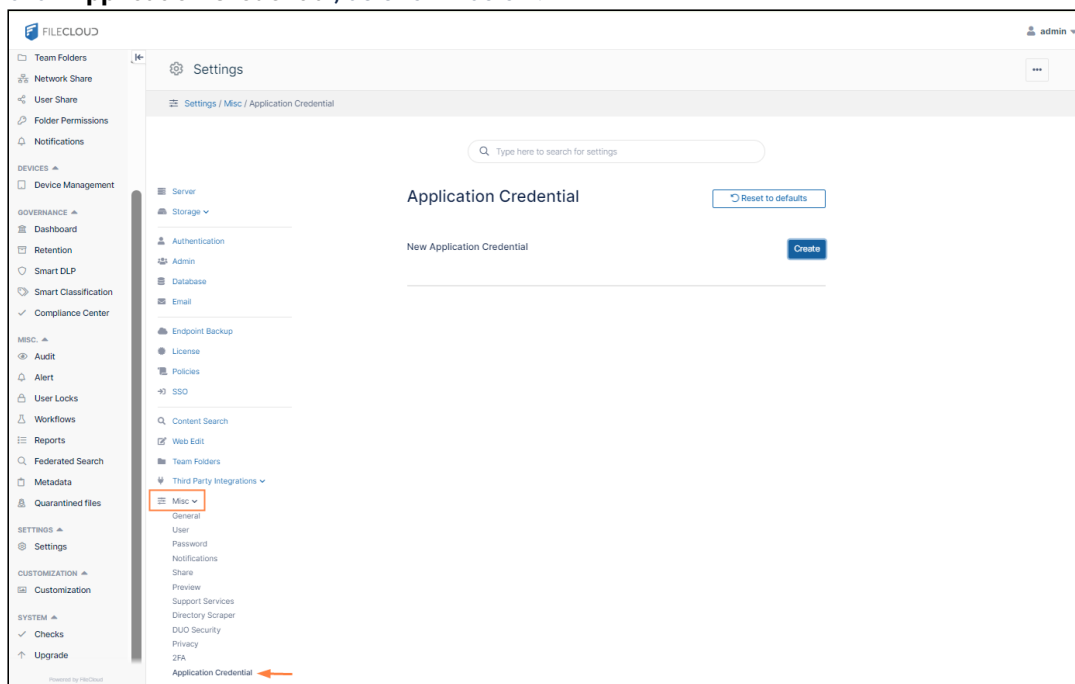
**To go to the Application Credentials page:**

- a. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on



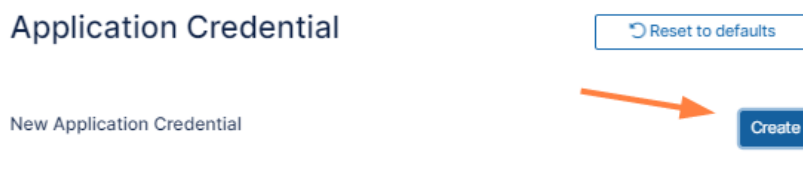
the **Settings** navigation page, click **Misc**.

- b. In the inner navigation bar on the left of the **Settings** page, expand the **Misc** menu, and click **Application Credential**, as shown below.



The Application Credentials page opens.

2. Click **Create**.



The **Create New Application Credential** dialog box opens.

3. Enter the **Application Name** and an **Application Description**.

Create New Application Credential

Application Name\*

SCIM

Application Description\*

Integration with SCIM

Cancel

Create

- Click **Create**.

**Integration id** and **Integration Secret** credentials are listed on the dialog box.

Create New Application Credential

Application Name\*

SCIM

Application Description\*

Integration with SCIM

Integration id

68b0

Integration secret

5d65

Download Credentials

The credentials will not be shown to you again, but you will be required to enter the **Integration secret** to create the token.

- Click **Download Credentials** to save them in a file named **file credentials for [Application Name].txt**

The dialog box closes and the credential is now listed.

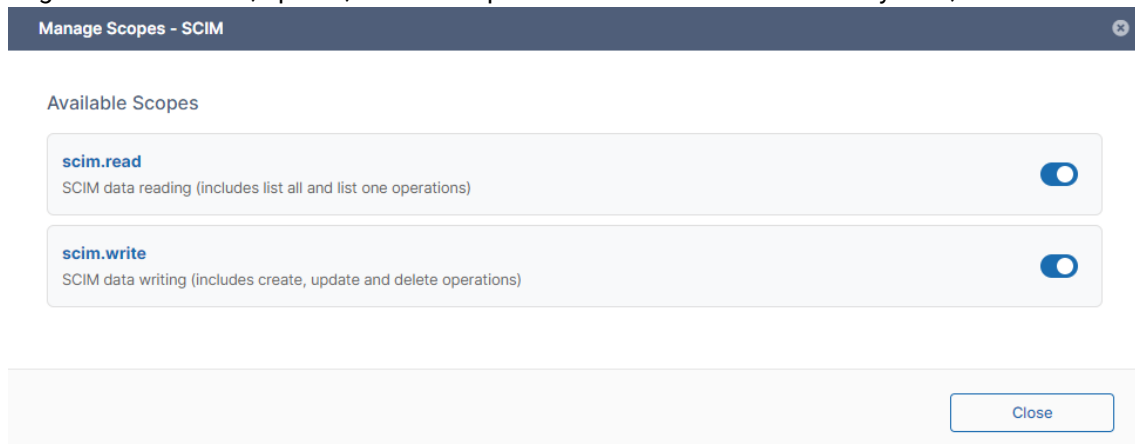
Click the key icon.

SCIM



The **Manage Scopes** dialog box opens.

6. Enable **scim.read** to grant SCIM read permission to FileCloud's identity data, enable **scim.write** to grant SCIM create, update, and delete permissions to FileCloud's identity data, or enable both.



7. Click **Close**.
8. Click the ticket icon.

SCIM

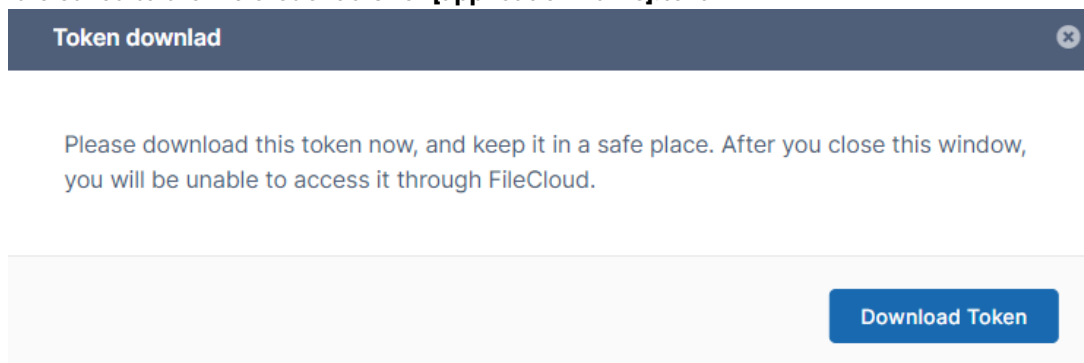
Active



The **Manage Tokens** dialog box opens.

9. In **Client Secret** enter the **Integration secret** you saved above.
10. In **Expiration**, choose the interval that the token will remain usable. By default the interval is 1 hour.
11. Click **Create Token**.  
You are prompted to save the token.
12. Click **Download Token**.

It is saved to the file **credentials for [application name].text**



The **Token ID** and its create and expire dates and times are shown. It is automatically made active.

Manage Tokens - SCIM

Create New Token

Client Secret

Enter client secret

Expiration

1 Hour

Create Token

Active Tokens

Delete All Tokens

Token ID: 68b0

Scopes: scim.read, scim.write

Expires : 8/28/2025, 3:47:54 PM

Created : 8/28/2025, 2:47:54 PM

Active

Delete

Close

13. Click **Close**.  
SCIM will now automatically update FileCloud with the connected apps' identity information.

## Online Web Editing



Beginning in FileCloud 22.1, Office extensions .doc, .xls, and .ppt are no longer editable in Web Edit. In Desktop Edit, users may still edit .doc, .xls, and .ppt files.

If Web editing is enabled in your system, users can edit Office files, text files, markdown files (.md), HTML files, and log files without downloading them from FileCloud.

Users can edit supported Office file types in Office Online and edit the other file types listed above in FileCloud's built-in editors.

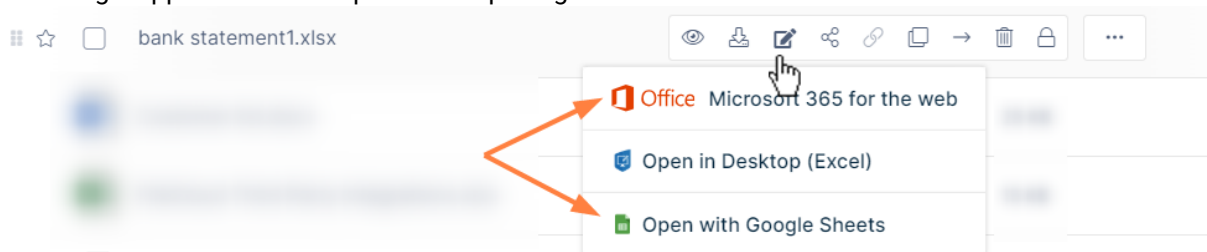
If Web editing is not available in your system, please Contact FileCloud Support.

To see how Web editing is done using Office Online, see Web Edit/Open in . . .

- (23.253) Microsoft Office Online Web Editing
- (23.253) Web Editing With Collabora Code
- (23.253) Web Editing with OnlyOffice
- [Web Editing with Google Apps \(see page 468\)](#)
- [New Document Creation via Web Browser \(see page 478\)](#)
- [Web Editing Text Files \(see page 480\)](#)
- [Web Editing Markdown and Readme Files \(see page 481\)](#)
- [Coauthoring Office Documents Using Web Edit \(see page 481\)](#)
- [Disable Online Web Editing \(see page 482\)](#)
- (23.253) Changing the locale in online Office documents

## Web Editing with Google Apps

Beginning with FileCloud 21.3, you can integrate FileCloud with Google Apps to make an additional Web Edit option. Google Apps cannot replace your current WOPI client, but may be added as an additional option, so that when users select to Web Edit docx, xlsx, pptx files, both the WOPI client and the Google app are listed as options for opening it:





In FileCloud's mobile apps, files can be viewed but not edited in Google Apps.



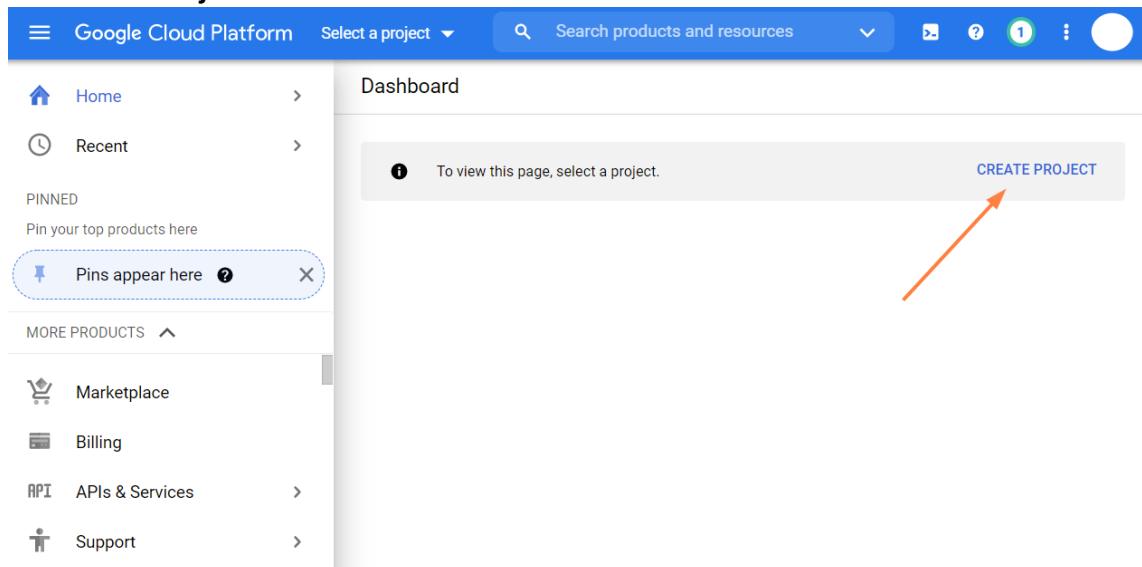
- Editing of some large files is not supported in Google Apps. See [Files you can store in Google Drive<sup>55</sup>](#) for specific size limitations.
- To open a Google Apps editor in incognito windows, you may first have to grant Google Docs the correct permissions or unblock third party cookies.

To integrate with Google Apps:

### Set up Google Apps - FileCloud integration in the Google Cloud platform:

You must have a Google account that you can use to sign in to the Google Cloud Console in order to integrate your system with Google Apps.

1. Access the Google Cloud Console at <https://console.cloud.google.com> and sign in.
2. Go to **Home > Dashboard**.
3. Click **Create Project**.



A **New Project** screen opens.

4. Give the project a name and click **Create**.

55. <https://support.google.com/drive/answer/37603?hl=en>

Google Cloud Platform Search products and resources

New Project

You have 11 projects remaining in your quota. Request an increase or delete projects. [Learn more](#)

[MANAGE QUOTAS](#)

Project name \*  
FileCloud Integration Project

Project ID: filecloud-integration-project. It cannot be changed later. [EDIT](#)

Location \*  
No organization [BROWSE](#)

Parent organization or folder

[CREATE](#) [CANCEL](#)

The project opens in the dashboard.

- In the navigation panel, click **APIs & Services > Dashboard**.  
(If the navigation panel is not visible, click the three bars in the upper-left corner of the screen to open it.)
- Click **Enable APIs and Services**.

Google Cloud Platform FileCloud Integration Project Search products ...

Click to open navigation panel.

APIs & Services [+ ENABLE APIS AND SERVICES](#)

Dashboard

Library

Credentials

OAuth consent screen

Domain verification

Page usage agreements

Traffic

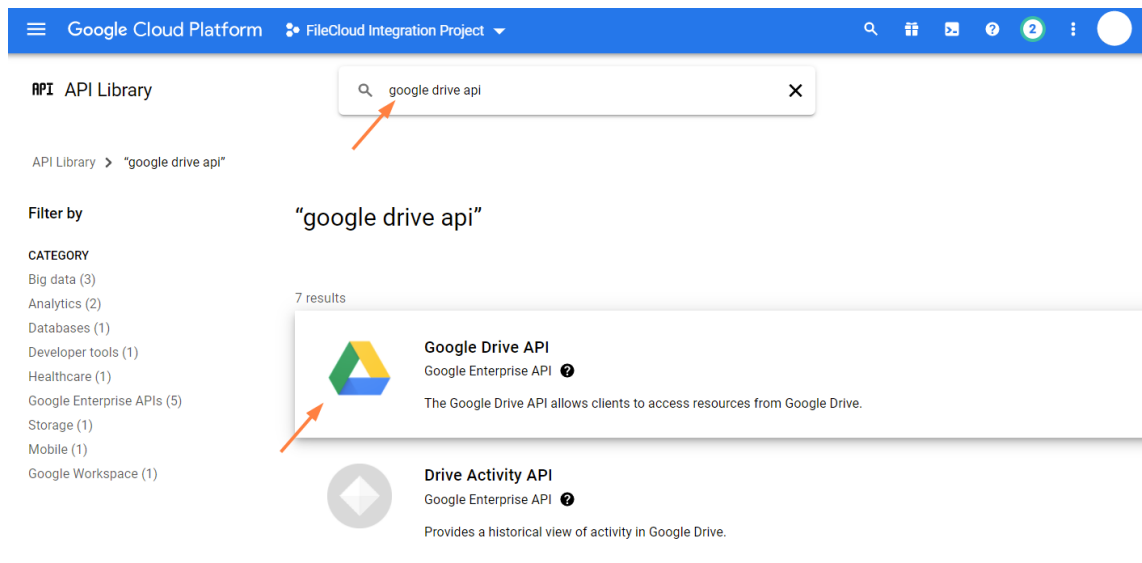
1 hour 6 hours 12 hours 1 day 2 days 4 days 7 days 14 days ☒ 30 days

No data is available for the selected time frame.

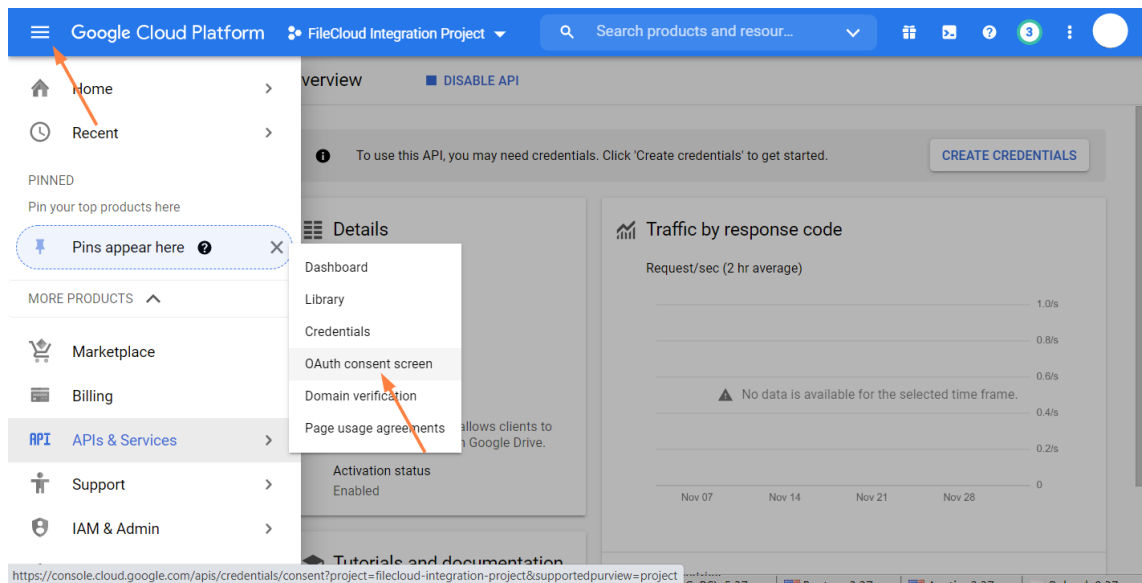
Nov 07 Nov 14 Nov 21 Nov 28

Errors

- Search for Google Drive API, select it, and enable it.



8. Then go back to the main navigation pane, and choose **APIs & Services > OAuth consent screen**.



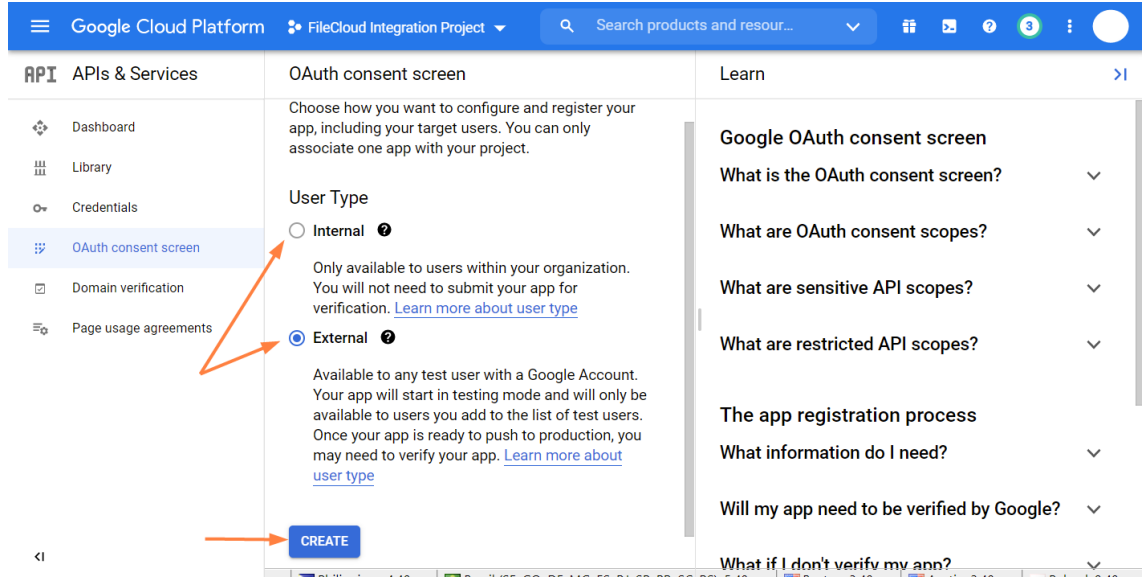
9. For **User Type**, choose **Internal** or **External** depending on the following guidelines:

**Internal** means the integration is limited to Google Workspace users within the organization (email domain). **External** allows any Google account.

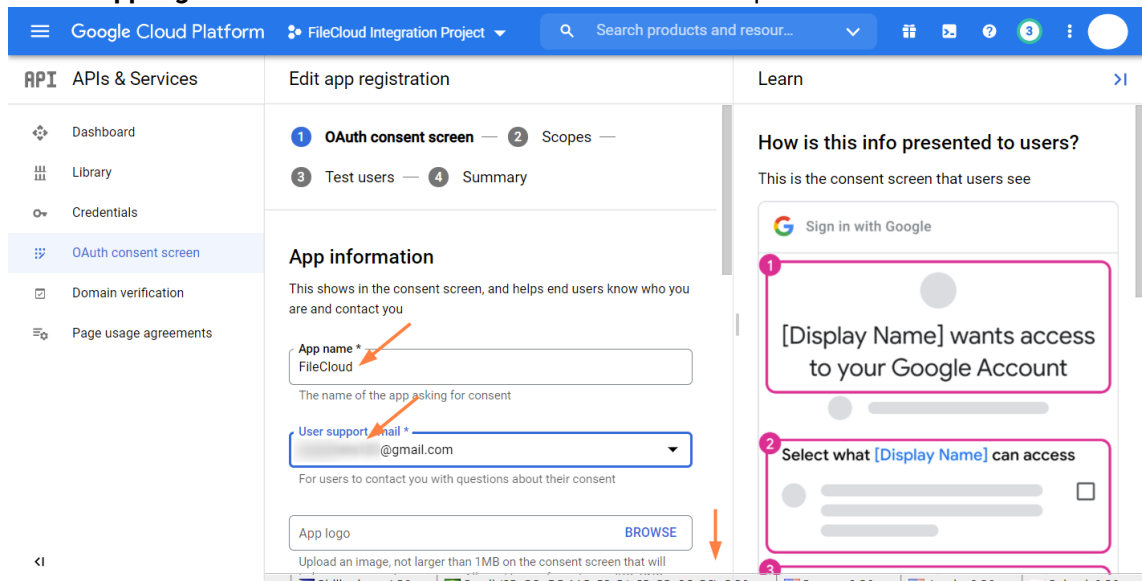
Free google accounts only allow **External** users, because there is no Google Organization. Paid google accounts can use both, but **Internal** is only allowed if there's a Google Organization set up

**External** requires the Google Project to be published into production status. It also may require the Google Project to be verified if it displays an icon or display name for the project on the OAuth consent screen.

10. Click **Create**.

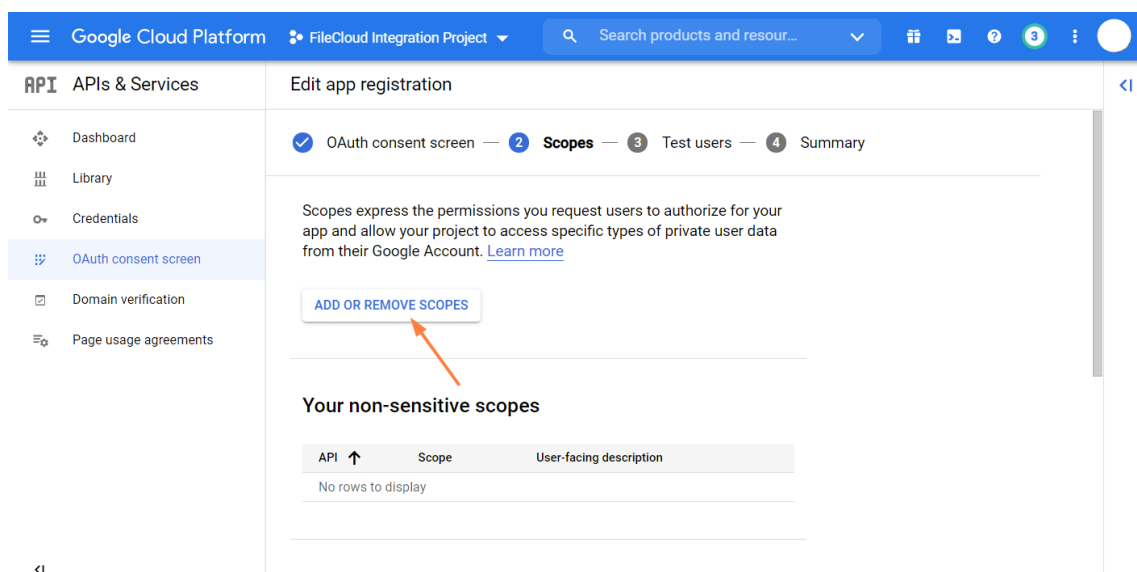


An **Edit app registration** screen for the **OAuth consent screen** opens.

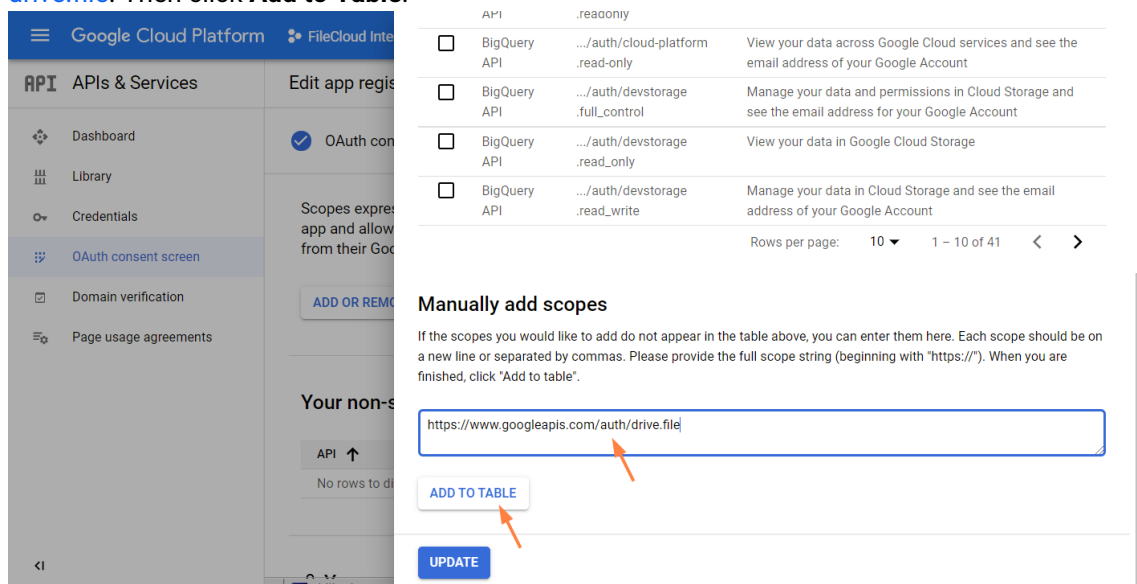


11. Fill in the required information, and then click **Save and Continue**.

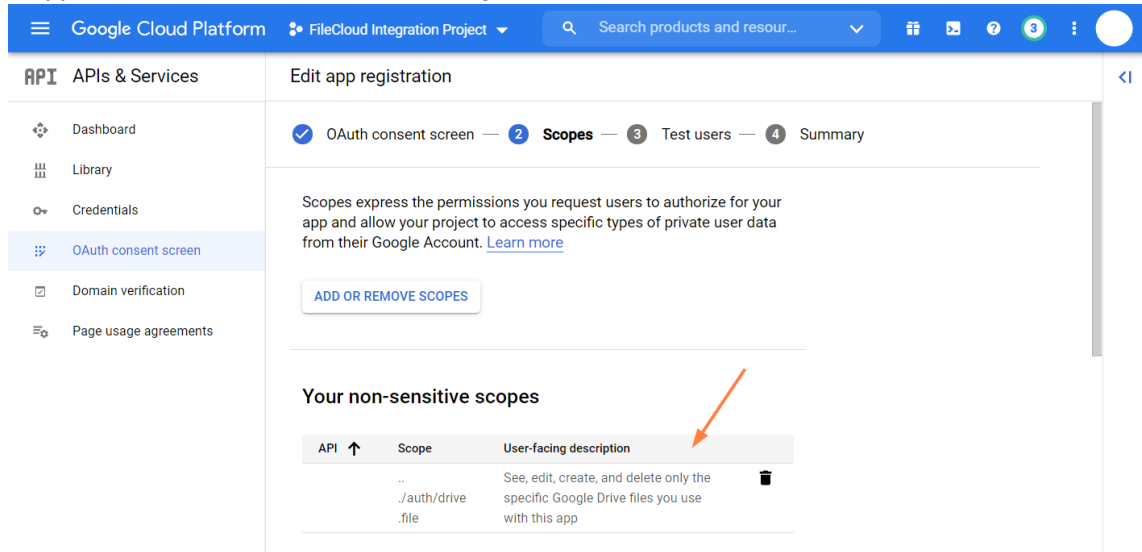
The registration screen for **Scopes** opens:



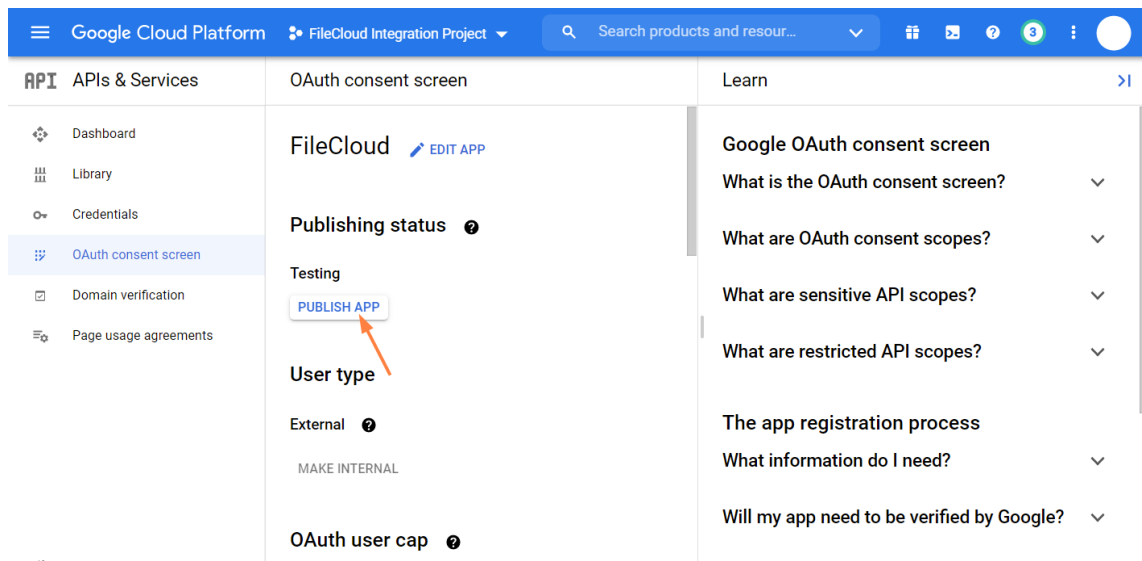
12. Click **Add or Remove Scopes**.  
An **Update Selected Scopes** screen opens.
13. Scroll to the bottom of the screen and manually add <https://www.googleapis.com/auth/drive.file>. Then click **Add to Table**.



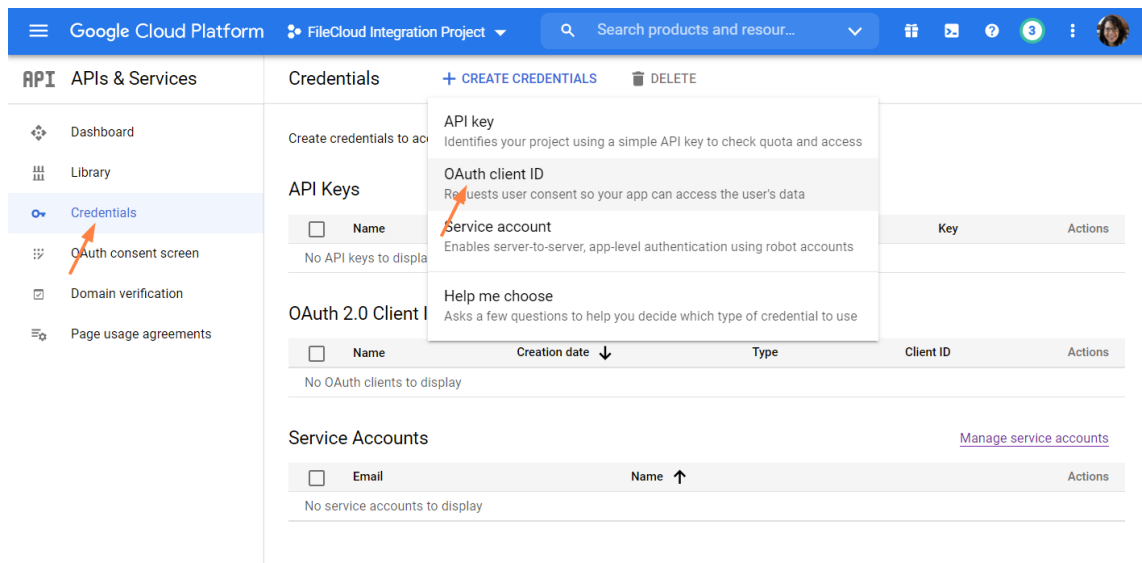
14. Check it in the table and click **Update**.  
It appears under **Your non-sensitive scopes**.



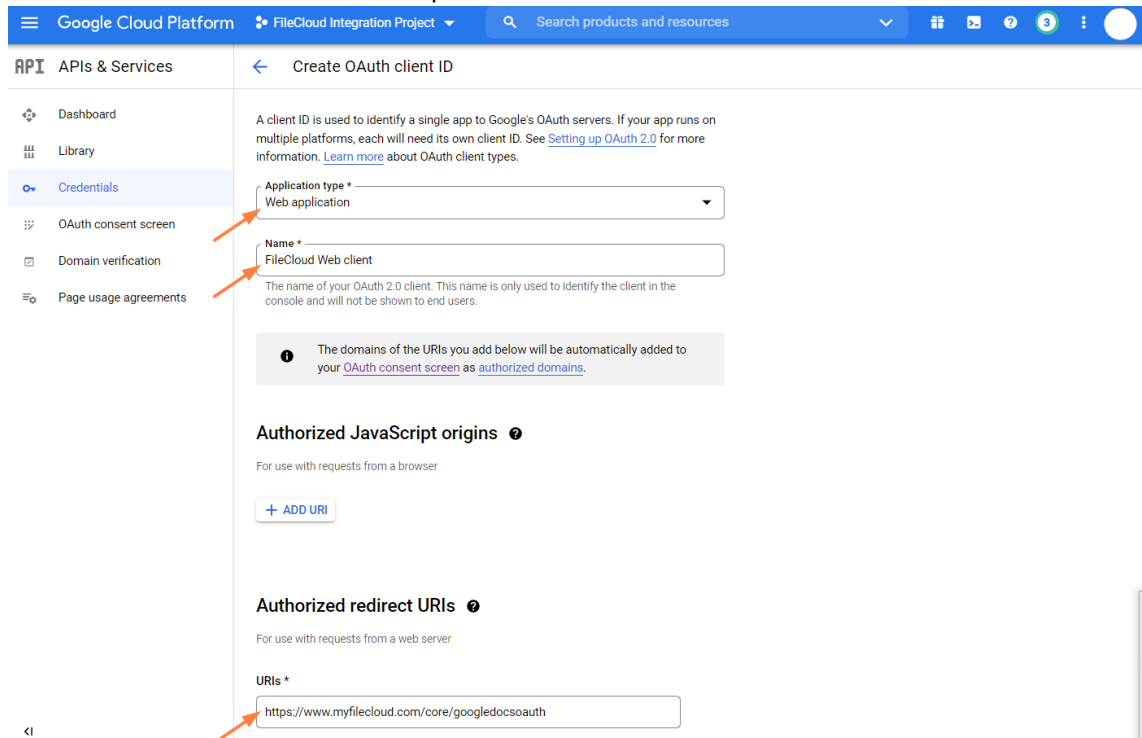
15. Scroll to the bottom of the screen and click **Save and Continue**.  
16. In the **Test Users** screen, click **Save and Continue**.  
17. In the navigation panel, click **OAuth consent screen** again, and click **Publish App**, and then click **confirm**.



18. In the navigation panel, click **Credentials**, and in the **Credentials** screen, click **Create Credentials**, and choose **OAuth client ID**.



The Create OAuth Client ID screen opens.



19. In **Application type**, select **Web application**.  
In **Name**, enter any name.  
In **URIs** under **Authorized redirect URIs** enter your FileCloud URL appended with **/core/googledocsoauth**, for example, **https://www.myfilecloud.com/core/googledocsoauth**.
20. Click **Create**.  
An OAuth client created message box opens:


## OAuth client created

The client ID and secret can always be accessed from Credentials in APIs & Services

**i** OAuth is limited to 100 [sensitive scope logins](#) until the [OAuth consent screen](#) is verified. This may require a verification process that can take several days.

Your Client ID

Your Client Secret

 **DOWNLOAD JSON**

[OK](#)

21. Click **Download JSON**, and download and save the JSON file.

### Configure Google Apps in FileCloud

Now we need set up Google Apps in FileCloud by adding the OAuth file and the HTML verification file.

1. Go to <https://www.google.com/webmasters/verification/home>
2. Click **Add a Property**, put your FileCloud URL (no endpoint appended this time).

#### Webmaster Central

Use the table below to manage verified owners of your properties or to add new properties to your account

**ADD A PROPERTY**

Enter the URL of the property that you'd like to verify.

**Continue**

Example: <http://www.example.com/>

3. Click **Continue**.

## Webmaster Central

Verify your ownership of <https://www.myfilecloud.com/>. [Learn more.](#)

Your Google Account will be recorded in Google's systems as an official owner of this property.  
Note - your ownership information will be stored and be visible to other owners (both current and future).

Recommended method

Alternate methods

### Recommended: HTML file upload

Upload an HTML file to your site.

1. Download [this HTML verification file](#). [googled[redacted].html]
  2. Upload the file to <https://www.myfilecloud.com/>
  3. Confirm successful upload by visiting [https://www.myfilecloud.com/googled\[redacted\].html](https://www.myfilecloud.com/googled[redacted].html) in your browser.
  4. Click Verify below.
- To stay verified, don't remove the HTML file, even after verification succeeds.

4. Download the HTML verification file.
5. Now open the FileCloud Admin UI and go to **Settings > Web Edit**, and scroll down to **Google Apps Access**.
6. Check **Enable Google Apps**.
7. For **Google OAuth Client ID**, click **Choose File** to select the JSON file you downloaded and saved in the previous procedure, and then click **Upload** to upload it.
8. For **Google's Domain Verification File**, click **Choose File** to select the HTML file that you just downloaded.

## Google Apps Access

Enable Google Apps

☒ Click to edit documents using Google Docs/Sheets/Slides

Google Server Idle Session Timeout

Enter idle session expiry time (in minutes from 5 to 1440) in which the edit will be considered finished

Google OAuth Client ID

Upload OAuth Client ID (.json)

client\_secre...ent.com.json

Upload the client secret JSON file to be used to access Google Docs via the OAuth method

Google's Domain Verification File

Upload Google's Domain Verification File (.html)

google4f3c...e19747.html

Upload HTML file to be used to verify your domain

9. Now go back to the <https://www.google.com/webmasters/verification><sup>56</sup> page where you have just downloaded the HTML file, and confirm you are not a robot.

10. Click **Verify**.

Your users can now view and use the **Open in Google [app]** option for docx, xlsx, and pptx files.

## New Document Creation via Web Browser

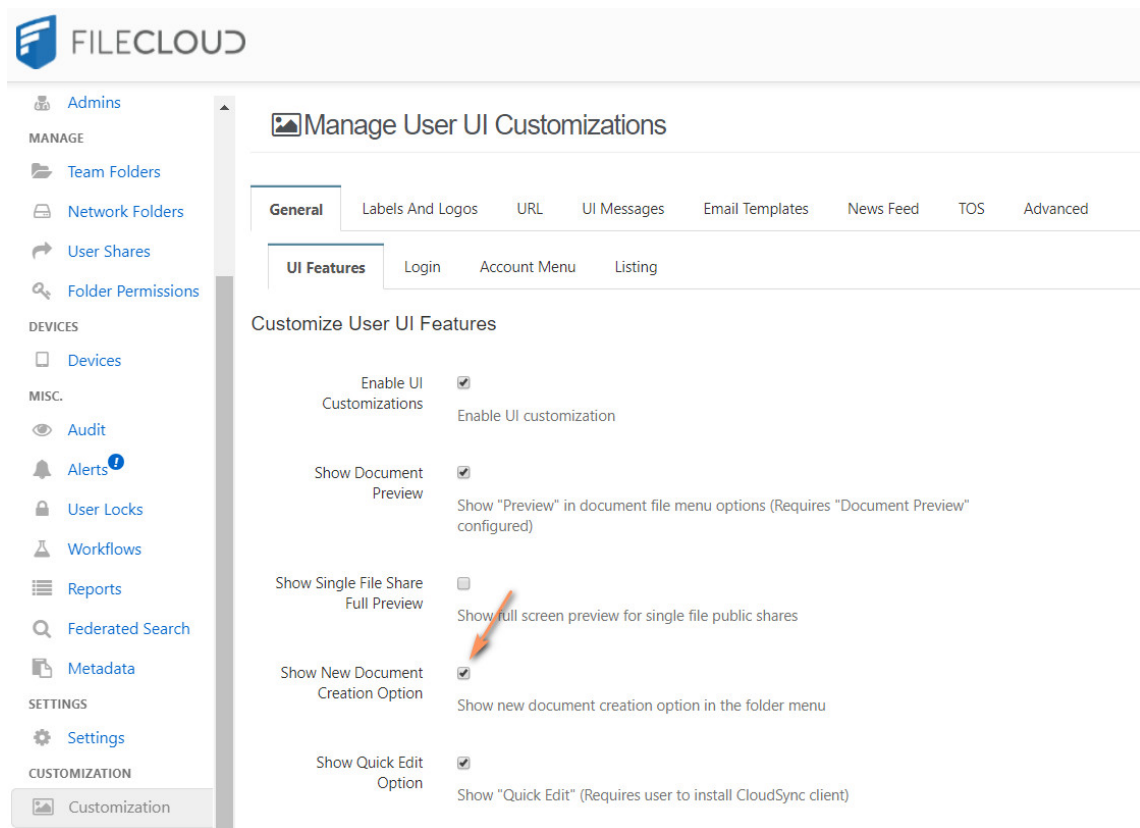
Once online editing is configured by the administrator, FileCloud users can log in to their portal and create new documents and edit them from within the web browser.

### To enable new document creation

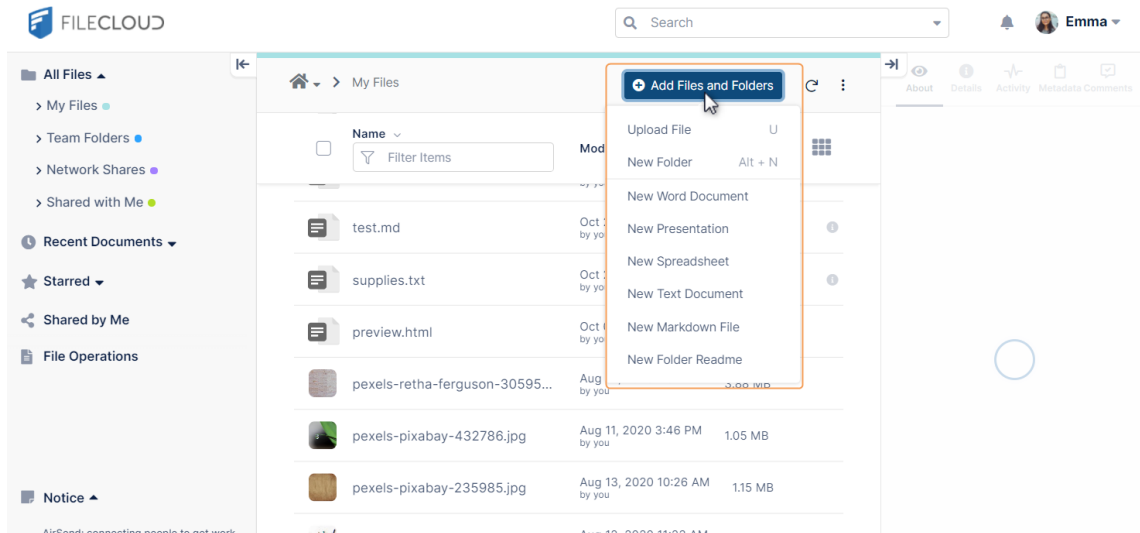
1. Enable **Show New Document Creation Option** in **Customization > General > UI Features**.

---

56. <https://www.google.com/webmasters/verification/verification?hl=en&siteUrl=https://www.myfilecloud.com/>

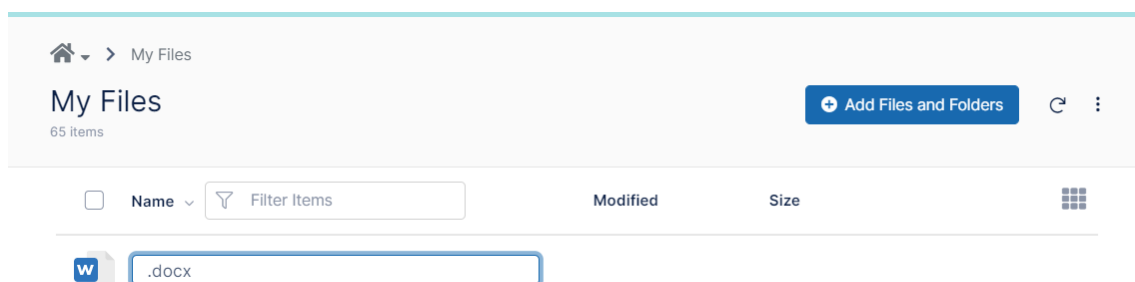


- Now, in the user portal, users can click **Add Files and Folders** above the list of files. A drop-down list with options for creating new files or a new folder appears.



If the user chooses to create a file, the file appears at the top of the list of files and folders. The extension is already entered.

- The user must type in a name, and click Enter.



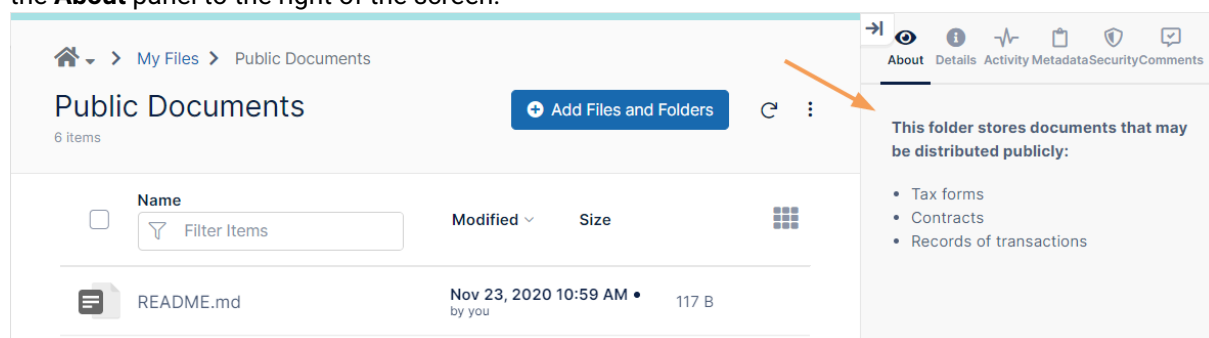
The document opens for edit.

## Readme files

There can only be one readme file in a folder, and it is always named [readme.md](http://readme.md)<sup>57</sup>.

After a user creates the readme file, when they click **Add Files and Folders** and choose **New Folder Readme**, the existing readme is opened for edit.

When a user selects a folder that includes a readme file, the contents of the readme are displayed in the **About** panel to the right of the screen.



## Web Editing Text Files

FileCloud supports editing text files from within a browser session. This support is enabled regardless of WOPI configuration, as editing of text files uses a built-in widget.

To create a new text file, see [New Document Creation via Web Browser](#) (see page 477)

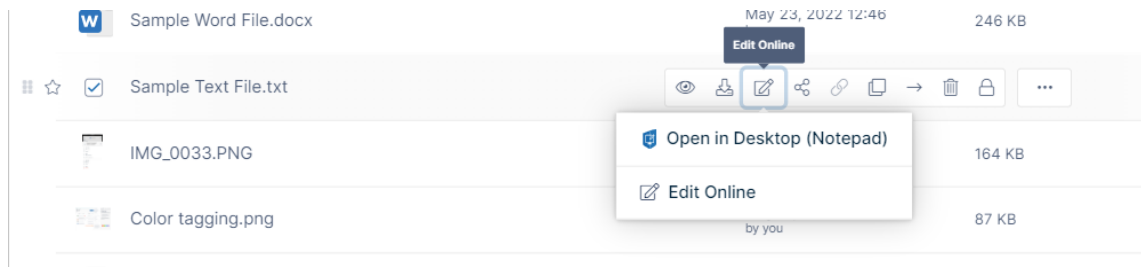
## Editing text files

To edit a text file:

1. Navigate to the text file, hover over it, and click the Edit icon.

---

<sup>57</sup>. <http://readme.md>



2. Choose the edit option (there may be one or more).  
The file opens in the text editor you have chosen..

3. Edit and save the file.

**Note:** You can also add and read comments about the file in the right panel.

## Web Editing Markdown and Readme Files

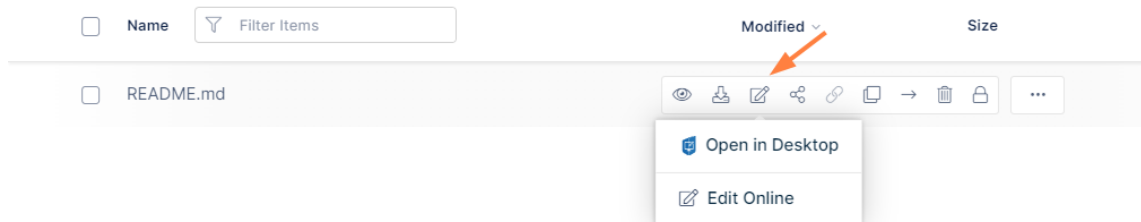
Starting with version 20.2, FileCloud supports editing markdown files from within a browser session. It also supports editing readme files, which are a form of markdown files and use the same types of editors.

To create a new markdown or readme file, see [New Document Creation via Web Browser](#) (see page 477)

### Editing markdown and readme files

To edit a markdown or readme file:

1. Navigate to the file, hover over it, and click the Edit icon.



2. Choose the edit option (there may be one or more).  
The file opens in the text editor you have chosen..



There can only be one readme file in a folder, and it is always named **readme.md**. After you create the file, it is displayed in the **About** section to the right of the page when you select the folder.

## Coauthoring Office Documents Using Web Edit

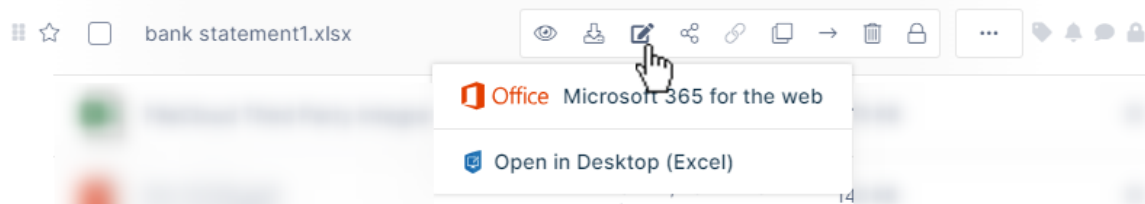
FileCloud supports coauthoring of Office document files from within a browser session.

## Introduction

Coauthoring occurs when two users are editing the same document and can view each other's changes as they make them.

Only .docx, .xlsx, and .pptx documents can be coauthored.

To open an Office file in web edit, hover over the file and click the **Web Edit** icon. In the drop-down list, choose **Microsoft 365 for the web**.



## Coauthoring Flow

The following steps demonstrate the flow of coauthoring.

1. User A wants to coauthor a document with user B.
2. User A shares the folder containing the document to user B. The share should have view, download and upload permissions to user B.
3. User A opens the file in web edit.
4. User B opens the same file that was received via sharing in web edit.
5. Now both users can edit the document and they can see each other editing the file.
6. The web edit service will handle the coordination and will ensure saving both user changes.


## Disable Online Web Editing

You can decide not to allow your users to edit documents in a browser.

After you configure online editing, FileCloud users can log in to the user portal, select any supported document and click a Web Edit button to edit the document from within the web browser. All the changes made by the user are saved in FileCloud automatically.

If you do not want to support this feature for certain users, the Web Edit button can be removed from the user portal through the users' policies.

**To hide the Web Edit button for the users associated with a policy:**













1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Policies**  . The **Policies** settings page opens.
2. Click the Edit icon in the row for the users' policy.

# Policies

New Policy

Create a new policy

New Policy

Policy Name	User Count	Group Count	Default	Actions
Global Default Policy	1	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	     
TEAM FOLDER POLICY	1	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	     

<<

<

Page 1 of 1

>

>>

2 rows

- The **Policy Settings** dialog box opens.
- Click the **User Policy** tab.
  - Locate **Enable web edit**, and disable it.

Effective Policy: "Global Default Policy"

General

2FA

User Policy

Client Application Policy

Device Configuration

Notifications

Some policy settings will not be applicable for Guest and External users.

User Policy

Disable invitations to new users

Do not allow user to send invitations to new users when shares are created.

no

Create account on new user share

Create accounts automatically when share invitations are sent to new users.

no

Enable code-based device authentication

no

Require admin approval for code-based device authentication

no

Enforce session timeout for devices using code-based device authentication.

no

Allow folder level security

Allow users to set folder level security for granular permissions.

no

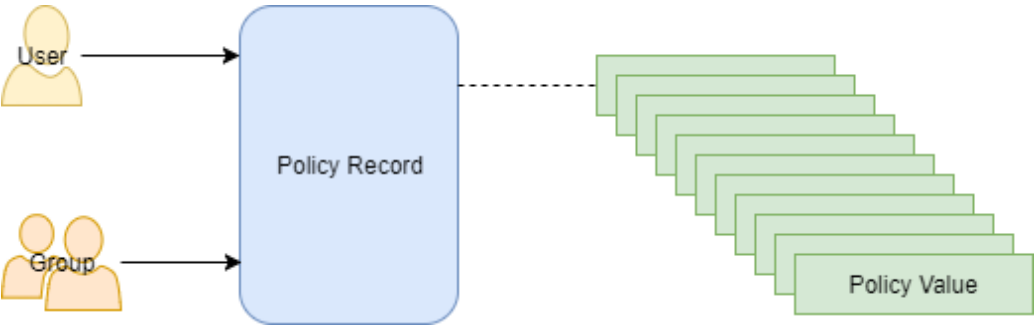
Enable web edit

Allow users to edit documents from within FileCloud.

☐


- Click **Save**.

# Policies



You can manage users and groups easily using policies.

- Policies enable you to manage settings at the user or group level
- One policy record manages multiple policy settings
- The policy record can be associated with a user or group

To manage FileCloud policies, click **Settings** in the navigation pane, and then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Policies** .

## Policies

New Policy

Create a new policy

New Policy

Policy Name	User Count	Group Count	Default	Actions
Global Default Policy	0	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
TEAM FOLDER POLICY	1	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	

<< < Page 1 of 1 > >>

2 rows

The policy values in Table 1 are managed in a policy record.

Table 1. Policy Values

General
---------

Share Mode	All (public and private)	
Default share expiry in days	0	
Default max number of downloads allowed	0	
User storage quota	2GB	
Enable Privacy Settings	NO	
Store deleted files in the recycle bin	NO	
Automatically delete files from recycle bin after set number days	0	
Do not store deleted files greater than	100 MB	
<b>2FA</b>		
Require two factor authentication	NO	
Two Factor Authentication Mechanism	Email	
<b>User Policy</b>		
Disable invitations to new users	NO	
Create account on new user share	NO	
Enable code-based device authentication	NO	
Require admin approval for code-based device authentication	NO (Only enabled if <b>Enabled Code Based Client Authentication</b> is set to YES.)	


Enforce session timeout for devices using code-based device authentication.	NO (Only enabled if <b>Enabled Code Based Client Authentication</b> is set to YES.)	
Allow folder level security	YES	
Enable web edit	YES	
Enable recycle bin clearing	YES	
Disallow default share settings change	NO	
Disable Send File For Approval	NO	
Disable Everyone group sharing	NO	
Allow group creation	NO	FileCloud 21.2
Allow group management (add and remove users)	NO	FileCloud 21.2
Allow group deletion	NO	FileCloud 21.2
Allow workflow automation sharing	NO	FileCloud 23.251
Disable workflow automation	NO	FileCloud 21.2
Require share approval workflow	NO	FileCloud 21.2
Selected Workflow (only appears if Require Share Approval Workflow is set to YES)	Select a Workflow	FileCloud 21.2
eSignature	YES	FileCloud 23.241.4
Max. file upload size	0	FileCloud 22.1
Save zip file session password	YES	FileCloud 22.1
<b>Client Application Policy</b>	<b>Default Value</b>	<b>Version Available</b>

Require passcode lock for mobile clients	NO	
Disable all mobile client apps from connecting	NO	
Disable 'Edit' functions in mobile client apps	NO	
Disable 'Print' option in mobile client apps	NO	
Disable 'Download' option in mobile client apps	NO	
Disable 'Open with' option in mobile client apps	NO	
Disable 'Share' options in mobile client apps	NO	
Disable 'Add to favorites' option in mobile client apps	NO	
<b>Notifications</b>		
Disable Notifications	NO	
Disable User Override	NO	
Disable Add notifications	NO	
Disable update notifications	NO	
Disable delete notifications	NO	
Disable Download notifications	NO	
Disable Preview notifications	NO	
Disable Lock/Unlock notifications	NO	
Disable Share notifications	NO	
Disable Rename notifications	NO	
Disable self notifications	NO	

## Working with Policy Records

### Accessing Policy Records

**To access a policy record:**













1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Policies**  . The **Policies** page opens.

## Policies

New Policy

Create a new policy

New Policy

Policy Name	User Count	Group Count	Default	Actions
Global Default Policy	0	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	     
TEAM FOLDER POLICY	1	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	     

<<<

<

Page 1 of 1


>

>>>

2 rows

### Creating a New policy Record

**To create a policy:**

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Policies**  . The **Policies** page opens.













2. Click **New Policy**.

# Policies

New Policy

Create a new policy

New Policy

Policy Name	User Count	Group Count	Default	Actions
Global Default Policy	0	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	     
TEAM FOLDER POLICY	1	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	     

<< <

Page 1 of 1

> >>

2 rows

3. In the **New policy** window, in **Policy Name**, type in a unique name for this policy, and then click **Create**.

New Policy

Policy Name

Admin user policy

Cancel

Create

The policy is created and appears in the **Policies** list.

4. Edit the new policy to configure settings.



















## Policies

[Reset to Defaults](#)

New Policy

Create a new policy

New Policy


Policy Name	User Count	Group Count	Default	Actions
Admin User policy	0	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	     
Global Default Policy	3	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	     
TEAM FOLDER POLICY	1	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	     

Page 1 of 1

3 rows

💡 Instead of creating a new policy, you have the option to copy an existing policy including changes you have made to its settings..

**To copy a policy:**













1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Policies**  . The **Policies** page opens.
2. Click the copy icon next to the policy that you want to copy

## Policies

New Policy

Create a new policy

New Policy

Policy Name	User Count	Group Count	Default	Actions
Global Default Policy	0	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	     
TEAM FOLDER POLICY	1	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	     

Page 1 of 1

2 rows

In the **Copy from** dialog box, enter a name for the policy, and click **Copy**.

**Copy from "Global Default Policy"** ✕

Policy Name

Accounting policy

Cancel



















Copy

The new policy appears in the list of policies:

## Policies

New Policy  
Create a new policy

New Policy

Policy Name	User Count	Group Count	Default	Actions
Accounting policy	0	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	     
Global Default Policy	0	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	     
TEAM FOLDER POLICY	1	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	     


<< < Page 1 of 1 > >>

3 rows

## Managing Policy Users and Groups

A policy can be assigned to one ore more user or group.

**To assign a user to a policy:**

- In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Policies**  . The **Policies** page opens.
- Click the user icon next to the policy that you want to assign a user to.
- Use the arrow to move the user to the **Policy Users** list box.

4. To save your changes, click **Close**.


#### To assign a group to a policy:

1. Log into the Admin Portal.
2. Click **Settings**.
3. On the **Policies** tab, to open the **Manage Policy Groups** window, click the groups icon.
4. In the **Manage Policy Groups** window, in **Available Groups**, select a group.
5. Use the arrows to move the group to the **Policy Groups** list box.
6. To save your changes, click **Close**.

#### Exporting a list of policy members

Beginning with FileCloud Version 21.3, you can see which users and groups are members of a policy by exporting them.

To export policy members:

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Policies**  . The **Policies** page opens.
2. To export a policy's users and groups to a csv file, click the export (right arrow) icon next to the policy.



















## Policies

[Reset to Defaults](#)

New Policy

Create a new policy

[New Policy](#)

Policy Name	User Count	Group Count	Default	Actions
Admin User policy	0	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	     
Global Default Policy	3	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	     
TEAM FOLDER POLICY	1	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	     

« < Page  of 1 > »

3 rows

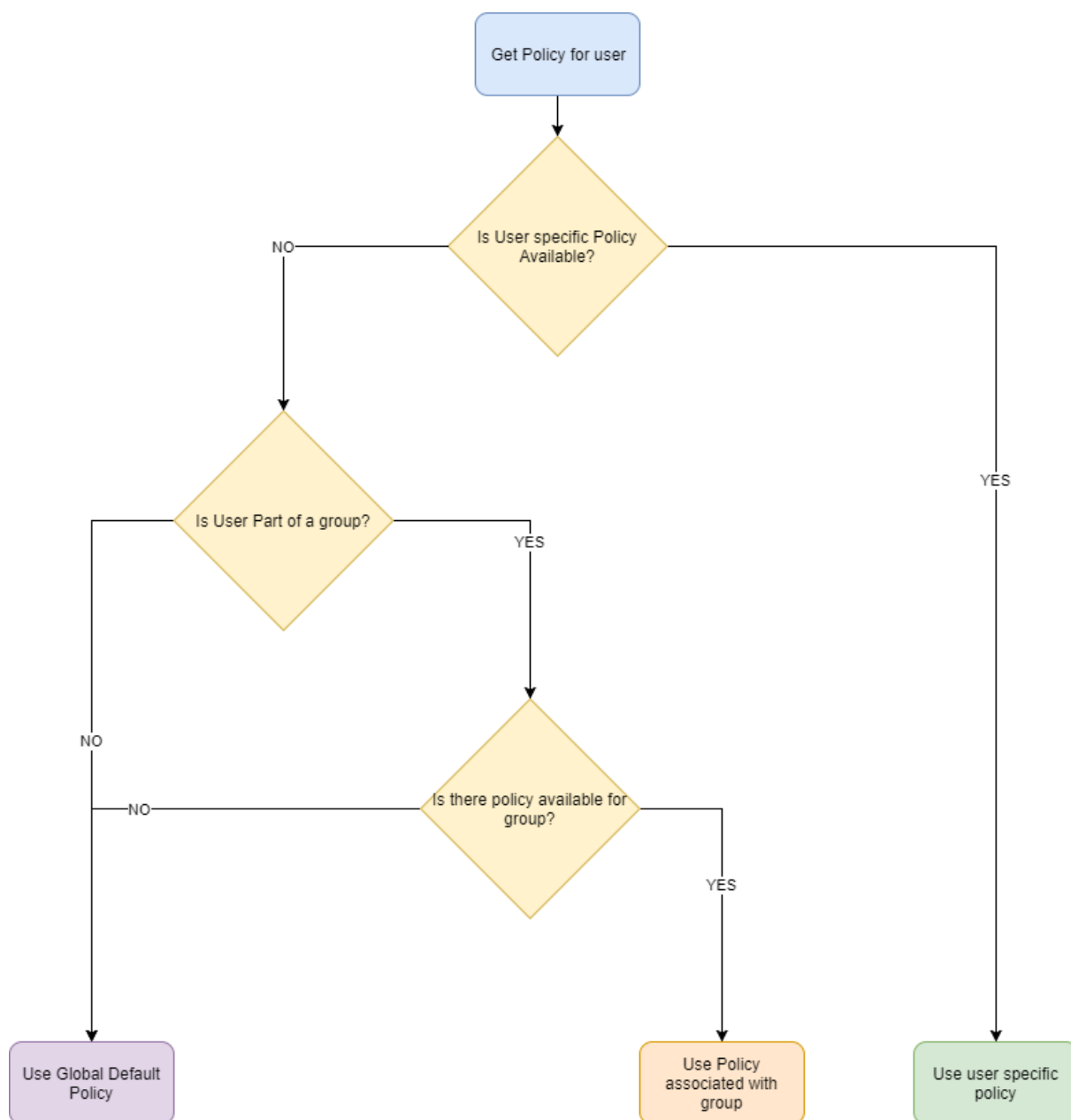
A csv file listing the individual users in the policy and users in groups in the policy is exported. The file includes the following fields:

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N
1	UserName	EmailID	Password	DisplayName	Status	ExpirationDate	Groups	EmailVerified	DisableNotificati	LastLogin	Authenticati	MobilePho	Effective Policy	
2	jenniferp			Jennifer	FULL		EVERYONE	YES	NO	2/6/2025 13:03	Default		Global Default Policy	
3	jessica			Jessica	FULL		EVERYONE, Human	YES	NO	2/4/2025 10:01	Default		Global Default Policy	

[Manage the Recycle Bin Using Policies \(see page 26\)](#)

**Policy Calculuations Best Practices**

**An effective policy for a user is calculated on multiple factors**



## Policy Selection Scenarios

Case 1: User with no policy assigned : **Global Default Policy will be used**

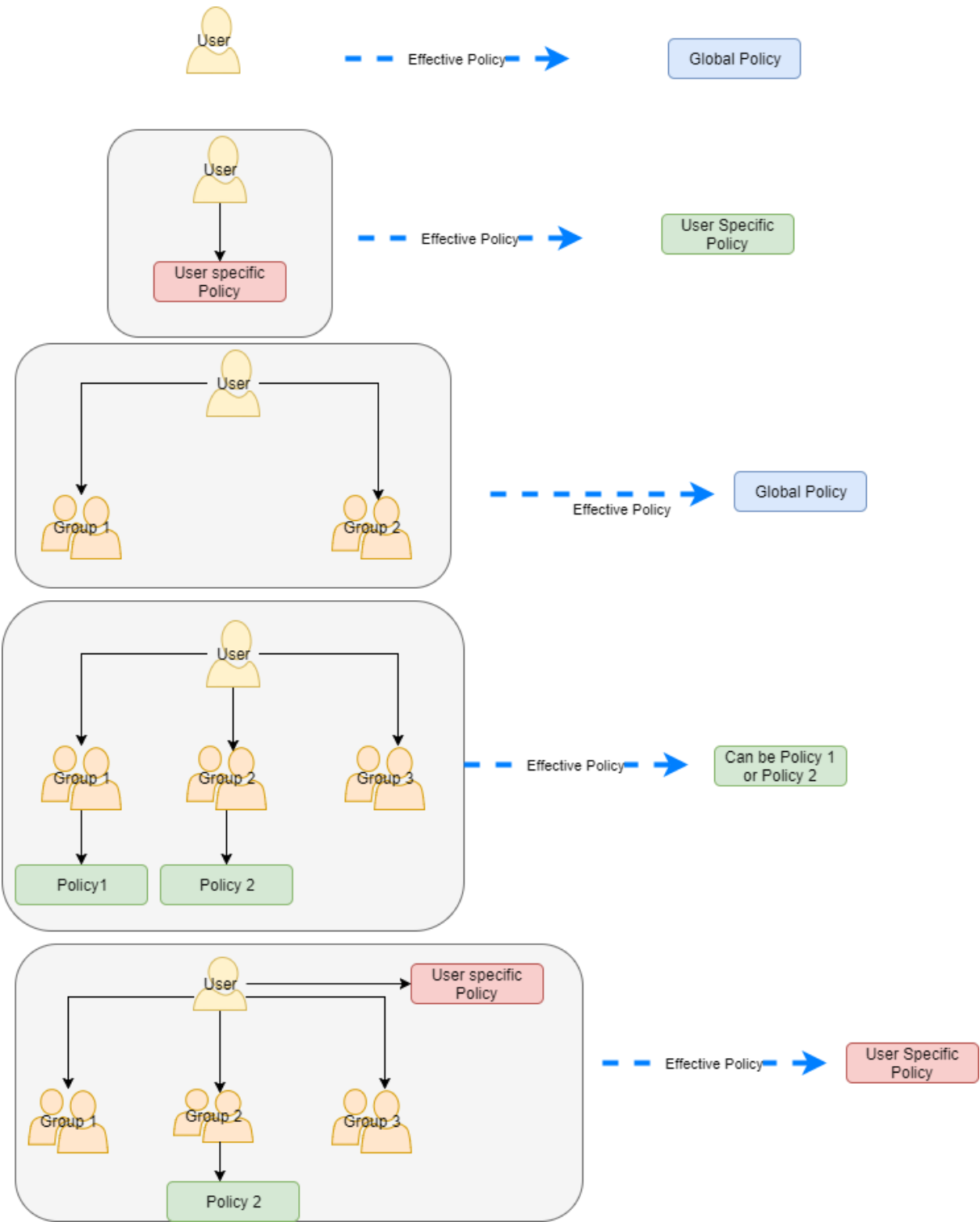
Case 2: User with specific policy assigned: **Assigned policy will be used**

Case 3: User is a member of multiple groups, No Policy is assigned to user or group: **Global Default Policy will be used**

Case 4: User is member of multiple groups and multiple groups have policies: **One of the group policies will be used (Randomly selected).**

Case 5: User is a member of multiple groups and has specific policy assigned and groups have their own policies: **User assigned policy will be used**

#### Selecting a Policy Scenario Flow Chart

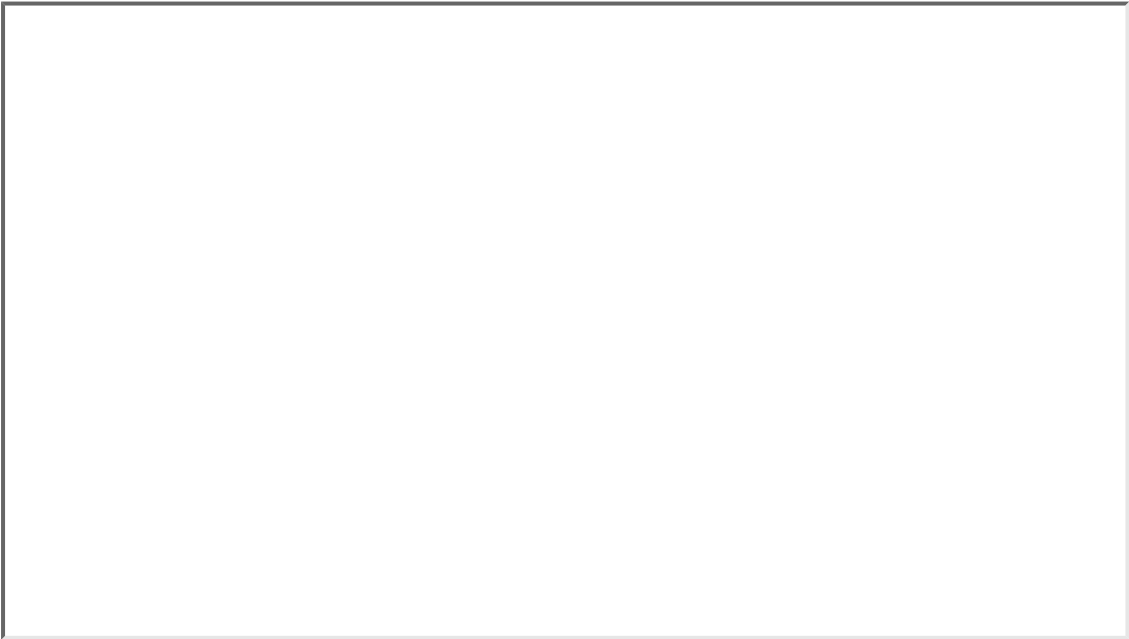


Creating a New Policy Video



Man

aging Policy Users and Groups Video



# Notifications for File Changes

FileCloud automatically sends you an email notification when:

- a file or folder is shared with you
- one of the following actions is performed (by you or another user) on a file or folder you have access to:
  - a file or folder is uploaded
  - a file or folder is downloaded
  - a file or folder is shared
  - a file or folder is deleted
  - a file or folder is renamed
  - a file is updated
  - a file is previewed in the browser or one of the mobile apps
  - a file or folder is locked

Administrators can set notifications at the global level and users can override them at the user level.

## FAQ's

### How Do Notifications Work?

By default, when users make any of the changes listed above to their own files or folders, FileCloud sends them a notification. When a user makes any of the changes listed above to shared files or folders, all users that the file or folder has been shared with receive a notification.

All file change notifications are consolidated and emails are sent by FileCloud at regular notification frequencies (15 minutes, 1 hour, 1 day etc) as set by your FileCloud administrator as part of the Cron Job Setting.

### Why is the user not getting a notification?

If you have enabled file and folder change notifications and a user is not receiving a notification, it may be because:

- that specific file change was blocked in the Admin user interface in Policy settings or in Notifications settings.

### Where was the change made?

To receive a notification, actions must occur in one of the following places:

- The FileCloud Admin Portal

- The FileCloud User Portal
- The FileCloud Sync client
- The FileCloud Drive client
- The FileCloud Mobile App

### Is the Notification Blocked in Another Place?

File change notifications can be blocked for a specific action in any of the following places:


- Global settings
- Policy settings
- Share settings
- File or folder settings
- Account settings for external users

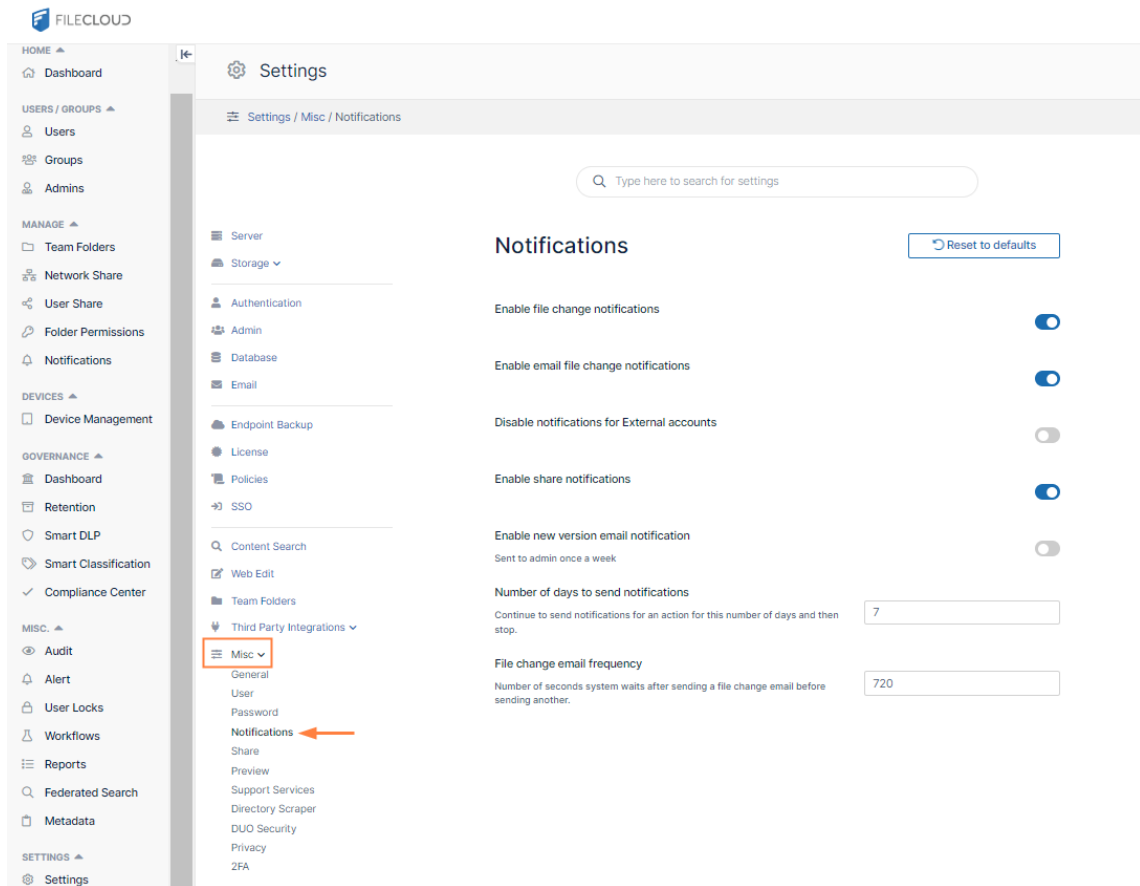
If a user is not receiving a notification, check to see if that file action is disabled at any level.

### Are you using a trial account?

Trial accounts have notification limits. If you are using a trial account and have been able to send notifications previously, the notification limit may have been reached.

## How to access notification settings in the admin portal

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Misc** .
2. In the inner navigation bar on the left of the **Settings** page, expand the **Misc** menu, and click **Notifications**, as shown below.



## Changing notification settings

### Global notification settings

#### Enable or Disable ALL Notifications

To enable file change notifications:

1. Access the **Notifications** settings page.
2. To display notifications of file changes on the user portal, check **Enable file change notifications**.
3. To send email notifications of file changes to users, also check **Enable email file change notifications**.

This setting is not enabled unless **Enable file change notifications** is checked.

## Notifications

[Reset to defaults](#)

Enable file change notifications



Enable email file change notifications



Disable notifications for External accounts



4. Click **Save**.



Beginning with FileCloud 20.1, if **Enable file change notifications is unchecked**, users cannot override the admin notification settings.

### Set the Frequency for ALL Notifications

#### Increase the Frequency of Notifications

You can set the file change notification frequency level in the Admin portal, and users can override this and set their own frequency in the User portal.

- This option is only available in FileCloud Server version 19.1 and later.
- In previous versions, the File Change Frequency Notification could only be changed in cron's running interval.

#### To set file change notification frequency in the admin portal:

1. Access the **Notifications** settings page.  
The default file change email frequency is 720 seconds (12 minutes).
2. Change the number of seconds in **File change email frequency**.

## Notifications

[Reset to defaults](#)

Enable file change notifications



Enable email file change notifications



Disable notifications for External accounts



Enable share notifications



Enable new version email notification

Sent to admin once a week



Number of days to send notifications

Continue to send notifications for an action for this number of days and then stop.

File change email frequency

Number of seconds system waits after sending a file change email before sending another.

3. Change the value.
4. Save your changes.

To see how users can set their own notification frequency, see the help topic [Notifications](#).

### Do not send outdated email notifications

#### Do not send notifications that were created a number of days ago

You can configure FileCloud Server to stop sending email notifications for an action after a specified number of days (by default, 7 days). This prevents the system from sending notifications that are no longer relevant.

#### To prevent sending notifications after a specific number of days:

1. Access the **Notifications** settings page.
2. In **Number of days to send notifications**, type in a number.  
Enter **0** to disable notifications.

## Notifications

[Reset to defaults](#)

Enable file change notifications



Enable email file change notifications



Disable notifications for External accounts



Enable share notifications



Enable new version email notification

Sent to admin once a week



Number of days to send notifications

Continue to send notifications for an action for this number of days and then stop.

3. Save your changes.

### External User Account Notifications

User accounts with external access can manage FileCloud content only through a Web browser.

These user accounts:

- Can only view/upload/download to content shared with them
- Do not count towards the user license limit
- Cannot be authenticated via AD and can only be local user account
- Linked email accounts cannot use the same domain specified in the FileCloud URL
- Can't be added directly to network shares via the Admin Portal
- Can access content from network folders if they are shared

If you have users with external access to content, you may want to avoid confusion that may occur when an email is sent about content that users with external accounts cannot access.

**To set the file change notification frequency for external accounts:**

1. Access the **Notifications** settings page.

## Notifications

[↺ Reset to defaults](#)

Enable file change notifications
☒

Enable email file change notifications
☒

Disable notifications for External accounts
☒

Enable share notifications
☒

2. To stop sending notifications, locate the setting **Disable notifications for External accounts** and enable it.
3. Click **Save**.

### Sharing Notifications

When a File or Folder is shared, the owner can allow or restrict sending file change notifications to all users that have access to that share.

- Enabling this setting sends an email notification when a publicly shared file is opened or downloaded.
- Notifications can be enabled or disabled by the user in the User Portal
- Notifications can also be enabled or disabled by the admin in the Admin Portal.
- The user can override these settings by setting custom notifications for a file or folder path.

User Portal	Admin Portal
<div style="background-color: #34495e; color: white; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 10px;">Share link for Example 1.docx</div> <div style="margin-bottom: 10px;"> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; align-items: center;"> <div>Share Link</div> <div> <input type="text" value="http://127.0.0.1:ur/ekhsqj2zwdcqp23s"/> <a href="#" style="font-size: 0.8em; color: #007bff;">Modify Link</a> </div> </div> </div> <div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; align-items: center; margin-bottom: 5px;"> <div>Shared File</div> <div style="font-size: 0.8em;">(example)Example 1.docx</div> </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; align-items: center; margin-bottom: 5px;"> <div style="background-color: #34495e; color: white; padding: 2px 5px;">Share Options</div> <div style="background-color: #34495e; color: white; padding: 2px 5px;">Share History</div> </div> <div style="margin-bottom: 5px;"> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; align-items: center;"> <div>Share Name:</div> <div>4FehQxPQVPyZAz <a href="#" style="font-size: 0.8em; color: #007bff;">Change</a></div> </div> </div> <div style="margin-bottom: 5px;"> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; align-items: center;"> <div>Expires:</div> <div>Never</div> </div> </div> <div style="margin-bottom: 5px;"> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; align-items: center;"> <div>Max number of downloads:</div> <div>No Restrictions</div> </div> </div> <div style="margin-bottom: 5px;"> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; align-items: center;"> <div>Send Email Notifications:</div> <div>Yes <span style="font-size: 0.8em;">←</span></div> </div> </div> <div style="margin-bottom: 5px;"> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; align-items: center;"> <div>Sharing Permissions:</div> <div> <input checked="" type="radio"/> Allow anyone with link  <input type="radio"/> Allow anyone with link and a password  <input type="radio"/> Allow selected users or groups         </div> </div> </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; align-items: center; margin-top: 10px;"> <div style="background-color: #34495e; color: white; padding: 2px 5px;">Remove Share</div> <div style="background-color: #007bff; color: white; padding: 2px 5px;">OK</div> </div> </div>	<h3 style="margin-top: 0;">Notifications</h3> <div style="text-align: right; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <a href="#" style="border: 1px solid #007bff; padding: 2px 5px; color: #007bff; text-decoration: none;">↺ Reset to defaults</a> </div> <div style="margin-top: 20px;"> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; align-items: center; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <span>Enable file change notifications</span> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; align-items: center; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <span>Enable email file change notifications</span> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; align-items: center; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <span>Disable notifications for External accounts</span> <input type="checkbox"/> </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; align-items: center; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <span>Enable share notifications</span> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; align-items: center;"> <span>Enable new version email notification</span> <input type="checkbox"/> </div> <div style="font-size: 0.8em; margin-top: 5px;">Sent to admin once a week</div> </div>

User Portal	Admin Portal
<p><b>To share a file with everyone without restrictions:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Open a browser and log in to the user portal.</li> <li>2. Click My Files.</li> <li>3. Hover over the file you want to share.</li> <li>4. Click the share icon.</li> <li>5. On the Share Link for File dialog box, click <b>Share Options</b>.</li> <li>6. In <b>Share Options</b>, set <b>Send Email Notifications</b> to <b>Yes</b>.</li> </ol>	<p><b>To enable file change notifications for shares:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Log in to the admin portal.</li> <li>2. Access the Notifications settings page.</li> <li>3. Enable <b>Enable share notification</b>.</li> <li>4. Click <b>Save</b>.</li> </ol>

## Customize notification settings for individual users and groups


### User and Group Notifications

You can customize notifications for specific users or groups by customizing the notifications settings on their policies.

For example, notifications can be disabled for a specific user or group by disabling notifications in their policy.

Note that unless **Disable User Override** is checked, users can override all of these settings except for **Disable Notifications**.

To customize notifications through a policy:

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Policies**  . The **Policies** settings page opens.

## Policies

New Policy

Create a new policy

New Policy

Policy Name	User Count	Group Count	Default	Actions
Global Default Policy	0	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#"></a> <a href="#"></a> <a href="#"></a> <a href="#"></a> <a href="#"></a> <a href="#"></a>
TEAM FOLDER POLICY	1	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#"></a> <a href="#"></a> <a href="#"></a> <a href="#"></a> <a href="#"></a> <a href="#"></a>

<<

<

Page

1

of 1

>

>>

2 rows

- 2. Edit the policy assigned to the user or group.
- 3. Click the **Notifications** tab.
- 4. Turn on/disable options that you want to apply to the user or group.

Effective Policy: "Global Default Policy" ✕

General
2FA
User Policy
Client Application Policy
Device Configuration
Notifications

Some policy settings will not be applicable for Guest and External users.

Notifications

**Disable Notifications** ☐

Disable all notifications

**Disable User Override** ☐

Do not allow notification setting override by user. Applicable only when Disable Notifications is not checked above.

**Disable Add notifications** ☐

Do not send notifications when a new file is added to a shared folder.

**Disable update notifications** ☐

Do not send notifications when a shared file is updated.

**Disable delete notifications** ☐

Do not send notifications when a shared file is deleted.

**Disable Download notifications** ☐

Do not send notifications when a shared file is downloaded.

**Disable Preview notifications** ☐

Do not send notifications when a shared file is previewed.

**Disable Lock/Unlock notifications** ☐

Do not send notifications when a shared file is locked or unlocked.

**Disable Share notifications** ☐

Do not send notifications when a shared file is shared.

**Disable Rename notifications** ☐

Do not send notifications when a shared file is renamed.

**Disable self notifications** ☐

Do not send notifications to the user when action is done by the same user.

Cancel
Reset
Save

**Disable Notifications** - When checked, disable all notifications. This setting cannot be overridden.

**Disable User Override** - When checked, disable user override of these settings. Applicable only when the above setting, **Disable Notifications**, is not checked.

**Disable Add notifications** - Do not send notifications when a new file is added to a shared folder.

**Disable update notifications** - When YES, do not send notifications when a shared file is updated.

**Disable delete notifications** - When YES, do not send notifications when a shared file is deleted.

**Disable Download notifications** - When YES, do not send notifications when a shared file is downloaded.

**Disable Preview notifications** - When YES, do not send notifications when a shared file is previewed.

**Disable Lock/Unlock notifications** - When YES, do not send notifications when a shared file is locked or unlocked.

**Disable Share notifications** - When YES, do not send notifications when a shared file is shared.

**Disable Rename notifications** - When YES, do not send notifications when a shared file is renamed.

**Disable self notifications** - When YES, do not send notifications to a user when any of these actions are done to a file or folder (shared or not shared) owned by the user.

5. Click **Save**.

#### Also see:

Customize notifications in user settings

## Example Setup: Fixed Notifications for Uploads and Deletions

In this example, a company shares FileCloud support folders with customers so the customers can upload help requests that are then viewed by Support. The customers are also permitted to delete requests that no longer have to be addressed.

As the admin you must set up email notifications that inform Support staff when:


- new help requests are uploaded so they can begin processing them
- existing help requests are deleted in case they have begun addressing them.

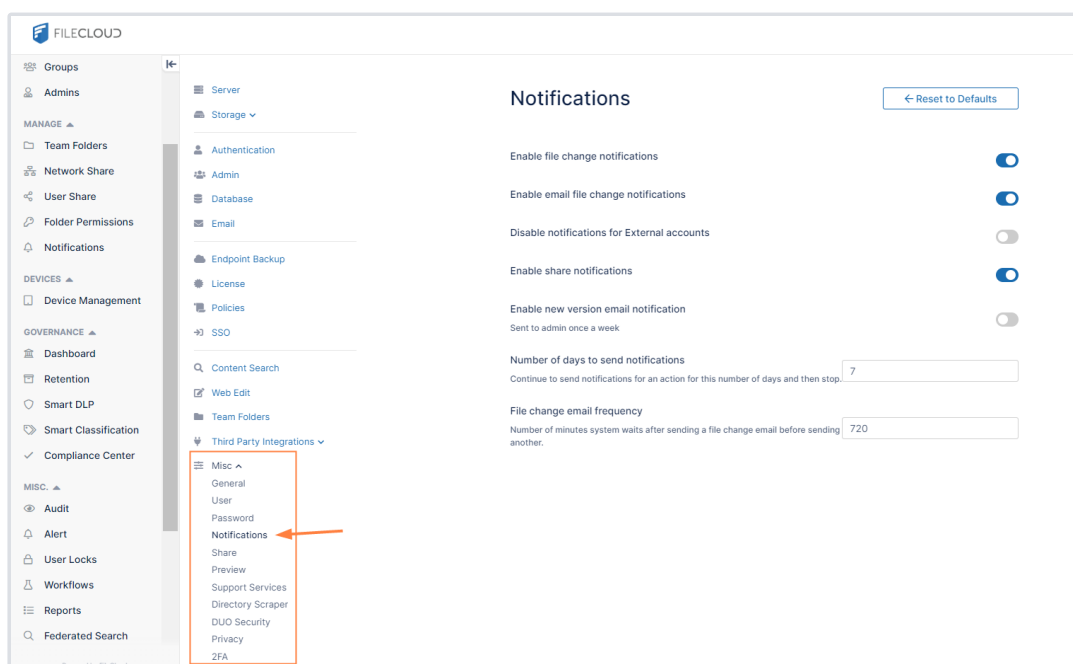
To prevent accidental changes to these notifications, you do not allow users to change the notification settings.

### To configure these settings:

1. To enable email notifications globally, open the Notifications settings page.

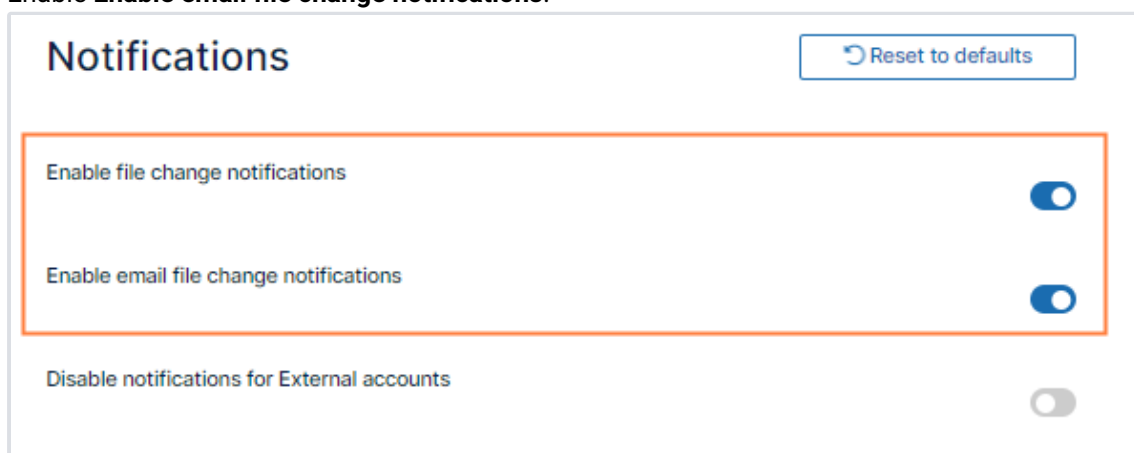
#### To open the Notification settings page


- a. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Misc** .
- b. In the inner navigation bar on the left of the **Settings** page, expand the **Misc** menu, and click **Notifications**, as shown below.



The **Notifications** settings page opens.

2. Make sure **Enable file change notifications** is enabled. If it is not enabled, **Enable email file change notifications** is not available.
3. Enable **Enable email file change notifications**.



4. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Policies**  . The **Policies** settings page opens.
5. Edit the policy assigned to support personnel.
















## Policies

[Reset to Defaults](#)

### New Policy

Create a new policy

[New Policy](#)

Policy Name	User Count	Group Count	Default	Actions
Global Default Policy	1	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	    
Support policy	2	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	    
TEAM FOLDER POLICY	1	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	    

<< < Page  of 1 > >>

3 rows

- Click the **Notifications** tab.
- Disable the field **Disable Notifications**, and enable the field **Disable User Override**.

Effective Policy: "Support policy"

General 2FA User Policy Client Application Policy Device Configuration **Notifications**

Some policy settings will not be applicable for Guest and External users.

Notifications

**Disable Notifications**

Disable all notifications ☐

**Disable User Override**

Do not allow notification setting override by user. Applicable only when Disable Notifications is not checked above. ☒

- Scroll down so that you can view the individual **Disable Notifications** settings, and only leave **Disable Add Notifications** and **Disable Delete Notifications** set to off. Set the other **Disable Notification** settings to on.

Effective Policy: "Support policy" ✕

General   2FA   User Policy   Client Application Policy   Device Configuration   **Notifications**

Some policy settings will not be applicable for Guest and External users.

Notifications

**Disable Notifications**  
Disable all notifications ☐

**Disable User Override**  
Do not allow notification setting override by user. Applicable only when Disable Notifications is not checked above. ☒

**Disable Add notifications**  
Do not send notifications when a new file is added to a shared folder. ☐

**Disable update notifications**  
Do not send notifications when a shared file is updated. ☒

**Disable delete notifications**  
Do not send notifications when a shared file is deleted. ☐

**Disable Download notifications**  
Do not send notifications when a shared file is downloaded. ☒

**Disable Preview notifications**  
Do not send notifications when a shared file is previewed. ☒

**Disable Lock/Unlock notifications**  
Do not send notifications when a shared file is locked or unlocked. ☒

**Disable Share notifications**  
Do not send notifications when a shared file is shared. ☒

**Disable Rename notifications**  
Do not send notifications when a shared file is renamed. ☒

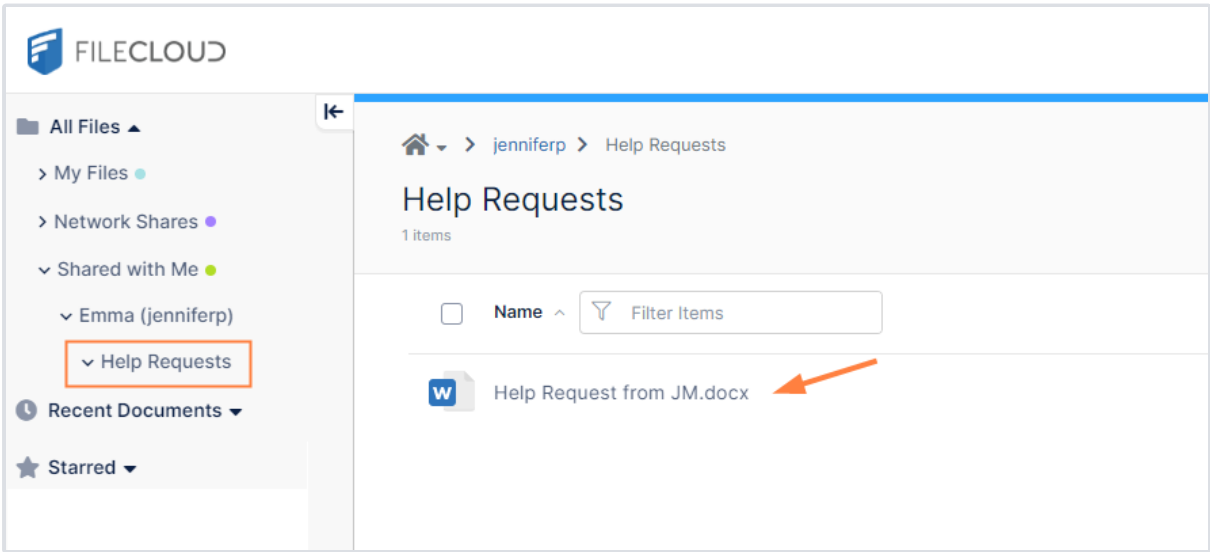
**Disable self notifications**  
Do not send notifications to the user when action is done by the same user. ☒

Cancel Reset Save

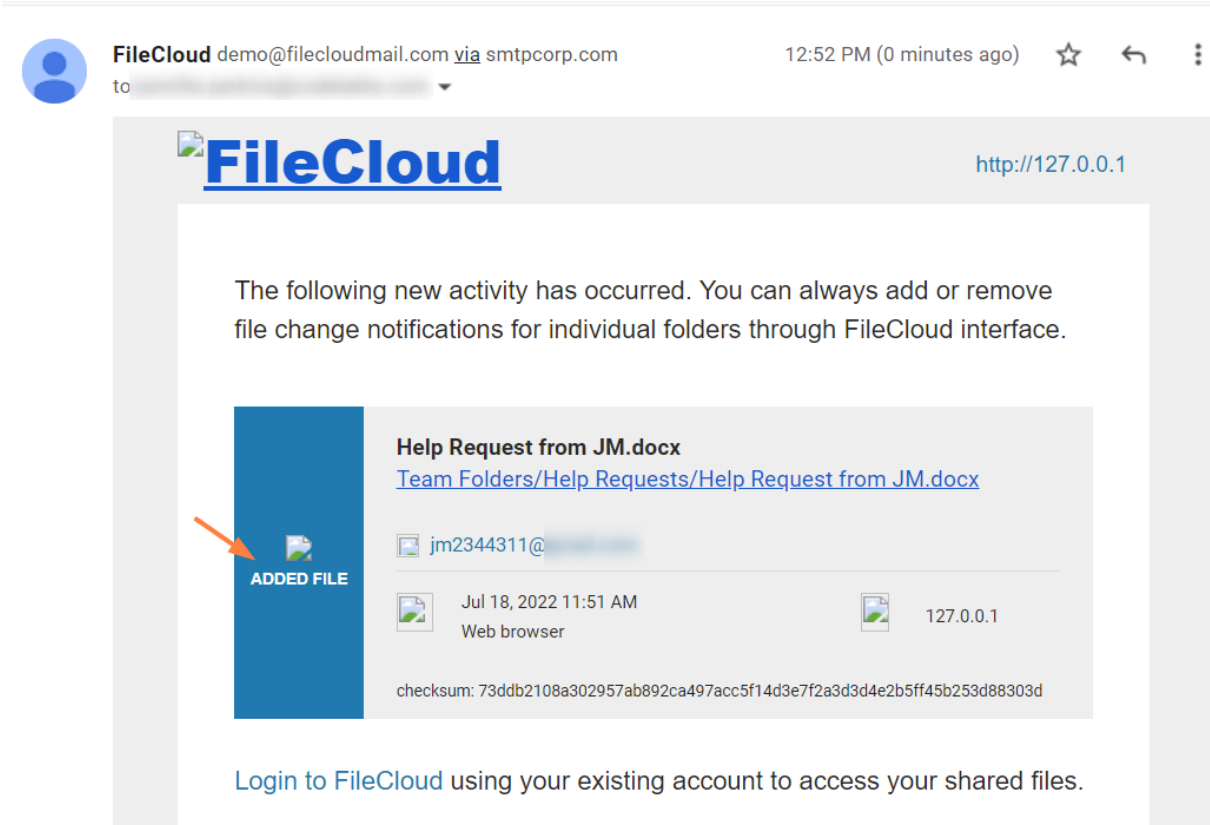
9. Save your changes.

## When a customer uploads a help request

Now, when customer JM uploads a help request to the **User Help Requests** folder which has been shared with them (the folder is in **Shared with Me**) . . .

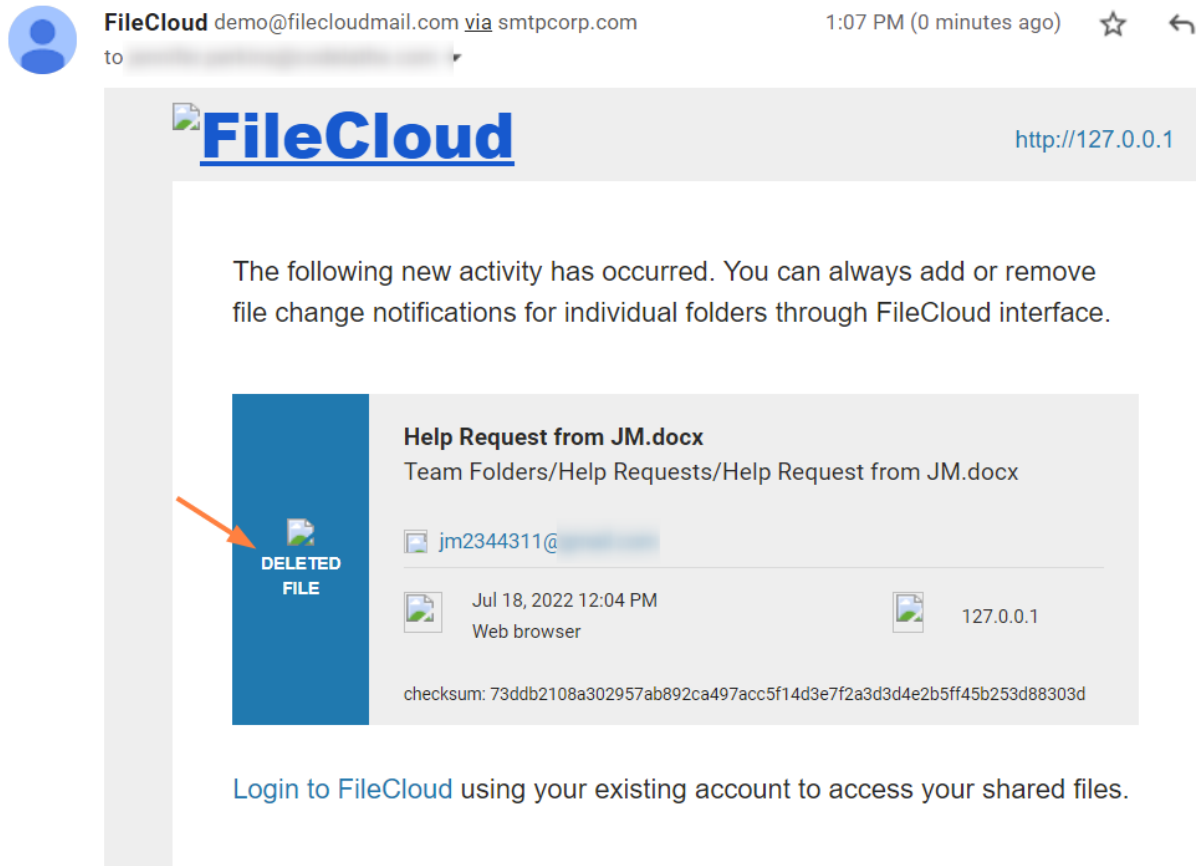


... users in support receive an email informing them that a new request file has been uploaded:



**When a customer deletes a help request:**

If customer JM deletes the help request file, users in support receive an email informing them that it has been deleted:



## Example Setup: User-enabled Notifications on Folders

In this example, a telecommunications company uses FileCloud to share Team Folders that hold the latest product and pricing information with everyone in its sales department.

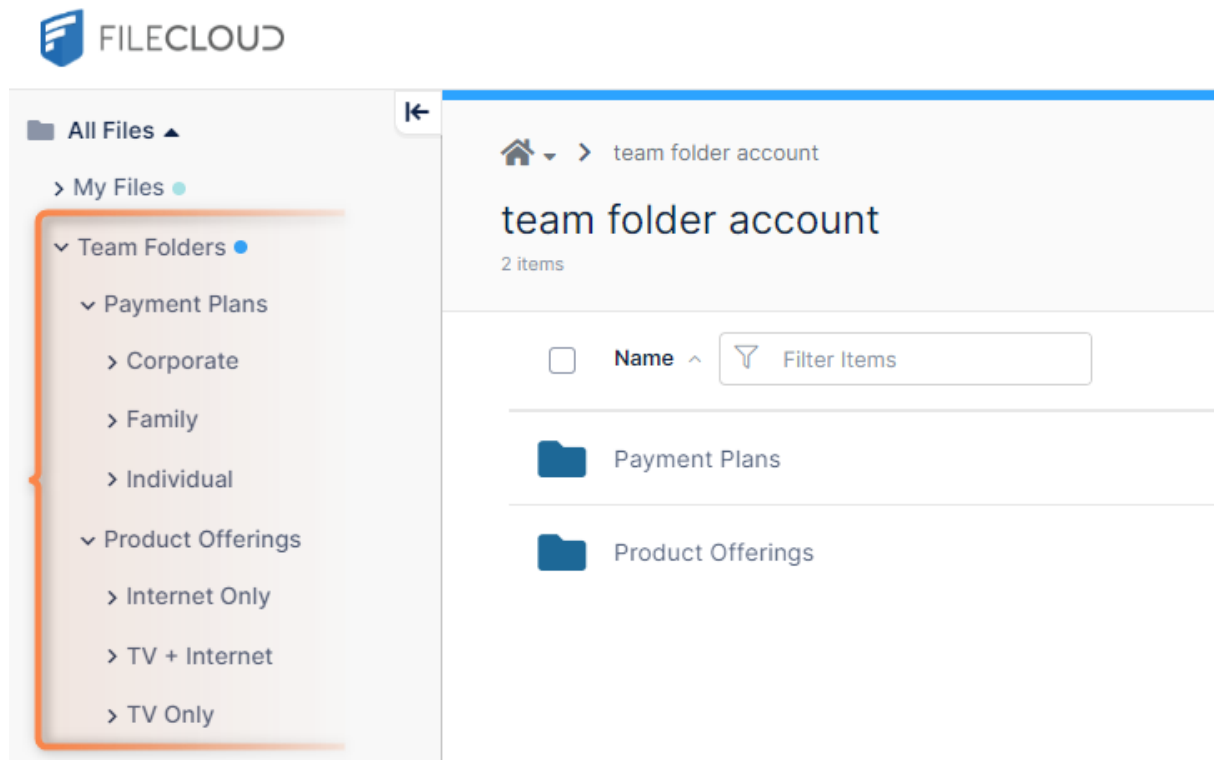
The company has three product offering categories:

- **Internet Only**
- **TV Only**
- **Internet + TV**

and it has three pricing plans:

- **Corporate**
- **Family**
- **Individual**

The company has a Team Folder with information that is available to all sales reps on each product offering and pricing plan. All sales reps see the following under Team Folders:



Each sales representatives works with a specific payment plan and product offering and only needs notifications about the product and pricing plans they work with, and do not want to receive updates about other offerings.

Therefore, as the FileCloud admin, you want each sales rep to be able to customize their file change notifications depending on which campaigns or pricing plans they are currently working with, so they know immediately when these product offerings and prices change. In addition, you want to give sales reps the opportunity to eliminate notifications about information they are not interested in.


After you configure these capabilities, each sales rep must log in to the user portal and choose the paths of the Team Folders that pertain to them and add notifications to them.

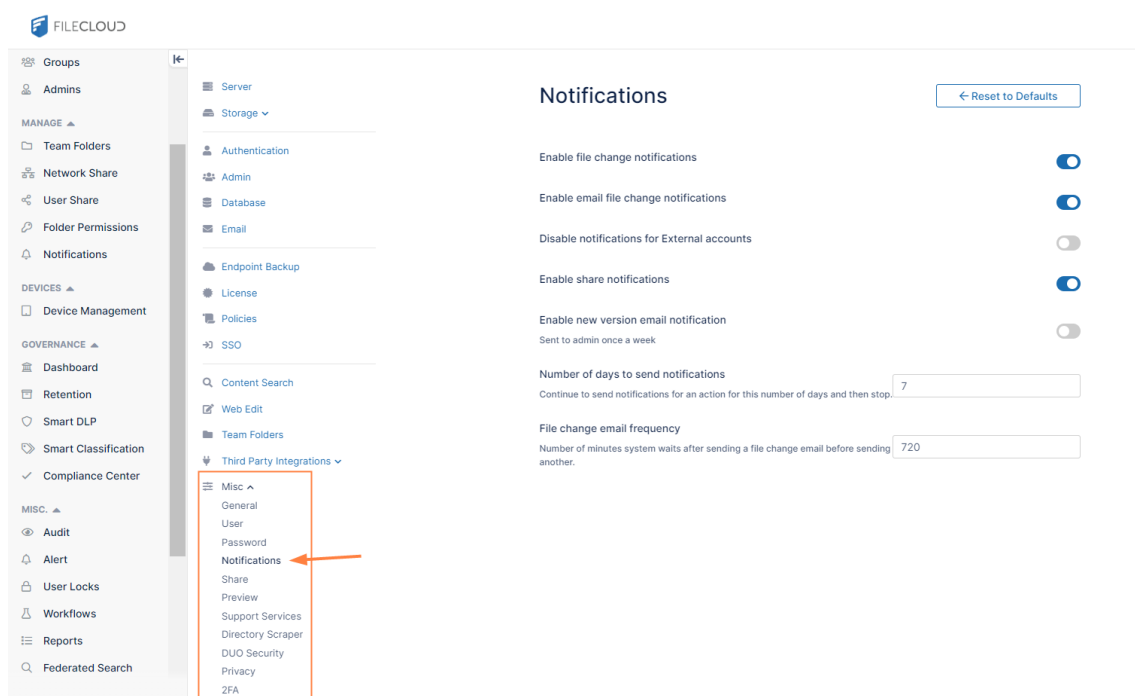
## To configure these settings

These are the steps you (the admin) use to set up the notifications according to these requirements:

1. To enable email notifications globally, open the Notifications settings page.

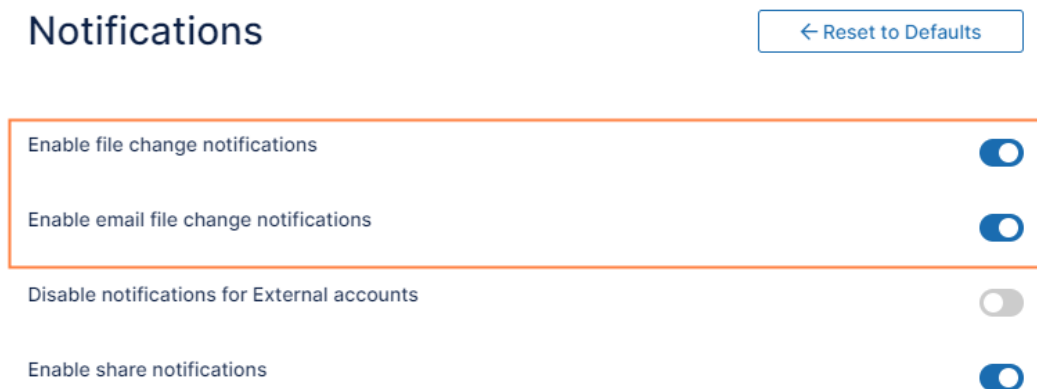
### To open the Notification settings page

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Misc** .
2. In the inner navigation bar on the left of the **Settings** page, expand the **Misc** menu, and click **Notifications**, as shown below.



The **Notifications** settings page opens.

2. Make sure **Enable file change notifications** is enabled. If it is not enabled, **Enable email file change notifications** is not available.
3. Enable **Enable email file change notifications**.



4. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Policies**. The **Policies** settings page opens.
5. Edit the policy assigned to the sales reps.

# Policies

Reset to Defaults

New Policy

Create a new policy

New Policy

Policy Name	User Count	Group Count	Default	Actions
Global Default Policy	1	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Copy</a> <a href="#">Add User</a> <a href="#">Add Group</a> <a href="#">Share</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>
Sales rep policy	2	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Copy</a> <a href="#">Add User</a> <a href="#">Add Group</a> <a href="#">Share</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>
Support policy	2	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Copy</a> <a href="#">Add User</a> <a href="#">Add Group</a> <a href="#">Share</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>
TEAM FOLDER POLICY	1	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Copy</a> <a href="#">Add User</a> <a href="#">Add Group</a> <a href="#">Share</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>

<<

<

Page 1 of 1

>

>>

4 rows

6. Set **Disable Notifications** and **Disable User Override** to off.

General2FAUser PolicyClient Application PolicyDevice ConfigurationNotifications

Some policy settings will not be applicable for Guest and External users.

Notifications

Disable Notifications

Disable all notifications

Disable User Override

Do not allow notification setting override by user. Applicable only when Disable Notifications is not checked above.

7. Scroll down so that you can view the individual **Disable Notifications** settings, and set all of the **Disable Notification** settings to on.

Effective Policy: "Sales rep policy"

General2FAUser PolicyClient Application PolicyDevice ConfigurationNotifications

Some policy settings will not be applicable for Guest and External users.

Notifications

Disable Notifications

Disable all notifications

Disable User Override

Do not allow notification setting override by user. Applicable only when Disable Notifications is not checked above.

Disable Add notifications

Do not send notifications when a new file is added to a shared folder.

Disable update notifications

Do not send notifications when a shared file is updated.

Disable delete notifications

Do not send notifications when a shared file is deleted.

Disable Download notifications

Do not send notifications when a shared file is downloaded.

Disable Preview notifications

Do not send notifications when a shared file is previewed.

Disable Lock/Unlock notifications

Do not send notifications when a shared file is locked or unlocked.

Disable Share notifications

Do not send notifications when a shared file is shared.

Disable Rename notifications

Do not send notifications when a shared file is renamed.

Disable self notifications

Do not send notifications to the user when action is done by the same user.

CancelResetSave

8. Save your changes.

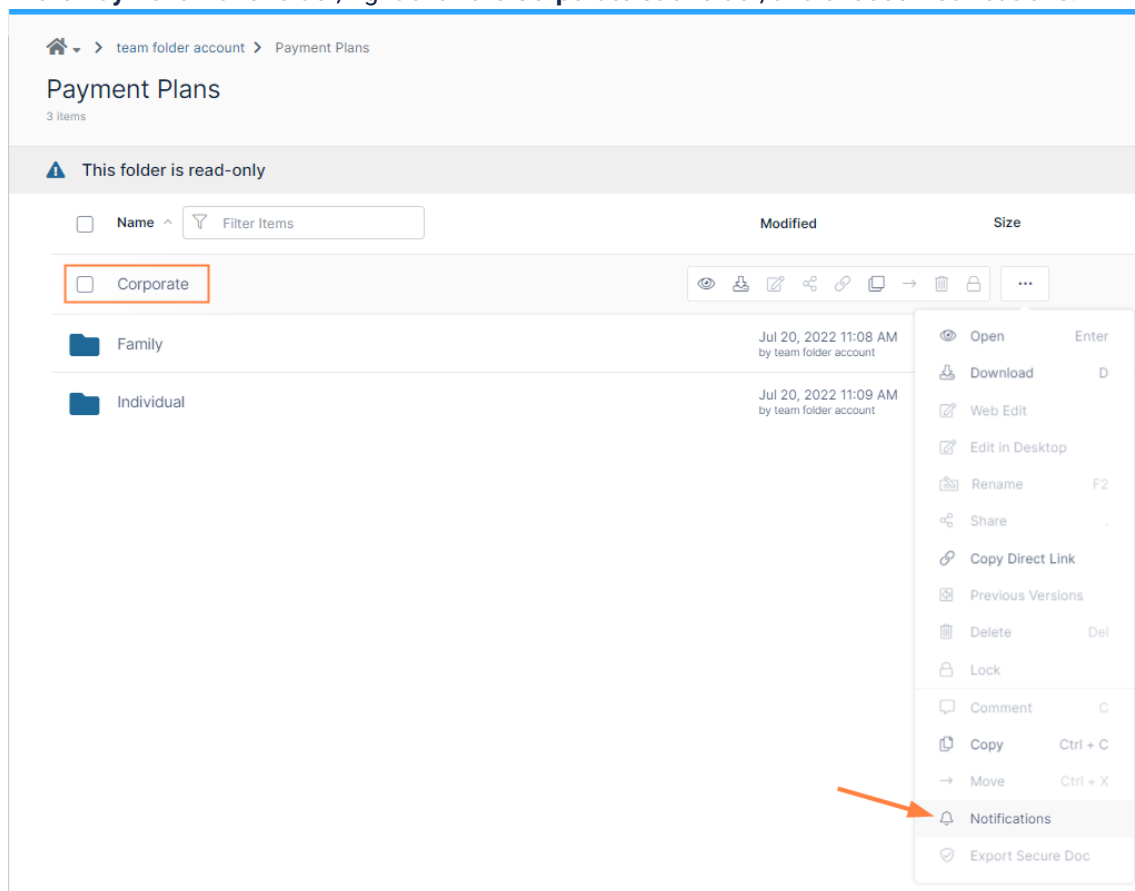
**How a Sales Rep sets up notifications about information particular to their clients:**

In this example, the sales rep only works with corporate customers who purchase internet only.

**Instructions for the sales rep to configure notifications for just the Corporate and Internet Only Team Folders:**

- 1. Log in to the user portal and go to Team Folders.

2. In the **Payment Plans** folder, right click the **Corporate** sub-folder, and choose **Notifications**.



Notifications settings for the **Corporate** Team Folder open.

3. Select **Use my own notification settings**.
4. Check the actions that you want to be notified about in the folder (for example **Upload**, **Delete**, **Rename**, and **Update**).

**Notification Settings for /SHARED/team folder account/Payment Plans/Corporate**

☐ Use default notification settings  
☒ Use my own notification settings

☒ Send Notifications

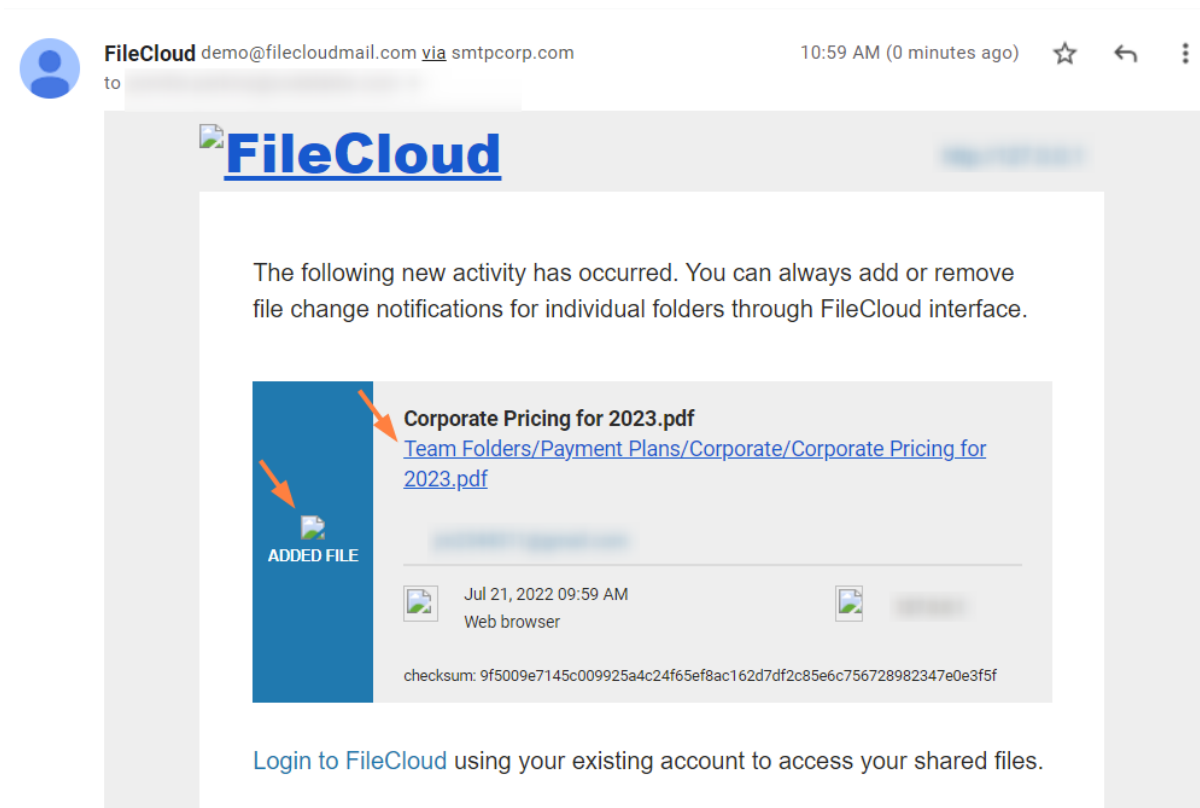
**Send Notifications on:**

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Upload When a file or folder is added	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Update When a file is modified
<input type="checkbox"/> Download When a file or folder is downloaded	<input type="checkbox"/> Preview When a file is viewed in the browser or in the mobile app
<input type="checkbox"/> Share When a file or folder is shared with someone	<input type="checkbox"/> Lock/Unlock When a file or folder is locked or unlocked
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Delete When a file or folder is deleted	<input type="checkbox"/> Self Notifications When an action is performed by me
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Rename When a file or folder is renamed	

- Click **Save**.
- Navigate to the **Product Offerings/Internet Only** folder, and repeat steps 2 through 5, above, to set notifications for the folder.

### When content is changed in one of the folders:

If content is added to the **Corporate** or **Internet Only** Team Folder, the sales rep who set up notifications for those folders receives an email similar to the following:



If content is modified in any of the other Team Folders, the sales rep does not receive notifications about them.

# Anonymizing User Data



You can search for and replace specific names, emails, and IP addresses with a non-traceable ID in the activity logs.

This action cannot be undone.

The process does not make activity outside this FileCloud instance anonymous. This includes any backup system, web site logs, or database server logs. You must search and remove references from those separately.

## To anonymize user data:

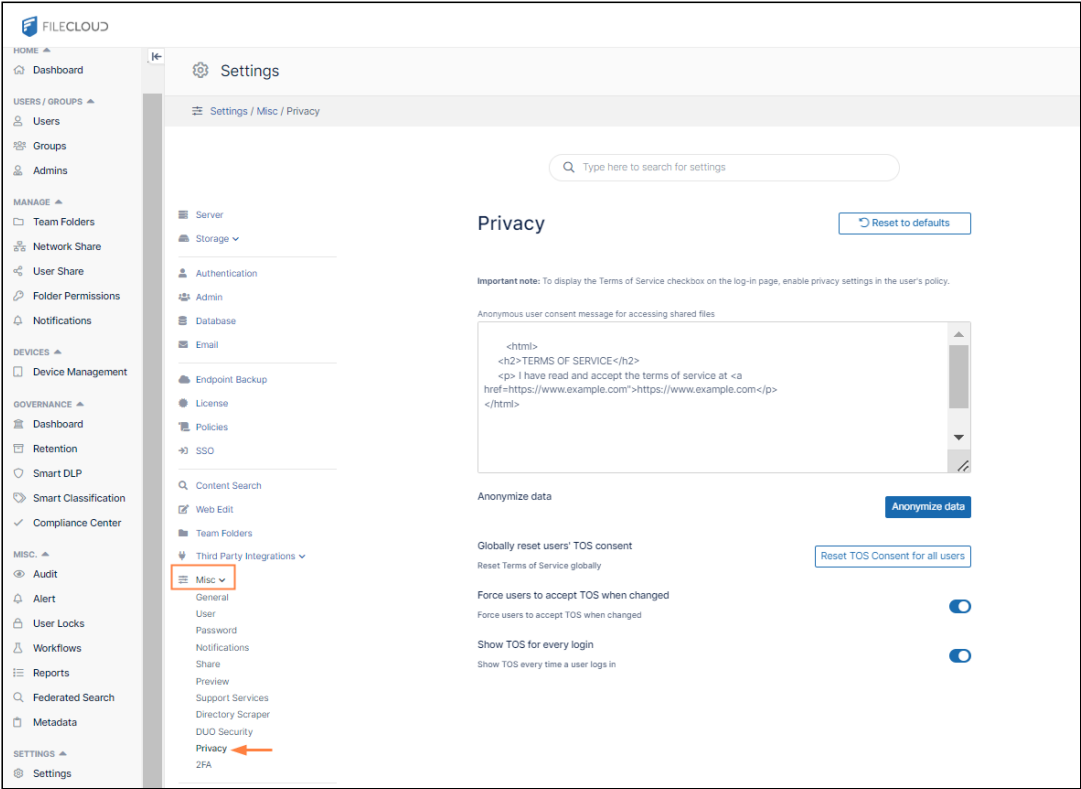
1. Open the Privacy settings page.

### To go to the Privacy settings page

- a. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on

the Settings navigation page, click **Misc** .

- b. In the inner navigation bar on the left of the Settings page, expand the **Misc** menu, and click **Privacy**, as shown below.



The Privacy settings page opens.

2. Click **Anonymize data**.

## Privacy

[Reset to defaults](#)

**Important note:** To display the Terms of Service checkbox on the log-in page, enable privacy settings in the user's policy.

Anonymous user consent message for accessing shared files

```
<html>
<h2>TERMS OF SERVICE</h2>
<p> I have read and accept the terms of service at <a
href=https://www.example.com">https://www.example.com</p>
</html>
```

Anonymize data

[Anonymize data](#)

Globally reset users' TOS consent

Reset Terms of Service globally

[Reset TOS Consent for all users](#)

Force users to accept TOS when changed

Force users to accept TOS when changed



Show TOS for every login

Show TOS every time a user logs in



The Anonymize user data dialog box opens.

3. Type in the username, email, and IP address you want to replace with a non-traceable ID.

**Anonymize user data** ✕

Username

Nathan

Email

nathan@example.com

IP Address

Anonymizes username, email, and IP with a non-traceable ID. This action cannot be undone.

Anonymization action cannot see activity outside FileCloud in backup system, web or database server logs. You must search and remove references from those separately.

Anonymize


Close

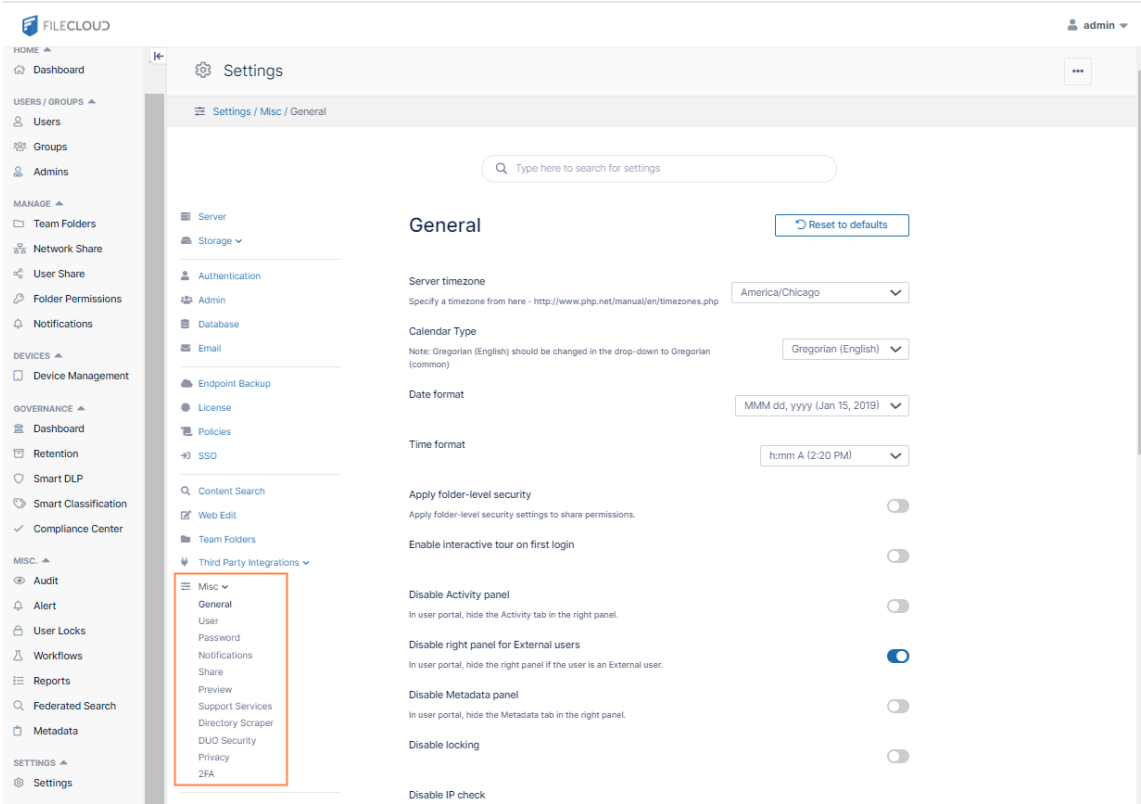
4. Click **Anonymize**.

# Misc Settings

There are many ways to configure a FileCloud Server to work with your unique environment. Misc settings include many options for you to change default values.

**To access the Misc settings:**

- 1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Misc**  . By default, **General** settings are opened.
- 2. To access other pages of **Misc** settings, in the inner navigation bar on the left of the **Settings** page, expand the **Misc** menu, and click the name of the **Misc** settings category, as shown below.



## General settings

Setting	Tab	Description	Version Added
Server timezone	General	Sets the time zone for the server	

Setting	Tab	Description	Version Added
<b>Calendar Type</b>	General	Choose the format of the choices that appear in the following <b>Date format</b> and <b>Time format</b> drop-down lists. The <b>Calendar Type</b> chosen is used for dates in the user portal as well as the Drive client. It is not used in the admin portal. Options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Gregorian</b> (English, default)) - Show Western formats.</li> <li>• <b>Hijri</b> (Islamic) - Show Arabic formats.</li> </ul>	FileCloud 22.1
<b>Date format</b>	General	Choose one of the options in the drop-down list. The options shown depend on whether <b>Gregorian</b> or <b>Hijri</b> is selected in the <b>Calendar Type</b> field. The <b>Date format</b> chosen is used for dates in the user portal as well as the Drive client. It is not used in the admin portal.	
<b>Time format</b>	General	Choose one of the options in the drop-down list. The options shown depend on whether <b>Gregorian</b> or <b>Hijri</b> is selected in the <b>Calendar Type</b> field. The <b>Time format</b> chosen is used in the user portal as well as the Drive client. It is not used in the admin portal.	
<b>Apply folder-level security</b>	General	Allow folder level security permissions to share.	
<b>Enable interactive tour on first login</b>	General	Displays interactive tour to users the first time they log in to the FileCloud user portal.	
<b>Disable Activity panel</b>	General	This setting hides the right panel that displays activities, comments, permissions and other details in the user interface. Note that activity records are not generated when this is enabled..	
<b>Disable right panel for External users</b>	General	Hides right panel if the user is a External user. Check by default.	
<b>Disable Metadata panel</b>	General	Hides metadata panel and disables metadata search option in user portal.	
<b>Disable locking</b>	General	Disables supports for file and folder locking. See (23.253) File Locking for more information about locking files and folders.	

Setting	Tab	Description	Version Added
<b>Disable IP check</b>	General	Disables IP check on every request. Use if it is valid for IP addresses to change while users are using the system to avoid unwanted session termination.	
<b>Email domain names to block</b>	General	Enter the comma separated email domain names to block.	
<b>Enable proxy settings</b>	General	Enter the settings of a proxy network if needed.	
<b>Scheduled tasks</b>	General	Manually execute cron tasks.	
<b>Import files</b>	General	Import files to managed storage,	
<b>Allowed file extensions</b>	General	Specify file extensions that are allowed to be uploaded. Leave this empty to allow all file extensions except any specified in <b>Disallowed file extensions</b> .	
<b>Disallowed file extensions</b>	General	Specify file extensions that cannot be uploaded.	
<b>Disallowed file names</b>	General	Specify file names that cannot be uploaded.	
<b>Check for double file extension</b>	General	Include additional checks for double extensions to increase security.	
<b>Forbidden Network Folder paths</b>	General	Network Folder paths that are prohibited from being used	
<b>Disable automatic database backup</b>	General	Disables automatic database backup	
<b>Database backup store path</b>	General	Specify a writable path to store backed up database.	
<b>Number of backups to store</b>	General	Number of backups to maintain.	
<b>Database backup Interval</b>	General	Interval between backup process. 0 = daily backup.	

Setting	Tab	Description	Version Added
<b>Disable content classification</b>	General	Do not allow content classification.	
<b>Enable WebDRM</b>	General	Enable use of the Secure Web Viewer option.	

## User settings

Setting	Tab	Description
<b>User account search mode</b>	User	See: <a href="#">Securing Shares by Limiting User Account Searches</a> (see page 398)
<b>User search account type</b>	User	Restrict user searches so that your users can only search for users in certain account types. See <a href="#">User Search Account Type</a> (see page 407).
<b>Group visibility</b>	User	Control what groups are listed to a user when a private share is created by that user. By default, all user groups are shown, you can change that to only show groups that the user actually belongs to. This can prevent sharing of files inadvertently to large groups.
<b>Send email to user to approve device</b>	User	Send email to users when a new device is ready for approval.
<b>Default view settings</b>	User	Select how files appear to users by default. (See: (23.253) Viewing Files by List or Grid). The options are: (size varies depending on screen resolution) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Automatic</b> - The default. Initially, <b>Automatic</b> is List view. Once the view is changed by the admin or by the user, <b>Automatic</b> is the user's most recent view.</li> <li>• <b>Large Thumbnails</b> - Grid of thumbnails that are approximately 400 by 400 pixels.</li> <li>• <b>Medium Thumbnails</b> - Grid of thumbnails that are approximately 280 by 280 pixels.</li> <li>• <b>Small Thumbnails</b> - Grid of thumbnails that are approximately 200 by 200 pixels.</li> <li>• <b>List View</b></li> </ul>
<b>Allow users to modify their phone numbers</b>	User	Allow full and external users to change their phone numbers in the user portal Settings screen.

## Notifications settings

Setting	Tab	Description
<b>Enable file change notifications</b>	Notificatio ns	When checked, enables recent activity notifications to appear on the user portal when files are created, updated, deleted and downloaded on a shared folder. Checked by default.
<b>Enable email file change notifications</b>	Notificatio ns	When checked, enables the system to send Email notifications when files are created, updated, deleted and downloaded on a shared folder. Enable File Change Notifications must be checked for this setting to be enabled. Checked by default.
<b>Disable notifications for External accounts</b>	Notificatio ns	When this option is enabled no share notifications will be sent to the external user.
<b>Enable share notification</b>	Notificatio ns	When this option is enabled share notifications will be set to NO by default. The "Email FileChange Notifications" will be set to NO in Manage Share → advanced options.
<b>Enable new version email notification</b>	Notificatio ns	When checked, emails about new versions of FileCloud are sent to the administrator once a week.
<b>Number of days to send notifications</b>	Notificatio ns	Send notifications for actions for the specified number of days
<b>File change email frequency</b>	Notificatio ns	How frequently, in minutes, email notifications are sent. Beginning in FileCloud 23.241, the default frequency is 720 minutes (12 hours).

## Other Misc. tab settings

For password settings, see [Password Settings \(see page 154\)](#)

For share settings, see [Share Settings \(see page 376\)](#)

For DUO security settings, see [Two-Factor Authentication \(see page 228\)](#).

For privacy settings, see [Terms of Service \(see page 530\)](#) and [Anonymizing User Data \(see page 520\)](#),

For 2fa settings, see [Two-Factor Authentication \(see page 228\)](#)

# Terms of Service



Beginning with FileCloud Version 21.3, when **Enable Privacy Settings** is set to **yes** in their user policies, admin users are required to accept terms of service the first time they log into the admin portal.



Beginning with FileCloud Version 22.232, the default link to FileCloud terms of service has changed to <https://www.filecloud.com/eula/>. The link will only be changed automatically on new installations of FileCloud. Although the previous link will automatically redirect users to the new page, if you are upgrading FileCloud to version 23.232 or using an earlier version, we recommend that you change the link in **Customization > TOS** to <https://www.filecloud.com/eula/><sup>58</sup>

By default, FileCloud requires users to accept terms of service (TOS) when:

- they initially create an account
- the content of terms of service changes.

---

58. <https://www.filecloud.com/eula/>.



New Account

[+ Login](#)

Email

Enter email id

Account Name

Enter username

Password

Enter password



Repeat Password

Re-enter password


☒ I agree to Terms of Use

[Help](#)

Create

Cancel



English ▼

## Enabling privacy settings and the Terms of Use checkbox

To display the **Terms of Use** checkbox on the log-in page, you must enable privacy settings. **Enable Privacy Settings** is set to **no** by default.

### To enable privacy settings:

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Policies** UNKNOWN ATTACHMENT. The **Policies** page opens.

# Policies

[← Reset to Defaults](#)

## New Policy

Create a new policy

New Policy

Policy Name	User Count	Group Count	Default	Actions
Global Default Policy	0	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Copy</a> <a href="#">Add User</a> <a href="#">Add Group</a> <a href="#">Share</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>
TEAM FOLDER POLICY	1	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Copy</a> <a href="#">Add User</a> <a href="#">Add Group</a> <a href="#">Share</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>

<< <

Page 1 of 1

> >>

2 rows

- 2. Edit the policy of the users whose privacy settings you want to modify.
- 3. On the **General** tab, set **Enable Privacy Settings**, to **yes**.

Effective Policy: "Global Default Policy" ✕

General2FAUser PolicyClient Application PolicyDevice ConfigurationNotifications

Some policy settings will not be applicable for Guest and External users.

General

Share Mode

Allow All Shares

Default share expiry in days

Number of days shares remain active. 0 = shares do not expire

0

Default max number of downloads allowed

Number of downloads allowed. 0 = maximum number of downloads is unlimited

0

User storage quota

0 = unlimited storage

Units2GB

Enable Privacy Settings

yes

Store deleted files in the recycle bin

no

- 4. Click **Save**.

# Showing TOS when users access public and password-protected shares

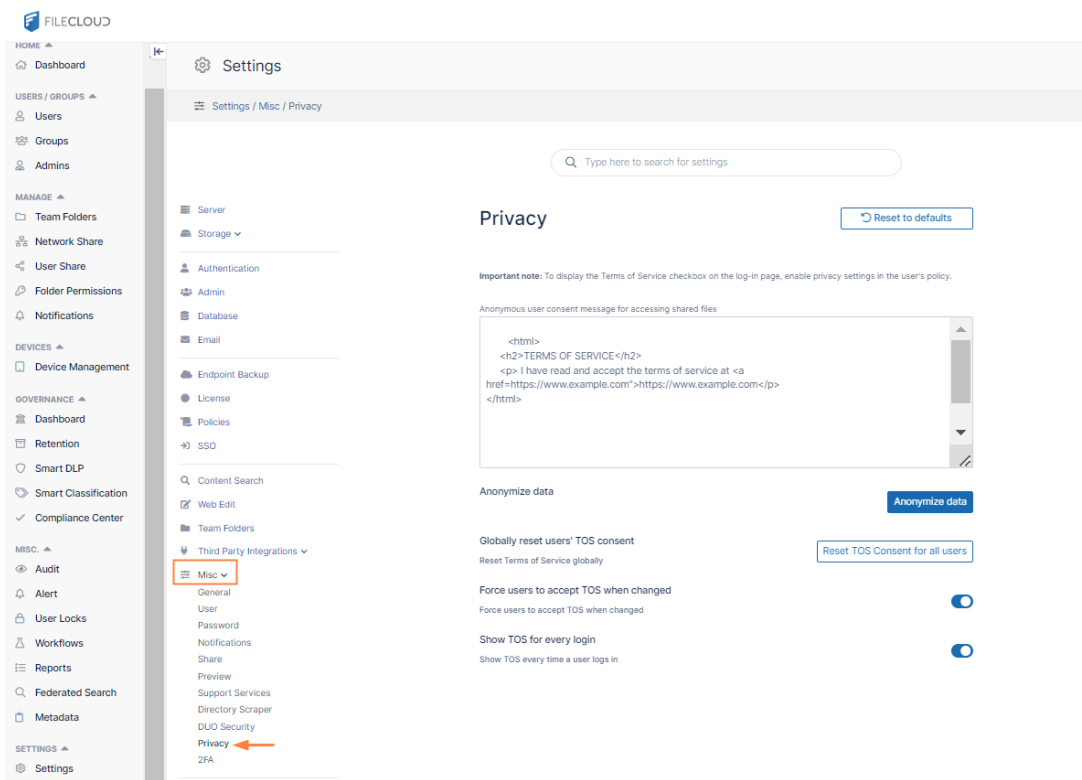
If **Enable Privacy Settings** in the General tab of a user's policy is set to **yes**, you can require users who log in to public and password-protected shares to accept FileCloud terms of service by adding text to the **Anonymous User Consent Dialog Text** field.

To require that a user accept of terms of service to access public and password-protected shares:

1. Set **Enable Privacy Settings** to **Yes** in the General tab of the user's policy as shown in the above procedure.

2. Open the **Privacy** settings page.  
**To go to the Privacy settings page**

- a. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Misc** **UNKNOWN ATTACHMENT** .
- b. In the inner navigation bar on the left of the **Settings** page, expand the **Misc** menu, and click **Privacy**, as shown below.



The **Privacy** settings page opens.

3. Add the content that you want to appear with the **Accept Terms of Service** button when users attempt to access the link for a public or password-protected share:


## Privacy

[← Reset to Defaults](#)

**Important note:** To display the Terms of Service checkbox on the log-in page, enable privacy settings in the user's policy.

Anonymous user consent message for accessing shared files

```
<html>
  <h2>TERMS OF SERVICE</h2>
  <p> I have read and accept the terms of service at <a
href=https://www.example.com">https://www.example.com</p>
</html>
```



4. Click **Save**.

**Note:** If you do not enter text here, the **Accept Terms of Service** button is not shown when users enter the link for a public or password-protected share, and the share is opened directly.

## Terms of service settings

Administrators are able to configure the following terms of service settings:

- Enable/disable whether users must re-accept terms of service when the content changes
- Enable/disable whether users must accept terms of service each time they log in to FileCloud
- Globally reset all users' terms of service consent




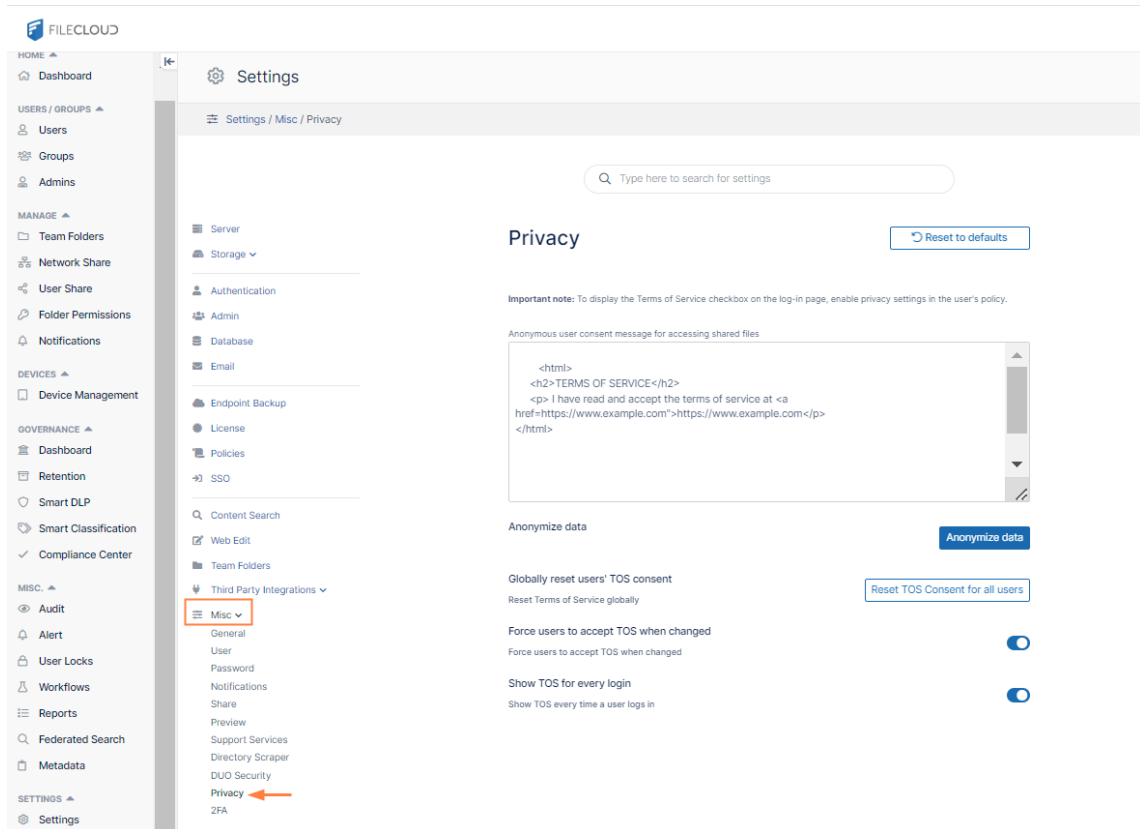
In versions of FileCloud prior to version 20.2, the fields **Globally reset users' TOS consent**, **Force users to accept TOS when changed**, and **Show TOS for every login** appear in the **Customization > TOS** tab. Now these fields appear in the **Settings > Misc > Privacy** tab.

**To configure terms of service settings:**

1. Open the **Privacy** settings page.

**To open the Privacy settings page**

1. In the FileCloud admin portal's left navigation bar, scroll down and click **Settings**. Then, on the **Settings** navigation page, click **Misc** .
2. In the inner navigation bar on the left of the **Settings** page, expand the **Misc** menu, and click **Privacy**, as shown below.



The **Privacy** settings page opens.

2. To globally reset TOS consent so that all users are required to re-accept the terms of service when they log in (to the user portal only), click **Reset TOS Consent for all users**
3. By default, **Force users to accept TOS when changed** is disabled.  
To require users to accept changed terms of service before logging in (to the user portal only), enable **Force users to accept TOS when changed**.
4. By default, **Show TOS for every login** is disabled.  
To require users to accept the TOS every time they log in, enable **Show TOS for every login**.  
This feature applies to all users when they sign in to the user portal and to admin users when they sign in to the admin portal.

## Privacy

[← Reset to Defaults](#)

**Important note:** To display the Terms of Service checkbox on the log-in page, enable privacy settings in the user's policy.

Anonymous user consent message for accessing shared files

```
<html>
<h2>TERMS OF SERVICE</h2>
<p> I have read and accept the terms of service at <a
href=https://www.example.com">https://www.example.com</p>
</html>
```

Anonymize data

Anonymize data

Globally reset users' TOS consent

Reset Terms of Service globally

[Reset TOS Consent for all users](#)

Force users to accept TOS when changed

Force users to accept TOS when changed



Show TOS for every login

Show TOS every time a user logs in



5. Click **Save**.

## See if a user has accepted terms of service

Administrators can view the user details for a user to see if they have accepted the latest terms of service. **TOS Date** either displays the date that the user accepted the terms of service or displays **Not Accepted**.

**Note: TOS Date** only shows if admin users have accepted the latest terms of service for the user portal; it does not show whether they have accepted it in the admin portal.

## User Details

Name

abose

Email

amitbose@example.com

Last Login

--

TOS Date

Not Accepted

Group

[Manage](#)

Total Quota

1000 MB

Used Quota

0 B

Available Quota

1000 MB

Used Storage

0 B

More

[Mobile Devices](#)

[Manage Files](#)

[Manage Shares](#)

[Reset Password](#)

[Email Password](#)

[Delete Account](#)

[Manage Policy](#)

[Manage Backups](#)

Profile Image



[Update](#) [Remove](#)

## Change the content of the Terms of Service

To change the content of the Terms of Service:

1. Click **Customization** in the left navigation panel.
2. Click the **TOS** tab
3. To enter new terms of service, change the HTML code in **Terms of Service**.

General

Labels And Logos

URL

UI Messages

Email Templates

News Feed

**TOS**

Custom Header

Custom Footer

Advanced

Terms of Service

[Reset to Defaults](#)

```
<html>
  <h2>FILECLOUD TERMS OF SERVICE</h2>
  <p>The latest version of TOS is available at <a
href="https://www.filecloud.com/eula/"
target="_blank">https://www.filecloud.com/eula/</a></p>
</html>
```

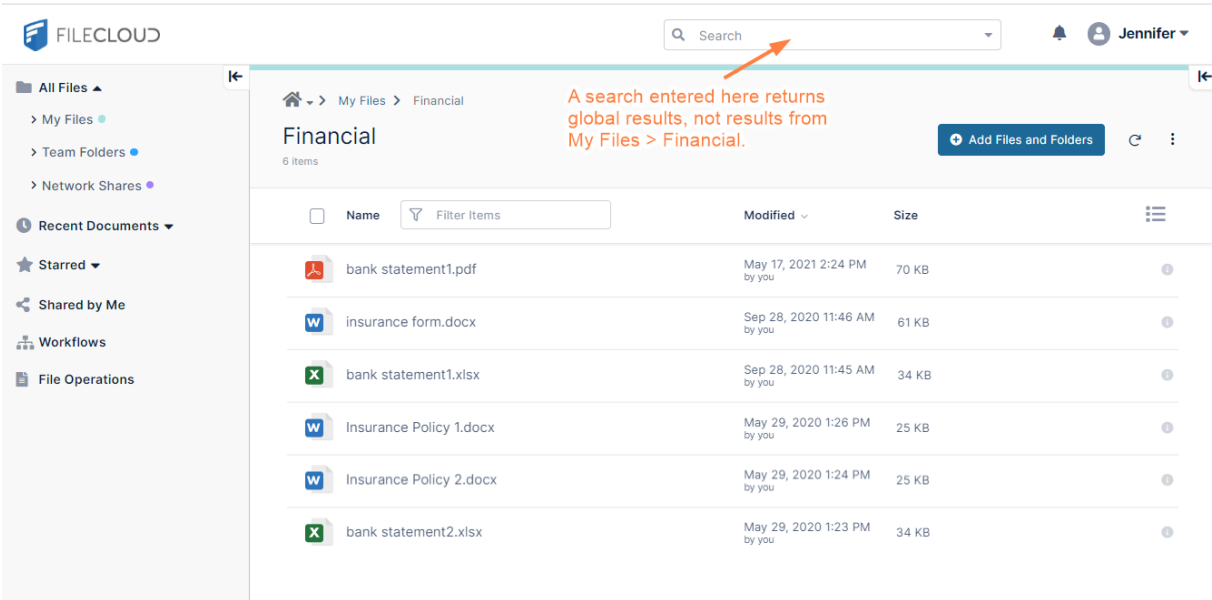
**Note:** This text is not shown when users open a public or password-protected share; instead the

text in **Anonymous user consent message for accessing shared files** in **Privacy settings** page, if it is entered, is shown.

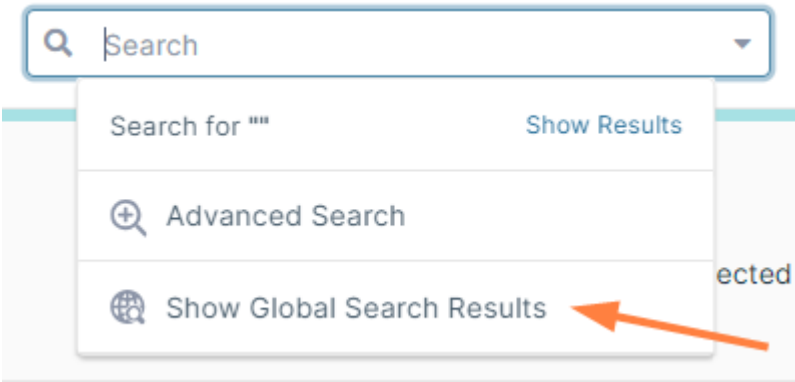
4. Click **Save**.

# Set Search Location

By default, basic searches from the user portal header's search bar are performed globally, regardless of where the user has navigated in the folders shown in the main part of the screen.



A setting is available for changing the default search location to the current path shown in the user portal. In the above screen, if the setting were turned on, searches would begin at the **My Files/Financial** folder. The setting adds the option **Show Global Search Results** when users click in the Search bar so users still have the ability to search globally:



To set the search to begin from the current path but include the global search option, please Contact FileCloud Support.

# Migrating Content with the Seeding Tool



These instructions should be used only for new installations (or, as shown in the last procedure, for migrating from FileCloud Server to FileCloud Online).



These instructions will not work if you are seeding a system with ServerLink enabled. Contact support.

Initially, when FileCloud is ready for production purposes, you may need to pre-populate the server with files and folders for FileCloud users.

- FileCloud is bundled with a tool to pre-load files and folders before you grant users access.
- These instructions explain how to use the FileCloud Server tool for seeding data into your deployment.

## How To Seed Data

### 1. Enable MongoDB

To use the seeding tool, MongoDB should be enabled and running in PHP CLI mode.

- This may require you to edit the PHP.ini file.
- In Windows, the MongoDB module is already enabled by default.
- If MongoDB is not enabled for PHP CLI mode, the tool will fail.

Enable MongoDB:

In Linux enter:

```
[root@cnfc php.d]# php -m | grep mongodb
mongodb
[root@cnfc php.d]#
```

In Windows enter:

```
C:\Windows\system32>C:\xampp\php\php.exe -m | findstr mongodb
mongodb
```

```
C:\Windows\system32>
```

If you do not get the above results, please Contact FileCloud Support.

## 2. Use the seed command

1. In a command line enter:

For Windows:

```
cd c:\xampp\htdocs\resources\tools\seeding
PATH=%PATH%;C:\xampp\php
```

For Linux:

```
cd /var/www/html/resources/tools/seeding
```

Then, for both Windows and Linux, enter:

```
php seed.php -h <hostname> -p <from path> -i -d <storagepath> -m <s3inipath> -u
<user> -r --trim-dot
```

### Parameters:

[required] -h <host> Site host name or 'default' for default site.

[required] -p <from path> Source path from which files are seeded.

[optional] -i Seed files. Set this flag to seed files.

[optional] -d <storagepath> Seed files from source path specified with -p to this existing storage path.

[optional] -m <s3inipath> Path to migrate.ini. This ini file will be used to migrate existing local storage to S3 storage.

[optional] -u <user> User whose files are to be imported. File with the user name should exist in the source path. Applicable only with -i.

[optional] -r Reset existing database. This will reset the databases, so use it with caution.

[optional] --trim-dot For right-to-left languages, removes periods the tool perceives as being in the wrong position and therefore invalid characters. --trim-dot is a flag; it does not have a value.



The seed command deletes the source files after uploading. This is designed to improve the speed of seeding.

## Seeding Scenarios

### Seed files for multiple users without resetting databases

To seed files for multiple users at the same time, prepare a top directory(source path) with separate folders for each user to be seeded with data. Under the user specific folder place files/folders to be seeded for that user.

Run the following command to seed all the users from the prepared source path.

### Linux seeding files/folders for multiple users - Default site

```
php seed.php -h default -p /tmp/seedfolder -i
```

The following code shows how to export files for user 'jdoe' from site [site21.hostedcloud.com](http://site21.hostedcloud.com)<sup>59</sup> to directory 'cloudexport'.

### Windows seeding files/folders for multiple users - Default site

```
php seed.php -h default -p C:\temp\seedfolder -i
```



#### Note

- If user account exists, seeded files/folders will be imported to those accounts
- If user accounts doesn't exist, user accounts will be created before seeding.

### Seed files for multiple users resetting databases

To seed files for multiple users at the same time, prepare a top directory(source path) with separate folders for each user to be seeded with data. Under the user specific folder place files/folders to be seeded for that user.

Run the following command to delete all the existing data and seed from the prepared source path.

### Linux resetting and seeding files/folders for multiple users - Default site

```
php seed.php -h default -p /tmp/seedfolder -i -r
```

<sup>59</sup>. <http://site21.hostedcloud.com>

## Windows resetting and seeding files/folders for multiple users - Default site

```
php seed.php -h default -p C:\temp\seedfolder -i -r
```



### Note

- All the existing user accounts and its associated data will be deleted before the seeding.
- New user accounts will be created before seeding. Default username and password will be used (i.e password → password)

### Seed files for a single user

## Windows seeding files/folders for single user - Default site

```
php seed.php -h default -p C:\temp\seedfolder -u jdoe -i
```



### Note

- Data will be seeded for a single user.
- In this case, command expects a folder **jdoe** to exist under the source path.

### Seed files into an existing path

To seed files into an existing FileCloud storage path, prepare a top directory(source path) with a single folder under which files/folders to be seeded are placed.

Run the following command to seed the single folder and its contents to an existing FileCloud storage path.

## Linux seeding files/folders into an existing storage path - Default site

```
php seed.php -h default -p /tmp/seedfolder -d /jdoe/march
```

## Windows seeding files/folders into an existing storage path - Default site

```
php seed.php -h default -p C:\temp\seedfolder -d /jdoe/march
```



### Note

- In this case, the command imports a single folder under the source path into the FileCloud storage path **/jdoe/march**. All contents of **seedfolder** are copied to **/jdoe/march**, but the folder **seedfolder** is not copied.

## Migrate local storage to S3 storage

The seeding tool can also migrate files from local storage to S3 storage. When the tool is run in this mode, it does the following steps:

1. Checks if [AWS CLI](https://docs.aws.amazon.com/cli/latest/userguide/installing.html)<sup>60</sup> is installed on the system running the tool
2. Checks if a valid migration ini file is specified. Look below for the file format.
3. **Important:** Deletes the existing S3 storage database. If the site was never configured for S3 before, then this should not be an issue.
4. Creates a new S3 storage database and imports the data from local storage database converting it into S3 storage database format on the fly.
5. Creates multiple AWS CLI commands to upload data from the local storage to the S3 bucket. The details of this transfer are generated using the specified ini file.
6. Executes the AWS CLI commands prepared in the previous step.

Run the following command to migrate from local storage to S3 storage

## Linux migrating from local storage to S3 storage

```
php seed.php -h default -m /tmp/migrates3.ini
```

---

60. <https://docs.aws.amazon.com/cli/latest/userguide/installing.html>

## Windows migrating from local storage to S3 storage

```
php seed.php -h default -m C:\temp\migrates3.ini
```

## S3 migration ini file (sample values)

```
aws_storage_bucket = "company.bucket"
aws_storage_folderprefix = "site1"
aws_access_key_id = "AKIAT4YDRDUSR0863KJJ"
aws_secret_access_key = "stPwbS3Y1KrZGUkVbNcYJx+8S/ZZKFR00jUdG9e9"
aws_region = "us-east-1"
```

## Migrate from FileCloud Server to FileCloud Online

If you are migrating to FileCloud Online, the full set of databases has to be exported along with migration. This can be achieved with the following commands.

### Linux migrating from local storage to S3 storage

```
php seed.php -h default -m /tmp/migrates3.ini -e /tmp/dbexport
```

## Windows migrating from local storage to S3 storage

```
php seed.php -h default -m C:\temp\migrates3.ini -e C:\temp\dbexport
```

Contact FileCloud Support for help with this procedure.

## Migrate Local Storage to an Azure Blob Storage Network Folder

Beginning with FileCloud Version 20.2, the seeding tool supports migrating local data to Azure Blob storage.

Run the following command to migrate from local storage to Azure storage:

```
php seed.php -h default -z C:\AzureMigrate\migrate.ini
```

## Related help:

Migrating your data from Varonis DatAnywhere to FileCloud